



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





**STANDARD EDUCATIONAL WORKS.**

**Gillespie's Land Surveying :** Theoretical and Practical. By W. M. GILLESPIE, LL. D., Professor of Civil Engineering in Union College. With 400 Engravings, and a Map, showing the Variation of the Needle in the United States. 8vo. 424 pages.

**Graham's English Synonymes.** Classified and Explained. With Practical Exercises, and illustrative authorities. Edited by HENRY REED, LL. D. 12mo. 344 pages.

**Guizot's History of Civilization in Europe.**

**Greene's History of the Middle Ages.**

**Huxley & Youmans's Elements of Physiology and Hygiene :** for Schools and Academies. With numerous Illustrations. 12mo.

**Keightley's Mythology.** 18mo.

• **Koeppen's Historical Geography.** 2 vols., 12mo.

———— **Historico-Geographical Atlas of the Middle Ages.**  
Folio.

**Latham's Hand-Book of English Literature.** 12mo. 898 pages.

**Lockyer's Elements of Astronomy.** Embracing the latest Discoveries, richly illustrated, and accompanied with Arago's Celestial Charts, and Colored Delineations of the Solar, Stellar, and Nebular Spectra. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER. American Edition, specially adapted to the Schools of the United States. 12mo. 812 pages.

**Lyell's Principles of Geology.** 8vo. 843 pages.

———— **Manual of Elementary Geology.**

**Marsh's Book-Keeping by Single Entry.** New Edition. Printed in colors. 8vo. 142 pages.

———— **Book-Keeping by Double Entry.** Printed in colors. 8vo. 220 pages.

BLANKS TO EACH OF ABOVE.

**Mandeville's New Series of Reading Books :**

PRIMARY READER. A profusely illustrated 16mo.

SECOND READER. With numerous Illustrations. 16mo.

THIRD READER. For Common Schools and Academies. 12mo.

FOURTH READER. For Common Schools and Academies. 12mo.

FIFTH READER. Designed for Academies and Advanced Schools.  
With Biographical Notes. 12mo. 392 pages. Cloth sides.

ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY. 8vo.

 SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

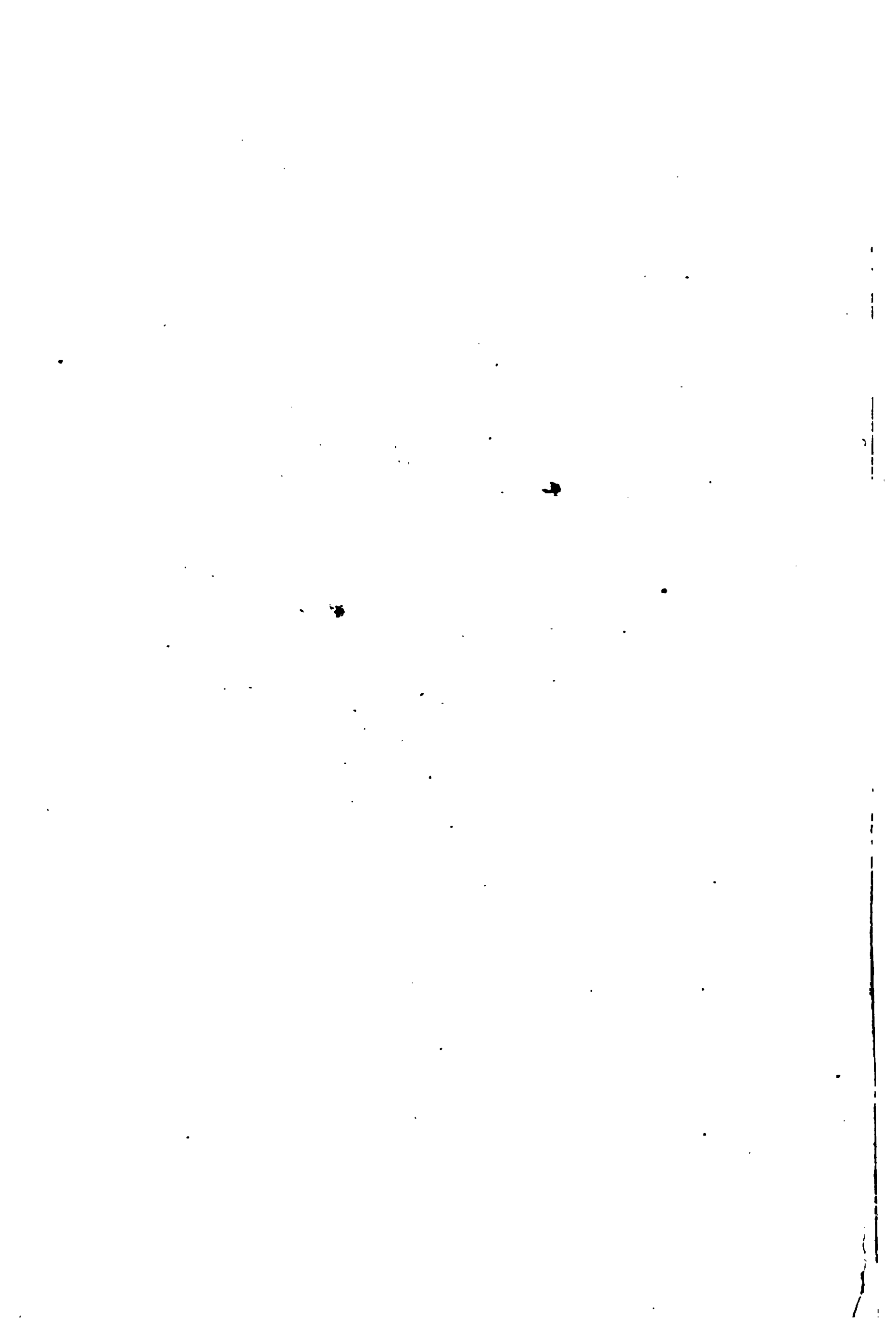




Miss Anna Barlow  
Washington College

Stella Brumfield

WASHINGTON  
College N.



ILLUSTRATED  
SCHOOL HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES  
AND THE ADJACENT PARTS OF  
AMERICA,

FROM THE EARLIEST DISCOVERIES TO THE PRESENT TIME:.

EMBRACING A FULL ACCOUNT OF THE ABORIGINES; BIOGRAPHICAL NOTICES OF  
DISTINGUISHED MEN; NUMEROUS MAPS, PLANS OF BATTLE-FIELDS, AND  
PICTORIAL ILLUSTRATIONS; AND OTHER FEATURES CALCULATED  
TO GIVE OUR YOUTH CORRECT IDEAS OF THEIR COUNTRY'S  
PAST AND PRESENT, AND A TASTE FOR GENERAL  
HISTORICAL READING.

BY G. P. QUACKENBOS, LL. D.,

ASSOCIATE PRINCIPAL OF "THE COLLEGIATE SCHOOL," N. Y.; AUTHOR OF "FIRST  
LESSONS IN COMPOSITION," "ADVANCED COURSE OF COMPOSITION  
AND RHETORIC," ETC.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
549 & 551 BROADWAY.

1872.

663322

**By the same Author :**

**ELEMENTARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.** Brought down to July, 1868. Splendidly illustrated. 12mo, pp. 216.

**FIRST LESSONS IN COMPOSITION :** In which the Principles of the Art are developed in connection with the Principles of Grammar. 12mo, pp. 182.

**ADVANCED COURSE OF COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC :** A Series of Practical Lessons on the Origin, History, and Peculiarities of the English Language, Punctuation, Taste, Figures, Style and its Essential Properties, Criticism, and the various Departments of Prose and Poetical Composition. 12mo, pp. 451.

**FIRST BOOK IN ENGLISH GRAMMAR.** 12mo, pp. 120.

**AN ENGLISH GRAMMAR.** 12mo, pp. 288.

**A NATURAL PHILOSOPHY :** Embracing the most recent Discoveries in Physics. Adapted to use with or without Apparatus, and accompanied with Practical Exercises and 335 Illustrations. 12mo, pp. 450.

**A PRIMARY ARITHMETIC.** Beautifully illustrated. 16mo, pp. 108.

**AN ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC.** 12mo, pp. 144.

**A PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC.** 12mo, pp. 336. **KEY** to the same.

**A MENTAL ARITHMETIC.** 16mo, pp. 168.

**A HIGHER or COMMERCIAL ARITHMETIC.** (In preparation.)

---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1857, by

G. P. QUACKENBOS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the Southern District of New York.

---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1865, by

G. P. QUACKENBOS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the Southern District of New York.

---

## P R E F A C E.

---

Few words are needed to introduce this volume. The Author has aimed to be *simple*, that youth of lower as well as advanced classes may understand him; *clear*, that no indistinct or erroneous impressions may be conveyed; *accurate* in the recital of facts; and *interesting* as regards both matter and style. Avoiding fragmentary statements, he has gone into detail sufficiently to show events in their connections, convinced that a fairer idea of them is thus imparted, and that facts otherwise dry may in this way be made attractive and indelibly impressed on the mind. He has tried throughout to be fair and national. He has neither introduced offensive allusions, nor invidiously attempted to bias the minds of the young on controverted questions connected with politics or religion.

It is hoped that the plan of the work will be approved by teachers. While the accounts of particular settlements, colonies, and sections, are kept distinct, the order of events throughout the whole is as far as possible preserved. Some space is devoted to a consideration of the origin, customs, and character of the Red Men, whose prominence in our earlier annals, no less than the melancholy doom which is hurrying them to extinction, gives them a strong claim on the historian. Brief biographies of distinguished men, interspersed in connection with the events that made them famous, add to the interest of the volume, besides furnishing the pupil models of worth and patriotism. The progress of art, science, and invention, the state of society at different periods, and other matters essential to a complete view of a country's history, receive due attention. The questions at the bottom of the page will be found convenient; as will, also, the pronunciation given in brackets after foreign and difficult proper names. Appropriate illustrations prepared with great care, to instruct as well as please, have been liberally provided. Maps are as useful in history as in geography; and Plans are often essential to the lucid delineation of military movements. Both are here presented wherever it was thought they would be of service; and, to prevent their neglect by the student, questions on each have been introduced.

In conclusion, the Author hopes that his efforts to invest the subject with interest have not proved altogether unsuccessful, and that the volume now offered to the young may be the means of inspiring them with a taste for general historical reading.

NEW YORK, Jan. 19th, 1857.

# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.

### ABORIGINAL PERIOD.

| CHAPTER.                               | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| I. Origin of the American Indians..... | 11    |
| II. The Great Indian Families.....     | 16    |
| III. Indian Languages.....             | 20    |
| IV. Aboriginal Remains.....            | 26    |
| V. Description of the Indians.....     | 81    |

---

## PART II.

### COLONIAL PERIOD.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| I. Voyages and Discoveries of Columbus.....                       | 43  |
| II. Early Explorations.—First Permanent Settlements.....          | 51  |
| III. Conquest of Mexico and Peru.—Voyage of Magellan.....         | 60  |
| IV. English Explorations and Settlements.....                     | 66  |
| V. Dutch Discoveries and Settlements.....                         | 76  |
| VI. Landing of the Pilgrims.....                                  | 79  |
| VII. Massachusetts Bay Colony.—Settlement of Rhode Island.....    | 83  |
| VIII. Settlement of Connecticut.—Pequod War.....                  | 88  |
| IX. Founding of Maryland and Delaware.....                        | 92  |
| X. New Netherlands from 1621 to 1664.—Founding of New Jersey..... | 95  |
| XI. Virginia from 1620 to 1660.....                               | 99  |
| XII. Elliot's Preaching.—Union of the New England Colonies.....   | 102 |
| XIII. Domestic Life, Character, and Laws of the Puritans.....     | 105 |
| XIV. King Philip's War.....                                       | 108 |
| XV. Bacon's Rebellion.....  | 114 |
| XVI. Settlement of Carolina.....                                  | 118 |
| XVII. Settlement of Pennsylvania.....                             | 121 |
| XVIII. Indian History.—Jesuit Missionaries.....                   | 125 |

| CHAPTER.   | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| XIX. New York to 1689.—French and Iroquois War.....                                      | 130   |
| XX. New England under Andros and Phipps.....   | 132   |
| XXI. King William's War.....   | 134   |
| XXII. Witchcraft in New England.....   | 138   |
| XXIII. New York under Leisler, Sloughter, Fletcher, and Bellamont.—<br>Captain Kidd..... | 140   |
| XXIV. South Carolina from 1690 to 1700.....  | 143   |
| XXV. French Settlements in the South-west.—Chickasaw War.....                            | 144   |
| XXVI. Queen Anne's War.....  | 147   |
| XXVII. Settlement of Georgia.....  | 148   |
| XXVIII. King George's War, 1744–1748.....  | 152   |
| XXIX. Commencement of Washington's Career.....   | 154   |
| XXX. Commencement of the French and Indian War.....                                      | 160   |
| XXXI. Braddock's Campaign.....   | 164   |
| XXXII. French and Indian War (continued).—Campaigns of 1757–58.....                      | 171   |
| XXXIII. French and Indian War (continued).—Campaigns of 1759–60.....                     | 175   |
| XXXIV. Pontiac's War.....  | 181   |
| XXXV. State of Society in the Colonies.....  | 184   |
| XXXVI. Causes of the American Revolution.....  | 188   |

## PART III.

### REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| I. Battle of Lexington.....  | 203 |
| II. Capture of Ticonderoga.—Washington elected Commander-in-chief  | 206 |
| III. Battle of Bunker Hill.....  | 209 |
| IV. Invasion of Canada.....  | 214 |
| V. Siege and Evacuation of Boston.....   | 218 |
| VI. British Attack on Charleston.—Declaration of Independence.....   | 220 |
| VII. Battle of Long Island.....  | 224 |
| VIII. Washington's Retreat.—Battle of White Plains.....  | 229 |
| IX. Battles of Trenton and Princeton.....  | 232 |
| X. La Fayette's Arrival.—Tryon in Connecticut.—Capture of Gen.<br>Prescott.....  | 236 |
| XI. Burgoyne's Campaign and Surrender.....   | 239 |
| XII. Movements of Howe and Washington in 1777.....   | 248 |
| XIII. The American Army at Valley Forge.....   | 253 |
| XIV. Campaign of 1778.—Monmouth.—Newport.—Savannah.—Wyoming  | 257 |
| XV. Campaign of 1779.—Movements in South Carolina.—Capture of<br>Stony Point.—Sullivan's Indian Expedition.—Siege of Savannah.<br>—Paul Jones..... | 262 |
| XVI. Campaign of 1780.—Fall of Charleston.—Partisan Warfare in the<br>South.—Battle of Camden .....  | 269 |
| XVII. Arnold's Treachery.—Battle of King's Mountain.....   | 276 |
| XVIII. Campaign of 1781.—The Cowpens.—Guilford Court House.—Ninety-<br>Six.—Entaw Springs.....   | 282 |



| CHAPTER.   | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| XIX. Siege of Yorktown.—Surrender of Cornwallis..... | 293   |
| XX. End of the Revolutionary War.....                | 298   |
| XXI. Formation of a Federal Constitution.....        | 304   |

## PART IV.

### CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| I. Washington's Administration, 1789-1797.....            | 312 |
| II. John Adams's Administration, 1797-1801.....           | 326 |
| III. Jefferson's Administration, 1801-1809.....           | 329 |
| IV. Madison's Administration, 1809-1812.....              | 338 |
| V. Madison's Administration (continued), 1812.....        | 344 |
| VI. Madison's Administration (continued), 1813.....       | 353 |
| VII. Madison's Administration (continued), 1814-1817..... | 371 |
| VIII. Monroe's Administration, 1817-1825.....             | 390 |
| IX. John Quincy Adams's Administration, 1825-1829.....    | 397 |
| X. Jackson's Administration, 1829-1837.....               | 401 |
| XI. Van Buren's Administration, 1837-1841... ..           | 411 |
| XII. Administration of Harrison and Tyler, 1841-1845..... | 413 |
| XIII. Polk's Administration, 1845-1849.....               | 423 |
| XIV. Administration of Taylor and Fillmore, 1849-53.....  | 445 |
| XV. Pierce's Administration, 1853-1857.....               | 452 |
| XVI. Buchanan's Administration, 1857-1861.....            | 458 |
| XVII. Lincoln's Administration, 1861-1865.....            | 462 |
| XVIII. Johnson's Administration, 1865-1869.....           | 507 |
| Present Condition of the United States.....               | 511 |
| Declaration of Independence.....                          | 513 |
| Constitution of the United States.....                    | 517 |
| Amendments of the Constitution.                           |     |
| Chronological Record.                                     |     |



## THE WESTERN CONTINENT.

1. THE Western Continent, represented above, is about 9,000 miles long. It attains its greatest width in the north, where it is nearly 3,000 miles across. From this point the shores slope towards each other, till an isthmus 50 miles wide is formed; whence they again expand, enclosing a tract of nearly equal size on the south. The continent is thus naturally divided into two parts, known as North and South America. Between the two, near the eastern coast, lie the West India Islands.

Including the islands just named and Greenland, the American Continent embraces 15,000,000 square miles, of which North America contains eight million, and South America nearly seven. Together they comprise more than a third of the land surface of the globe. The territory of

---

1. How long is the Western Continent? Where does it attain its greatest width? How wide is it there? From this point, describe the shores. How is the continent thus divided? What islands lie between the two? Including the West Indies and Greenland, how many square miles does America contain? How many, North America? How many, South America? Together, what part of the land surface of the globe do they comprise? How much of this belongs to

the United States contains 3,468,000 square miles,—nearly one half of the surface of North America.

America is bounded on each side by a great ocean. On the east, the Atlantic, 3,000 miles broad, separates it from Europe and Africa; on the west, it is separated from Asia by the Pacific, the greatest width of which is about 10,000 miles. This ocean gradually narrows towards the north, till it terminates in Behring's [*beer'-ingz*] Strait, where the extreme points of the two continents are only 36 miles apart.

2. The American Continent is distinguished for the grandness of its natural features. It is intersected by large rivers, which afford every facility for commerce. The Mississippi, the Missouri, and the Amazon, surpass in length every other river on the earth. Lakes equal in size to seas are scattered over its surface. Its valleys and plains, its volcanoes and mountain-ranges, are all on the grandest scale. Its mineral resources are inexhaustible. The silver and diamond mines of South America, and, in the United States, the gold and silver deposits of California, Nevada, and the western Territories, as well as the vast subterranean treasures of lead, iron, and coal, which elsewhere abound, are of inestimable value.

3. The temperature of any given locality in America is much colder than that of a place in the same latitude on the Eastern Continent. New York is on nearly the same parallel as Naples; yet in the latter snow is rarely seen, and fires are hardly ever required. There is no city in America as far north as Paris; and Stockholm, transported to the same latitude in the Western Continent, would be in a region of perpetual snow.

4. The animals originally found in America were, as a general thing, neither so large nor so strong as those of the old world. Instead of the elephant, rhinoceros, hippopota-

---

the United States? By what is America bounded? How wide is the Atlantic? The Pacific? In what does the Pacific terminate towards the north? How wide is Behring's Strait? 2. For what is the American Continent distinguished? By what is it intersected? What is said of its valleys, plains, &c.? What, of its mineral resources? 3. How does the Western Continent compare in temperature with the Eastern? What two cities are mentioned in illustration of this fact? What is the temperature of America in the latitude of Stockholm? 4. How did the animals of America compare with those of the old world? Mention

mus, lion, and tiger, which are natives of many parts of the Eastern Continent, here were found the bison, musk-ox, jaguar', tapir, and lama. Remains of the elephant, however, and of a still larger quadruped known as the mastodon, now extinct, have been dug up in different parts of the United States. All our domestic animals were introduced from Europe. Horses are now found wild in great numbers, but America is not their native land. They have sprung from those introduced by the Spaniards. The same is the case with the wild cattle that traverse in myriads the plains of Buenos Ayres [*bo'-nos ā'-riz*]. Our varieties of native birds are numerous; we have many not found in the Eastern Continent, of which the turkey is the most important.

5. Having thus considered the natural features of America, we proceed to treat of its history. The part now constituting the United States will occupy most of our attention; but we shall take occasion to glance at the great events in other portions of the continent also, particularly such as have had a bearing on the history of our own country.

#### DIVISION INTO PERIODS.

American History may be divided into four periods:—

- I. THE ABORIGINAL PERIOD, extending from the first peopling of America to its discovery by Columbus, A. D. 1492.
- II. THE COLONIAL PERIOD, from the discovery by Columbus to the breaking out of the American Revolution, A. D. 1775.
- III. THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD, from the breaking out of the Revolution to the organization of a government under the Federal Constitution, A. D. 1789.
- IV. THE CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD, from the organization of a government under the Federal Constitution to the present time.

---

some not found in this country. By what was their place supplied? What remains are found? What is said of our domestic animals? Whence came the horse and the wild cattle of South America? What is said of our native birds?  
 5. Into how many periods may American History be divided? Give the name and limits of each.



# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

## PART I.

### ABORIGINAL PERIOD,

EXTENDING FROM THE FIRST PEOPLING OF AMERICA TO ITS  
DISCOVERY BY COLUMBUS, A. D. 1492.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### ORIGIN OF THE AMERICAN INDIANS.

6. WHEN America was discovered by Europeans, it was occupied by tribes differing in many respects from the nations of the old world. Their manners, customs, languages, and personal appearance, all proclaimed them a distinct race. From their color, they were by some styled RED MEN, while the erroneous idea of early adventurers that America formed part of the East Indies, led to their being called INDIANS, and by this name they have generally been known. As these native tribes play a prominent part in our early history, it is important to consider their origin and peculiarities, their territorial limits and mutual relations.

7. We must first ask whence and how America was peopled. It is separated from the Eastern Continent, on one side by three thousand miles of ocean, and on the other by an expanse of water for the most part three times as broad.

---

6. When discovered, by whom was America occupied? In what did they differ from the nations of the old world? What names were given them, and why?

7. What would seem to render it impossible for America to have been peopled from the Eastern Continent? What were men first led to suppose? What book

Hence it seems, at first glance, almost impossible that it should have been reached, in an age when ships were small and frail, when the mariner's compass was unknown and the sailor durst not trust himself out of sight of land. This led men to suppose that the inhabitants of America did not descend from Adam and Eve, but from a race previously created. Such a theory is plainly contrary to the Bible record, nor is it needed to account for the settlement of America.

8. Later discoveries have brought to light a fact unknown to geographers three hundred years ago, that America widens rapidly in the north, and there juts out into the ocean till it comes within thirty-six miles of Asia. As a current sets towards the American shore, the passage thither can be readily made even in rude vessels. Boats may have been driven over by stress of weather, and the continent thus have been discovered without design. But there was a still easier means of communication. In severe seasons, Behring's Strait is frozen over. Many varieties of animals have passed on the ice from one continent to the other; and the first occupants of America, led by curiosity, or driven by violence, may have reached the new world in the same manner.

9. At what time this event took place, we are not informed. History makes no mention of it. It is probable that it occurred at an early date, not many centuries after the dispersion at Babel and the consequent emigration from the plain of Shi'nar. Mankind soon spread out from the limited district to which they were at first confined, and took possession of the vacant lands around them, which, as their numbers increased, became necessary to their comfort. Thus they gradually found their way to Northeastern Asia; and at length adventure or accident made them acquainted with the existence of a new continent.

10. Behring's Strait or the northern part of the Pacific

---

contradicts this opinion? 8. What fact have later discoveries brought to light? How near do the extreme points of America and Asia come? How may boats have been driven across? What easier means of access was there? What, besides man, appear to have crossed on the ice? 9. When did the migration to America take place? What led mankind to spread out from their original location? Where at last did they find themselves? 10. How do some think America

could thus have been easily crossed; but some think that ancient navigators first reached the new world by way of the Atlantic. As early as the days of Solomon, the Phœnician seamen made voyages to O'phir. At a later date, Hanno, the Carthaginian, is said to have sailed thirty days southwest from the Strait of Gibraltar. The early Egyptian navigators were particularly distinguished for their skill and daring; and we are told that during the reign of Pharaoh Necho [*fā'-ro ne'-ko*], about 600 B. C., a company of explorers started from the Isthmus of Suez [*soo'-ez*], on the Red Sea, and sailed completely round Africa to the opposite point of the Isthmus, — a distance of 16,000 miles. Other remarkable voyages are recorded, during some of which

#### ANCIENT EGYPTIAN SHIP.

America may have been reached. Plato and several other ancient writers appear to have been aware that there was a large body of land in the west, and speak of an island in that direction more extensive than Europe and Africa.

11. Some historians have tried to trace the American Indians to the ten "lost tribes" of Israel, who were conquered by Shalmaneser [*shal-ma-ne'-zer*], king of Assyria, about 700 B. C. Many of the vanquished were carried into captivity, and uniting with their conquerors lost all separate existence as a nation. But there were some, who, we are told in Esdras, "took this counsel among themselves, that they

---

was first reached? In Solomon's time, what voyages were made? At a later date, what is Hanno said to have done? What early navigators were particularly distinguished for their skill? What remarkable voyage of theirs is mentioned? Who appear to have known that a large body of land existed in the west? 11. To whom have some tried to trace the American Indians? What befell these ten tribes? What did some of them resolve to do? How far does History trace



would leave the multitude of the heathen, and go forth into a further country where never mankind dwelt." These unfortunate remnants of the ten tribes are thought by some to have carried out their design by crossing into America, and there to have become the progenitors of the Indian race.

History tells us that they advanced as far as Media. Beyond this, we know nothing of their travels; nor is there any evidence of their having finally settled in America except a fancied resemblance between the customs and religious ceremonies of the Indians and those of the ancient Israelites. Both had their priests and prophets, their washings and anointings, their fasts, feasts, and sacrifices. But neither these, nor other alleged points of resemblance, are sufficient to prove the theory.

12. It seems far more probable that the first settlers of America were from Egypt. Their taste and skill in building would indicate this, as well as the fact that in different caves in the West bodies have been found, preserved somewhat in the style of Egyptian mummies.

The history of these early immigrants seems to be as follows:—Soon after the Confusion of Languages, a large body of men, after a temporary residence in Central India, driving their flocks before them, moved to Egypt, and conquered its original settlers, the descendants of Miz'-ra-im. Under the name of Shepherd Kings, they there founded a noble empire, built large cities, and erected massive pyramids which still remain as monuments of their power. The Mizraimites, however, roused by their tyranny, finally rose against them, and after a long contest drove them from the land. The defeated Shepherds, in quest of a new home, turned their course to the northeast, and left numerous traces of their passage through Central Asia and Siberia in the form of well-built walls and mounds. They are supposed at last to have crossed into America in the manner before described, to have erected

---

them? What is the only evidence of their having reached America? Mention these points of resemblance. Are they sufficient to prove the theory? 12. What seems far more probable? What evidence is there that the first settlers of America came from Egypt? Give the history of the Shepherd Kings. What are they finally supposed to have done? When was the city of Mexico founded? 13. What

the mounds and ancient works whose remains are still visible in the valley of the Mississippi, and ultimately to have made their way to Mexico, and built the city of that name early in the fourteenth century.

13. The Indians of America must have sprung from later bodies of Asiatic adventurers than the Mexicans. Behring's Strait, or the ocean near it, may often have been crossed during the lapse of ages; and, judging from the difference of character and language in the various tribes, it is highly probable that the passage was made a number of times at different eras. Curious aboriginal remains are still to be seen in various parts of our country, which show that the first settlers arrived there at a very early period, before they had forgotten the mechanical arts through the allurements of forest life. They were probably followed by less civilized bands, who drove them from their original seats. Thus successive immigrations may have taken place, each party of new-comers pushing its predecessors further east and south, and being themselves afterwards driven in these directions, until the whole continent was peopled.

14. The traditions current among the Indians throw but little light on their origin. They have a general belief that they are aborigines, or, in other words, that they sprung from the earth and are not connected with any other people. By one account they are represented as having climbed up the roots of a large vine from the interior of the globe. According to another, their ancestors, while living as they had done for ages under ground, accidentally espied the light of day through the opening of a cavern, and by dint of great efforts scaled the walls of their subterranean prison and came out upon the surface.

Some of the Red Men, however, retain an indistinct tradition of having crossed a tract of water to reach their present habitations. The Ath-a-pas'-cas, who bear a striking resem-

---

reason is there for thinking that Behring's Strait was crossed a number of times? What are to be seen in various parts of our country? What do these show? By whom were the first immigrants followed? 14. What is the general belief of the Indians respecting their origin? How do different accounts represent them as having reached the surface of the earth? What tradition do some tribes retain?

blance in dress and manners to the people of Eastern Asia, say that they once lived in a region far to the west. The Chepeweyans [*chep-e-wā'-anz*], also, state that they originally came from another land, inhabited by very wicked people; that they were obliged to traverse a narrow lake, shallow and full of islands, on which they suffered greatly from cold and encountered immense masses of ice and snow. If this "narrow lake" was Behring's Strait or the northern extremity of the Pacific, the islands referred to may have been the Aleutian [*a-leu'-she-an*] group, in which inexperienced navigators would be very likely to become entangled.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE GREAT INDIAN FAMILIES.

15. THE various Indian tribes that occupied America on the first arrival of Europeans closely resembled each other in customs, complexion, and general appearance. There were minor points of difference, but these were hardly sufficient for grouping them into great families. This could not be done till their languages were compared; and it was then found that the numerous tribes east of the Mississippi and south of the St. Lawrence sprung from eight parent stocks. Little was then known respecting those west of the Mississippi, nor have we yet sufficient acquaintance with them for a proper classification.

16. These eight great families are known by the following names: Algonquin [*al-zhon'-kwin*], Huron-Iroquois [*hu'-ron ir-o-kwoy'*], Dah-ko'-tah or Sioux [*soo*], Ca-taw'-ba, Cher-okee', U'-chee, Nat'-chez, and Mo-bil'-i-an. The Map on page 10 shows their respective locations in the year 1650, before which the interior of the continent was but little known.

---

What do the Athapascas believe? What, the Chepeweyans? What islands may be referred to in this story?

15. In what did all the Indians closely resemble each other? What was necessary before they could be grouped into families? How many great families were there found to be? What is said of the tribes west of the Mississippi? 16. Name the eight great families. What extensive family is not included among them?

Among these families, the widely extended Esquimaux [*es'-ke-mo*] (*fish-eaters*) are not included. They do not lie within the limits of the United States, but occupy the shores of all the seas, bays, and inlets of America, north of lat. 60°.

17. The Algonquin was the largest of these families. It occupied about half the territory now embraced in the United States east of the Mississippi, and contained as many warriors as the remaining families put together. It even extended north of the St. Lawrence, including, among other tribes, the Knisteneaux [*nis'-te-no*], scattered throughout the wide tract between Hudson's Bay and the Rocky Mountains. The Algonquin family embraced most of the nations connected with the history of the first settlers: the Nar-ra-gan'-setts, Wampanoags [*wom-pa-no'-agz*], Pe'-quods, and Paw-tuck'-ets, in New England; the Mo-he'-gans, on Long Island and the banks of the Hudson; the Delawares, who owned an extensive tract on the river now called by their name; and the Pow-ha-tans', originally a confederacy of more than twenty tribes on Chesapeake Bay, afterwards exterminated by war and disease. The Ottawas [*ot'-ta-wawoz*], Chip'-pe-ways, Sacs and Foxes, Miamis [*mi-am'-eez*], Shaw-nees, and other western tribes, were also Algonquins.

Though speaking dialects of one great language, and grouped in the same family, many of the smaller Algonquin tribes were constantly at war with each other, their hostility often arising from trifling causes, and being handed down from generation to generation. Their numbers were thus kept reduced, and it was not rare for a tribe to become in this way entirely extinct.

18. Surrounded by the Algonquins, but occupying a large tract and enjoying a high reputation for prowess, the Huron-Iroquois was the next family in importance. They covered

---

What does the word *Esquimaux* signify? What part of America do they occupy? 17. Which was the largest of these families? How much territory did it occupy? North of the St. Lawrence, what large tribe did it embrace? Mention some of the tribes belonging to the Algonquin family, and their respective locations. What kept many of the Algonquin tribes reduced in number? In what did their hostility often originate? 18. What family was next in importance to the Algonquins? Where did they live? Mention the principal Huron-Iroquois tribes. For

a great part of the state of New York, as well as the Canadian peninsula formed by Lakes Ontario, Erie, and Huron. To this family belonged the Hurons or Wy'-an-dots, the E'-ries, and the formidable confederated tribes generally known as the Five Nations, who were afterwards joined by the Tus-ca-ro'-ras, a kindred tribe from Carolina. The Iroquois proper, or Five Nations, were as distinguished for their intelligence as for their superior skill and courage in war. They displayed great wisdom in the management of their domestic affairs, and advanced further in the arts of Indian life than the rest of their race. Conscious that they owed their strength to union, they maintained their confederacy with the utmost care, and thus were more than a match for enemies that met them singly. Their position, as may be seen from the Map, was highly favorable. Lake Ontario on the north, and an extensive mountain-range on the southeast, served as bulwarks against their enemies; while their intercourse with the Dutch settlements kept them well supplied with arms and ammunition.

19. The Dahkotahs, or Sioux, a widely extended family, lived mostly west of the Mississippi. Hence little was known about them by early settlers. One Dahkotah tribe, the Win-ne-ba'-goes, migrated eastward, at what period we are not informed, and settled on the western coast of Lake Michigan [*mish'-e-gan*] among the Algonquins. The prominent members of the Dahkotah family were the Man'-dans, I'-o-was, Mis-sou'-ris, O-sa'-ges, and the Ar-kan'-sas and Kan'-sas Indians.

20. The Ca-taw'-bas, living in the interior of Carolina, south of the original seat of the Tuscaroras, were once a powerful people. Becoming engaged in war with the Iroquois, they were vanquished and nearly destroyed. Hardly a hundred now survive.

21. West of the Catawbas lived the Cherokees. Occupy-

---

what were the Five Nations distinguished? To what was much of their strength owing? What advantages did their position have? 19. Where did the Dahkotahs live? What tribe of this family migrated eastward? Where did they settle? Mention some prominent Dahkotah tribes. 20. Where did the Catawbas live? By whom were they vanquished? What is their present condition? 21. West of the

ing the fastnesses of the Blue Ridge and the Alleghanies, they were the mountaineers of eastern America. In spite of long and bloody wars with their hereditary foes, the Shawnees, and other nations, they now constitute one of the largest, as well as the most civilized and prosperous, Indian tribes within the limits of the United States. They number about 15,000 souls, having, unlike most of their race, become more numerous since exchanging savage for civilized life.

22. The Uchees, a small tribe little known in history, were the sixth of the great families. They were never known to change their location, and boasted that they were the oldest inhabitants of the region in which they were found. This was the northern part of Georgia. Their language was peculiarly harsh and guttural.

23. On the east bank of the Mississippi, in the neighborhood of the city now called by their name, lived the Natchez; a tribe said to have been connections of the Mexicans, and to have possessed at one time an extended dominion. They probably settled in this locality early in the sixteenth century, as they retained a tradition of having seen, far in the southwest where they formerly lived, "warriors of fire," by which name they no doubt designated the soldiers of Cortez. The Natchez were nearly destroyed by the French in 1730. From a few survivors, who crossed the Mississippi into Louisiana, the Ten'-sas Indians are supposed to have sprung.

24. The Mobilian family, otherwise called the Mus-co'-gee-Choc'-taw, remains to be noticed. This group of tribes extended over the region which now forms the southern part of the United States; being bounded on the northeast by the Cape Fear River, and reaching as far north as the mouth of the Tennessee. It included many powerful nations, the most important of which was the Creek, or Mus-co'-gee. Though

---

Catawbas, what family was found? What are they called, and why? With whom did they wage protracted wars? What is their present condition? How many do they number? 22. What was the sixth great family? What was their boast? Where did they live? Describe their language. 23. Where did the Natchez live? With whom were they connected? When did they probably settle in this region? What tradition did they retain? What happened to the Natchez in 1730? What tribe is thought to have sprung from them? 24. Where did the Mobilian tribes lie? What bounded them on the north and northeast? What was the most im-

fond of war, they paid considerable attention to agriculture; and in the intervals between their military expeditions their warriors assisted the women in tilling the soil. Like the Iroquois in the north, the Creeks united the neighboring tribes with themselves in a confederacy, which greatly increased their power. Among the nations thus allied to them at a later day, were the Sem'-i-noles, who long troubled our government in Florida.

The brave Chick'-a-saws, also members of the Mobilian group, dwelt on the banks of the great "Father of Waters" (the Mississippi), north of the Natchez. On the other side of the latter, towards the Tom-big'-bee, lived the Choctaws, in a delightful country, which yielded rich crops almost without cultivation.

25. Besides the tribes mentioned above, there were many others of less importance. Yet at no time, before or after its discovery, was there a dense Indian population in America. Most of the minor tribes were small; and from all that can be gathered, it would seem as if the aborigines south of the St. Lawrence and east of the Mississippi were not, when discovered by Columbus, more than 200,000 in number.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### INDIAN LANGUAGES.

26. THE language of a people often sheds light upon its history, tells where it came from, unfolds the relations it has sustained to other nations, and affords a key to its character. Sufficient difference has been found in the various Indian languages spoken in America to enable us to group the tribes that used them into eight families; yet in many respects they bear a general resemblance to each other. They are all com-

---

portant tribe of this family? To what did they pay attention? In what did they imitate the Iroquois? What tribe was a member of the Creek confederacy? Where did the Chickasaws live? Where, the Choctaws? 25. What is said of the Indian population of America? What is it estimated to have been at the time of the discovery?

26. What does the language of a people often do? What is said of the Indian languages? Why did the Indian need but few words? As a human being, to

plete and consistent, all subject to great rules and principles. There is a wild grandeur about them, yet less irregularity than marks more cultivated tongues. Acquainted only with nature, a total stranger to art, science, commerce, and mechanical industry, the Indian needed but few words; yet, as a human being, subject to the same passions as others, he required a language capable of expressing his thoughts and feelings; and this we find him possessing in all parts of the continent.

27. The organs of the Indian were the same as those of the European. In speaking, both used the tongue, palate, lips, and throat; and therefore the sounds produced by both were in a great measure the same. Certain tribes, however, had certain peculiarities. The Algonquins had no *f*; the Iroquois had no *m*, *b*, *p*, *f*, or *v*, and, except the Oneidas, no *z*. Some of the Algonquin dialects were harsh from the frequent recurrence of consonants; but most of the Indian tongues were remarkable for their softness and music. Particularly was this the case with Cherokee, every syllable of which ended with a vowel.

28. The Indian had a name for whatever he could see, hear, or feel; but he had few words to express abstract ideas. Thus in none of the American dialects was there any single term for *justice*, *temperance*, or *virtue*. The difference between savage and civilized life was so great that a vast number of words necessary in the latter were wholly unknown to the Red Man. When introduced into his language, they had to be expressed by long compounds describing the object or action by means of words already existing. The Indian, for example, never *kneels*; when, therefore, the missionary Eliot wished to use this term in translating the Bible, he had to form an uncouth word of eleven syllables,—*wutappesittuk-gussunnoowehtunkquoh*.

---

what extent did he require language? 27. How did the Indian's organs compare with the European's? What did both use in speaking? What letter did the Algonquins never use? What letters were wanting in Iroquois? What rendered some Algonquin dialects harsh? What was the general character of the Indian tongues? What is said of Cherokee? 28. For what had the Indian names, and for what not? To express many of our words, what kind of compounds had to be



29. In all the American languages, objects and actions were seldom expressed apart from their relations. Nouns rarely appeared without adjectives or limiting terms, and the pronoun was incorporated with the verb. A complete sentence, which would require ten or a dozen words in English, was often expressed by a single compound embodying in itself subject, adjective, verb, and object. When any of these was changed, a new form became necessary, so that some verbs had more than five thousand variations. This mode of expression prevailed, because the Indian naturally represented an object just as it appeared to his senses,—that is, with all its associations.

30. Languages that combine the powers of different parts of speech in a single word are called *synthetic*. Such are all the Indian tongues; and in this they somewhat resemble Hebrew. Synthetic languages are difficult to learn, and do not afford the same facility of expression as those in which each object and action has a name that can be used independently of its relations. Nor are they as capable of improvement; the Indian, instead of simplifying his syntax, adds syllable to syllable, till his words become of great length, while the learner is embarrassed by the numerous changes of form required by different modifications of the idea.

31. None of the Indian languages were written; they had no letters with which their words could be represented. Since white men, however, have become acquainted with the aboriginal tongues, they have taken the letters of the English alphabet to denote their sounds, and have thus been able to write as well as speak them. The Cherokees alone have an alphabet devised by one of their own number. The name of this ingenious native was Se-quo'-yah, or, as he is generally

---

formed? Illustrate this with the word *kneel*. 29. How were objects and actions seldom expressed? With what were nouns and verbs commonly united? How was a complete sentence often expressed? What was necessary for the least change of idea? How many variations had some verbs? Why did this mode of expression prevail? 30. What epithet is applied to the Indian languages? What is meant by a *synthetic* language? In this respect, what tongue do they resemble? What is said of synthetic languages? By what is the learner of an Indian tongue embarrassed? 31. Were the Indian languages originally written? How have white men represented their sounds? What tribe have an alphabet

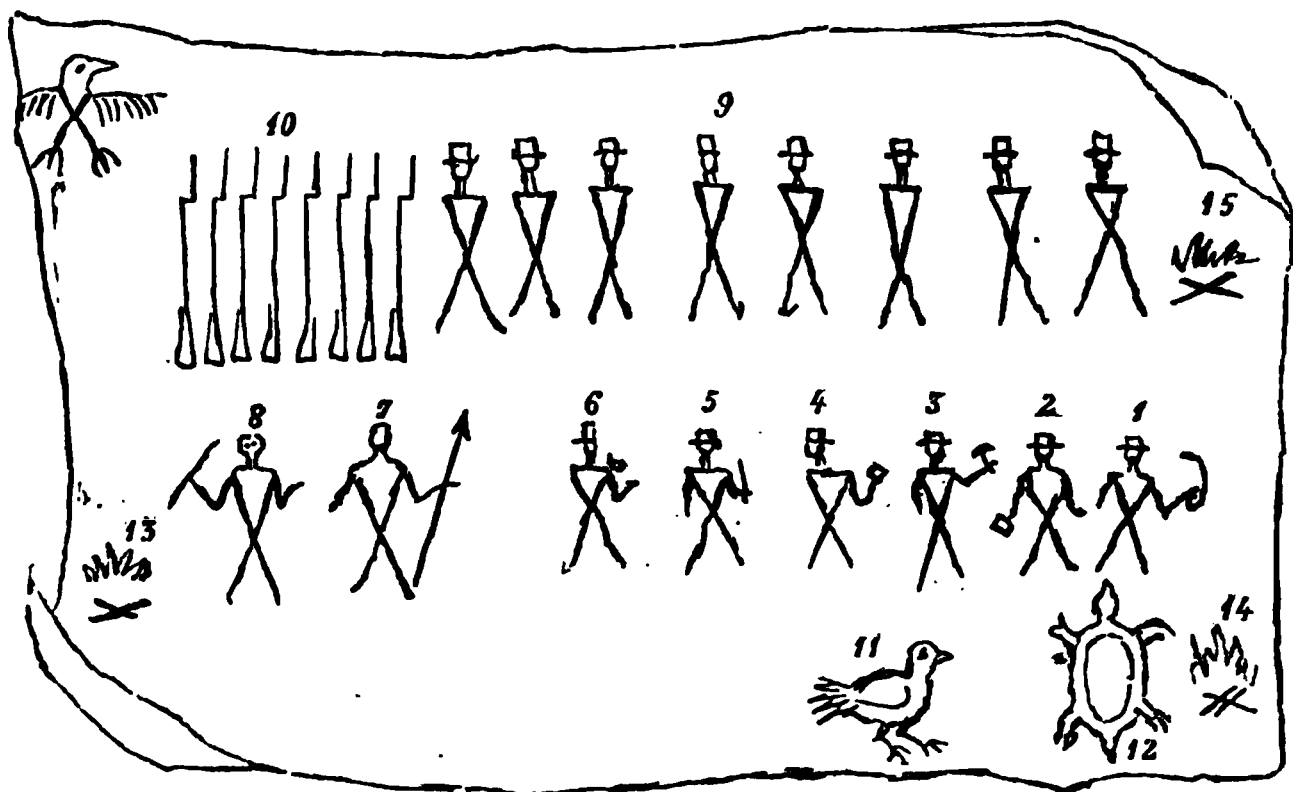
called, George Guess. Seeing the books used by the missionaries, and being told that the characters they contained represented the sounds used in speaking, he set about making an alphabet for his own tongue. Strange to say, without any knowledge of other languages, he succeeded. Instead of analyzing words into letters, he went no further than syllables, and found that by eighty-five characters every word in his language could be represented. In European tongues, so great is the variety of syllables that an alphabet of this kind would be next to useless; but in Cherokee, since there are only eighty-five syllables used, it answers the purpose better than an alphabet of letters. Printed Cherokee words are very short, for they contain only as many characters as there are syllables in each; and a few days' study will enable one to read and write the language with ease. Syllabic alphabets have since been invented for other Indian tongues.

32. The Indian could not write, but he could convey his thoughts imperfectly by hieroglyphics, like the Egyptians and other ancient nations. Certain symbols were taken to denote certain ideas; and these were drawn or painted on prepared skins or the inner bark of the white-birch, in a rude manner, but still accurately enough to be understood by those acquainted with the system. Hieroglyphics of this kind have been found chiselled on rocks in different parts of the country.

33. The plate given below will serve as a specimen of Indian picture-writing. Schoolcraft presents it as a copy of a drawing made by two Indians whom he employed as guides, when travelling from the St. Louis River to the Mississippi. The bark containing these symbols was found attached to a pole about nine feet high. It had been placed there by the guides, for the purpose of informing any of their comrades into whose hands it might fall, that a party of fourteen white men and two Indians had passed the night at that place.

---

devised by one of their own number? What was the inventor's name? Describe his system. Why would it not answer in European tongues? What is said of printed Cherokee words? To what has this system been extended? 32. Though he could not write, how could the Indian convey his thoughts? How were certain ideas denoted? On what were these hieroglyphics drawn? Where have they been found chiselled? 33. What does the specimen given above represent?



The eight figures with hats on, in the upper row, indicate that there were eight white soldiers; and the muskets beside them show how they were armed. In the second row, No. 1, with the sword, represents the commander of the party; No. 2, with the book, is the secretary; No. 3, with a hammer, is the geologist; 4, 5, 6, are attendants. Nos. 7 and 8 represent the two guides, who are distinguished from the white men by being drawn without hats. Figure 11 represents a prairie-hen, and 12 a tortoise, which formed their meal at the encampment. Figures 13, 14, and 15, indicate that there were three fires; one for the soldiers, another for the officers, and a third for the Indians. The inclination of the pole showed the direction in which the party was about to go.

34. With the aid of pictures like the above, the Red Men communicated with each other. They also sometimes recorded important public events for the benefit of future ages by engraving symbolic characters on rocks and trees. But since, with their imperfect tools, this was a laborious process, it was seldom done; and, therefore, the Indians knew little of their past history except what was learned from oral tradition, that is, from stories handed down from father to son. In the course of years, much that was false was added to these accounts; yet, having no books by which

---

Where was the bark containing these symbols found? What information was it intended to convey? Describe the figures, and tell what they represent. 34. How did the Red Men sometimes record public events? What prevented them from doing this oftener? Whence did they obtain most of their knowledge of the

he could test their truth, the Red Man relied implicitly on whatever he had thus received.

The Muscogee account of the Deluge may be taken as an example of the mixture of truth and error in Indian traditions. It places that event before the creation of man, and represents two pigeons as having been sent forth in search of land while most of the earth was still covered with water. At first they were unsuccessful; but, on having gone forth again, they brought back a blade of grass, and soon after the waters subsided, and land appeared. This tribe believe that their ancestors always lived in some part of North America. They deny that any nation more civilized than themselves ever occupied the country before them. According to their traditions, they conquered a people who were journeying to the south, but were never themselves conquered until their conflicts with the whites. Before the arrival of the latter, they enjoyed a greater degree of peace than ever afterwards, and were less afflicted with disease. Such traditions, it will be seen, tell us little about the history of the country before its discovery by Columbus.

35. The language of the Indian, in ordinary conversation as well as formal speeches, was highly figurative and often sublime. Familiar with Nature in all her variety and majesty, the Red Man delighted in drawing his figures from the objects which she presented. If he wished to express the idea of prosperity, he would speak of a brilliant sun; adversity he would represent by lowering clouds; to proclaim war was to dig up the tomahawk; to make peace was to smoke the calumet. Many Indian chiefs were as distinguished for their eloquence as for their courage. Their delivery was animated, dignified, and forcible; their gesticulation, graceful and natural. Some of their speeches have scarcely been surpassed by the greatest efforts of civilized orators.

---

past? What is the character of most Indian traditions? What is the Muscogee tradition respecting the Deluge? What other traditions are held by this tribe?  
85. What is said of the language of the Indian in conversation? From what did the Red Man draw his figures? Give examples. For what have many chiefs been distinguished?

## CHAPTER IV.

## ABORIGINAL REMAINS.

36. ALLUSION has been made to relics of the aborigines, found in different parts of the country. These may be divided into two classes: first, those of more recent origin, evidently the work of an uncivilized people, such as ornaments, rude weapons, and imperfect utensils; and secondly, those which, from their ingenious design and superior finish, must be attributed to a race far above the savage state. These consist chiefly of stone and metallic implements, finely wrought pottery, mounds, and the remains of walls and fortifications,—all showing a high degree of mechanical skill, of which the Indian, as long as he has been known to Europeans, has never proved himself capable.

37. Most of the metallic remains are of copper, well plated, in a few instances, with silver. Bracelets, medals, arrow-heads, and pipe-bowls, of the former metal, have been found at great depths below the surface of the earth. At Marietta, Ohio, in a mound which had become partly undermined by a stream, a silver cup was discovered, with a regular and polished surface, finely gilt on the inside. Isinglass mirrors have also been dug up in various places.

38. Numerous remains of ancient pottery have been brought to light, which equal the best specimens of modern manufacture. They are tastefully moulded, finely glazed, and colored in a superior manner. Entire vessels, as well as numerous fragments, have been discovered many feet beneath the surface, where they must have lain for centuries. At Nashville, Tennessee, a circular vessel was found by some workmen, resting on a rock at a depth of twenty feet. The bottom rounded upwards, and terminated at the summit in

---

36. Into how many and what classes may the aboriginal remains be divided? Of what do the first class consist? Of what, the second? 37. What metallic remains have been found? What was discovered at Marietta, O.? 38. What is said of the specimens of pottery that have been dug up? What was found at



INDIAN RELICS.

1, 2, 3, 4, pipe-bowls; 5, 6, pipes; 7, stone mortar for grinding corn; 8, stone corn-cracker; 9, 10, front and side view of a spoon; 11, bone reed, for making twine; 12, bone fish-hook; 13, bone shuttle; 14, stone arrow-heads; 15, 16, stone pots; 17, awls made of deers' antlers; 18, quoit; 19, 20, spear-heads.

a female head covered with a conical cap  
Huge fragments of earthen-ware, as well as  
urns of elegant patterns, and large vessels  
regularly formed, have been found at great  
depths in some of the mounds described be-  
low.

At the Illinois state salt-works is a lake  
400 feet in circumference, which, besides salt  
fragments of pottery, contained the remains of a  
well and drain. Hence it is supposed that the  
manufacture of salt was here carried on many years ago.  
Similar discoveries have been made at other salt springs,  
and vessels have been dug up of a shape and strength  
suitable for evaporating water, as is now done in making  
salt. Well-burnt bricks, laid in the form of fire-places and

Nashville, Tenn.? Enumerate the Indian relics represented in the engraving.  
What was found at the Illinois state salt-works? What conclusion is drawn from

chimneys, have also been brought to light several feet below the surface, beneath trees that have stood for centuries.

39. The number of mounds erected by the early and civilized inhabitants of this continent is variously estimated at from five to ten thousand. Scattered throughout the whole region now occupied by the United States, Mexico, and Central America, they are most numerous in the two last-named countries, and on the banks of the Mississippi and the Missouri. Some of them seem to have been erected for religious purposes, others as means of defence, and a third class as burial-places for the dead. The last are the most frequent, and have furnished the greater part of the ornaments and urns mentioned above. A mound of this class, 150 feet around and 15 feet high, was opened some years ago near Lancaster, O. On a level with the surrounding surface was found a furnace of unhewn stone eighteen feet long, on which rested a well-moulded earthen vessel, containing twelve skeletons of men, women, and children. Around the neck of one of the small skeletons was a string of beads, shells, and arrow-heads. The bottom of the vessel bore marks of the action of fire, and beneath it was a great quantity of charcoal and ashes. †

Eleven miles from Natchez, Mississippi, was a group of mounds erected for defensive purposes. One of these was thirty-five feet high, and contained an area of four acres on its top, from which rose several smaller mounds. In the middle of the summit was the mouth of a subterranean passage leading to a spring. The remains of a ditch are still to be seen around the base of the large mound; while its steep sides are marked with indentations and projections like those in modern works of the same kind. Ancient roads leading to this great work may still be traced; and many weapons, implements, and human bones, have been dug up in the neighborhood. ‡

---

this? What else have been brought to light? 39. How many mounds are there estimated to be? Where are they most numerous? For what purposes were they erected? What were the dimensions of one opened at Lancaster, O.? What was found within it? What was found eleven miles from Natchez? Describe one of these defensive works. What have been dug up in the neighbor-

40. In the numerous remains of walls, fortifications, and cities, scattered throughout North America, we have still more remarkable evidence of mechanical skill in the early inhabitants. At least a hundred of these works have been discovered in the state of New York; but they are yet more numerous throughout our Western and Southern country, as well as in Central America and Mexico. They display no little knowledge of engineering and architecture; while the size of some of them proves that multitudes of men must have united in their construction.

In Gasconade County, Missouri, under a tract covered with large cotton-trees and full-grown poplars, are still to be seen stone foundations, the remains of houses, and other ruins of an ancient town regularly laid out in squares and streets.

Among the most remarkable ruined fortifications are those near Newark, Ohio, at the junction of two branches of the

surrounded by a high circular

ment and connected on the north by two covered ways with the river, and on the south by parallel walls with a circular

---

hood? 40. What other remarkable remains have we? How many of these works have been discovered in N. Y.? Where are they most numerous? What does the size of some of them prove? What are still to be seen in Gasconade Co., Mo.? What ruins are mentioned as among the most remarkable? Describe



fort. Another pair of walls running west, joins these forts with two others, four miles distant from them. One of these is circular; the other, octagonal. The former contains an observatory of earth and stone; and from the latter, parallel walls are traceable several miles southward into the country. From the occurrence of similar remains at intervals, it is supposed that these works were connected with others thirty miles distant.

41. Mexico and Central America abound in extensive ruins, the remains of pyramids, temples, and cities, equal in magnificence to the grandest of the old world. The city of Mexico alone contained two thousand py-ram'id-al mounds, the largest of which, 121 feet high, was built but a short time before the country was explored by Cor'-tez. Many of these works, however, like the ruined walls discovered in the United States, are evidently centuries old. Among them are finely sculptured columns, statues of idols, vast altars, immense edifices, massive aqueducts, and roads said to have been the best in the world. The pyramid of Tezcuco [*tes-koo'-ko*] is a specimen of the most delicate workmanship. It was built of large blocks of basalt, highly polished and beautifully sculptured. The largest Mexican pyramid is that of Cholula [*cho-loo'-lah*], built of alternate layers of clay and unburnt bricks. It is 1,423 feet long, and 177 feet high. Like nearly all the other works of this class, it was devoted to religious purposes.

42. Both Mexico and Peru, when first explored by Spaniards, were the seats of powerful nations, possessing regular systems of government and religion, acquainted with the arts and sciences, and widely different from the savage tribes of the North. The soil was well cultivated and checkered with numerous cities, some of which are said to have contained several hundred thousand inhabitants. Indeed, the great

---

them. 41. In what do Mexico and Central America abound? How many mounds did the city of Mexico contain? When was the largest of these built? How high was it? What is said of the age of many of them? Of what do these remains consist? What pyramid exhibits the most delicate workmanship? Of what was it built? What was the largest Mexican pyramid? Of what is it built? What are its dimensions? 42. What was the character of the Mexicans

works alluded to above could not have been built had not the country been densely populated.

43. The Mexicans and Peruvians were no doubt descendants of the earliest settlers of the continent, who, as before described, emigrated to it at so early a period that they still retained the arts known in the East. They originally occupied the fertile valleys of our great North American rivers, and left in them numerous monuments of their industry and skill. Allured by the more genial climate or driven out by later emigrants from Asia, they afterwards found their way southward, and finally settled in the fertile plains of Central America and Peru. There, leading an agricultural life, they retained their knowledge of art for many generations; while the northern tribes, neglecting tillage and giving themselves up to the chase, sunk deeper and deeper in barbarism. That such is their history we have additional proof in the resemblance between the skulls of the ancient mound-builders, as found in their burial-places, and those of the Mexican Indians, both strikingly different from the skulls of the northern tribes. The National Annals of the Mexicans, moreover, state that they originally dwelt in the North, whence they commenced migrating in the sixth century, under their illustrious emperor, Citin [*se-tin'*].

---

## CHAPTER V.

### DESCRIPTION OF THE INDIANS.

44. *Personal Appearance.*—Though the first European settlers observed some points of difference in the appearance of the various Indian tribes, yet there was a strong general resemblance between them. They were all distinguished by

---

and Peruvians, when first known to the Spaniards? What is said of their soil and cities? What proves the population to have been dense? 43. Of whom were the Mexicans and Peruvians no doubt descendants? Where did they originally live? What induced them to change their location? What kind of a life did they lead? What proof have we that such is their history? What do the National Annals of the Mexicans say on this point?

44. By what were all the Indians distinguished? Describe their forms.

a bronze or copper color, straight, coarse, black hair, hazel eyes, and high cheek-bones. Their forms were erect, well proportioned, and remarkable for agility rather than strength. Their constant exercise kept them healthy. Deformity was almost unknown among them; and they were exempt from many of the diseases of civilized life.

Descriptions of the Indians, as they originally appeared, have been left by many of the early adventurers; among others by Verrazzani [*vā-rat-tsaĥ'-ne*], who first saw them on the coast of New Jersey and Staten Island, eighty-five years before the discovery of the Hudson River. He was there visited by an Indian chief, whom he describes as arrayed in a robe of deer-skins skilfully wrought with embroidery. His hair was gracefully tied behind, and his neck was adorned with a large chain set off with various stones. According to this author, the people generally had regular features, dark expressive eyes, and long locks which they dressed with care. The women were attired in ornamented skins; their hair was tastefully braided and flowed over the breast. The southern Indians wore head-dresses of feathers. As the heat increased towards the south, the clothing of the natives became lighter and scantier; and in the warmest regions much of the body was left bare.

45. *Mode of Living.*—When engaged in the chase or in warlike expeditions, which occupied a great part of his time, the Indian was exposed to the full force of the weather, lying on the ground without shelter and with no other protection than a fire to prevent attacks from the beasts of the forest. At home, he lived in a rude hut, made of poles covered with bark or skins, and called a wigwam [*wig'-wom*]. This was erected with little labor, and was abandoned when he was obliged to change his residence. Wigwams were generally found grouped together in villages.

---

From what were they exempt? By whom have descriptions of the Indians been left? Where did Verrazzani first see them? What does he say about the chief who visited him? How does he describe the people generally? How were the women attired? What did the southern Indians wear? 45. When engaged in the chase or a warlike expedition, what shelter and protection had the Indian? At home, in what did he live? Describe the wigwam. 46. How did the Indian

46. *Food.*—During many months of the year, the Indians lived by hunting, fishing, or digging roots from the ground. When these resources failed, they fell back on maize, or Indian corn, which was almost the only plant they attempted to cultivate. The labor of raising it devolved on the women, who planted it in holes dug in the ground with a rude implement. Manual labor of every kind was considered beneath the dignity of the women, therefore, not only tilled the ground, but also erected the wigwams, cut their wood in the forest, prepared the meals, mended the moccasins, and even carried the baggage on a march.

AN INDIAN WIGWAM.

It was characteristic of the Indians never to provide much food at a time, and therefore they often suffered from hunger. But trials of this kind they were trained to endure without a murmur. When food was plenty, they made up for their privations by eating as much and as often as they could.

Some of the tribes were better agriculturists than others, and in good seasons raised more corn than they needed for their own use. This was the case with the natives of Vir-

---

mostly obtain his subsistence? On what did they sometimes fall back? Who raised the maize, and how? How was manual labor regarded? What were the women obliged to do? How was it that the Indians often suffered from hunger? How did they make up for their privations? What is said of the agricultural operations of some of the tribes? How was it with the Virginia tribes? What

ginia, by whose supplies the first settlers were kept from starvation for a considerable time. Yet little advance was made in agriculture or any other branch of industry. There were two reasons for this, besides the natural aversion of the Indian to labor. First, he was dependent entirely on himself, having never tamed the animals around him or taught them to labor in his behalf. In this he was behind the rudest nations of the old world. The Tartar had his horse, the Arabian his camel, the Laplander his reindeer; but the native American had no domestic animals, and was obliged to rely entirely on his own strength. Moreover, the Indians knew little of the useful metals. Gold, silver, and copper, circulated among them to a certain extent, but of iron they were totally ignorant. With their awkward tools, the simplest tasks were performed with great difficulty. To fell a tree with their stone hatchets would cost a month; and to turn up the ground with blunt and heavy hoes of the same material, was a labor from which it is not strange that they shrunk.

47. *Hospitality*.—The hospitality of the Indian was one of his greatest virtues. Among all the tribes, a stranger on his arrival was treated with the utmost respect and attention. The best the wigwam afforded was always placed before him, and his hosts were displeased if he did not eat, whether he needed food or not. However scanty their supply, they withheld nothing from their guest.

48. *Marriage Customs*.—Even among the rudest tribes, a regular union between husband and wife was universal. In districts where food was scarce, and it was difficult to maintain a family, the warrior confined himself to one wife; he was at liberty, however, to take as many as he could support. The marriage tie generally lasted till death, but among some tribes divorces were common.

The marriage ceremony was extremely simple. A young

---

was the general state of agriculture? What two reasons are assigned for this? What metals were the only ones that circulated among the Indians? What kind of tools had they? 47. What was one of the Indian's greatest virtues? How did he treat a stranger? 48. What was universal even among the rudest tribes? How many wives did a warrior have? How long did the marriage tie last?

man would often let his friends select a wife for him. He or his relations then made presents to the parents of the intended bride, which were accepted if the offer was approved; otherwise they were returned. In the former case, the parents dressed their daughter in her best clothes, and conducted her to the bridegroom's residence. The ceremony was then complete.

49. *Family Relations*.—The Indian wife, or squaw, had a hard lot. Besides being compelled to do all the drudgery, she was generally treated by her husband with indifference, and often with cruelty. For his children, particularly during infancy, the warrior entertained a stronger affection. He could endure pain without a groan; but, when misfortune overtook his offspring, he gave way to the most violent grief. The loss of a promising son was regarded as the greatest possible calamity; and often, to redeem a child from the enemy, a father has surrendered himself, and been burned at the stake in his stead.

50. *Education*.—The education of the young Indian consisted chiefly of athletic exercises and such training as would enable him to endure hunger and fatigue. At the age of eight years, he was required from time to time to fast half a day, and at twelve often passed a whole day without food or drink, his face being blackened during the fast. At eighteen, he underwent his final trial. His face was now blackened for the last time, and he was led far into the woods, where he was left without food as long as life could be so supported. His guardians then came for him, praised his endurance, took him home, and after various ceremonies informed him that he was now a man. No instance has ever been known of an Indian boy's eating or drinking while undergoing the trial of the blackened face.

In some tribes and families, the young were instructed in the history and institutions of their people. This task de-

---

Describe the marriage ceremony. 49. How was the Indian wife treated? How did the warrior feel towards his children? What has a father often done? 50. Of what did the young Indian's education consist? At the age of eight, what was he required to do? Describe his final trial. In some tribes, what were the young taught? On whom did this task devolve? What did a venerable warrior

volved on the old, who had themselves received their knowledge from chiefs that had preceded them. A venerable warrior once said that his father had labored day and night to teach him the laws, ceremonies, and history of his nation, "that he might one day benefit his people by his counsel". The necessity of fortitude and self-restraint was also impressed upon the mind from an early period.

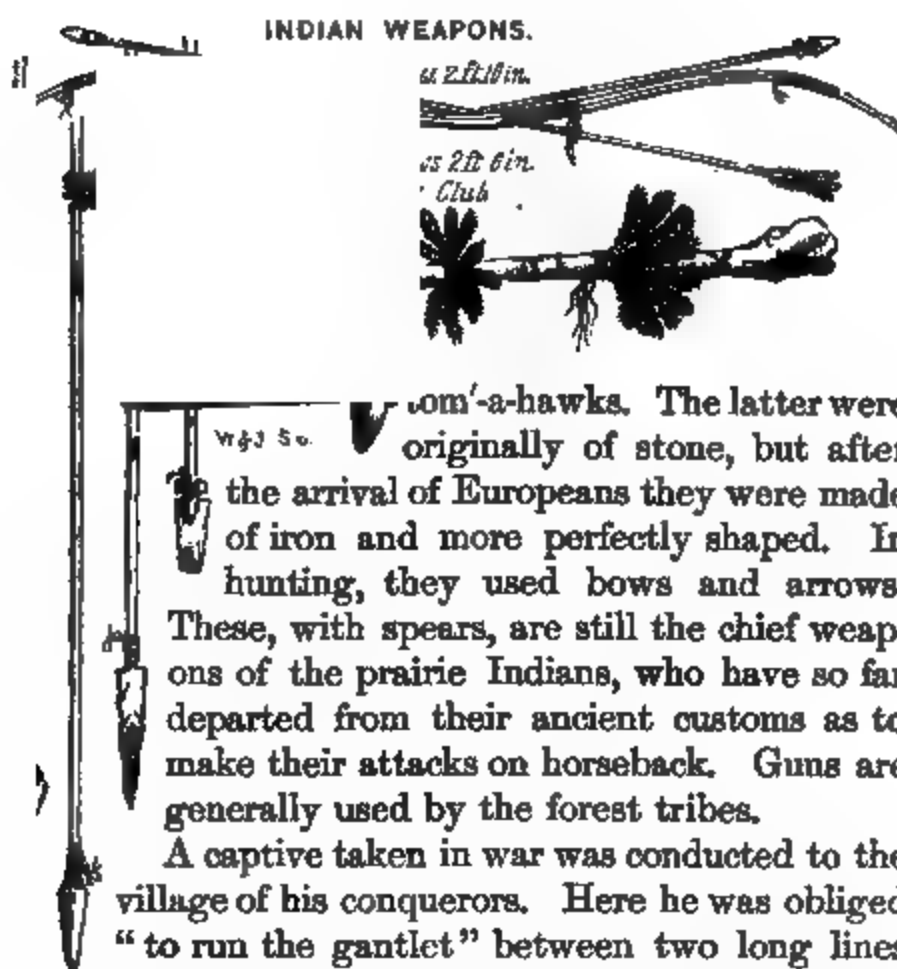
51. *Wars.*—Indian wars usually consisted of expeditions carried on by small parties, whose object was to surprise the enemy, to kill as many as possible, and to return home in safety with the scalps of their victims. To be complete in their eyes, a victory had to be obtained by stratagem, and without any loss of their own number. There was little glory in gaining a battle by open force; and to fall on the field, instead of being thought honorable, was rather regarded as a proof of rashness or unskilfulness. In large bodies, from a want of discipline, they could not act with much success.

Their armies were not encumbered with baggage or military stores, but depended, for the small amount of food they needed, on the game they might meet with in the forest. To provide against emergencies, however, each warrior carried a bag of pounded maize; and, this with his arms being his only burden, he marched with great rapidity. On a warlike expedition, the chief led the way, and each of his followers trod noiselessly in his tracks, leaving as small a trail as possible. When there was danger of pursuit, the last warrior concealed the footsteps of the party by covering them with leaves and branches. The senses of the Indian were wonderfully acute, and great ingenuity was often shown in discovering the trail of a cunning enemy who had left little or no clew to his course.

52. In ancient times the weapons of the Indians were very rude, consisting principally of war-clubs, and hatchets, or

---

once say? What was early impressed on their minds? 51. Of what did Indian wars consist? What was essential to the completeness of a victory? What prevented their success, when acting in large bodies? With what were their armies not encumbered? On what did they depend for food? What did each warrior carry? On a warlike expedition, how did they march? When there was danger of pursuit, what did the last warrior do? In what did the Indian display great



tom'-a-hawks. The latter were originally of stone, but after the arrival of Europeans they were made of iron and more perfectly shaped. In hunting, they used bows and arrows. These, with spears, are still the chief weapons of the prairie Indians, who have so far departed from their ancient customs as to make their attacks on horseback. Guns are generally used by the forest tribes.

A captive taken in war was conducted to the village of his conquerors. Here he was obliged "to run the gantlet" between two long lines of men, women, and children, who beat him as passed. The prisoner's fate was then decided by a council. He was either adopted by the tribe and received into some family in the place of a lost husband, a son, or brother, or else was sentenced to be burned alive. In the latter case, he was immediately fastened to the stake; and amid the heart-rending tortures that followed, if he wished to maintain the fame of his fathers, he was obliged to repress all signs of suffering. Neither sigh nor groan escaped him. While the flames blazed around him, he sung his war-song in tones of exultation, or boasted of his exploits in carrying death and desolation into the villages of his enemies. He repeated the names of their rela-

ingenuity? 53. Formerly, what weapons did the Indians use? What did they use in hunting? Describe the weapons represented in the engraving. With what is the prairie Indian now armed? With what, the forest Indian? What was done with a captive taken in war? If not adopted, what fate awaited him? To maintain the fame of his fathers, what was he obliged to do? Describe the



tives whom he had slain. He reminded his persecutors of the terrible vengeance his people would inflict. He excited their fury by calling them cowards and women, and even derided them for their ignorance of the art of torturing, telling how on such occasions he had made the flesh of their kinsmen quiver at the stake. At last his taunts provoked some furious enemy to inflict the death-blow, or else the flames did their work, and the unsubdued spirit of the warrior was free forever.

53. *Government.*—The Indians were divided into different tribes, each of which had its sa'-chem, or chief, though in most cases his power was little more than nominal. Whenever a chief obtained a high degree of authority, it was because he excelled in eloquence, cunning, or bravery. When a tribe was called into the field, it was of course necessary that there should be some leader; but both on the march and in the engagement much more freedom was allowed to individuals than among civilized nations. There were no laws, and in time of peace the chief exercised little or no authority. If a wrong was committed, its punishment was left to those who suffered it. To settle important matters, councils were held, at which all who had killed an enemy in war were present. After smoking round the council-fire a long time in silence, the chief or the oldest warrior present delivered his opinion, and then the other old men in succession. Perfect order reigned in these assemblies, and every speaker was listened to in silence. The chief, being generally the most sagacious and eloquent of his tribe, had little trouble in convincing the others and deciding the matter according to his own views. Among some of the southern nations, the chiefs are said to have possessed greater power, to have been distinguished by a peculiar dress, and at death to have transmitted their authority to their sons.

54. *Modes of Burial.*—Different modes of burial pre-

---

scene of torture. 53. How were the Indians divided? What did each tribe have? What is said of the authority of the chiefs? When was it more strictly exercised? To whom was the punishment of a wrong left? How were important matters settled? Describe the proceedings at these councils. Whose views generally prevailed? What is said of the chiefs among the southern tribes? 54. Describe

vailed among different tribes. Some laid the body on the ground, and erected over it a little house covered with bark, or dug a grave in the earth in which they placed the corpse in a sitting posture. Other nations deposited the body in a kind of coffin on a high scaffold, or left it hanging from a tree. A young mother has been seen suspending the body of her deceased child to the pendent branches of the flowering maple, and singing a lament to the object of her love as it waves in the breeze.

The Indian wished every thing that he valued in life to be buried with him, that it might be ready for his use on entering the spirit-land. His tomahawk and knife, his bow and arrows,

INDIAN WOMAN LAMENTING HER CHILD.

were placed by his side. This custom is still preserved. His medals and other tokens of distinction are often laid in the hand of the deceased chief, and his favorite dog and horse are killed, to bear him company.

55. *Religion.*—The religion of the Indians closely resembled that which first existed on the earth. They worshipped one God, the creator and preserver of all things. They spoke of him with reverence, and believed that he was everywhere present, that he knew their wants, and aided those who loved and obeyed him. They prayed to him for every

---

the different modes of burial. What has a young mother been seen to do? What did the Indian wish to have buried with him? How is this custom still carried out? 55. What is said of the religion of the Indians? Whom did they worship? What did they believe respecting the Supreme Being? Explain how

thing they wanted, for health, for courage, and for success in hunting and war.

The American Indians had no idols or temples. These were probably devised after their fathers had separated from the rest of mankind and emigrated to America. They spoke of certain natural objects as inferior divinities, but regarded them merely as symbols or representatives of the Manitou [*man'-e-too*], or Great Spirit.

With this general idea of the Deity different tribes blended various traditions of their own. The Shawnees, for instance, believed that the Great Spirit was an Indian, and that he made all the races of men, not out of nothing, but out of himself. The Delawares, and indeed Indians generally, thought that the Deity possessed a human form, and was in all respects a man.

56. There were various traditions concerning the Creation, of which that of the Chip'-pe-ways may be mentioned. When the first man came into the world they did not pretend to say, but they believed that he appeared in the summer months, and subsisted on berries. In the winter he lived by hunting; but when a deep snow came, finding it difficult to walk, he tried to make a snow-shoe. He formed the frame of the shoe without difficulty, but when it came to weaving in the web he succeeded poorly, and at last abandoned the work. On returning from hunting, however, every evening, he found that the work had progressed, and finally saw a bird fly away, which he supposed had been engaged upon it. At last he captured the bird by stratagem, and it immediately turned into a beautiful woman.

57. The Red Men generally believed in the existence of good and bad spirits; the former of whom held intercourse with certain persons on earth, and endowed them with superior power. Those who were thus favored were known as "medicine-men", and to them resort was had for advice

---

it was that the Indians had no idols. What did the various tribes blend with the general idea of the Deity? What did the Shawnees believe? What, the Delawares? 56. Give the Chippeway tradition of the Creation. 57. In what did the Red Men generally believe? Who were the "medicine-men"? When was resort had to them? What did the medicine-man employ? What was thought if

when an important enterprise was about to be undertaken. Besides the herbs whose use he was taught by experience, the medicine-man employed various incantations and magical ceremonies: if successful, he was thought to have gained a victory over the evil spirit; and, if the patient died, this same evil spirit bore the blame.

58. The Indians believed that the soul, freed from the body at death, hastened to the happy hunting-grounds. Before it could reach this blissful region, they thought it had to pass some ordeal by which its worthiness was tested. This was generally represented as a bridge over a dark river. The wicked fell into the stream, and either remained there forever, struggling with the waves, or were borne off to a place of perpetual torture. The good, on the other hand, crossed in safety, and reached the happy hunting-grounds, which were stocked with the choicest game and abounded in all that could render the warrior happy.

59. *Character.*—The Indian was distinguished by a remarkable want of foresight. This was seen in his neglect to provide food beyond what was needed for the moment. What he suffered one year did not increase his industry the next, or make him more careful to provide against similar distress for the future. The greatest warriors were unable to carry out any far-reaching policy.

Another prominent trait of the Red Men was sleepless caution. Whether among friends or foes, they watched every movement around them with suspicion. They spoke little, and weighed well every word. They showed great firmness in trial, and rarely gave way to their feelings. For the most part, they were true-hearted patriots. The graves of their fathers they defended with the greatest bravery; and, if they displayed cruelty towards their foes, it must be remembered that they were so taught from infancy.

In later times, the Indians have shown a great aversion

---

he effected a cure? What, if the patient died? 58. What did the Indians think respecting the soul after death? What ordeal did they believe that it had to pass? What was their idea of the happy hunting-grounds? 59. By what was the Indian distinguished? How was this want of foresight shown? What other prominent

to civilization. Strongly attached to their savage mode of life, they will not give it up until obliged to do so. To the restraints of education they are equally opposed. They readily understand simple truths, but their minds seem incapable of any long-continued effort.

---

trait did the Red Men possess? How did they bear trial and suffering? What is said of their patriotism? In later times, what have the Indians shown? Of what do their minds seem incapable?

## PART II.

### COLONIAL PERIOD,

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS,  
A. D. 1492, TO THE BREAKING OUT OF THE REVOLUTION, 1775.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF COLUMBUS.

60. THE discovery of America, the most important event of modern times, next demands our attention. On this subject we have conflicting and uncertain accounts. According to Welsh historians, the Atlantic was first crossed in 1170, A. D., by Mad'-oc, a prince and hero of Wales; but the Norwegians, on stronger evidence, claim this honor for one of their adventurous sea-kings. In the ninth century, both Iceland and Greenland were discovered and colonized by Scandinavian navigators; and about the year 1000, A. D., if we may believe Ice-land'-ic manuscripts, a vessel, driven by storms southwest of Greenland, arrived at the continent of America. If this be true, it was no doubt the barren shore of Labrador that was reached; and so unimportant was the discovery considered that it was soon forgotten.

61. In the fifteenth century, nothing was known in Europe of a continent beyond the ocean. The mariner's compass, invented in 1302, had enabled the sailor to push out more boldly from land; yet even the Por'-tu-guese, then

---

60. For whom do the Welsh claim the honor of first crossing the Atlantic? What people claim it on better grounds? What discoveries did the Norwegians make in the ninth century? What do the Icelandic manuscripts say? If this be true, what part of the coast was probably reached? 61. What is said of navigation in the fifteenth century? How far had the Portuguese gone? For whom was

the most enterprising navigators in the world, had gone no further than the A-zores' on the west, and the equator on the south. It was reserved for the great genius of Christopher Columbus, amid discouragements of every kind, to add a new continent to the civilized world.

62. Columbus was born at Genoa [*jen'-o-a*] about 1435. His father was a wool-comber, but gave his son advantages of education, particularly in geography, mathematics, and astronomy, for which he early displayed a decided taste. At fourteen, he went to sea. A few years later, in the service of a kinsman who commanded a small Genoese squadron, he took part in an engagement with some Venetian [*ve-ne'-shan*] vessels off the coast of Portugal. His ship caught fire, and Columbus, leaping into the waves, barely saved his life by swimming ashore. The fame that Portugal had won by her maritime enterprise attracted him to Lisbon [*liz'-bon*]; and there he married the daughter of an eminent navigator, whose charts and journals awakened within him an ardent thirst for discovery. From this time to 1477, we find him engaged in various voyages to Madeira [*ma-de'-ra*], the Canaries, the Azores, the coast of Guinea, and Iceland.

63. The geographical researches of Columbus had convinced him that the earth was round, and that land would be found in the west to counterbalance the eastern continent. The maps of the day gave little information respecting the extent of Asia; and Columbus imagined that it stretched much farther east than it really did, or that large islands lined its coast, but a few hundred leagues west of Europe. Many circumstances confirmed him in this belief. Pieces of wood strangely carved had been picked up by those who had ventured into the unknown ocean. Trees torn up by the roots were often driven by west winds on the Azores; and upon one island of this group had been

---

the discovery of America reserved? 62. Where and when was Columbus born? For what sciences did he early display a taste? At fourteen, what did he do? Some years later, what befell him? Where did he then go? Whom did he marry? From this time to 1477, in what was he engaged? 63. Of what was Columbus convinced by his researches? What is said of the maps of that day? What did Columbus imagine respecting Asia? What confirmed him in this be-

washed the bodies of two men, totally different in appearance from the natives of Europe and Africa.

64. Firm in his opinion, Columbus next sought the means of testing its truth. He must have men and ships. His first proposals, made to the senate of his native city, were rejected. His next application was to John II., of Portugal; who, after drawing out his plans, treacherously sent a vessel on the proposed course under another commander, but happily gained nothing by his baseness. Disgusted with this treatment, Columbus sent his brother Bartholomew to Henry VII., of England. Bartholomew was captured by pirates, and it was years before he reached London. The English monarch listened to him with favor, and would probably have become the patron of Columbus had he not previously found one in another quarter.

65. After his disappointment in Portugal, 1484, Columbus went to Spain. Destitute and friendless, he obtained an humble living for himself and his son Diego [*de-ā'-go*] by making charts and maps. At last he succeeded in procuring an interview with Ferdinand, king of Ar'-a-gon. This cautious monarch, after listening to his projects, submitted them to the learned men of the University of Sal-a-man'-ca, by whom they were once more condemned.

66. After years of trial, Columbus finally obtained an interview with Isabella, the wife of Ferdinand and queen of Castile [*cas-teel'*] and Le'-on. To enable him to appear at court, she sent him a small sum of money (about \$70), with which he procured a mule and suitable clothing. The queen, though moved by his arguments, was dissuaded from furnishing the required aid. More disheartened than ever, Columbus was on the point of abandoning Spain, when

---

Ref? 64. To test this opinion, what did he need? To whom were his first proposals made? With what success? To whom did he next apply? What was the result? To whom did he then send his brother? What happened to Bartholomew? 65. After his disappointment in Portugal, where did Columbus go? How did he support himself? With whom did he finally obtain an interview? What was the result? 66. After years of trial, who manifested an interest in the plans of Columbus? How was he enabled to appear at court? What was the result of this interview? What prevented Columbus from abandoning Spain? What dignity was conferred on him? What difficulty was experienced? Name



at last, by the advice of wiser counsellors, Isabella determined to embark in the enterprise, even if she had to pledge her jewels to raise the necessary funds. Columbus was commissioned as High Admiral and Viceroy of all the countries he might discover, and hastened to Palos [*pah'-los*] to fit out the expedition.

There was great difficulty in finding sailors for such a voyage; but, with the aid of the queen, three vessels and ninety men were obtained. The ships were very small, none of them being over 100 tons burden. The Santa Maria [*ma-re'-a*], which bore the flag of Columbus, was the only one that had a deck. Two brothers by the name of Pin'-zon commanded the Pin'-ta and the Nina [*ne'-na*]. Provisions were laid in for a year. The whole expense of the outfit was only £4,000.

#### FLEET OF COLUMBUS SAILING FROM PALOS.

67. The little fleet sailed from Palos, Aug. 3d, 1492; and, after stopping at the Canaries to refit and take in fresh water, stood boldly out into the ocean. When the land faded from their sight, a full sense of the dangers they were to en-

---

and describe the ships. Who commanded the Pinta and the Nina? What was the expense of the outfit? 67. Whence and when did the fleet sail? Give an ac-

counter seized on the sailors; and their fears gradually increased, till, on the expiration of twenty days without any signs of land, they began to talk of throwing their commander overboard and returning home. The variation of the compass had not yet been discovered, and their alarm was therefore greatly heightened when they observed that the magnetic needle no longer pointed directly north. It was a trying hour for Columbus, but his great mind was equal to the crisis. Explaining the variation of the compass in a manner satisfactory to his followers though not to himself, he used every means to induce them to prosecute the voyage, now picturing to their minds the riches they would obtain, and now threatening them with the anger of their sovereign. At length both officers and men insisted on returning, and Columbus was obliged to promise that, unless land appeared within three days, he would comply with their demand. The shallowness of the water, the numerous birds in the air, the grass and weeds floating by, a branch that was picked up with berries still fresh upon it, all made him sure that he could give this promise with safety.

68. On the evening of October 11th, the sails were furled, and a close watch was kept. At ten o'clock, a moving light was discerned in the distance by Columbus and several others. At two in the morning, a shout from the Pinta announced the discovery of land. Dawn displayed to the overjoyed adventurers a scene of strange beauty. The land was covered with forests, and gay with the foliage and flowers of a tropical clime. The natives thronged from the woods to gaze at the ships, which with their white sails they regarded as huge birds hovering over the sea.

69. Columbus was the first to touch the newly discovered shore. Richly attired and with drawn sword, he landed. Kneeling on the sand, he kissed the earth, and returned thanks to God. When he had taken formal possession of

---

count of the voyage. What was Columbus at last obliged to promise? What made him feel sure that land was near? 68. What took place on the evening of October 11th, 1492? When day broke, what did the voyagers behold? 69. Who was the first to land? Give an account of the landing. What was the land

the country in the name of the king and queen of Spain, his followers rendered him homage as viceroy, and the inhabitants, regarding the Spaniards as a superior race, prostrated themselves at his feet. The land thus reached was one of the Bahama [*ba-hā'-ma*] Islands. It was called by the Indians Guanahani [*gwah-nah-hah'-ne*], but received from Columbus the name of San Salvador, by which it is still known.

Learning from the natives that gold was found farther to the south, Columbus soon sailed in that direction, and discovered Cu'-ba, and His-pan-i-o'-la, since called by its original Indian name Haiti [*hā'-te*]. One of his vessels having been wrecked, he left 35 of his men as a colony on Hispaniola, and on the 1st of January, 1493, set sail for Spain. A violent storm on the return voyage threatened his frail vessels with destruction; and Columbus, fearing that his discoveries would be lost to the world, wrote an account of them on parchment, secured it in a cask, and threw it into the sea, in the hope that it would reach the shore in safety. The storm, however, abated; and, after being first driven to Lisbon, the shattered vessels finally entered the port of Palos, amid the acclamations of the people and the thunder of cannon. Columbus hastened to the king and queen, laid before them the history of his discoveries, presented specimen products of the new world, showed them the natives whom he had brought with him, and in return was loaded with the highest honors.

70. On the 25th of September, 1493, Columbus sailed again, from Ca'-diz, with 17 vessels and 1,500 men. On arriving at Hispaniola, he found that his colony had been cut off. The injustice and cruelty with which they had treated the unoffending natives had provoked the latter, gentle and friendly as they were, to summary vengeance. After providing for the erection of a fort, Columbus proceeded to

---

thus reached? Where did Columbus soon sail, and why? What island did he discover? What happened to him there? How many men did he leave there? Where did the rest go? What happened on the return voyage? How did Columbus seek to prevent his discoveries from being lost to the world? What port did he finally reach? How was he received? 70. When did Columbus

explore Jamaica [*ja-mā'-ka*] and the surrounding islands. Soon after completing this work, he was filled with delight by the arrival of his brother Bartholomew, whom he had not seen for 13 years, and whom, returning from his mission to England after his brother had sailed the second time, Isabella had sent to the new world with supplies.

Tired of hardship and disappointed in the hope of obtaining gold, the followers of Columbus now began to murmur. His management of affairs was complained of, and an emissary of his enemies was sent out to examine into it. Columbus deemed it proper to return to Spain and plead his own cause before the throne. He established his innocence beyond dispute, and was once more received into favor.

71. In 1498, Columbus undertook a third voyage. Directing his course more towards the equator than he had previously done, he discovered Trin-i-dad' and the South American coast near the mouth of the O-ri-no'-co. He was for a time in great danger on account of the rush of waters from the mouth of this great river, and judged aright that so mighty a stream could belong only to a continent. On his return to Hispaniola, he set about regulating the affairs of the colony, but was interrupted in the work by the arrival of Bovadilla [*bo-va-deel'-ya*], whom, at the instigation of enemies, the Spanish sovereigns had invested with powers to examine into his conduct, and, if needful, supersede him in the command. Columbus was sent back to Spain in chains. The master of the vessel, indignant that the great discoverer should be treated so unworthily, offered to take off his fetters; but Columbus, grieved at the ingratitude of those he had faithfully served, refused to have them removed, took them with him wherever he went, and ordered that they should be placed with him in his coffin. He triumphantly repelled every charge, but his sovereigns never had the jus-

---

again set sail? With how many vessels and men? On arriving at Hispaniola, what did he find? Where did he next go? On returning to Hispaniola, whom was he surprised to see? What did the followers of Columbus now begin to do? Who was sent out to examine into his conduct? On this, what did Columbus do? 71. Give an account of the third voyage of Columbus. On reaching Hispaniola, to what did he devote himself? How was he interrupted? What indig-

tice to restore him to his station. They put him off on different pretexts; and, when it became necessary to remove Bovadilla on account of his mismanagement, O-van'-do was appointed his successor.

72. Though cut to the heart by this ingratitude, and beginning to feel the infirmities of age, Columbus in 1502 set out on a fourth voyage. He still believed that the land he had discovered formed part of Asia, and did not live to have the delusion dispelled. The object of this last voyage was to find a passage to India by pushing farther westward than he had yet been. He explored the coast for a considerable distance along the Gulf of Darien; but at last, after a succession of disasters, in the attempt to return to Hispaniola he was wrecked on the coast of Jamaica. Reduced to the verge of starvation, and in danger of attack from the Indians, Columbus saved himself and his men by an ingenious device. From his acquaintance with astronomy, he knew that an eclipse of the moon was about to take place; and, on the morning of the day, summoning the natives around him, he informed them that the Great Spirit was displeased because they had not treated the Spaniards better, and that he would shroud his face from them that night. When the moon became dark, the Indians, convinced of the truth of his words, hastened to him with plentiful supplies, praying that he would beseech the Great Spirit to receive them again into favor. After undergoing extraordinary hardships, Columbus finally succeeded in reaching Hispaniola, and in the summer of 1504 he landed once more in Spain.

73. Queen Isabella had died shortly before; and the remaining two years of the great discoverer's life were shrouded in gloom. He died peaceably at Valladolid [*val-la-dol'id'*], in the 71st year of his age. His chains were buried with him, and his remains now rest in the cathedral of Ha-van'-a.

---

nity was put upon him? How was he received at court? Who was appointed successor to Bovadilla? 72. What did Columbus still believe respecting the land he had discovered? When did he start on his fourth voyage? What was his object? What finally befell him? How did Columbus on one occasion save himself and his men? At last, what island did they succeed in reaching? 73. What is said of the last two years of Columbus's life? Where and at what age did he

Columbus was tall, well-formed, and muscular. His countenance bore an air of authority, and his demeanor was grave and dignified. He was distinguished by a vivid imagination, lofty enthusiasm, high moral worth, great inventive genius, and a steadfastness of purpose which overcame all difficulties.

74. Meanwhile, encouraged by the success of Columbus, other Spanish navigators had found their way to the new world. Among these was Ojeda [*o-hā'-dah*]. Following the course taken by Columbus in his second voyage, he touched on the South American coast, without, however, making any important discovery. In Ojeda's company was a well-educated Florentine gentleman, named Amerigo Vespucci [*a-mer'-e-go ves-poot'-she*], who published an interesting description of the lands he had visited. This was the first written account of the new world; and, as it left Columbus out of view, the Western Continent, instead of being called after its real discoverer, was unjustly styled, from the name of this Florentine, AMERICA.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### EARLY EXPLORATIONS.—FIRST PERMANENT SETTLEMENTS.

75. *English Discoveries.*—In the latter part of the fifteenth century, England was laid waste by civil wars, known in history as the Wars of the Roses. As soon as they ended, commerce began to receive attention. Adventures to the new world promised large profits; and Henry VII., wishing to secure his share, commissioned John Cab'-ot, a Venetian merchant of Bristol, to sail on a voyage of discovery and take possession of all new lands in the name of England. On the 24th of June, 1497, before Columbus had yet seen the main-

---

die? Where is he buried? Describe his person and character. 74. Meanwhile, what had other Spanish navigators been doing? Among these, who is specially mentioned? Who went in Ojeda's company? What did he do on his return? What honor did he thus unjustly obtain?

75. What desolated England towards the end of the fifteenth century? When these wars had ended, what began to receive attention? What did Henry VII.

land of America, Cabot reached what is now called Newfoundland [*new'-fund-land*], and gave it the name of Prima Vista [*pre' mah vees'-tah*], *first view*. As the profits of the enterprise, he brought back to King Henry three savages, and two turkeys, the first specimens of this bird ever seen in Europe.

Soon after the return of John Cabot, Sebastian, his son, set sail with 300 men, for the purpose of discovering a north-west passage to China. The icebergs of the northern ocean compelled him to turn from his course; and, visiting various points as far south as Albemarle Sound, he took possession of the whole for the crown of England. Sebastian made several subsequent voyages, and explored various parts of the coast. Till 1578, England made no attempt to colonize the lands to which she had thus secured the title.

#### SEBASTIAN CABOT.

76. *Portuguese Discoveries.*—The principal Portuguese navigators that made discoveries in America were Cabral [*kah-brah'l*] and Cortereal [*kor-tā-rā-ah'l*]. The former, on his way to the East Indies round the Cape of Good Hope, crossed the Atlantic to avoid the delays of the coast voyage, and thus by accident discovered Brazil in the year 1500. He took possession of it in behalf of Portugal, and erected a cross which is still preserved. The next year, Cortereal coasted Labrador with the view of finding a northwest passage to India; but, not succeeding, he captured fifty of the natives, and sold them on his return as slaves.

77. *French Discoveries.*—Though the French early visited the fishing-banks of Newfoundland, they made no attempt

---

do? What discovery did Cabot make? What did he bring back as the profits of his enterprise? Who set sail soon after John Cabot's return? What was his object? What success did he meet with? 78. Who were the principal Portuguese discoverers? Give an account of Cabral's discovery. What did Cortereal do? 77. What part of the new world did the French visit at an early period?

at discovery till 1524. In that year, Verrazzani, a Florentine commissioned by the enterprising Francis I., explored the coast of North Carolina, Delaware, New Jersey, and Rhode Island, and opened a traffic with the Indians, who showed a friendly disposition. He called the whole country New France, a name afterwards confined to Can'-a-da.

78. James Cartier [*kar-te-ā'*], in 1534, 1535, made two voyages to the northern part of the continent under a commission from the French government. In the former of these he explored the Gulf, and in the latter the River, St. Lawrence, which received their names from him. Passing up the river to the principal 'Indian settlement, Hochelaga [*ho-she-lah'-ga*], he was struck with the fineness of the situation, and gave the place the name of Mont Réal [*mong rā'-al*] *royal mountain*, afterwards written as one word, Montreal [*mon-tre-awl'*]. Most of his men died of scurvy. The Indians treated him kindly, but he repaid them by carrying their chief a prisoner to France.

79. In 1540, Lord Roberval [*ro-bare-vahl'*] was appointed viceroy of New France, and sailed thither for the purpose of colonizing the country; but the severity of the climate and other difficulties led him to abandon the idea. A body of Hu'-gue-nots, or French Protestants, subsequently settled on Port Royal, an island off the coast of South Carolina, and another party fixed their abode on the St. John's River, in Florida [see Map, p. 151]. The former, after suffering much from hunger and disease, returned to France. The latter were attacked by the Spaniards of St. Augustine [*aw'-gus-teen*] and mostly massacred, the few survivors being incorporated among their conquerors.

80. The first permanent French settlement was made in 1605, at Port Royal, Nova Scotia [*no'-va sko'-sha*], on the

---

In 1524, who was commissioned to make discoveries? What part of the coast did he explore? What name did he give to the country? 78. Give an account of Cartier's explorations. To what place did he give name? What disease carried off his men? How did he repay the Indians for their kindness? 79. In 1540, who was appointed French viceroy? What discouraged him from planting a colony? Where were two Huguenot settlements made? What became of them? [See Map, p. 151.—In what part of Florida is the St. John's? In what direction is it from St. Augustine? What inlet south of St. Augustine?] 80. Where was the first



Bay of Fun'-dy. De Monts [*dū mong'*], who planted this colony, explored the coast as far south as Cape Cod. In 1608, the first permanent settlement in Canada was made by Champlain [*sham-plane'*], who founded Que-bec' and afterwards discovered the lake still called by his name. While exploring the country, he defeated the Iroquois, who then for the first time heard the thunder and saw the strange fire of the Frenchmen's guns. Nor were the French, in turn, less dismayed by the barbarity with which the savages tortured their prisoners, and tore the scalps from dying and dead.

81. *Spanish Discoveries.*—To Spain belongs the honor, not only of discovering America, but also of penetrating to the Pacific, and thus proving that the new world formed a separate and independent continent.

After the death of Columbus, Ferdinand divided the Spanish possessions in America into two governments, one of which extended to the Gulf of Darien. Ojeda was sent out to colonize this southern region, to convert the natives, and to extend the dominion of Spain. The Indians resisted; the diseases of the climate proved fatal to the Spaniards; and most of the colonists perished. The few that survived founded a feeble settlement at Santa Maria el Antigua [*ale an-te'-gah*], and chose Vasco Nuñez de Balboa [*vah'-sko noon'-yeth dā bal-bo'-ah*] for their commander. Among these colonists was Pizarro [*pe-zār'-ro*], afterwards celebrated as the conqueror of Peru.

In 1513, Balboa subdued some of the neighboring tribes and required them to pay a tribute. One day two of his officers quarrelled about the division of some gold-dust they had received. A native chief, who was present, threw the dust from the scales in derision, and told them that if they were so fond of gold he could conduct them to a country

---

permanent French settlement made? By whom? Who made the first permanent settlement in Canada? What place did he found? What lake did he discover? With what Indians did he have an engagement? 81. What two-fold honor belongs to Spain? How were the Spanish possessions divided after the death of Columbus? Who was sent out to colonize the southern region? What was the result? Where did the survivors plant a feeble settlement? Whom did they choose for their commander? In 1513, what did Balboa do? What incident is re-

where the commonest vessels were made of it. At the same time he informed them of a great ocean, which lay at a distance of six days' journey towards the south. Balboa's curiosity was excited, and he determined to test the truth of these statements. To encourage adventurers to join him, he sent presents of gold to Cuba; but only 190 men could be raised. A perilous march was commenced. Instead of six days, they wandered for twenty-five days through woods and over mountains. Heat and disease had almost overcome the weary and discouraged party, when the Indian guides announced that from the top of the next mountain the great ocean could be seen. When most of the ascent was completed, Balboa ordered his men to halt, and toiled on to the summit alone. Reaching the top, he beheld the mighty Pacific, and falling on his knees thanked God for leading him safely to this great discovery. He went down to the shore, and, advancing with sword and buckler till the water reached his waist, took possession of the ocean in the name of the king his master, and vowed to defend it with his arms. Four years afterwards, Balboa was executed by order of Pedrarias [*pā-drah'-re-as*], who had superseded him as governor of Darien, professedly for treason, but really on account of the jealousy inspired by his success.

82. Florida was first visited by Ponce de Leon [*pon'-thā dā lā-ōn'*], in 1512, and received its name from the day on which it was discovered, Easter Sunday, called in Spanish *pascua florida* [*pah'-skoo-ah flor'-e-dah*]. Delighted with its profusion of foliage and flowers, he thought that its luxuriant woods must contain the fabled fountain which would restore old age to the vigor of youth. After vainly trying to discover these precious waters, he attempted to plant a colony, but was attacked by Indians, lost a number of his men, and was himself mortally wounded with an arrow.

83. In 1520, Vasquez de Ayllon [*vah'-sketh dā ile-yōn'*]

---

lated? What did the chief tell them of? What did Balboa determine to do? How many men did he raise? Give an account of the march and discovery. What became of Balboa? 82. By whom was Florida first visited? Why was it so called? What did Ponce de Leon try to find in its luxuriant woods? After failing in this, what did he attempt? What became of him? 83. Give an account

visited the coast of South Carolina in search of slaves. Having enticed a crowd of natives on board his ships, he sailed for Haiti. One of his vessels foundered at sea, and on the other so many died that the adventure was unprofitable. Five years afterwards, under a commission from Charles V., Vaquez attempted to conquer the country. His largest ship was stranded, and his men were killed by the natives near the place where their former treachery had been committed.

84. In 1528, De Narvaez [*dā nar-vah'-ēth*] landed in Florida under a commission to conquer the country. The natives allured him into the interior with stories of gold, but he found nothing to reward his trouble. After wandering nearly six months to no purpose, he returned to the sea, constructed some rude barks, and sailed for Cuba. A storm wrecked his boats near the mouth of the Mississippi, and only four of the party, after incredible hardships, succeeded in reaching their countrymen.

85. Ferdinand de Soto [*dā so'-to*], who had distinguished himself in the invasion of Peru, next attempted the conquest of Florida and the exploration of the interior. Landing at Tam'-pa Bay with 600 chosen men clad in complete armor, he marched boldly into the wilderness, in search of gold and slaves. The little army took with them a forge with which to make new weapons when they were needed, and a drove of hogs which supported themselves by feeding in the woods. Though avarice was their ruling passion, De Soto and his men carefully observed every ceremony of their church. For sixteen months, they wandered over the territory now comprised in Alabama and Georgia, misled by their captive guides, worn out with hardships, and disappointed in their hopes. The Indians whom they met were generally peaceable and unoffending. Without any provocation, the Spaniards treated them with the greatest cruelty, exacting what-

---

of De Allyon's voyage in 1520. Five years afterwards, what befell him? 84. In 1528, who landed in Florida? What was the result of his expedition? 85. Who next attempted the conquest of Florida? Where did he land? With how many men? What did the little army take with them? How did they spend the first sixteen months? What was the character of the Indians they met? How did

ever they wanted, requiring them to carry their baggage, and on the slightest suspicion setting fire to their villages, cutting off their hands, throwing them to bloodhounds, or burning them alive. In the fall of 1540, the invaders found themselves on the site now occupied by the city of Mobile [*mo-beel*]. Extravagant demands were here made upon the Indians; they resisted, and a battle ensued in which 2,500 natives and 18 Spaniards were killed.

Making his way northward, De Soto, with his men now reduced to 500, spent a cheerless winter on the Ya-zoo' River. Wishing to continue his march in the spring, he demanded of the Chickasaws 200 men to carry his baggage; but, instead of complying, they set fire by night to their wigwams, which the Spaniards had seized upon and occupied. Eleven of their party were thus burned alive. Most of the baggage was consumed, and many horses and hogs perished in the flames.

Their losses having been repaired as far as possible, the Spanish army moved to the west. Seven days brought them to the Mississippi, then (1541) for the first time seen by Europeans. They were kindly received by the Indians, who crossed the river in multitudes, bringing their visitors fish and loaves made of persimmons. A month was spent in crossing, and then De Soto, hearing of a rich country in the northwest, started in that direction. On the route, a tribe of Indians offered to worship the Spaniards as "children of the sun", and brought them those that were blind to be restored to sight. "Pray only to God who is in Heaven, for what ye need," was De Soto's reply.

There was yet no gold, and not only the men but their leader were breaking down under long-continued fatigue. At length they found their way to the country of the Natchez. This warlike tribe they tried to frighten into supplying what they needed. The Natchez chief, however, questioned the

---

they treat them? In the fall of 1540, where did they find themselves? What took place there? In what direction did they next move? Where did they winter? What took place in the spring? In what direction did the Spanish army next move? What river did they discover? How were they received by the na-

claims of his visitors, and was as ready for war as peace. "You say," said he, "you are the children of the sun; dry up this river, and I will believe you."

De Soto could no longer endure his disappointments.

I  
ti

lignant fever, of which he died in May, 1542. The priests chanted a requiem over his body, and his comrades wrapped it in his mantle, and sunk it at midnight beneath the waves of the mighty river he had discovered. The surviving Spaniards wandered as far south as the forests and plains of Texas, then turned their course north, and after great trials reached the Mississippi River, near the mouth of the Red. Here they erected their forge, made nails from the fragments of iron in their camp, and built some frail barks without decks.

---

tives? Where did they next go? What occurred on the route? What was the condition of both men and leader? At last, where did they make their way? What did they try to obtain from the Natchez? What answer did the chief make? What became of De Soto? Describe his burial. What became of the

In these they descended the Mississippi, and about half the original number finally reached the Mexican coast in safety.

86. It has been mentioned that a party of French Huguenots had settled in Florida. Philip II., remembering that possession had been taken of the country in the name of the Spanish crown, resolved to drive them out, and in 1565 commissioned Melendez [*mā-len'-deth*] for that purpose. Melendez undertook to subjugate the country in three years, to plant a colony, and to introduce the sugar-cane. He reached Florida on St. Augustine's [*aw'-gus-teenz*] day, and gave the name of that saint to the river up which he sailed, and the town that he founded on its bank [see Map, p. 151]. This was the first permanent settlement within the present limits of the United States, being more than forty years older than any other.

Ribeault [*re-bo'*], the French commander, immediately prepared to attack the Spaniards, but a storm wrecked his vessels and left him entirely at their mercy. Melendez was not long in taking advantage of his helplessness. Leading a strong force by land against the French fort, he took it, and caused a general massacre of all it contained, including even women and children, old and sick, declaring that he killed them, "not as Frenchmen, but as Lutherans".

This wanton cruelty was not to go unavenged. De Gourgues [*dū goorg'*], a brave adventurer of Gascony, fitted out three ships with the aid of his friends, for the express purpose of punishing the murderers. He succeeded in surprising the Spanish settlement, and hanged his prisoners on trees, placing over them the inscription, "I do not this as unto Spaniards or mariners, but as unto traitors, robbers, and murderers."

Too weak to maintain his position, De Gourgues returned to France, and the whole country was left under the domin-

---

surviving Spaniards? 86. Where had a party of French Huguenots settled? Whom did Philip II. send to drive them out? What did Melendez undertake to do? Where did he land, and on what day? [See Map, p. 151. How is St. Augustine situated? In what direction from the St. John's River?] How does St. Augustine compare in age with the other permanent settlements? What did the French commander do? Relate what followed. How and by whom was this cruel act

ion of Spain. Cuba henceforth formed the centre of the Spanish West Indian possessions; which included, not only the surrounding islands, but all that portion of the continent that lay on the Ca-rib-be'-an Sea and the Gulf of Mexico.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### CONQUEST OF MEXICO AND PERU.—VOYAGE OF MAGELLAN.

87. GRIJALVA [*gre-hahl'-vah*], on a visit to the Mexican coast in 1517, first heard of a rich empire in the interior under the dominion of Montezuma [*mon-te-zoo'-ma*]. Velasquez [*vā-lah'-sketh*], then governor of Cuba, resolved to attempt its conquest, and selected Fernando Cortez as commander of the expedition. Cortez was a man of great energy and courage, though unprincipled, rapacious, and cruel. Devoting all his powers to the enterprise, he soon raised 617 men, 16 of whom were mounted. Fire-arms had not at this period come into general use, and only thirteen muskets and ten small field-pieces could be procured. The arms of the greater part consisted of cross-bows, swords, and spears. Thus prepared, Cortez landed where Vera Cruz [*vā'ra kroos*] now stands, in April, 1519.

88. The natives had never before seen horses, and thought that the horse and rider were one and the same animal. When they looked at these formidable creatures and the floating fortresses in which the Spaniards had come, when they heard the thunder of the muskets and cannon, and witnessed the terrible effects of their discharge, they thought the strangers must indeed be the children of the gods. News of their arrival was soon conveyed to the emperor, who sent back orders that they should leave the country. But to these

---

avenged? What became of De Gourgues? What henceforth were included in the Spanish possessions?

87. Who first heard of Montezuma's empire? Who was governor of Cuba at the time? What did he resolve to do? Whom did he select as commander? What kind of a man was Cortez? How large a force did he raise? How were they armed? Where did they land? 88. Whom did the natives take the strangers

Cortez paid no heed, particularly as they were accompanied with rich presents which allured him onward.

Having suppressed a threatened mutiny, and destroyed his ships that there might be no temptation to return, Cortez advanced into the country. He met with little opposition on his march, induced the Tlascalans [*tlah-skah'-lanz*], a tribe hostile to Mexico, to join him, and at last came in sight of the great Az'-tec city. With rapture he beheld evidences of civilization that he had found in no other part of the continent. Temples and palaces, stately structures and gilded domes, glittered in the sunlight. A populous and magnificent city lay before him, on a picturesque island, surrounded by a region teeming with the richest vegetation.

89. Montezuma, alarmed by what he had heard respecting the invaders, received them hospitably. Gorgeously attired and borne in a chair on the shoulders of four men, he welcomed them to his capital. There was a belief among his people, he told the Spanish leader, that strangers from the east would at some time visit them. The great chief who had brought the Aztecs to that spot had gone to a distant land, but promised that he or his descendants would return. "As you come," continued the emperor, "from that region where the sun rises, I doubt not that the king who sends you is the royal master of the Mexicans."

Cortez took advantage of this superstitious feeling, and, not contented with the rich presents he had received, resolved to gain possession of the whole country. He formed alliances with several neighboring caciques [*ka-seeks'*], or chiefs, who were enemies to Montezuma, and soon began to meddle with the affairs of the empire. Destroying the idols to which human sacrifices were offered in their temples, he placed in their stead images of the Virgin Mary and the saints. At last, Montezuma, though afraid of the Spaniards, secretly ordered one of his generals to attack them. Cortez

---

to be? Why? What message did the emperor send to Cortez? With what success? Give an account of the march of Cortez. Describe the Aztec or Mexican capital. 89. How did Montezuma receive the invaders? What belief was current among his people? What did he tell Cortez? What did Cortez resolve to do? What changes did he try to make in their religion? At last what secret



was not unprepared. Marching to the palace, he seized the general and fifty of his men, and burned them alive, after carrying off Montezuma in irons to his camp. The promise of liberty induced the captive emperor to give large sums of gold to the perfidious Cortez, who received them, but under various pretexts refused to release his prisoner.

The Mexicans at length took up arms in a body against their oppressors; and, with the view of appeasing them, Cortez compelled Montezuma to appear before them, and urge them to submission. When he showed himself on the battlements in his royal robes, the multitude bowed in respectful silence. But when they heard him argue for peace with the perfidious foe, violent reproaches and threats burst forth on every side. In a moment, a shower of arrows and stones fell round the unfortunate monarch. A blow from a heavy stone prostrated him, and he died soon after from its effects.

90. A fierce and sudden attack enabled the Mexicans to drive the Spaniards from their capital. Guatimozin [*gwah-te-mo'-zin*] was placed on the throne, and proved a brave and skilful leader; but he was no match for Cortez, with his horses and artillery. Having received a reënforcement of his countrymen and induced a native tribe to join his standard, the Spanish chief laid siege to the city, and after seventy-five days' hard fighting succeeded in taking it, August 13th, 1521. The royal family and the chief personages of the empire thus fell into his hands.

Guatimozin was treated with the greatest barbarity. To compel him to tell into what part of the lake he had thrown the royal treasure, Cortez ordered him to be stretched on a bed of burning coals; but he bore his sufferings with the fortitude of an American warrior. One of his favorites, who was subjected to the same tortures, overcome by agony,

---

order did Montezuma give? What course did Cortez take? How did he afterwards perfidiously break his promise? What were the Mexicans at length driven to do? How did Cortez try to appease them? What followed? 90. With what reverse did the Spaniards now meet? Who succeeded Montezuma? What kind of a leader did he make? What aid did Cortez receive? With this what did he succeed in doing? How was Guatimozin treated? What incident happened

turned a dejected eye on his master, which seemed to implore permission to reveal the secret. The monarch with a look of authority and scorn replied, "Am I reposing on a bed of flowers?" No further complaint escaped the faithful attendant, who soon died under the torture. The emperor was spared, only to suffer death shortly afterwards with the princes and chief nobles of his country. This was a fatal blow to Mexican power, and henceforth the supremacy of the Spanish was acknowledged.

91. The king of Spain had by this time become jealous of the renown of Cortez. Commissioners were sent to inquire into his conduct, who seized his property and imprisoned his officers. Cortez made his way to Spain and was received with honor, though not restored to his former position. He made another expedition to the new world, and explored Lower California. Returning a second time to Spain, he was treated with coldness and neglect. On one occasion desiring an audience with the king, he was obliged to force his way through the crowd and place his foot on the step of the carriage before he could gain attention. "Who are you?" said the king. "I am a man," answered Cortez, "who has gained you more provinces than your father left you towns." Cortez passed the rest of his life in solitude, and died at the age of sixty-two.

92. Among the bravest and most distinguished Spanish adventurers of this period, was Pizarro. Rumors of its wealth and splendor attracted his attention to the Peruvian empire. He started from Panama on his first expedition in 1524, but effected nothing more than the discovery of some islands on the coast.

93. A second attempt was made two years later. The interior of the country was visited, but with incredible labor and suffering. On one occasion, worn out by fatigue and

---

during his torture? What finally became of Guatimozin? What was the consequence? 91. What obliged Cortez to return to Spain? What expedition did he afterwards make? How was he treated at court? How did he rebuke the king on one occasion? At what age did he die? 92. What distinguished adventurer is next mentioned? To what empire did he turn his attention? What is said of his first expedition? 93. Give an account of his second expedition. What story

---

PIZARRO AND HIS MEN.

disease, many of the Spaniards wished to give up the enterprise. Pizarro called them together, drew a line on the sand with his sword from east to west, and thus addressed them : —“Comrades, on that side are toil, hunger, nakedness, the drenching storm, battle, and death ; on this side are ease and safety. But on that side lies Peru with its wealth ; on this is Panama with its poverty. Choose, each man, what best becomes a brave Castilian. For my part, I go to the south.” With these words Pizarro crossed the line, and thirteen of his company followed. With this small but determined band Pizarro persevered. Succor reached him, and he was enabled to penetrate to the city of Tumbez [*toom'-bes*], and see with his own eyes the riches of which he had heard.

94. In 1531, armed with authority from the Spanish court, Pizarro commenced his last expedition for the conquest of Peru. With an insignificant force of 110 foot-soldiers, 67

---

is told of Pizarro and his men ? How far did they penetrate ? 94. When did Pi-

horsemen, and two pieces of artillery, he overthrew the empire of the Incas, extending 2,000 miles in length, inhabited by millions of wealthy and civilized natives, and defended by large and well-disciplined armies. It was only by consummate skill and bravery, and too often by brutality and fraud, that he succeeded in this vast enterprise. The country being subdued, Pizarro ruled it with royal power, and cruelly oppressed the natives. He founded Lima [*le'-mah*], and made it his capital, planted various colonies, and worked the mines with which the land abounded. A conspiracy was formed against him in 1541, to which he fell a victim.

95. About the time that Cortez was engaged in conquering Mexico, Magellan [*ma-jel'-lan*], a Portuguese navigator in the service of Spain, was trying to find the southern extremity of America, and to reach the East Indies by sailing around it. In 1520, he entered the strait since called by his name. Clearing it in safety, he saw the great ocean spread out before him. With tears of joy, he returned thanks to Heaven for having crowned his labors with success. He pursued his way westward as far as the Philippine [*fil'-ip-pin*] Islands, and called the ocean the *Pacific*, on account of its tranquillity during his voyage. The king of Ze-bu', one of the Philippines, promised to embrace Christianity with his subjects, on condition that the Spaniards would aid him against the inhabitants of a neighboring island. Magellan accepted the offer, but was killed in the engagement that followed. The expedition was carried on under another commander. One of the ships finally reached home by way of the Cape of Good Hope, after an absence of a little over three years. This was the first vessel that ever sailed round the globe.

---

zorro commence his last expedition? With what force? How was it that he succeeded in his enterprise? Having subdued the country, how did Pizarro rule? What became of him at last? 95. What great navigator flourished at this time? What achievement did he perform? Where did he then go? What ocean did he name? What was his fate? After Magellan's death, what became of the expedition?

## CHAPTER IV.

## ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS AND SETTLEMENTS.

96. DURING the reigns of Edward VI. and Mary, no attempts were made by England to explore or colonize America; but with the accession of Elizabeth the spirit of adventure revived. Sir Francis Drake made several voyages to the new world, during which he suffered much from the Spaniards; but in 1572 he avenged his injuries, by landing on the Isthmus of Panama and capturing a large amount of treasure that was about to be shipped for Spain. On this expedition, one of the native guides showed Drake a "good-lie and great high tree", from the top of which the Pacific Ocean could be seen. Drake climbed it; and gazing out on that broad expanse whose shores were thought to teem with riches, he solemnly "besought God to give him health and life once to sail an English ship in those seas".

On his return to England, Drake fitted out a squadron to explore the unknown ocean he had beheld. Passing through the Strait of Magellan, he cruised on the Pacific, took a number of Spanish vessels and a vast amount of treasure, and penetrated as far north

DRAKE'S SHIP,—THE GOLDEN HIND.

as latitude 43, on the coast of Oregon. He spent the winter of 1579-80 in the harbor of San Francisco, and gave the

---

96. In whose reign did the spirit of adventure revive in England? Who made several voyages to the new world? From what people did he suffer? How did he avenge his injuries? What incident took place on the isthmus? On his return to England, what did Drake do? Give an account of his cruise on the Pa-

name of New Albion to the surrounding country. Fearing an attack from the Spaniards if he should attempt to recross the Atlantic, he returned home by way of the Cape of Good Hope, having circumnavigated the globe in two years and ten months.

97. In 1578, Sir Humphrey Gilbert received a patent from Queen Elizabeth, by which he was created lord of any land he might settle with an English colony. He made two voyages, but accomplished little more than the erection of a pillar bearing the arms of England. On his last return voyage in a very small vessel, he was overtaken by a violent storm. The lights of his ship suddenly disappeared in the night, and he was never seen again.

98. Sir Walter Raleigh [*raw'-le*], not discouraged by the fate of Gilbert, who was his brother-in-law, next carried on the work of discovery under an ample charter from Elizabeth. Two of his vessels under Am'-i-das and Bar'-low reached the coast of Carolina in 1584. The new land seemed to the adventurers a delightful paradise. Luxuriant vines twined round the "sweete smelling timber trees"; grapes hung in abundance from the branches; and shady bowers echoed on all sides the music of beautiful wild birds. The natives seemed to be gentle and confiding, and to live "after the manner of the golden age". The voyagers were hospitably entertained by an Indian queen on Roanoke Island; but, without waiting to see much of the country, they returned home, accompanied by two of the natives. The virgin queen of England was so pleased with their description of this enchanting region that she named it Virginia in honor of herself.

99. Thus encouraged, Raleigh, in 1585, sent out a fleet under Sir Richard Grenville, for the purpose of making a permanent settlement. Grenville was brave, but hasty; and,

---

cific. 97. In 1578, who received a patent from the queen? Give an account of Gilbert's voyages. 98. Who next carried on the work of discovery? By whom were two of his vessels commanded? What part of the coast did they reach? How did the new land appear to the adventurers? By whom were the voyagers entertained? Who accompanied them on their return voyage? What name was given to the region, and why? 99. What was Raleigh thus encouraged to attempt? What was Grenville's character? What imprudent act did he commit?

while exploring the coast, he burned a village of the Indians in revenge for their having stolen a silver cup from his party. Having landed the colonists on the Island of Roanoke, Grenville returned to England, leaving Ralph Lane in command as governor. The Indians, meanwhile, had not forgotten the wanton destruction of their property ; and, with glowing stories respecting the interior of the country, they lured the English on a disastrous expedition up the Roanoke. It was with great difficulty that the adventurers made their way back to the coast, sassafras tea and dog-flesh being all that saved them from starvation during part of the journey.

Soon after this, Sir Francis Drake touched at Roanoke, and allowed the colonists, who longed once more for their native land, to return in his vessel. They had learned from the Indians the use of tobacco and the potato, and introduced both into England. The Indians were in the habit of smoking tobacco, but the practices of chewing and snuffing it originated among civilized Europeans.

A few days after they had sailed, Grenville arrived with reënforcements and supplies. He left fifteen men to keep possession of the country for England, but the following year their bones alone could be found.

100. In 1587, Raleigh sent out another party, who arrived at Roanoke and commenced building "the City of Raleigh", for which they had received a charter. White, the governor of the little settlement, soon returned to England for further supplies, leaving on the island 89 men, 17 women, and 2 children, one of whom, Virginia Dare, was the first child born of English parents in America. He found his countrymen in a state of great excitement on account of a threatened invasion by the Spanish ; and no relief could be sent to the infant colony till 1590. In that year, White returned to seek his family and settlement, but found only a heap of ruins. What

---

What took place soon after ? How did the Indians revenge their injuries ? Who reached Roanoke soon after ? What did he allow the colonists to do ? What had they learned from the Indians ? A few days after, who arrived ? What became of the men he left ? 100. In 1587, what city was commenced in the new world ? How many did White leave in the colony ? What prevented White from immediately returning ? What became of the colonists ? To whom did Raleigh sur-

became of the colonists was never ascertained, but it is supposed that they were killed by the Indians.

Raleigh had spent nearly \$200,000 in these attempts to settle Virginia; and, having exhausted his means, he made over his charter to a company of merchants. He was afterwards unjustly condemned on a charge of plotting against James I.; and after a long imprisonment, which he employed in writing a history of the world, he was at length beheaded, under a sentence which had for years been forgotten. Thus perished one of the wisest men and most skilful navigators of the age.

101. The attempts made up to this time to colonize America had been signally unsuccessful. Adventurers, however, were not discouraged. In 1602, Bartholomew Gos'nold crossed the Atlantic by a new and direct route in seven weeks, and reached the coast of Massachusetts. He discovered Cape Cod, and gave it that name from the fish taken there. The next year, Pring explored part of the coast of Maine, and in 1605 Weymouth [*wā'-muth*] discovered the Pe-nob'-scot River.

102. Gosnold's representations induced Wingfield, a merchant, Robert Hunt, a clergyman, and John Smith, an adventurer of genius and distinction, to attempt a permanent settlement in Virginia; and, to encourage the movement, James I., in 1606, granted an extensive tract, 12 degrees in width and reaching from Halifax to Cape Fear, to two associations known as the Plymouth Company and the London Company. The territory of the former lay between parallels 45 and 41; that of the latter, between 38 and 34: the intermediate country was to be open to both. The same year the London Company sent out a colony of 105 persons, including 48 "gentlemen" and four carpenters, under command of Capt. Newport. A storm carried them past the ruins of Raleigh's settlement into Chesapeake Bay, where they found a noble river which they named from King James.

---

render his charter, and why? What was his subsequent history? 101. What is said of the attempts to colonize America up to 1602? What discovery was made in this year, and by whom? What coast and river were explored soon after? 102. Whom did Gosnold induce to attempt a permanent settlement in Virginia? How did James I. encourage the movement? In 1606, whom did the London



In May, 1607, the new-comers selected a peninsula 50 miles from the mouth of the river, and there laid the foundation of their contemplated city,—giving it the name of “Jamestown”.

While exploring the country, New-

#### THE VIRGINIA SETTLEMENTS.

port and Smith visited the native chief Powhatan, at his capital, on the site now occupied by Richmond. This king of thirty tribes resided in a village of twelve wigwams, and kept a guard of Indians about his person. He was now about sixty years old, a tall, grave, and dignified warrior.

103. Newport soon returned to England, but not before disease had begun its work on the settlers. The effects of hot weather, bad lodging, and food spoiled on the long voyage, were speedily felt. A fortnight after Newport's departure, hardly ten of the party were able to stand. The groans of the sick and helpless were heard on every side, and despair weighed down the hearts of all. Before autumn, half the party, including Gosnold, had died. Wingfield, who had been elected president, was deposed for conspiring with a few others to seize the public stores and escape to the West Indies. His successor had neither nerve nor energy. At this juncture, the management of the colony was by common consent intrusted to Capt. John Smith. The previous career of this remarkable man had been event-

---

Company send out? Where were they carried? Where did they fix their settlement? What name did they give to it? [See Map.—On which bank of the James River was Jamestown? In what direction from Richmond? Name the three rivers that flow into Chesapeake Bay. What Indian tribe lived east of Chesapeake Bay?] Whom did Newport and Smith visit? Give an account of this warrior and his village. 103. What befell the colony after Newport's departure? Before autumn, how many had died? What plan was formed by Wingfield? What was the character of his successor? To whom was the management of the

ful. He had fought for freedom in Holland; he had travelled through France, and visited Italy and Egypt; he had battled against the Turks in Hungary, served as a slave in Constantinople and the Crimea, escaped through Russia, and found a new field for adventure in Morocco. He now rose among his dying comrades as the guardian genius of Virginia.

Smith's prudent measures soon brought about a better state of things. He prevented the timid from abandoning the colony, and awed the rebellious into obedience. Several voyages of discovery were also undertaken, during one of which his companions, in consequence of leaving their boat contrary to orders, were captured by the Indians and put to death. Smith himself, after killing three of his enemies, sunk in a marsh and was obliged to surrender. He saved himself from immediate death by awakening the curiosity of the savages, showing them his pocket-compass, and telling them the wonders of astronomy. Wishing to propitiate the Indians with presents, he wrote to his countrymen at Jamestown to deposit certain articles in a place in the forest which he mentioned, and then told his captors when and where they would be found. The colonists complied with his directions; and, when the Indians found every thing as Smith had predicted, they revered him as a superior being. He was led in triumph through various villages of wondering natives, and thus became acquainted with their character and customs. At one place where they stopped, the simple inhabitants brought him the gunpowder they had taken from the captured party, and told him that they intended to plant it in order to discover "the nature of the seed".

At last they arrived at the residence of Powhatan, to whom the fate of the captive was referred. The Indian king condemned Smith to death, and the brave adventurer bowed his head on a large stone to receive the fatal blow.

---

colony now intrusted? Give some account of Smith's previous career. How did he manage affairs? What happened during one of his voyages? How did Smith save himself from immediate death? How did he astonish the Indians? How did he become acquainted with their customs? What anecdote is told of the Indians? Where did they at last arrive? What sentence was pronounced

He was rescued in an unexpected manner. Po-ca-hon'-tas, Powhatan's daughter and the favorite of the whole tribe, had become warmly attached to the kind and friendly prisoner, who had amused his leisure hours by making toys for the beautiful child and setting the wonders of nature before her inquiring mind. Though only twelve years old, Pocahontas was distinguished for ready wit and generosity of spirit. As the savage executioner lifted his war-club, she threw herself between it and the prisoner, placed her head upon his, and, entreating her father to spare the life of her friend, declared that she would save him or perish. Powhatan's heart relented; and Smith was not only spared, but allowed to return to Jamestown with assurances of friendship on the part of the Indians. From this time, Pocahontas was the devoted friend of the colonists. She often visited them and relieved their distress with presents of corn.

104. On his return from captivity, Smith found the colony reduced to forty men, the strongest of whom were preparing to desert their companions and embark in a career of piracy. This desperate act was prevented by the return of the commander; and soon after Newport arrived with 120 immigrants. Some of these were goldsmiths; who, finding what they took for an ore of gold, quickly enkindled among the colonists an insane passion for that precious metal. Newport returned to England with a cargo of the new-found treasure, which proved to be but glittering sand.

Three months of the year 1608 were spent by Smith in exploring Chesapeake Bay and the Susquehanna. Here he first heard of the Mo'-hawks, who "dwelt upon a great water, had many boats and many men, and made war on all the world". He discovered the harbor of Baltimore, passed up the Potomac above Mount Vernon, met the natives, whether friendly or hostile, in a way that commanded their

---

on Smith? How was he saved? For what was Pocahontas distinguished? How did she afterwards treat the colonists? 104. On his return, in what state did Smith find the colony? What were some preparing to do? What prevented this desperate act? Who soon after arrived? What delusion distracted the colonists for a time? How did Smith spend part of the year 1608? How many miles did he go, and what did he discover and accomplish during the voyage? What honor

respect, and made an accurate map of the whole region. Three thousand miles were thus traversed in an open boat.

Smith's superiority as a leader was now so evident that he was elected president of the council; and the colony was soon increased by the arrival of Newport with 70 immigrants. The new-comers, however, were not accustomed to labor or hardship; and Smith wrote home, "When you send again, I entreat you rather send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers up of trees' roots, well provided, than a thousand of such as we have."

105. In 1609, a new charter was granted to the company, which extended the limits of the colony and endowed the council and governor with greater power than they had before enjoyed. Lord Del'-a-ware was appointed governor, and nine vessels containing supplies and 500 men were sent out under Gates, Newport, and Somers [*sum'-erz*], who were to manage affairs till Delaware should arrive. A violent storm off the Ber-mu'-das stranded the vessel that bore the three leaders; but the rest of the fleet for the most part reached Jamestown in safety. It was nine months before Gates and his shipwrecked companions joined their countrymen; and in the mean time it required all Smith's genius to suppress dissensions and prevent the dissolution of the colony. Many of those who had recently arrived, were loose in their habits and averse to toil; they refused to comply with Smith's regulations and denied his authority. The Indians, too, began to be jealous of the growing numbers of the English, and formed a plot for surprising and murdering them. This was defeated by Pocahontas; who, at the risk of her own life, came through the woods at midnight, and with tears warned the colonists to be on their guard.

Despite these trying circumstances, Smith was not dis-

---

was next conferred on Smith? How was the colony soon after increased? What was the character of the new comers? What did Smith write home about them? 105. In 1609, what change was made in the company's charter? Who was appointed governor? How many vessels and men were sent out? Under whom? What happened to the fleet and the leaders? What difficulties beset Smith meanwhile? What plot was formed by the Indians? How was it defeated? What

couraged; and it is probable that he would have triumphed over every difficulty, had he not been wounded by an accidental explosion of powder, which rendered his return to England necessary. Though he was several times after this in New England, Capt. Smith never revisited Jamestown; and, notwithstanding his services, he received no reward from the home government. He died in 1631, leaving a name as honorable as any that the history of his age presents.

106. With Smith's departure began a series of disasters for the colonists. They were now 490 in number; and, too indolent to raise their own supplies, they made extravagant demands of the Indians, while their overbearing conduct added insult to injury. Open quarrels arose. Small parties of whites were cut off, and a plan was laid by the Indians for a general massacre. Famine ensued. Thirty of the settlers seized a ship, and sailed away as pirates; and, in six months from Smith's departure, the colony was reduced to a feeble remnant of 60, and these were on the point of perishing. This period of suffering was long remembered as "the starving time".

On the arrival of Gates from Bermuda, so discouraging was the state of affairs that it was resolved to abandon the settlement. They had nearly reached the mouth of the river, when Lord Delaware's boat came in sight with abundant reinforcements and supplies. The sufferers were persuaded to return, and prosperity once more smiled on the little colony. Labor was required of all, and new forts were erected as a defence against the Indians. But hardly were the good effects of Lord Delaware's wise and energetic measures beginning to be felt, when illness obliged him to return to England.

107. Sir Thomas Dale succeeded as governor, and further

---

accident befell Smith? What became of him? What is said of his character? 106. With Smith's departure what commenced? How many were left in the colony? How did they conduct themselves towards the Indians? What was the consequence? Six months after Smith's departure, what was the state of the colony? On the arrival of Gates, what resolution was formed? What prevented them from carrying it out? Describe Lord Delaware's administration. What put an end to it? 107. Who succeeded as governor? What took place during his

arrivals added much to the size and strength of the colony. Several new settlements were made higher up the river. In 1611, cattle and hogs were introduced from Europe.

108. In 1613, Pocahontas, the ever true and affectionate friend of the English, was purchased by Capt. Argall, from a tribe that she was visiting, for a copper kettle. Her father refused to ransom her on the terms proposed, and prepared for war. This was averted by John Rolfe [*rolf*], an English planter, who offered to marry the gentle Indian girl, and instruct her in the doctrines of Christianity. The proposal was gladly accepted by Powhatan, who was ever afterwards a firm friend and ally of the English. Pocahontas, having renounced the religion of her fathers, was baptized as a Christian believer and married to Rolfe. Three years afterwards, he took her to England. In London, she was an object of general interest. An apartment was allotted her in the palace, where she was visited by crowds. Among others came her old friend, Captain Smith. She had heard that he was dead; and, on seeing so unexpectedly a man bound to her heart by tender recollections, she was overcome with emotion, and buried her face in her hands to conceal her tears. When about to return to America with her husband and infant son, she suddenly died, at the age of 22. This son, Thomas, was educated by his uncle, and became a man of wealth and distinction. From him some of the leading families of Virginia derive their descent.

109. An attempt was made by the colonists in 1614 to obtain aid from Parliament, but without success; and Virginia had to rely on the exportation of tobacco as a source of revenue: even the streets of Jamestown were planted with it. Tobacco thus became the staple; and, as coin was scarce, it even passed for money.

In 1619, after several years of mismanagement and tyranny, George Yeardley [*yurd'-le*] became governor of Virginia.

---

administration? 108. In 1613, what happened to Pocahontas? What seemed likely to be the result? How was war averted? Give an account of Pocahontas's visit to England, and meeting with Smith. At what age did she die? What became of her son? 109. In 1614, what unsuccessful attempt was made by the colonists? On what were they obliged to rely? For what was tobacco used?

Within a few months after his appointment, a colonial assembly was established. It was known as "the House of Burgesses", and convened at Jamestown. This was the first representative body in America. It consisted of two members from each of the eleven boroughs into which the colony was divided.

110. Hitherto there had been but few women in the colony; but Sir Edward San'-dys, convinced that pleasant homes were necessary to give permanence to the settlement, induced ninety young women to cross the ocean at the expense of the company; and they were soon disposed of as wives to the settlers, at the rate of 100 pounds of tobacco (worth about \$75) each. The next year, sixty more were sent over, and the price of a wife rose to 150 pounds of tobacco. From 1619 to 1621, 3,500 persons found their way to Virginia. A written constitution was obtained, and trial by jury and a representative government became acknowledged rights.

Up to this time, the company had expended about \$400,000 on the colony; and the result was thus far unsatisfactory, though there was a good promise for the future.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### DUTCH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

111. VERRAZZANI, during his voyage in 1524 in search of a northwest passage to India, passed along the coast of New Jersey, and came near discovering the harbor of New York. He reached the adjacent islands, but was driven to sea by adverse winds; and the discovery of the Hudson River and

---

Who became governor in 1619? This same year, what was established? What was it called? Where did it convene? What makes this body worthy of particular mention? Of what did it consist? 110. How did Sandys contribute to the prosperity of the settlement? Give an account of the importation of wives. How many persons came to Virginia between 1619 and 1621? What did the colonists now obtain? How much had the company expended in colonizing Virginia? What is said of the result thus far?

111. Who, in 1524, came near discovering the Hudson? What prevented his

the noble harbor at its mouth was reserved for the Dutch, eighty-five years later.

This enterprising people, having thrown off the Spanish yoke, established a commercial republic. Though their country contained not a single forest, they built more ships than all the rest of Europe; and, while yet battling for liberty, they traded with the most distant parts of the world. An association for traffic and colonization was formed in 1608, under the name of the East India Company; and Henry Hudson, who had previously made two voyages to the new world in behalf of English merchants, was taken into their employ. He embarked in 1609; and, after following the coast from Maine to Virginia, and discovering Delaware Bay, he turned to the north, and entered the passage between Long Island and Sandy Hook, the northeastern extremity of New Jersey. On the 11th of September, he sailed through the Narrows, and found himself in one of the finest harbors in the world. He entered the river since called by his name, and ascended it a few miles beyond where Albany now stands.

#### THE HALF-MOON ASCENDING THE HUDSON.

---

doing so? For whom was this honor reserved? What was the condition of the Dutch at that time? In 1608, what was formed? Whom did they employ? When did he sail? Give an account of his voyage. What was his vessel called? What



The natives, as elsewhere, were struck with amazement at sight of the new comers. When they beheld Hudson's ship, the Half-moon, approaching from the sea, they knew not what to make of the monster. As it came nearer, it seemed to be a floating house; and at last they found it to be an immense canoe filled with beings of a different race, whose commander, dressed in scarlet, they took to be the Manitou himself. Runners were sent with the news to all the surrounding tribes.

The Indians awaited the approach of the strangers on the southern point of the island now occupied by New York city, and received them with respect and friendship. Hudson landed with his crew, and ordered a calabash of rum to be brought. After drinking himself, he offered it to the chiefs. The first smelled the liquor, but passed it on; so did the next; and it went untasted till it reached the last of the party. Unwilling to offend the Manitou, he drank it off. His wondering companions beheld him reel and fall to the earth; but, when they saw that he recovered without injury and heard him describe his sensations, they all desired to feel the same excitement. Drinking of the "fire-water", they also became intoxicated; and in this state Hudson left them. The spot was afterwards called by the Indians Manhattan, or "the place of drunkenness".

At this time, Manhattan Island and the valley of the Hudson were covered with giant trees draped with luxuriant grape-vines. Reptiles crawled amid the decayed boughs and foliage of former centuries. The spotted deer laved his sides in the noble river, or hid in dense thickets which the sun-light never penetrated. The fiercer inhabitants of the forest made their lairs in unexplored recesses, undisturbed save by the proud Algonquin, sole lord of these vast solitudes.

112. Hudson returned to England. On a subsequent voyage he discovered the bay that bears his name. In vain he explored that inland sea for a northwest passage to India, in

---

did the natives think of it? Describe Hudson's meeting with the Indians. What name did they give to the island, and what does it signify? Describe the valley of the Hudson at this time. 112. What discovery did Hudson afterwards make?

the existence of which he firmly believed. Continuing the search too long, he found himself compelled to winter in this frozen region. Their severe hardships led his men to revolt; and Hudson, with his son and eight others, was put in a small boat and left to perish on the vast body of water which his enterprise had discovered.

113. In 1610 and the following years, a number of trading vessels were sent out by Dutch merchants. Valuable furs were obtained from the Indians, and the traffic proved highly profitable. Some huts were soon erected on the lower part of Manhattan Island, and in 1614 a fort was built for their defence. The settlement was called New Amsterdam, and the name of New Netherlands was given to the surrounding region. In the year last mentioned, Adrian Block sailed up the East River into the Sound, and circumnavigated Long Island. This same discoverer, having lost his ship by fire at New Amsterdam, built the first vessel ever constructed at that port. A settlement was commenced at Albany, then called Fort Orange, in 1615.

114. In 1616, a Dutch navigator named Schout'-en first rounded the southern extremity of the Western Continent, which he named from his native place Cape Horn.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

115. THE Plymouth company, to which King James granted the tract between the 41st and the 45th parallel of north latitude, made several attempts to colonize their territory, but without success. One party spent a winter at the

---

What was he trying to find? What became of this great discoverer? 113. In 1610, what was done? What was the chief article obtained? What were erected on Manhattan Island? What name was given to the settlement? What, to the surrounding region? What is said of Adrian Block? When was Albany founded? 114. When and by whom was Cape Horn first rounded?

115. What part of the new world had been granted to the Plymouth company? What is said of their attempts to colonize it? Where did one party spend the

mouth of the Kennebec, but suffered so much from cold that they were glad to return in the spring. In 1614, Capt. John Smith, the illustrious founder of Jamestown, explored the coast from the Penobscot to Cape Cod, made a map of the country, and gave it the name of New England.

116. In 1620, James I. granted an immense tract, extending from 40 to 48 degrees north latitude and from ocean to ocean, to a commercial company consisting of forty persons. So great were the privileges thus granted that the English parliament questioned the king's right to give them; and, while they were warmly debating the subject and the monopolists were quarrelling among themselves, the first permanent settlement in New England was made, without any charter, by the Puritans or "Pilgrim Fathers".

117. The Puritans were first known in England as a separate sect about 1550. They were distinguished by a stern abhorrence of gayety and amusements, a profound love of civil and religious liberty, and firmness in adhering to what they conceived to be the teachings of Scripture. Persecution drove them from their country; and, among those who sought in Holland the right of worshipping God according to their own conscience, was a congregation under John Robinson.

In 1617, part of Robinson's flock, after living eight years in Leyden [*li'-den*], formed the design of emigrating to America. Two vessels, the Mayflower and Speedwell, were in 1620 got ready for the voyage; but the commander of the latter, declaring it unfit for crossing the ocean, returned to port, leaving the Mayflower to go on alone with 100 emigrants. They intended to settle near the Hudson River, but were carried to the coast of Massachusetts after a long voyage of sixty-three days. A party was sent out in a small boat to find a place suitable for landing. After encountering vari-

---

winter? What became of them? In 1614, what was done by Captain Smith? 116. What grant was made by James I. in 1620? What question arose concerning it? Meanwhile, who had settled in New England? 117. When were the Puritans first known in England? By what were they distinguished? What had driven many of them from their country? What congregation is mentioned in particular? What design did they form? Name the vessels that were prepared for the voyage. What became of the Speedwell? Where did they intend to settle? Where were they carried? What befell the party sent out to find a landing-

ous dangers, losing their rudder and sail, and suffering from the extreme cold, which froze the spray upon their persons, they at last reached a harbor on the eastern coast of Massachusetts, which they called Plymouth [*plim'-uth*], after the port from which they had sailed [see Map, p. 84]. On the 11th of December (the 21st according to the New Style,—see note, p. 155), 1620, the whole party landed on Plymouth rock, and near the shore was commenced the first town in New England.

118. Days of suffering came; but the Pilgrims met every hardship with a firm trust in God, thinking the civil and religious liberty they enjoyed a sufficient recompense. During the month of December, six of the colonists died from exposure, and many others fell sick. John Carver, who had been chosen governor before they landed, lost his son; shortly afterwards he himself slept in the same grave, and his widow was soon laid beside her husband and child. At one time, every person in the settlement, except seven, was on a sick-bed.

Towards the end of March, when hope began to revive with the milder weather, Sam'-o set, a Wampanoag Indian, entered the village of huts, exclaiming, "Welcome, Englishmen!" He had learned a little English from previous voyagers, and told the colonists that they might occupy the land where they had settled, as a pestilence had recently destroyed its former inhabitants. In a few days, Mas-sa-soit', a Wampanoag chief, visited Plymouth. By the aid of an Indian, who had been to England, and was able to act as interpreter, a treaty was made with the Wampanoags, who promised not to molest the whites, and acknowledged the supremacy of King James.

119. The Nar-ra-gan'-setts, a neighboring tribe, were enemies of the Wampanoags, and did not like the arrival of the

---

place? Where and when did they finally land? [See Map, p. 84.—What is the latitude of Plymouth? In what direction is it from Cape Cod?] 118. What ensued? How did the pilgrims meet their hardships? What took place in December? What befell Governor Carver's family? When did hope begin to revive? Who visited them at this time? What did he tell them? Who soon after visited Plymouth? What did the Wampanoags promise? 119. What is said of the

Puritans. In 1622, their chief Ca-non'-i-cus, to show his hostility, sent Governor Bradford (who had succeeded Carver) a bundle of arrows wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake. The brave governor filled the skin with powder and shot, and sent it back. Finding that the colonists were not frightened, the chief thought it best to let them alone; but, that they might be prepared for the worst, they surrounded their settlement with a palisade of stakes a mile in circuit.

120. During the year 1622, thirty-five trading vessels visited New England, and some provisions were bought by the colonists at exorbitant prices, for as yet they had not raised sufficient for their support. Their agricultural implements were imperfect; they had no domestic cattle, and were so destitute of boats and tackle that the fish which swarmed in the harbor availed them little. The following year, they were so far reduced that at one time they had but a pint of corn to divide, and at another not a single kernel. Hitherto they had cultivated the land in common; but it was thought that the inducement to labor would be greater, if the land were divided and each planted for himself. Accordingly, in 1624 every colonist received a small tract. After this, corn was abundant. Other settlers of the same religious views came over, and in 1630 the population was about 300.

121. The affairs of the colony were managed by a governor and council of five, afterwards increased to seven. At first the whole body of citizens assembled in town meeting, and decided all questions that arose. In 1639, their number had so increased that a representative system of government was introduced. The people made their own laws, and punished criminals as they chose, even with death, independently of the home government. The Plymouth settlers were never incorporated by royal charter, and it was not till

---

Narragansetts? How did their chief show his hostility? How did Governor Bradford reply? With what did the Puritans surround their settlement? [See Map, page 84.—What water separated the Narragansetts from the Wampanoags?] 120. In 1622, whence did the settlers obtain provisions? Why did they not raise their own food? What is said of the scarcity of provisions the next year? In 1624, what change was made? What was the population in 1630? 121. By whom were the affairs of the colony managed? At first, by whom were all questions

ten years after their arrival that a title to the land they occupied was granted them by the company in England.

122. Massasoit and his tribe remained faithful to the colonists, and were of service to them in various ways. The chief never forgot that not long after the arrival of the Pilgrims he was cured of a severe illness by one of their number, named Winslow, who turned the medicine-men out of his wigwam in the midst of their noisy ceremonies, and restored their patient with a few simple remedies. Massasoit, in his gratitude, disclosed to Winslow a plot that had been formed by some neighboring Indians for cutting off a party of settlers at Weymouth [see Map, p. 84]. Miles Standish, a very brave man though small in stature, was the military leader of the Puritans; and he was immediately sent with eight men to the aid of the Weymouth settlers. The Indians were put to flight with the loss of three men, including their chief, whose head Standish brought back in triumph on a pole to Plymouth. When the news reached Robinson, who, though still in Leyden, felt a deep interest in his former people, he wrote back to them, "Oh, how happy a thing had it been, had you converted some before you killed any!"

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY.—SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND.

123. THE Puritans of England, still subjected to various restrictions, continued to seek an asylum in the new world. A grant having been obtained from the Plymouth Company, of a tract bordering on Massachusetts Bay, John En'-di-cott was sent out in 1628 with 100 followers. After exploring

---

decided? What change was made in 1639? What powers had the people? When did the settlers get a title to their land? 122. How did Massasoit feel towards the English? What claims had they on his gratitude? How did he repay them? [See Map, p. 84.—In what direction was Weymouth from Plymouth?] Who was sent to aid the Weymouth settlers? What was the result of the battle? When the news reached Leyden, what did Robinson say?

123. What led the Puritans of England still to seek the new world? In 1628,

the neighborhood, Endicott's party finally settled at a place whose Indian name, Naum'-ke-ag, they changed to Sa'-lem. Two hundred more soon followed, some of whom joined the Salem colony, while others founded Charlestown.

124. Winter, as usual, brought suffering and disease. The following year, those who held the charter transferred it to the colonists themselves, and the change resulted happily. In July, 1630, about 1,500 persons arrived. An independent provincial government was formed, with John Winthrop at its head. Dor'-ches-ter, Rox'-bu-ry, Cambridge [*kame'-bridge*], and Watertown, were founded; but the greater part settled on a peninsula jutting out into the bay, invited thither by the excellence of its water and the fertility of the land. This peninsula they named Boston, after a city in Lincolnshire [*link'-un-sheer*], England, from which some of them had come.

SETTLEMENTS IN EASTERN MASSACHUSETTS.

Shortness of provisions and the severity of the climate caused many deaths during the ensuing winter, and for a season a greater number left the colony than joined it. The following year, affairs assumed a more flourishing aspect; and Boston was visited by various Indian chiefs, who promised peace and friendship.

125. In 1631, the General Court passed a law that no man

---

what took place? What places were founded by Endicott's party? 124. What judicious movement was made the next year? In 1630, how many arrived? Who was elected governor? What places were founded? Where did the greater part settle? [See Map.—How is Boston situated? In what direction from it is Cambridge? Salem? What river flows into Massachusetts Bay just north of Boston?] What was the state of affairs the next winter? What, in the following

should vote who was not a member of some church in the colony. This greatly reduced the number of voters, for only a fourth of the adult population were church-members. The dissatisfaction of the people with this enactment led to earnest discussion and the extension of popular rights. Winthrop was governor for four years, during which the colony became firmly established. A fort was built at Boston; mills were introduced; a coast trade with Virginia and New Amsterdam sprung up; and a ferry was established between Boston and Charlestown.

126. Though the Puritans had left England to secure religious liberty, they were unwilling to grant it to others, and required every one by law to attend their churches and conform to their opinions. Roger Williams, a young preacher who had come over in 1631 and settled at Salem, was the first to teach that every man had a right to worship God as he saw fit, and that bigotry, whether in New England or old England, was contrary to reason and the Bible. The stern Puritan leaders did not relish such opposition to their authority. Roger Williams was censured and pronounced unsound in judgment; and, on his election by the people of Salem as their pastor, a tract of land was withheld from them by the Boston council by way of punishing their contumacy. A spirited remonstrance from Williams and his congregation followed; in consequence of which the town of Salem was disfranchised by the next General Court. Frightened at these measures, the supporters of Williams at last submitted, and their minister was left to advocate his cause alone. To prevent further trouble, the Boston authorities ordered that he should be sent back to England.

Before the sentence could be executed, Williams was beyond the limits of the colony, determined to find in some other part of the new world that freedom which was denied

---

spring? By whom was Boston visited? 125. What law was passed by the General Court in 1631? To what did this enactment lead? How long was Winthrop governor? What was done during his administration? 126. What disposition did the Puritans manifest towards those of different religious opinions? Towards whom was this feeling first exhibited? What did Roger Williams teach? Give the history of the successive difficulties to which his dissemination of such doc-



him there. For fourteen weeks he wandered in the wilderness, amid the snows of a severe winter, "not knowing what bread or bed did mean". At last he reached the wigwams of the Wampanoags, who received him kindly; and in the summer he obtained from the Narragansetts a tract of land on the bay called by their name. Here, with five companions, he commenced a settlement, which he named Providence in commemoration of the divine mercy. Thus originated the first settlement in RHODE ISLAND.

Roger Williams was soon joined by friends from Salem and Boston, to whom he freely gave portions of his land. The settlement rapidly increased in strength and prosperity. Perfect freedom prevailed, and the will of the people was the supreme law.

127. In 1635, 3,000 immigrants arrived at Boston, among whom was Henry Vane, a young man of distinction, who was soon elected governor. During his term of office, the colony was again troubled by religious dissensions. Ann Hutchinson, who hesitated not to censure the Puritan clergy and to teach doctrines even more objectionable in their eyes than those of Roger Williams, won over to her opinions a number of the settlers, among whom was Governor Vane himself. It was only after serious difficulties that peace was restored by Mrs. Hutchinson's banishment. Many of her followers left the colony with her, and settled on Aquiday [*ak'-we-dā*] (*the isle of peace*) in Narragansett Bay [see Map, p. 84], which they bought from the Indians and called the Isle of Rhodes. Vane returned to England. To prevent these troubles from recurring, a law was passed in the colony forbidding any person to enter it without a permit from the magistrates.

---

trines led. What sentence was pronounced upon him by the authorities? How did he avoid it? For fourteen weeks what was he obliged to do? By whom was he received? What was the origin of the first settlement in Rhode Island? By whom was Williams joined? What was the supreme law of the colony? 127. In 1636, how was the Massachusetts Bay colony augmented? During Vane's term of office, how and by whom was the colony troubled? Who was numbered among Mrs. Hutchinson's converts? What became of Mrs. Hutchinson? [See Map, p. 84.—What promontory is north of the Isle of Rhodes?] What law was soon after

In 1639, Newport was founded on the southern part of the island, near an old stone tower. This curious structure, twenty-four feet high, was evidently of great antiquity, but the Indians could give no information respecting its origin.

The same principles that prevailed at Providence were carried out in the Rhode Island colony, though at first they were independent of each other. It was not till 1644 that they received a charter, and were united under the name of the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.

STONE TOWER AT NEWPORT.

128. In 1622, Sir Ferdinand Gorges [*gor'-jez*] and John Mason obtained a grant of land extending from the St. Lawrence to the Kennebec and Merrimac, and named the tract Laconia. Two fishing colonies were soon established at Portsmouth and Dover. In 1629, Exeter was founded, and the name of the colony was changed to NEW HAMPSHIRE. Trading-posts were established at various points on the coast, but they were mostly unimportant.

129. In 1641, the feeble settlements of New Hampshire asked to be received into the colony of Massachusetts Bay. Their request was granted, and the union continued till 1680, when they were separated by the king, and again made an independent province under the name of New Hampshire.

---

passed? In 1639, what place was founded? What object of interest is near it? What principles prevailed in the colony of Rhode Island? When, and under what name, were the Providence and Rhode Island colonies united? 128. Give the history of the first settlements in New Hampshire. 129. What was their subsequent history?

## CHAPTER VIII.

## SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT.—PEQUOD WAR.

130. THE Connecticut, so called from its Indian name, which means *long river*, was discovered in 1614 by the Dutch. They established a trading-post near the place where Hartford now stands, and for a time enjoyed undisputed possession of the country. At length, reports of the fruitfulness and beauty of this inviting region reached England; and in 1630 it was granted to the Earl of Warwick [*wör'-rik*], who transferred it to Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke. In their honor the name of Saybrook was given to a fort erected at the mouth of the river in 1635. [See Map, p. 91.]

131. Meanwhile, settlements had been made from both of the Massachusetts colonies. The Dutch had tried to prevent the first comers from sailing up the Connecticut, but without success. In the autumn of 1635, a company from Massachusetts Bay made the journey by land; but when they arrived the river was frozen, their cattle perished, and they were reduced to the greatest extremities for food. Another party started from Boston the following summer. Traversing the wilderness with the aid of the compass and driving their cattle before them, they finally reached the site of Hartford, and settled on lands bought from the Indians.

132. Difficulties with the natives soon arose. The Pequods, a warlike tribe east of the Connecticut, regarded the whites with distrust; and the latter, apprehensive of attack, only waited for an opportunity to inflict such vengeance on the savages as would forever prevent their aggressions.

---

130. When and by whom was the Connecticut discovered? What is the meaning of the name? Where did the Dutch settle? Who soon heard of this fruitful region? To whom was it granted, and transferred? Where and when was Saybrook built? [See Map, p. 91.—On which side of the Connecticut is Saybrook? Near what other water is it? On which bank of the Connecticut is Hartford? What Indians lived just east of the Connecticut? What tribe lived on the banks of the Thames?] 131. Whom did the Dutch soon find settling in the valley of the Connecticut? What took place in 1635? What, the following summer? 132. With whom did difficulties arise? In what did they originate? How did

This opportunity soon occurred. The captain of a trading-vessel, named Oldham, was murdered without provocation by the natives of Block Island. As soon as the news reached Boston, Endicott, with a suitable force, set out to avenge the injury. The Indians had abandoned the island, but he destroyed their wigwams and crops. Crossing to the mainland, he demanded from the Pequods damages for various injuries sustained at their hands, and some of their children as hostages. These being refused, he laid waste part of their country. The flame of revenge was thus kindled in the breasts of the Pequods. All the wiles and cruelties of Indian warfare were now experienced on the frontier. Solitary houses were attacked; stragglers were surprised and scalped; men were shot down while working in the fields; women and children were murdered round the fireside. Messengers were sent by the Pequods to the neighboring tribes, urging them to unite in exterminating the Connecticut settlers.

133. Roger Williams learned that proposals of this kind were being made to the Narragansetts; and, in order to save some of those very men who had banished him from Massachusetts, he resolved to defeat the plans of the Pequods. Setting out alone in a fearful storm, he paddled many a weary mile to the Narragansett village. The Pequod ambassadors were there, and Williams nearly lost his life by interfering; but he pleaded his cause boldly, and after four days' hesitation the Narragansetts refused to join the Pequod league.

134. On the 1st of May, 1637, the authorities of Connecticut declared war against the Pequods; and, in a few days, about 80 settlers, and 60 Mohegans under the friendly Uncas, started against the foe. Captain John Mason, who had served as a soldier in Flanders, commanded the expedition;

---

the settlers punish the Indians for the murder of Oldham? What followed on the part of the Pequods? What did they solicit the neighboring nations to do? 133. To what tribe in particular did the Pequods appeal? Who heard of this? Tell what he did to prevent it, and the result. 134. In 1637, what was done by the authorities of Connecticut? How large a force was raised? Who commanded it? Where did they first sail, and for what purpose? How were they

and, expecting aid from the Narragansetts, he sailed directly for their villages. The Narragansetts received him as a friend, but were discouraged from accompanying him by the smallness of his force. "Your design is good," said the chief, "but your numbers are too weak to brave the Pequods, who have mighty chieftains and are skilful in battle."

Though disappointed, Mason resolved to carry out the enterprise alone. The Pequod confederacy consisted of 26 tribes, numbering over 2,000 men. Their principal villages were on what is now called the Thames [*tāmz*] River [see Map, p. 91]. When they saw the English sail past on their way to Narragansett Bay, they supposed that the attack was given up through fear, and uttered cries of defiance and exultation that were plainly heard by their enemies. On the 26th of May, just before sunrise, Mason's party, who had landed a little east of their village, cautiously approached the huts of the sleeping savages. An Indian dog gave the alarm; and the Pequods, though thus taken by surprise, defended themselves with great bravery. The battle was still doubtful, when Mason, crying "We must burn them!", threw a blazing brand among the mats with which one of the wigwams was covered, and thus decided the fortunes of the day. The English and their red allies formed a circle round the burning huts, and slew their enemies without mercy as the fire drove them into sight. Six hundred Pequods, men, women, and children, perished in an hour, while but two of the English were lost.

The next morning, a body of 300 Pequods arrived from another village; and, though they fought with desperation on seeing the destruction of their homes and relatives, they too were defeated. The remnants of the tribe were driven from place to place, and butchered by their Indian enemies as well as by the English. At last 200 of the survivors surrendered in despair to the English. They were either sold

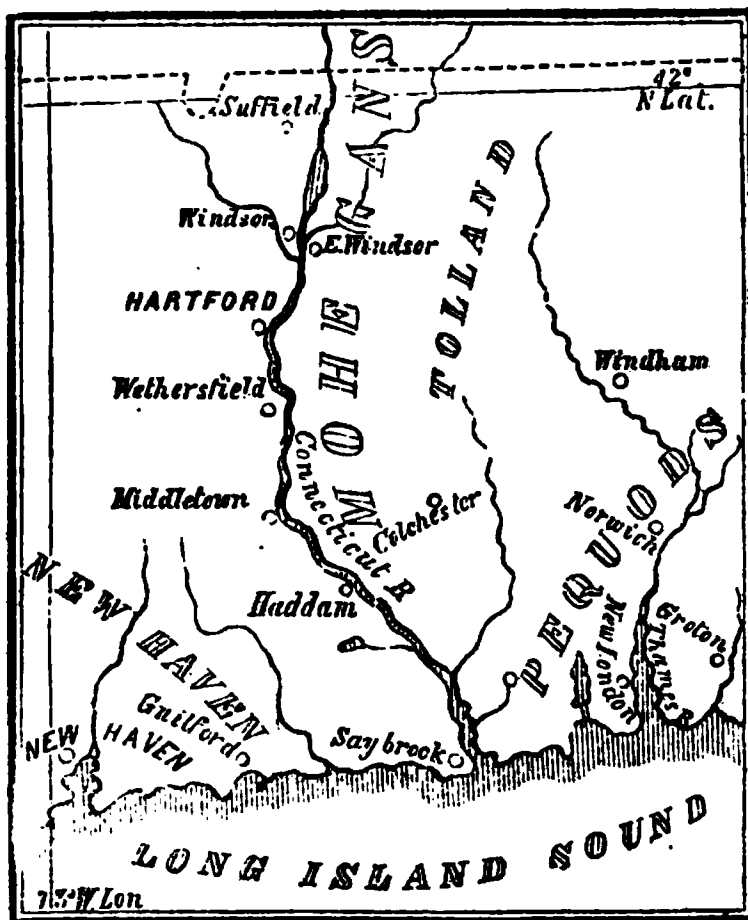
---

received? How many tribes and warriors composed the Pequod confederacy? Where were their principal villages? [See Map, p. 91.—Where is the Thames River? What place is near its mouth?] What did they suppose when the English sailed past? Give an account of the attack. How many Pequods and

into slavery or incorporated among the friendly tribes; and the name of Pequod was no longer heard.

135. After the first victory, the Narragansetts had joined the English; but the latter afterwards made a poor return to their chief, Mi-an-to-no'-moh, for his services. A war having broken out between the Narragansetts and the Mohegans, Miantonomoh, then an old man, was captured. "Let him be delivered," said the ungrateful men of Connecticut, "to his old enemy, Uncas." The cruel Mohegan took him to a solitary place, and there, in the presence of two of the settlers tomahawked his victim, and cutting a piece of quivering flesh from his shoulder ate it, declaring it the most delicious morsel that had ever passed his lips.

136. In 1638, the colony of New Haven was founded by John Dav'enport, Theodore Eaton, and their followers, on land bought from the Indians. The rights of voting and holding office were confined to church-members, and the Bible was adopted as the only basis of law and rule of public action.



SETTLEMENTS IN CONNECTICUT.

how many English were lost? The next morning, what happened? What became of the remainder of the tribe? 135. What course did the Narragansetts take after the first battle? How did the English repay their chief? Describe the death of Miantonomoh. 136. By whom was New Haven founded? [See Map.—Near what water is New Haven? What two towns between it and the Connecticut?] Whom alone did the colonists allow to vote and hold office? What did they adopt as their only basis of law?

## CHAPTER IX.

## FOUNDING OF MARYLAND AND DELAWARE.

137. THE territory now called Maryland was included in the charter granted to the London company in 1609. William Clayborne, a surveyor, was sent out to make a map of the country, and was allowed a patent for trading with the Indians.

In 1632, George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, obtained from King James a charter for a large tract on the Potomac, which had reverted to the crown. This enterprising man had expended a large sum without success in an attempt to plant a colony on Newfoundland. He had then turned his attention to Virginia, but was there met with a religious test in the form of an oath, which, as a Roman Catholic, he could not take.

138. As truly democratic in politics as he was liberal in his religious views, Lord Baltimore determined to provide an asylum where men of all creeds might enjoy liberty in its perfection. He took care to have this guaranteed in his charter. A majority of the freemen, or their representatives, were to make the laws. The colony was to be entirely free from English taxation, and from all interference on the part of the king. Christianity was to be the basis of the laws, but all sects were to be treated alike. Lord Baltimore agreed to pay the king a yearly rent of two Indian arrows and one-fifth of whatever gold and silver he should find, and named his new territory MARYLAND, in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria.

139. Lord Baltimore did not live to plant a colony under this admirable charter; but his son Cecil [se'-sil] Calvert succeeded to his rights, and sent out his brother Leonard

---

137. To whom was the territory now called Maryland originally granted? Who was sent out to make a map of it? In 1632, who obtained a charter for a tract on the Potomac? Where had Lord Baltimore previously tried to found colonies? 138. What was his character? Mention some of the chief provisions of his charter. What rent was he to pay? What did he name this tract, and from whom? 139. What became of Lord Baltimore? Who succeeded to his

with about 200 emigrants, mostly Roman Catholics and men of standing. They entered Chesapeake Bay early in 1634, sailed up the Potomac, and, having bought some land from the Indians, built the little village of St. Mary's.

The infant colony flourished, as it deserved, by reason of the freedom of its institutions and the justice with which its founders treated the natives. Its sole enemy was Clayborne, who had established two independent trading-posts, and refused to acknowledge Lord Baltimore's authority. A collision ensued, which resulted in the defeat of Clayborne, who fled to Virginia, and was thence sent to England. Assemblies were held, which enacted various wholesome laws in harmony with the liberal character of the charter. At first every freeman had the right to attend and vote; but when this was found inconvenient, the Assembly was made to consist of representatives chosen by the people.

Peace and prosperity reigned till 1642, when a short Indian war occurred. Hardly had it terminated, when Clayborne, who had found his way back to the new world, excited a rebellion, and drove Gov. Calvert from the province. In 1646, Calvert returned with troops from Virginia, and suppressed the insurrection. A general pardon was proclaimed, and order was restored.

140. Leonard Calvert died in 1647. During the troubles which followed the execution of Charles I. in England, several governors were successively appointed; and for a time the power was divided between two opposing sets of authorities, Roman Catholic and Protestant. In 1660, Philip Calvert was recognized by all parties as governor. The population of Maryland at this time is estimated at 10,000.

141. The colony of DELAWARE originated in the desire of Gustavus [*gus-tah'-vus*] Adolphus, the greatest of Swedish kings, to advance the Protestant religion, and the interests

---

charter? Give an account of the first settlement. Who was the only enemy of the infant colony? What became of Clayborne? What was done by the early Assemblies? How were these Assemblies composed? In 1642, what happened? Relate the history of Clayborne's insurrection. 140. When did Leonard Calvert die? Give the subsequent history of the colony till 1660. What was its population about this time? 141. What was the origin of Delaware? What prevented



of his nation in the new world. A charter was granted to a company in 1626, and a few Swedes came over the following year. A war, however, arose, which engrossed the attention of Gustavus, and he fell on the field of Lutzen [*loot'-zen*] without carrying his scheme into execution. Yet it was not forgotten. Through the efforts of the wise statesman Oxenstiern [*oks'-en-stern*], a company of Swedes and Finns was sent over in 1638, under Peter Min'-u-its, who had previously been in the service of the Dutch. They arrived in Delaware Bay, bought a tract from the natives, to which they gave the name of New Sweden, and built Fort Christiana, near the present site of Wilmington, calling it in honor of the young queen of Sweden. The colony flourished, reinforcements came over, and another settlement was made on a spot now embraced in the suburbs of Philadelphia.

142. The Dutch looked on this Swedish colony with jealous eyes. Some years before its arrival, a body of men had been sent out from New Amsterdam to settle this region; but quarrels arose, and the whole party was cut off by Indians. On this the Dutch founded a claim to the country, and in 1651 they built a fort at Newcastle [*new'-kas-sl*], within five miles of Christiana. Resolved to prevent such encroachments, the settlers of New Sweden attacked and destroyed the fort. In revenge for this injury, Stuyvesant [*sti'-ve-sant*], then governor of New Netherlands, with more than 600 men, invaded their country, subjected it to Holland, and put an end to Swedish power in America. New Sweden at this time contained about 700 colonists. They remained quietly under the sway of the Dutch, and with the Dutch in 1664 passed under the dominion of the English.

---

Gustavus Adolphus from carrying out his plans? Who did carry them out? Give an account of the first settlement. 142. How did the Dutch regard the Swedish colony? What grounds had they for claiming this region? What did they do in 1651? What followed? How did the Dutch revenge themselves? How many colonists did New Sweden then contain? What was its subsequent history?

## CHAPTER X.

NEW NETHERLANDS, FROM 1621 TO 1664.—FOUNDING OF  
NEW JERSEY.

143. THE Dutch West India Company, in 1621, obtained from the government of Holland a grant of nearly the whole African coast and all the countries they might conquer in America, for the purposes of trade and colonization. Of this extensive territory, New Netherlands, embracing the valley of the Mauritius [*mau-rish'-e-us*] River (as the Hudson was then called), seemed the most important, and to it the company gave their chief attention.

Peter Minuits was the first governor. He came over in 1625, and bought the whole island of Manhattan from the Indians for \$24. Friendly courtesies were interchanged with the Plymouth Colony. A brisk trade in furs was carried on, and the capture of such Spanish vessels as approached the harbor was a further source of profit. New Amsterdam (such, it will be remembered, was then the name of New York) grew apace. This was the day of "hunters and traders, otter and beaver skins, straw roofs, wooden chimneys, and windmills". The Dutch spread out over Long Island, Staten Island, and New Jersey. Wherever the soil was good or beaver were abundant, thrifty Hollanders settled, buying their land honorably from the Indians for knives, beads, or wampum. To encourage immigration, the company offered every man who in four years would plant a colony of fifty souls, a tract sixteen miles in length, of which, after buying the right of the Indians, he should be "patroon", or lord. Godyn [*go-dine'*], Van Rensselaer [*van ren'-se-ler*], and others, availed themselves of this offer.

144. Meanwhile the Indians, excited by the rum obtained

---

143. In 1621, what extensive grant did the Dutch West India Company obtain? To what region did they give the most attention? Who was the first governor? What did he pay for Manhattan Island? What sources of profit did the Dutch find? Describe New Amsterdam at this time. Where did the Dutch settlements spread? How did the Dutch obtain their lands? How did the company encourage immigration? Who availed themselves of this offer? 144. Give an ac-

from white traders, committed various trespasses, which the Dutch in turn punished severely. This roused the Indians to vengeance, and in 1640 they attacked a settlement on Staten Island. The next year, a Hollander was killed at Manhattan, by an Indian who had vowed to revenge the murder of his uncle ten years before. In 1642, a Hackensack warrior, who had been made drunk and then robbed by the colonists, on returning to a sense of his injury, killed two of the Dutch. When satisfaction was demanded, the natives offered to pay 200 fathoms of wampum, but refused to give up the guilty party, on the ground that the Dutch had themselves provoked the act. Just at this time a band of river Indians, driven by the Mohawks, took refuge on the bank of the Hudson opposite Manhattan, and solicited the aid of the Dutch. Instead of granting the desired assistance, Kieft [*keeft*], who was then governor, sent a party of his countrymen across the river at the dead of night, to butcher the helpless and unsuspecting savages. Mothers and children, old and sick, shared the same cruel fate. Such as escaped the knife were driven from the cliffs, and perished in the freezing river. Nearly a hundred fell by this wicked attack.

A desperate and bloody war was the result. The Red Men cried for vengeance from the Jersey shore to the Connecticut, and many a pale-face suffered for the doings of that night. The Indians drew no distinction between innocent and guilty; and among other victims of their revenge was Mrs. Hutchinson, who, as we have seen, had fled from the Massachusetts Colony and found refuge in Rhode Island.

In this war several powerful tribes united, and it was feared at one time that every Hollander would be swept from the country. But Roger Williams, whose great influence with the Indians was always exerted in behalf of peace, succeeded in persuading the exasperated warriors to bury

---

count of the difficulties which arose between the Dutch and the Indians. What satisfaction did the Indians offer? Just at this time, what happened? How was the request of the river Indians met by Kieft and his countrymen? What ensued? Who perished in this war? What was at one time feared? Who suc-

the tomahawk. The war was afterwards renewed; and the Dutch escaped utter destruction only by appointing John Underhill, who had won renown in the Pequod war, to the command of their forces. His courage and management were finally successful.

145. The people were tired of Kieft, whose cruelty had provoked this disastrous war, and procured his recall. Peter Stuyvesant, a veteran who had served with distinction in the West Indies, succeeded. Stuyvesant cultivated the friendship of the Indians, settled boundary disputes, granted the colony a more liberal system of trade, and promoted its interest in various ways.

At this time, the island on which the great city of New York stands was occupied mostly by farmers. The tract now known as "the Park" was covered with a forest, in which boys gathered chestnuts, and tanners procured their bark. Land was very cheap, and Stuyvesant bought for a mere trifle that "Bowerie" beyond the town from which one of the principal streets of the city is named. A wall was run across the island, at what is now Wall-street, to keep off the Indians. Here is a view of New York, as it appeared from the Bay, about 1650.

146. In 1655, by order of the home government, Stuyve-

---

ceeded in appeasing the Indians for a time? On the renewal of the war, whom did the Dutch make their leader? What was the result? 145. How did the people feel towards Kieft? By whom was he superseded? What measures were taken by Stuyvesant? Describe Manhattan Island at this time, 146. In 1655, what did

sant conquered New Sweden, since called Delaware. During his absence, sixty-four canoes full of Indians appeared before New Amsterdam, and did considerable damage. His return restored peace. The colony from time to time received large additions, many victims of persecution in different parts of Europe seeking it as a home.

147. An earnest desire for greater freedom had for some years shown itself in the people; but Stuyvesant, accustomed to strict military discipline, would make no concessions. The principles of liberty continued to spread; and at last a general assembly of deputies from the Dutch villages was held, for the purpose of asserting the rights of the people. Little was then gained, but the spirit displayed was not to be mistaken.

148. The English had long coveted the flourishing settlement on Manhattan Island; and in 1664, Charles II., who cared little for the rights of others, granted the whole tract from the Connecticut to the Delaware to his brother James, Duke of York, afterwards James II. A powerful fleet was fitted out to take possession of the Dutch settlements. Stuyvesant, however, was too old a soldier to be frightened; and, had he been supported by the people, he would have made a brave and perhaps successful defence. But the colonists remembered how their recent appeals had been met; and, thinking they would enjoy greater freedom and happiness under English rule, they turned a deaf ear to Stuyvesant's stirring appeals, and refused to fight. Thus left without means of resistance, the brave old governor had to surrender, and all the possessions of the Dutch passed without bloodshed into the hands of the English (1664). The inhabitants were not disturbed, and even Stuyvesant himself passed the rest of his days under the sway of the conquerors. The name of the colony, as well as that of the settlement on

---

Stuyvesant do? What happened during his absence? By whom was the colony sought as a home? 147. What spirit began to manifest itself in the people? How was it met by Stuyvesant? What was finally done by the Dutch villages? 148. How had the English felt towards the Dutch settlement on Manhattan? In 1664, what grant was made by Charles II.? What steps were immediately taken? How did Stuyvesant endeavor to meet them? How were his efforts frustrated?

Manhattan, was now changed to NEW YORK, in honor of the duke to whom it had been granted. The valley of the Hudson quietly submitted; and Fort Orange was named Albany, to commemorate the duke's Scottish title. All the Atlantic coast, from Maine to Georgia inclusive, was now in possession of the English.

149. The region between the Hudson and the Delaware was made over by the Duke of York to Berkeley, who had been governor of the Isle of Jersey, and gave the name of NEW JERSEY to the tract thus received. With the view of attracting settlers, freedom of worship was guaranteed, and the right of taxation was confined to a colonial Assembly. In consequence of these advantages, New Jersey became rapidly peopled.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### VIRGINIA FROM 1620 TO 1660.

150. SLAVERY commenced in the new world with Spanish discoveries and conquests. In 1495, Columbus sent 500 Indians to Spain, where they were publicly sold. In 1501, negro slavery was recognized by law in the Spanish colonies, and introduced on a large scale into the West Indies, where the natives were rapidly perishing under the tasks imposed by their conquerors. Sir John Hawkins, an English adventurer, engaged in the traffic, and Queen Elizabeth shared in the profits. Negro slaves were first brought to Virginia in a Dutch man-of-war. They were soon after introduced into all the other colonies. The price of a negro in New Amsterdam ranged between \$125 and \$150.

---

What was the consequence? How did the English treat the Dutch? What change was made in the names of New Netherlands, New Amsterdam, and Fort Orange? 149. To whom was the tract between the Hudson and the Delaware made over? What name was given to it, and from what circumstance? How was it sought to attract settlers? What was the result?

150. When did slavery commence in the new world? By whom and when were Indian slaves introduced into Spain? When and why were negroes introduced as slaves into the West Indies? What Englishman engaged in the traffic? How were negro slaves first brought to Virginia? At what price were they sold

151. In 1622, the white population of Virginia amounted to about 4,000. English settlements had been planted on both sides of the James River for nearly 150 miles, and all fear of the Indians was laid aside. Powhatan was dead, and his younger brother Opechancanough [*op-e-kan'-ka-no*] had succeeded to his power. The new chief was far from sharing his brother's friendly feelings towards the whites; and, jealous of their increasing strength, he planned a general rising among the Red Men. The various settlements were attacked at the same time, and 347 of the colonists were massacred within a single hour. The rest were saved by the warning of a friendly native.

War followed. The Indians were driven back from the river, and killed in great numbers. Yet the colony suffered much from the unexpected blow. Sickness set in; many of the settlers returned to Europe; and in 1624 there were only 1,800 souls in the colony of Virginia.

152. Meanwhile, King James, offended by some plain-spoken members of the London company, sent over commissioners, who tried to frighten the colonists into surrendering their charter. In this they did not succeed; whereupon, with the aid of corrupt judges, the king dissolved the company.

153. In 1625, James I. was succeeded by his son Charles I. This king confirmed the privileges already granted, and recognized the authority of the Assembly, in the hope that they would consign to him all the tobacco raised in the colony, and thus give him a monopoly of the article. But the Assembly, while it was glad to have its rights confirmed, declined the king's proposals. Various salutary laws were passed about this time. Profanity and drunkenness were prohibited; military exercises were required; emigration without the governor's permission was forbidden; and a cer-

---

in New Amsterdam? 151. What was the population of Virginia in 1622? How far had the English settlements extended? Who was now chief of the Powhatans? How did he feel towards the whites? What was done by his direction? How many of the colonists were massacred? What was the result of the war that followed? In 1624, how many colonists did Virginia contain? 152. What was the fate of the London company, and what led to it? 153. In 1625,

tain portion of the soil was set apart for the cultivation of corn. The Puritans were invited from the less genial climate of the North, and some accepted the invitation.

154. Sir William Berkeley became governor in 1641, and the colony continued to flourish. During the struggle between the Parliament and Charles I., which resulted in the execution of the latter, Virginia adhered to the king, and, to show its loyalty, banished those who would not use the liturgy of the English Church.

In 1644, another Indian war ravaged the frontier. At last Opechancanough, the untiring enemy of the colonists, was made prisoner, and the power of the Powhatans was destroyed. The old chief died from a wound cruelly inflicted after his capture. The Indians obtained peace only by the surrender of large tracts of land.

155. The Parliament and Cromwell, everywhere triumphant, sent over a strong force to Virginia in 1652, to establish their authority. The colonists agreed to recognize it on condition of not being disturbed. Still they sympathized with the royal party, and, on the restoration of Charles II. to his father's throne, gladly acknowledged him as their king. Gratitude, however, had no place in the nature of Charles; and, when he was firmly seated on the throne, he rewarded his faithful subjects in Virginia by encroaching on their rights, and giving his profligate favorites large tracts of their choicest land.

---

who became king of England? What led him at first to favor the Assembly? How did the Assembly meet his advances? What laws were passed about this time? What invitation was given and accepted? 154. Who became governor in 1641? What side did Virginia take in the struggle between Charles I. and his Parliament? What took place in 1644? How was this war terminated? What became of the Powhatan chief? 155. How were the Virginians compelled to recognize the authority of Cromwell? What were their feelings on the subject? On Charles Second's restoration, what did they do? How did Charles reward the Virginians for their fidelity?



## CHAPTER XII.

ELIOT'S PREACHING.—UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND  
COLONIES.

156. A DESIRE to convert the Indians to Christianity attracted many good men to America during the seventeenth century. Among those who engaged most zealously in the work was John Eliot. He was born in England in 1604, and, emigrating to Massachusetts at the age of twenty-seven, became warmly interested in the natives. After some efforts to enlighten them, he collected as many as he could at Natick [see Map, p. 84], and there established an Indian school. Becoming acquainted with their language, he wrote an Algonquin grammar and translated the Scriptures into that tongue. This translation was printed at Cambridge in 1663, and was the first Bible ever published in America.

When he spoke to the Red Men of God, he found that they already believed in a Supreme Being; his other doctrines they were not so ready to receive. They asked a thousand perplexing questions; but, though his teachings were not always understood or believed, yet his simplicity and kindness won their hearts. In the children he found his most attentive listeners. One Indian youth, we are told, having seen the ceremony of baptism performed by the missionary, persuaded his parents to unite with the church, and then joined it himself, declaring that he was ready to die. Shortly after he was attacked by consumption, and died the death of a Christian.

Money was raised in England, to aid Eliot in his benevolent scheme. He was of service to the Indians in various ways, not only instructing them in their religious duties, but teaching the men to dig and the women to spin. His heart

---

156. What led many to America in the seventeenth century? Who engaged zealously in this work? Give some account of his early efforts. When and where was the first Bible printed in America? In what language? [See Map, p. 84.—Where is Natick? In what direction from Boston?] How did the Indians receive Eliot's teachings? Who were his most attentive listeners? What story

overflowed with kindness; he would never see his fellow-creatures suffer when he had the means of relieving them. On one occasion carrying home part of his salary, tied up in his handkerchief, he called by the way on a destitute family. Moved by their distress, he tried to untie his handkerchief, that he might give them some money; but the knot resisted his efforts, and he handed the whole to the mother of the family, saying, "Take it, for I believe the Lord designs it all for you."

Eliot wrote several books, in one of which he expressed sentiments so liberal that he was censured by the Boston court and required to take them back. He died at a good old age, loved by all who knew him.

Others besides Eliot took up the good work, and many of the Indians learned to read and write. One of their number even took a college degree. But these advances towards civilization were confined to the tribes on the eastern coast of Massachusetts. The Narragansetts, as well as the more distant nations, refused all instruction and proudly adhered to the faith of their fathers.

157. Charles I., whose tyrannical conduct was at last the cause of his dethronement and execution, strove to oppress the New England colonies equally with the Puritans at home. In 1634, he empowered a commission, consisting of Archbishop Laud and others, to revoke charters, inflict penalties, and establish a new government in the American plantations. This news soon reached Boston, and with it the rumor that a governor appointed by the crown was on his way to Massachusetts. A council was called, and it was resolved that the colony should resist as far as it was able. In 1635, the Plymouth company surrendered their patent to the king; and soon afterwards the Massa-

---

is told of an Indian boy? What besides religious truths did Eliot teach the Indians? What instance of his generosity is related? What kind of sentiments did Eliot express in one of his works? Under Eliot and his companions, what did many of the Indians learn to do? To whom were these advances confined? How was it with the Narragansetts? 157. How did Charles I. treat the New England Puritans? What power did he give to Laud? What rumor soon reached Boston? On what course did the colonists determine? In 1635, what did the Plymouth company do? What soon after happened to the Massachusetts

chusetts Bay company was deprived of its privileges by process of law.

The entire control of both the Massachusetts colonies thus rested with the crown; and measures were promptly taken to suppress freedom of thought and action. Puritans were forbidden to emigrate to America; and it is said that thus the king, unfortunately for himself, prevented Cromwell, Hampden, and other friends of liberty, from leaving England. The colonists would no doubt have been cruelly persecuted, had not difficulties soon arisen at home which engrossed the king's attention.

158. The New England colonies, having the same origin, views, and interests, began about this time to feel the necessity of union. In 1643, they were threatened by the Indians on one side, and the Dutch and French on the other; and accordingly Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, and New Haven, formed a league offensive and defensive, under the name of "the United Colonies of New England". At this time, they contained a population of about 20,000, scattered through 50 villages.

Each colony retained the control of its own territory; but questions of war and peace, and all matters of common interest, were decided by a council of two commissioners from each. In case of war, the colonies were to furnish men and money in proportion to their population. This confederacy was the germ of the American Union. It was of great advantage to the colonies, and lasted more than forty years, till the New England charters were revoked by James II.

159. The people of Massachusetts had early provided for the education of the young. A sum of money was appropriated by the General Court for the establishment of a school at Cambridge; and, the Rev. John Harvard having left it nearly \$4,000 and his library, it was made a university and called by his name. Such was the origin of Harvard Uni-

---

Bay company? What measures were now taken by the king? What prevented him from cruelly persecuting the colonists? 158. What did the New England colonies begin to feel necessary? When was the union effected, and what led to it? What was the population of New England at this time? What were the terms of the union? Of what was it the germ? How long did it last? 159. For

versity, the oldest college in the United States. Every township of fifty householders was required by law to erect a school-house and hire a teacher.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### DOMESTIC LIFE, CHARACTER, AND LAWS OF THE PURITANS.

160. LET us glance at the state of society among the Puritans. Their condition, of course, was like that of the English people at this time. Many improvements connected with domestic life were yet unknown, while others had just been introduced. The use of chimneys was becoming common, though opposed by some, who said that smoke improved their health and hardened the timbers of their houses. Wooden dishes and spoons were giving way to pewter ones. Houses of brick and stone were not unfrequent in the old country; but in America boards and unhewn logs were mostly used in building. A poor man in England received but half what he now gets for a day's labor. Rye, barley, and oats, were the common food; and thousands of families hardly knew the taste of meat. The condition of the people in Massachusetts was considerably better than this. After the first few years of scarcity, ordinary industry supplied their wants; and they lived more comfortably and independently than the same class in the old world.

161. The Puritans of New England had naturally imbibed a strong aversion to the manners and practices of those who had persecuted them. They were opposed to veils, wigs, and long hair, condemned silken hoods and scarfs, required women to restrict the size of their sleeves, and discounted all frivolous fashions in dress. They disliked the

---

what had the people of Massachusetts early made provision? What was the origin of Harvard University? What was the law relating to school-houses?

160. Give an account of the condition of the New England Puritans. How did it compare with that of their brethren in England? 161. To what were the

cross in the British flag, and forbade the observance of Christmas. Comparing themselves to the Israelites of old, who fled from bondage in Egypt to an unknown wilderness, they tried to conform to the laws and customs of the chosen people. Like them, they commenced their Sabbath on Saturday evening, and observed it with the utmost strictness. They took whole sentences from the Bible as names for their children, or called them after Scriptural characters. All religious duties were zealously attended to; prayers and sermons were but little esteemed unless they were of great length; and children and servants were regularly catechised. They were stiff and formal, but at the same time industrious, enterprising, and moral.

A PURITAN.

162. The laws of the Puritans condemned all war that was not defensive, and provided penalties for gambling, intemperance, and other immoralities. They forbade the taking of interest on loaned money, and punished blasphemy and idolatry with death. Persecuted Christians, of their own faith, who sought refuge among them, were supported for a time at the public expense; but priests and Jesuits were forbidden to set foot within their limits.

163. Quakers shared with Roman Catholics the hatred of the Puritans. They were first known as a religious body in

---

Puritans opposed? To whom did they compare themselves? In what respects did they imitate the chosen people? What is said of their manners? What, of their attention to religious duties? 162. What did the laws of the Puritans condemn and forbid? What provision was made for persecuted Puritans who sought refuge among them? How was it with priests and Jesuits? 163. To what other

England in 1644, through the preaching of George Fox. Averse to form, the Quakers believed that God communicated directly with the spirits of men, moving them according to His will. They would neither bear arms nor take an oath; they condemned pleasures, forms, and show; they denounced tyranny and abhorred titles. Anxious to propagate their doctrines, and ready to seal their opinions with their blood, they had turned their eyes to America as a promising field for effort.

164. In 1656, two Quakeresses arrived at Boston. They were immediately arrested, and after an imprisonment of five weeks expelled from the colony. Laws were passed, forbidding under heavy penalties the introducing or harboring of Quakers in Massachusetts. If one of "the accursed sect" was found within the colony, he was to lose an ear; if he returned, the other ear was forfeited; and for a third offence his tongue was to be pierced with a red-hot iron.

But the persecuted Quakers gloried in bearing witness to their faith. The severer the laws against them, the more they were attracted to Boston. Fines, whippings, and tortures, could not keep them away: and finally the authorities declared that all Quakers found a second time in the colony should be punished with death. Three men and one woman suffered on the scaffold under this law, declaring that they died for conscience' sake. Such horror, however, was excited by these executions, that the cruel law was repealed. After this, Quakers were whipped out of the colony, and the excitement gradually died away.

165. It seems strange in this more liberal age that the Puritans should so soon have forgotten their own sufferings, and displayed the same persecuting spirit from which they had themselves fled. Their only excuse is to be found in the spirit of the times. Laws for the punishment of heresy

---

seet were the Puritans opposed? When were the Quakers first known in England? Through whose preaching? What did the Quakers believe? What did they condemn? 164. In 1656, who arrived at Boston? What was done to them? What laws were passed on the subject? What was the effect of these laws? Finally, what did the authorities declare? How many persons suffered under this law? What feeling was excited? What was the result? 165. What excuse

existed in every Christian country. In Spain, multitudes had perished at the stake and on the rack. Under Charles V., 50,000 persons had been burned, hanged, buried alive, or beheaded, in the Netherlands. Even in England, numbers had suffered under Bloody Mary and some of her successors. The Puritans were only carrying out the same intolerant principles. To Roger Williams and his Providence Plantations, to Lord Baltimore and his happy colony on the Chesapeake, belongs the honor of first rising superior to the bigotry of their age.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### KING PHILIP'S WAR.

166. UNLIKE the Virginians, the Puritans of New England, during the long struggle between Charles I. and his Parliament, sided against the king; and when the latter was dethroned, and Cromwell assumed the government, they were treated with great liberality and favor. The population increased; commerce extended; the fisheries flourished; and ship-building and other trades were pursued with profit.

167. In 1658, Cromwell died; and, his son having abdicated, Charles II. was restored to the throne of England in 1660. The first vessel that left for the colonies after this event brought over Whalley [*whol'-le*] and Goffe [*gof*], two of the regicide judges who had condemned Charles I., now compelled to fly from the vengeance of his son. They were well received in Boston by Gov. Endicott. The next year, an order came for their arrest; but the authorities allowed them to escape to Connecticut.

Charles II. having become firmly seated on the throne,

---

can the Puritans plead for this intolerance? What had been done in Spain? In the Netherlands? In England? Who, in the new world, first rose superior to the bigotry of their age?

166. In the struggle between Charles I. and Parliament, which side did the New England Puritans take? What was their condition during Cromwell's administration? 167. What took place in 1660? Soon after, who arrived at Boston? How were they treated? How did the colonists attempt to make their

the colonists were obliged to acknowledge his authority. Commissioners were sent to England by the people of Massachusetts, to make their peace with the king for having sided against his father, and to procure from him a confirmation of their charter. The king complied with their wishes so far as to confirm the charter, and grant pardon for past offences; but in turn required the Puritans to take an oath of allegiance, to tolerate the Church of England, and to extend the right of voting to those who were not church-members. To these demands the colonists returned an evasive answer; and four commissioners were sent over by the king, whose report might have led him to punish by force of arms the independent spirit of New England, had not the great plague and the fire of London called off his attention. At this time, New England contained 120 villages and about 60,000 inhabitants.

168. Scarcely had these troubles ended, when the New England colonies became involved in a long and bloody Indian war. It is known as *King Philip's War*, and broke out in 1675. The faithful Massasoit had died some years before, leaving two sons, Alexander and Philip. Alexander succeeded his father, but shortly afterwards died of a fever brought on by mortification at being arrested and imprisoned by the English. His death left Philip chief of the Wampanoags, who now numbered about 700 warriors.

The English settlements having extended on all sides, the Wampanoags at last found themselves confined to two small peninsulas. They had sold a great part of their land, and could no longer enjoy the forest freedom which was necessary to their happiness. They now began to understand the meaning of those mysterious marks which they had made from time to time on deeds conveying their possessions away forever. The white men were daily increasing in number, and the natives became alarmed lest they should be driven

---

peace with the king? With what success did the commissioners meet? What did the king demand in turn? What followed? How many villages and inhabitants did New England now contain? 168. In 1675, what broke out in New England? Who was King Philip? How had he become chief of the Wampanoags? How large was this tribe? What was their condition? What did



out even from the little that remained to them of the land of their fathers.

Several unfortunate occurrences increased the suspicion and hostility of the natives. In 1674, a chief who had been required for some offence to give up his arms, was again summoned to Boston for examination. Instead of obeying the order, he, with some others, killed the informer; and the murderers, having been arrested and found guilty, were publicly hanged. The Indians immediately revenged themselves by attacking Swanzey, a settlement near Mount Hope, and killing eight or nine of the inhabitants.

169. Philip wept when he heard that the war had begun, nor was he ever afterwards seen to smile. He felt that it must result in the destruction of his tribe. The English far outnumbered the Red Men, and were well provided with arms, ammunition, and the necessaries of life. The Indians, though they had learned the use of fire-arms, were poorly supplied with them, and lacked the discipline and confidence of their enemies. Yet Philip resolved to do all that could be done by a great warrior. He would at least leave his enemies a victory which they would have cause to mourn.

Within a week after the attack on Swanzey, a body of troops from Boston reached the vicinity. The Indians were obliged to retreat. Their route was traced by burning houses, and poles fixed in the earth bearing the scalps and heads of their unfortunate victims. Great consternation prevailed; but volunteers continued to take the field, and the Wampanoags were soon driven from Mount Hope [see Map, p. 84].

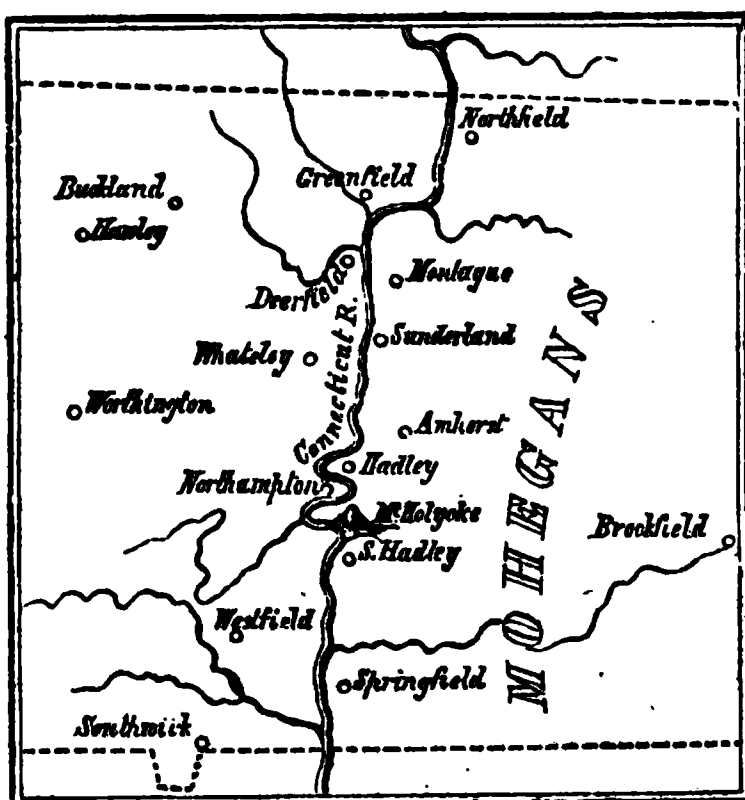
170. Philip was now a fugitive, but he was more terrible than ever. Moving rapidly among the neighboring tribes, he exhorted them, with burning eloquence, to join the common cause of their race. His appeals were successful. From

---

they begin to fear? What occurrences increased their suspicion? What was the first act of hostility committed by the natives? 169. What were Philip's feelings on hearing of this? Why? What reasons had he for fearing the worst? What did he resolve to do? What was the first movement of the colonists? In what did it result? [See Map, p. 84.—Into what water does the peninsula on which Mount Hope lies, project?] 170. What course did Philip now pursue?

Maine to Connecticut, the whole Indian population, with a few exceptions, rose to this sanguinary war. Even the Narragansetts, who had promised to remain at peace with the English, finally joined the league,—their chief no doubt remembering the wrongs of his father Miantonomoh.

The whole frontier was thus kept in constant alarm. The terrible war-whoop resounded on all sides, and no one could tell when he was safe from the prowling savage. Brookfield, Deerfield and Springfield were burned. Hadley was surprised while the people were at church. A panic seized the inhabitants. In the midst of the confusion, when the Indians were about commencing



SETTLEMENTS IN WESTERN MASSACHUSETTS.

their bloody work, a strange being bowed down with age made his appearance, recalled the people to their senses, formed them in line, led them to the charge, and completely defeated the savage assailants. He vanished as suddenly as he had appeared, and for some time the people attributed their deliverance to an angel. It was afterwards found that this mysterious personage was no other than Goffe, the regicide, who had been a general in Cromwell's army. Seeing the danger of his countrymen from his place of concealment, he had come forth for their rescue.

171. The colonists, finding vigorous measures necessary, determined to invade the country of the Narragansetts. A

What tribe joined the league, in violation of their promise? What probably incited their chief to do so? What was the state of the whole frontier? What places were burned? [See Map above.—Which of these places was farthest east? Farthest south? Farthest north? What river are Springfield and Deerfield near? Where is Hadley? Near what mountain? In what state are these places?] Give an account of what happened at Hadley. Who was the mysterious personage? 171. What was the next step of the colonists? How many men were

thousand men were raised. Josiah Winslow was placed at their head; and in December, 1675, the expedition was commenced. The ground was covered with snow, through which the invaders painfully forced their way. They found the enemy strongly intrenched in a swamp and defended by palisades. As they approached, a destructive fire was opened by the savages; but the place of those who fell was filled by others, and after a severe struggle of two hours the fort was taken. The victors fired the cabins of the Indians, and destroyed their winter stores. Many old men, women, and children, perished in the flames. A thousand warriors fell, the settlers showing as little mercy as they had received.

The power of the Narragansetts was thus utterly broken. The few survivors wandered through the cedar-swamps, with no shelter but the evergreens, and no food save the ground-nuts which they dug from under the snow. Still the proud chief Ca-non'-chet declared, "We will fight to the last man." The following April (1676), he was taken captive; but his spirit was still unsubdued. When interrogated by a young man, he refused to answer "a child", but said he would talk with a chief. On being told that death awaited him, he exclaimed, "I like it well! I shall die before I speak any thing unworthy of myself."

172. In February, 1676, Philip assailed Lancaster. Forty-two persons took refuge in the house of Mary Rowlandson, who describes that day as the "dolefulest" she ever saw. Some were fighting for their lives, others weltering in blood, the house on fire, and the savages ready to massacre those whom the flames drove forth from its shelter. Attempting to escape, Mrs. Rowlandson received a bullet in her side, and her child was wounded in her arms. Gro'-ton, Medfield, Weymouth, and Marlborough [*marl'-brüh*], were burned. Captain Wadsworth [*wodz'-wurth*], on his way to relieve Sudbury, was surprised and lost most of his party. Those who

---

raised? Who commanded them? Give an account of the expedition. How many Indians were killed and captured? What became of the survivors? What stories are related of Canonchet? 172. What place did Philip attack in February, 1676? Relate what took place there. What villages were next burned? What befell Captain Wadsworth? How were the prisoners treated? What is

were unfortunate enough to be taken, were cruelly tortured. The Indians, says the quaint Cotton Math'-er, deliberately roasted their prisoners out of the world.

Philip allowed himself no rest. He was everywhere present, yet seen by no one. Wherever an unprotected village invited attack, wherever a well-planned ambushade could cut off an inexperienced enemy, there at the right moment was the watchful chief. It became necessary to trace him to his secret hiding-places. Captain Turner started in his pursuit, and came upon him at the Falls of the Connecticut. A night attack was made, and most of the Indian braves were killed on the spot or driven down the cataract.

173. The New Hampshire tribes having abandoned the war, Philip now found his forces reduced to a feeble remnant. Driven from place to place, they often suffered the greatest extremities for food. On one occasion, 300 of his men had to go many miles to the coast, to sustain life on the clams it afforded. Still the brave chief kept the field. He even struck dead one of his followers for proposing peace.

In June, 1676, a strong force, raised with the view of exterminating the savage foe, was placed under command of the celebrated Captain Church. In the course of the summer, he killed and captured many of the dispersed Wampanoags. Among others, the wife and child of Philip were taken. "My heart breaks," cried the chieftain; "now I am ready to die!" The child alluded to was a boy of nine years, the last of the family of Massasoit. Forgetting all they owed his grandfather, the Puritans sold him as a slave in Bermuda.

174. The condition of Philip was now indeed hopeless. Deserted, betrayed, hunted down, he could hope for relief only in death. With his few remaining followers he took refuge in a swamp, in the broad hunting-grounds which had

---

said of Philip's movements? What did it become necessary to do? Give an account of the night attack at the Falls of the Connecticut. 173. What tribes had abandoned the war? What was the condition of Philip's men? How did the chief feel respecting peace? In July, 1676, what steps were taken by the colonists? During the summer, what did Church succeed in doing? Who were among the captives? What was the fate of Philip's son? 174. Where did the

belonged to his fathers. Here, while trying to obtain rest, he was disturbed by gloomy dreams. Impressed with a foreboding of evil, he bade his men save themselves and leave him to his fate. It was time. Captain Church was upon him. An Englishman aimed at the chief, but his musket missed fire, and a friendly Indian in the company seized the moment to shoot Philip through the heart. Church's army raised three cheers, and treated the fallen king with savage indignity. His body was quartered. The head was cut off and carried to Plymouth, whence it was borne round the colony in triumph. The Indian who killed him received one of his hands as a reward.

Thus ended King Philip's War, to the great joy of the colonists. It had cost the lives of some of their best men, and destroyed a vast amount of property, including six hundred houses. It had obliged the colonists to contract a heavy debt; but this, with honest pride, they determined to discharge without aid from the mother country.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### BACON'S REBELLION.

175. **THOUGH** the Virginians loved liberty, they still retained some of the old forms and customs of the English aristocracy. The eldest son inherited the whole of his father's estate; and, as the influence and wealth of the land-owners increased, the dividing line between the higher and lower classes became more distinct. The Virginians were mostly royalists, and but few republicans were elected to the new legislature formed after the restoration of Charles II.

The loyal colonists, however, were not treated with the favor which they had a right to expect from the home gov-

---

chief and his few followers finally take refuge? Describe Philip's death scene. How was his body treated? What did King Philip's war cost the colonists? What resolution did they form respecting the debt they had contracted?

175. What were still retained in Virginia? What was the character of the legislature formed after the Restoration? How were the loyal colonists treated by Parliament? What measures, injurious to their commercial interests, were

ernment. Parliament soon ordered that the imports and exports of the colonists should be carried in English vessels alone, and that their chief productions should be shipped only to the mother country. A profitable trade which had sprung up with the West Indies was thus entirely cut off.

The measures of their own legislature were hardly less offensive than those of Parliament. The right of voting was restricted to householders. The forms of the English Church were enforced on all, and a fine of £20 was laid on those who absented themselves from public worship. A special law was passed against Quakers; and Baptists were denounced as "filled with new-fangled conceits of their own heretical invention". The members of this legislature had been elected for two years; but they continued in session without regard to the expiration of their term, and fixed their own salary at 250 pounds of tobacco a day. No public improvements were attempted. Neither roads nor bridges were constructed. Governor Berkeley, whom the long possession of power had made a tyrant, expressed the common sentiment of this royalist legislature, when he said, "I thank God that there are no free schools nor printing, and I hope that we shall not have them these hundred years."

176. With such a government the people were justly dissatisfied, and, to add to their troubles, in 1675 an Indian war broke out. The Susquehannas, driven from their abodes by the Senecas, had fallen back on the Potomac and commenced depredations in Maryland. John Washington, great-grandfather of the first president of the United States, hastened to the aid of the settlers. The Indians sent to propose peace; but their ambassadors, in violation of law and justice, were put to death. The savages retaliated by devastating the frontier from the Potomac to the James, and murdering without mercy all who fell in their power.

The people solicited Gov. Berkeley to take measures for

---

passed? What offensive laws were enacted by their own legislature? How did this royalist legislature and the governor feel towards schools and printing-presses? 176. What added to the troubles of the people in 1675? How did this war originate? Who hastened to the aid of the Maryland settlers? What unjust act was committed by the colonists? How did the Indians retaliate? What did

the protection of their lives and property ; but he paid no attention to their requests, and the work of death went on unchecked. In 1676, Nathaniel Bacon, who had but recently arrived from England, was urged by the people to lead them against the enemy. The governor would not commission him ; but Bacon, moved by the solicitations of his friends, declared that if he heard of another murder he would take the field with no commission but his sword. He was shortly afterwards informed that several men had been killed on his own plantation. The brave young leader no longer hesitated. At the head of 57 men, he defeated the Indians, and then turned to meet the tyrannical Berkeley, who was already marching against him. So strongly, however, did the people express their disapprobation of the governor's course, that he concluded to abandon it. Concessions were made by Bacon, and he was reinstated in his former position. The old legislature was dissolved, and a new one of totally different principles was elected.

177. Peace was thus restored, but only for a short time. Bacon and his adherents were still resolved on obtaining the commission which Berkeley had promised but seemed determined to withhold. At last the republican leader appeared before Jamestown with nearly 500 followers, and obtained the governor's signature by force. But no sooner had he marched with his little army against the Indians, than Berkeley, dissolving the legislature, again raised his standard, and proclaimed Bacon a rebel. This proceeding gave general offence. Bacon returned, and appealed to the Virginians to overthrow a tyrannical government. The people rose in a body to support their leader, and Berkeley was compelled to flee beyond the Chesapeake.

During the temporary absence of Bacon on an expedition against the Indians, Berkeley once more got possession of

---

the people solicit Gov. Berkeley to do ? How did he treat their requests ? Whom did they then urge to lead them against the Indians ? What at first prevented him from complying with their request ? What afterwards led him to do so ? Give an account of Bacon's expedition and the difficulties to which it led. How was peace restored ? 177. What new difficulties soon after arose ? Give an account of the struggle which resulted in Berkeley's expulsion from Jamestown.

Jamestown, but was a second time driven out. To prevent it from again falling into his hands, Bacon, before retiring, burned it to the ground. Several of the patriots applied the torch to their own dwellings. A new state-house and the oldest church in the Dominion were consumed by the flames.

#### THE BURNING OF JAMESTOWN.

The people of Virginia seemed now to have gained the object for which they had struggled,—a liberal and efficient government,—when their worthy leader was seized with an illness which put an end at once to his life and their hopes. Though denounced as a traitor in his lifetime by the opponents of popular rights, Bacon has been regarded by posterity as a true friend of the people, a fearless champion of humanity, justice, and liberty.

178. No one could be found worthy of succeeding Bacon

---

During Bacon's absence, what advantage was gained by Berkeley? On his return, what took place? What did Bacon and his adherents do, to prevent Jamestown from again falling into Berkeley's hands? What buildings were destroyed? What did the Virginians now seem to have gained? How were their hopes disappointed? How was Bacon denounced in his lifetime? How is he regarded by posterity? 179. What became of the popular party after Bacon's



as the leader of the popular party. Berkeley was restored, and with his return began a series of fines, confiscations, and executions. All that had sided with "the rebels" were cruelly persecuted. Hansford, the first partisan leader that was taken, was condemned to death. The vindictive governor refused his request to be shot like a soldier; and he was hanged—the first white native of America that perished by the gibbet. "Take notice," said he on coming to the gallows, "I die a loyal subject and a lover of my country." Drummond, another republican, was soon after taken. "You are very welcome," said Berkeley on beholding him; "I am more glad to see you than any man in Virginia. You shall be hanged in half an hour." Twenty-two persons were executed before the vengeance of the implacable governor was satiated. The Assembly at last begged him to abstain from further bloodshed, and he reluctantly yielded to their request.

Berkeley soon after returned to England, where his conduct was severely censured. "The old fool," said the king, "has taken away more lives in that naked country, than I for the murder of my father."

179. The avaricious Culpepper succeeded as governor in 1680. He enriched himself by taxing and impoverishing the colony. The king after a time recalled him, and, annulling the unjust grants he had himself made to unworthy favorites, declared Virginia once more a royal province.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### SETTLEMENT OF CAROLINA.

180. THE region called CAROLINA was so named in honor of Charles IX., of France, but was first successfully colonized

---

death? How did the vindictive governor treat Hansford? How, Drummond? How many were executed? Who at last interfered? What became of Berkeley? What did the king say about him? 179. Who succeeded as governor? What course did he pursue? What did the king soon after do?

180. From whom was Carolina so called? Under whose auspices was it first settled? On whom did Charles II. bestow the territory in question? What did

under the auspices of Charles II. of England. In 1663, this monarch, in defiance of former charters and the counter-claims of France and Spain, bestowed the territory in question on Edward Clar'-en-don, Lord Al'-be-marle, the Earl of Shaftesbury [*shafts'-ber-ry*], and others.

Clarendon and his associates contemplated founding a great empire. Shaftesbury was appointed to draw up a constitution. He called to his aid the philosopher Locke, who constructed a "Grand Model", which gave almost unlimited power to a body of nobles and entirely overlooked the rights of the people. This constitution was signed in 1670. There was then neither church, court-house, nor printing-press, in Carolina. But it was the land of peace and plenty, and its great natural advantages had already attracted settlers. Some had fixed their abodes near Albemarle Sound. Others had purchased a tract on the Cape Fear River, and established a flourishing trade in staves and shingles. The intermediate country was mostly a wilderness.

Such was the condition of Carolina, when Locke's "Grand Model" of a constitution arrived. Nothing could have been less adapted to the people. There was no room for a grand series of lords among men who dressed in deer-skins and homespun. The hardy people of Carolina, "the freest of the free," had learned to govern themselves, and every effort to enforce the new constitution utterly failed.

181. The same year in which this instrument was signed, a company of emigrants sailed for Carolina under William Sayle [*sale*], and landed near the mouth of the Ashley River. Though they established a republican government and representative Assembly, they tried to carry out Locke's absurd constitution, but found it impossible. As they were at some distance from the Albemarle and Cape Fear settlements, they thought it best to form an entirely distinct government; and

---

Clarendon and his associates contemplate? Who was appointed to draw up a constitution? Whom did he summon to his aid? What was the instrument thus constructed called? What was its character? When was it signed? What was the state of things in Carolina at this time? Where had settlements been made? What was the result of the efforts made to enforce Locke's "Grand Model"? Why was this? 181. What took place the same year in which the new

hence the division into NORTH and SOUTH CAROLINA. The Indians, influenced by the Spaniards of Florida, displayed an unfriendly disposition; and the new colonists, when gathering oysters on the coast, or engaged in other work, carried guns for their protection.

In 1672, a few graziers erected their cabins on the spot where Charleston now stands [see Map, p. 151], and eight years later the town was formally founded. The surrounding country was a paradise. The river's banks were lined with stately pines, up which the yellow jasmine climbed, loading the air with the perfume of its flowers. Immigrants arrived from the northern colonies as well as England, and among the rest fifty families sent over by Charles II. to introduce the culture of grapes, almonds, olives, and the silk-worm. The attempt failed, but a valuable addition in the form of thrifty and industrious laborers was thus made to the colony. The population was further increased in 1685 by the arrival of many Hu'-gue-nots, or French Protestants, driven from their country by persecution, among the descendants of whom were some of the bravest heroes of the Revolution.

182. The same fondness for self-government that prevailed in North Carolina was also rife in the Southern colony; and Governor Col'-le-ton, sent over by the proprietors with enlarged powers to awe the people into submission, was met with open resistance. The Assembly boldly asserted its rights, defied the governor, and imprisoned his secretary. In vain he called out the militia; the people triumphed. When the news of the revolution which placed William and Mary on the throne of England was received, Colleton was banished from the province. Similar measures were taken

---

constitution was signed? Why was the territory divided into North and South Carolina? What feelings did the Indians display towards the settlers? Give an account of the founding of Charleston. Describe the surrounding country. With what view did Charles II. send over fifty families? What was the result? How was the population increased in 1685? 182. What spirit was soon manifested in South Carolina? Give an account of Gov. Colleton's difficulties with the Assembly. Where were similar measures taken? What was the state of things in both colonies in 1689?

in North Carolina ; and in 1689 we find the cause of popular rights triumphant in both colonies, and in both the prospect of a highly prosperous future.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

183. CRUELLY persecuted in New England and the mother country, a number of Quakers in 1675 took refuge in New Jersey. Within a year, one of the proprietors sold out his interest to several persons, among whom was William Penn. Longing to provide a happy home for the people of his creed, Penn resolved to try his "holy experiment" on a larger scale. In 1681, he obtained from Charles II. an extensive tract west of the Delaware, in payment of a claim against the government for £16,000, left him by his father. The king himself gave it the name of Pennsylvania, "the woody land of Penn".

184. This eminent man was a son of Admiral Penn, who had won distinction by his conquest of Jamaica and brilliant achievements during the war with Holland. He was born in 1644, and at the age of sixteen was expelled from Oxford University for embracing the doctrines of the Quakers. Incensed at his expulsion, his father beat him and turned him out of doors, but afterwards sent him to travel on the continent, in the hope that his opinions would be changed by intercourse with the world. On his return to England, he commenced the study of law ; but, on again listening to a Quaker preacher, he became so firm a convert that all his father's reproaches, and even a second expulsion from home, could not turn him from his faith.

The young Quaker was several times imprisoned for

---

183. Where did a number of Quakers settle in 1675 ? How did William Penn become interested in this colony ? What did he resolve to do ? How did he obtain an extensive tract on the Delaware ? What and by whom was it named ?  
184. Who was William Penn ? Recount his early history. For what was he several times imprisoned ? Give an account of his interview with Stillingfleet.

pleading the cause of his brethren. Once, while he was undergoing this punishment, the learned Stillingfleet was sent to convince him of his errors; but Penn requested him to tell the king that "the Tower (the building in which he was confined) was to him the worst argument in the world." On one occasion, a jury was starved two days and nights, to force them to convict him, but insisted on returning a verdict of acquittal, for which they were fined. At last, weary of persecution, Penn, with several others of his persuasion, embarked for Holland, that they might extend their doctrines on the continent. On this mission, Penn made the tour of Germany, preaching in palace and cottage. Returning to England, and finding all other efforts in behalf of his oppressed brethren useless, he became interested in the new world in the way that we have seen.

185. Within the domain granted to Penn, a number of Swedes and Dutch had already settled. These he had no desire to remove; and, soon after obtaining the grant, he sent over a copy of it with a message to the residents that he wished not to usurp their rights, but intended that they should still be governed by laws of their own making. Three vessels full of emigrants soon after set sail, with instructions for building a city. Each house was to have a large garden attached, so that it might be "a greene country town".

In 1682, Penn himself sailed for the new world with a hundred settlers. He had a long and melancholy voyage of nine weeks, during which thirty of his companions died of small-pox. He was warmly welcomed on his arrival, and, sailing up the Delaware, soon reached a place fringed with pine-trees, where he determined to locate his city. The precise spot was fixed in February, 1683. The ground was

---

How was a jury that tried him once treated? What did persecution at last drive him to do? What was his object on this mission? 185. Who had already settled within the domain granted to Penn? What message did he send them? How many vessels sailed soon after? What instructions were given to the emigrants? What took place in 1682? Describe Penn's voyage. Give an account of the founding of Philadelphia. What does the name mean? From whom was the

bought from the Swedes, and the city thus commenced was named Philadelphia, *brotherly love*, in token of the feeling which, it was hoped, would prevail among the inhabitants.

186. Penn soon afterwards made a memorable treaty with the Indians, under an elm in what is now called Kensington. The tree was carefully preserved till 1810, when it was blown down during a severe storm. A monument has since been erected to mark the spot.

Here, beside the Delaware, the grave chieftains of the

WILLIAM PENN.

woods assemble. The old men take their seats in the form of a half moon on the ground, while the younger warriors arrange themselves behind in a similar form. The new governor, whose friendly messages and letters have inspired them with confidence, comes in the central space before them, distinguished from his companions only by the blue sash around his waist. "We meet," he says, "on the broad pathway of truth and good will. No advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love. I will not call you children, for parents do sometimes chide their children too severely; nor brothers only, for brothers differ. The friendship between you and me I will not compare to a chain, for that the rains might rust or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were divided into two parts. We are all one flesh and one blood."

---

ground bought? 186. Where did Penn make a treaty with the Indians? When was this elm blown down? How is the spot marked? Describe Penn's meeting

The Indians trusted his words, and received his presents, giving him in return a belt of wampum, the emblem of friendship. "We will live," said they, "with William Penn and his children in love so long as the moon and the sun shall endure." This treaty was never broken. The Red Men handed down the words of Penn from generation to generation; and, while other white settlements suffered severely from Indian wars, not a single Quaker is known to have been molested by the natives. Penn often visited their wigwams, and took part in their sports and exercises.

187. The only difficulty that disturbed the peace of Pennsylvania was the settlement of the line that separated it from Maryland. Penn and Baltimore could not agree on a boundary. The quarrel was carried to England, and there settled by a grant of half the land between Chesapeake Bay and the Delaware to Penn. The present boundary was fixed by two surveyors, Mason and Dixon, in 1761, and is often referred to as Mason and Dixon's line. The territory now called Delaware was thus at first included in Pennsylvania, under the name of "the three lower counties"; but afterwards, in consequence of the dissatisfaction of the people, it was made a separate colony.

188. The government established by Penn was strictly republican. An Assembly was formed of six members from each county, who held office for a year. All sects were tolerated. Every freeman who believed in God and abstained from labor on the Lord's day, could vote and hold office. Parents were required to bring up their children to some useful trade. The only crime punishable with death was murder.

Immigrants arrived in great numbers from Holland, Germany, and Great Britain. The peaceful colony grew and prospered. In August, 1683, Philadelphia consisted of three

---

with the Indians. What did he tell them? What reply did they make? How did the Indians show their regard for it? How did Penn display his friendship for them? 187. What difficulty disturbed the peace of Pennsylvania? How was the quarrel settled? What is meant by Mason and Dixon's line? What is said of the territory now called Delaware? 188. What was the character of Penn's government? Mention some of its provisions. From what countries did

or four cottages, and the deer ran among the trees on which the surveyor had "blazed out" the courses of the streets. In 1685, it contained 600 houses. It grew more in three years than New York did in half a century.

In 1684, Penn left his colony, now firmly established and containing a population of 7,000, for the mother country. During his absence, difficulties arose. The Assembly encroached on his rights; and the rents, which were his only remuneration for the expense of planting the colony, were appropriated in part to the public service. After trying for a time to enforce his authority, Penn yielded to the Assembly, reserving to himself only the right of veto.

189. With the fall of James II., who both as Duke of York and as king had been a firm friend to Penn, ended the favor which the pure and peaceful Quaker had enjoyed. He was charged with abandoning his principles and favoring the cause of the deposed king. His proprietary rights in Pennsylvania were taken from him; and, while the colony which owed every thing to his wisdom and integrity was growing in power and importance, he closed his life in obscurity and gloom. He died encumbered with debt in 1718; at which time, the population of Philadelphia amounted to about 10,000.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### INDIAN HISTORY.—JESUIT MISSIONARIES.

190. THE tribe that received William Penn in the friendly manner just described belonged to the Algonquin family, and were called Len'-ni Len'-a-pees in their own language, and Delawares in English. According to their traditions,

---

immigrants arrive? Describe Philadelphia, as it was in 1683. In 1685, how many houses did it contain? How did its growth compare with that of New York? In 1684, what did Penn do? What difficulties arose in his absence? How were they settled? 189. Throughout his whole career, how did James II. conduct himself towards Penn? On his fall, what happened? What is said of the close of Penn's life? When did he die? What was the population of Philadelphia at that time?

190. What tribe was it that received William Penn? To what family did they belong? What did their traditions say about their former history? What did



they had once lived far off in the northwest, and had united with the Iroquois in driving out the mound-builders from the valley of the Mississippi. In the fertile region thus acquired, they lived for a time in peace; till their hunters, having ascended the mountains on the east, announced that great streams flowed down from them into a vast salt lake beyond, watering a pleasant and unoccupied land. On this, part of the Lenapees, migrated eastward, and took possession of the region traversed by the Susquehanna, the Delaware, and the Potomac. Those who remained in the west became known at a later day as Illinois.

Shortly before their interview with Penn, the Delawares had been defeated by their former allies, the Iroquois, and reduced to so powerless a state that they were called "*women*" by their conquerors. But they had never acknowledged the Iroquois as masters. The renowned Tam'-a-nend, the greatest of their warriors and statesmen, was still living at this time. He was afterwards known as St. Tam'-ma-ny, and different associations have since been called by his name.

191. During the establishment of the various European settlements, important events were transpiring among the Indians of America. The chief of these was the formation of the Iroquois confederacy, about the year 1539. It embraced five nations, the Mo'-hāwks, Oneidas [*o-ni'-daz*], Onondagas [*on-on-daw'-gaz*], Cay-u'-gas, and Sen'-e-cas. With these the Tuscaroras afterwards united, when they were known by the name of "the Six Nations". This confederacy was the work of a great and wise chief, Hiawatha [*he-a-wah'-tha*]. The Indians regarded him as the special favorite of the Great Spirit, and believed that he was taken up to heaven in a snow-white canoe amid strains of celestial music.

The original seat of the Five Nations was in what is now the central part of New York. But, after a series of bril-

---

part of the Lenapees do? What were those who remained afterwards called? What had happened shortly before the interview of the Delawares with Penn? Who was still living at that time? What have been named from Tamanend? 191. What important confederacy was formed about 1539? What nations did it embrace? Who brought it about? What was the belief of the Indians respecting Hiawatha? What was the original seat of the Five Nations? How far did

liant conquests towards the close of the seventeenth century, they claimed the whole country from the St. Lawrence to the mouth of the Ohio. Their victorious career was for a time stopped by the Miamis and Illinois, who with savage ferocity drank from the skulls of their slaughtered chiefs, and ate the still quivering hearts of their tortured warriors. But at last these also were vanquished. Such was the success of the Iroquois that even to remote tribes their very name became a terror.

192. We have described the efforts of Eliot to convert the Indians of Massachusetts. Some time before, Jesuit missionaries had taken the field among the northern and western tribes. The Mohawks had been visited in 1617, a mission had been established among the Hurons, a college and convent had been founded at Quebec, and the standards of the Roman Catholic Church and of France had been set up at various points from Maine to Lake Huron.

193. Passing over several who perished in the wilderness from accident and hardship, and others who suffered martyrdom in the war between the Hurons and Iroquois, we come to Allouez [*al-loo-ā'*]. In 1665, he explored the country about Lake Superior, and discovered the Pictured Rocks on the southern shore, where the sandstone, 300 feet high, is worn into forms resembling the hoary walls and broken columns of an ancient ruin. Here he taught the Chippeways and Sioux, and was told by the latter of the Mississippi, or "great river".

194. Marquette [*mar-ke'*], a devoted Jesuit missionary, next took the field. After establishing the important station of Mack'-i-naw, in northern Michigan [see Map, p. 158], he started with Joliet [*zhole-yā'*], in 1673, to discover the Mississippi. Two bark canoes bore their dried meat and corn.

---

they extend their conquests? What enemies stopped their victorious career for a time? 192. Among what Indians did Elliot labor? Who had taken the field before him? What was done by these early Jesuit missionaries? 193. Who is the first specially mentioned? Give an account of his discoveries. What did he learn from the Sioux? 194. Who next took the field? What station did he establish? [See Map, p. 158.—Between what two lakes is Mackinaw situated?] Whom did he take as a companion? What advice did they receive from the

The Indians they met advised them to give up the journey, declaring that they would have to encounter, not only hostile nations and intense heats, but monsters and demons that would certainly destroy them. The zealous Frenchmen, however, were not discouraged. Passing through Green Bay, they found a village where Allouez had been before. The cross he had erected was loaded with bows and arrows, skins and belts, hung there as offerings to the Great Spirit. They soon struck the Wisconsin, and finally, to their inexpressible joy, reached the Mississippi. Descending the river, they held intercourse from time to time with the Indians on its banks, whom they found gentle and friendly, though brave, and already supplied with arms from the European settlements. After reaching the mouth of the Arkansas, feasted by the natives at different points with hominy and dog-flesh, they retraced their course in safety to Green Bay.

The zealous Marquette soon after undertook another expedition, to the Indians of Illinois, whose hearts were won by his gentleness and love. While sailing along the eastern coast of Lake Michigan, on his return, he went ashore to perform a religious ceremony. His men waited long for his reappearance; and, on going to seek him, found that he had died during his prayers. They buried him near the mouth of a stream, called from him the Marquette. Years after, when the Indian was tossed on the boisterous surface of the lake, he would seek to calm the tempest and still the waves by calling on the name of the pious missionary.

195. La Salle [*lah sal*] next engaged in explorations in the west, under a commission from Louis XIV., of France. Though possessed of limited means, La Salle was a man of wonderful courage, endurance, and enterprise. With the Jesuit Hen'-ne-pin, who wrote an account of his discoveries, he started from Fort Fron'-te-nac [see Map, p. 158], in the

---

Indians? What did they find, shortly after leaving Green Bay? What river did they finally reach? How far did they descend it? What kind of tribes did they find on its banks? What other expedition did Marquette undertake? Give an account of his death. Years after, what were the Indians in the habit of doing? 195. Who next explored the western country? By whom was he commissioned? What was his character? Whom did he take as a companion? [See Map, p.

first sail-boat that ever crossed Lake Ontario. After losing his vessel, performing a long journey partly overland and partly with canoes, building forts and trading-houses, and meeting with a variety of romantic adventures, La Salle finally returned to Canada. A portion of his company, among whom was Hennepin, reached the Mississippi, and gave the name of St. Anthony to the falls in the upper part of that river. In 1681, he again started, and this time reached the Mississippi himself. After sailing down it to the Gulf of Mexico (1682) and taking possession of the country for his king, in whose honor he named it Louisiana, he returned, and crossed the ocean to France for further means.

He was there intrusted with the command of an expedition fitted out for the purpose of colonizing Louisiana. Attempting to reach the scene of his former discoveries from the south, he was unable to find the great river he had descended. In the effort his store-ship was wrecked, and there was no alternative but to seek the desired spot by land. At one time we read of him in Texas, at another in northern Mexico. His men sunk under their hardships, and La Salle himself became soured and discouraged. "The hidden river" was nowhere to be found, and at last he resolved to traverse the continent in search of it as far as Canada, and, if still unsuccessful, to return to France for a new outfit. He had reached a branch of the Trinity River, in Texas, when he was murdered by some of his men, whom repeated disappointments incited to the crime. But few of La Salle's company survived the hardships of this journey to Canada. They had left a colony on the Colorado [*col-o-rah'-do*]; but it was soon destroyed by the Spaniards, who based on this conquest a claim to Texas.

---

158.—Where is Fort Frontenac? What place now occupies its site? Give an account of La Salle's first expedition. What did some of his companions succeed in doing? What falls did they name? In 1682, what did La Salle do? In whose honor did he name the country? On his return to France, with what was he intrusted? How did he attempt to reach Louisiana? Recount his efforts. What resolve did he at last form? What prevented him from carrying it out? What became of most of his companions? Where did they leave a colony? What was its fate?

## CHAPTER XIX.

## NEW YORK, TO 1689.—FRENCH AND IROQUOIS WAR.

196. NICHOLS, who took New York from the Dutch in 1664, acted as governor for three years. Contenting himself with extorting large sums of money from the land-owners, he neither attempted reforms, nor granted the people any greater liberty than they had before enjoyed. In 1667, Nichols was succeeded by Lovelace. War soon after broke out between England and Holland. An attack was expected by the authorities of New York, and the city was put in a state of defence. The Dutch made their appearance in the harbor, as had been anticipated; but, instead of attempting an assault, they bribed the officer in command of the fort, and thus quietly obtained possession of the city and the whole province.

197. By a treaty made in 1674, New York was restored to the English, and Sir Edmund Andros became its governor under a new patent granted to James, Duke of York. One of his first acts was to punish the traitor who had admitted the Dutch into the city, by having his sword broken over his head in front of the City Hall. The new governor tried to extend his authority over Connecticut and New Jersey, but was firmly resisted and failed in both attempts. The people of New York, also, complained loudly of his encroachments on their rights, and demanded a voice in their own government. The Duke of York, whose instructions had been faithfully followed by Andros, at a loss what course to pursue, applied to William Penn for counsel. This friend of popular liberty advised him to abandon his arbitrary measures; and without delay Andros was recalled, and Thomas

---

196. Who took New York from the Dutch? How long did he act as governor? What is said of his course? By whom was he succeeded? What happened during the war between England and Holland which soon after broke out? 197. What took place in 1674? Who became governor of New York? What was one of his first acts? What did the new governor try to do? What difficulties did he encounter in New York? To whom did the duke apply for counsel?

Dongan was sent over as governor, with directions to recognize the authority of the Assembly (1683).

198. The most important act of Dongan's administration was the conclusion of a treaty with the Iroquois. Anticipating an invasion by the French, the chiefs of the Mohawks and other tribes met the governors of New York and Virginia at Albany, and interchanged pledges of friendship. They were none too soon; for the next month [August, 1684], De la Barre [*bar*], governor of Canada, made a descent upon their hunting-grounds. Before he encountered the Indians, sickness prostrated most of his soldiers. The cunning Frenchman then sought to make the Iroquois believe that he had come merely to smoke the pipe of peace. Though they understood the state of the case, the Red Men allowed their enemies to depart, and the invaders returned in disgrace to Canada.

De la Barre was superseded by Denonville [*dū-nong-veel'*]. The latter proceeded to establish a fort at Niagara, despite the remonstrances of the governor of New York. At this time (1686), began the conflict between French and English claims which afterwards led to a destructive war.

199. Instructions were received by the new governor to capture as many Indians as he could and send them to France. Accordingly, a number of Iroquois were enticed into a French fort, under pretence that a treaty was to be made, and were there seized. They were afterwards sent to Marseilles [*mar-sälz'*], and consigned to the galleys. A large army of Indians immediately assembled to attack Montreal. Denonville appeased their fury by complying with their demands; and the war would probably have ended, had it not been for the machinations of a Huron chief. Fearing an attack from the Five Nations, if peace should be made, he craftily led them to believe that the French were dealing treacherously, and had invited him to aid in their destruc-

---

What advice did he receive? What was the consequence? 198. What was the most important act of Dongan's administration? Where was this treaty made? What took place the next month? Give an account of De la Barre's expedition. By whom was he superseded? What cause of difficulty arose between Denonville and the governor of New York? 199. What instructions did Denonville

tion. Incensed beyond measure, the Iroquois no longer delayed the invasion of Canada [1689]. They suddenly fell on Montreal, laid waste the city, massacred a thousand of the inhabitants, and overran a great part of Canada. The French in despair blew up Forts Frontenac and Niagara. Their power was now nearly extinguished, not a single town remaining in their possession between the St. Lawrence and Mackinaw.

---

## CHAPTER XX.

### NEW ENGLAND UNDER ANDROS AND PHIPPS.

200. WHEN the Duke of York became King of England under the title of James II. [1685], he revoked the charters of the northern colonies, and made Sir Edmund Andros governor of all New England. Remembering how he had been treated a few years before in New York, Andros determined to carry out to the letter the principles of his despotic master. Every right that the people had enjoyed, was now denied them, while their taxes were largely increased. The Church of England was established contrary to their wishes, and meetings of the people, except for the choice of town officers, were prohibited.

201. After dissolving the Assembly of Rhode Island, Andros proceeded to Connecticut and demanded the surrender of its charter. Governor Treat remonstrated with him, but in vain. The Assembly, then in session at Hartford, engaged in an earnest debate on the subject, which was protracted till evening; and the people crowded into the hall to hear the discussion, and take a last look of the precious parchment

---

receive? How were they carried out? What did this wanton act provoke the Indians to do? Give an account of their invasion of Canada. Upon this reverse, what did the French do? What is said of their power in the new world at this time?

200. What did James II. do on becoming king? What course did Andros pursue? Mention some of his offensive measures. 201. What did Andros do in Rhode Island? What, in Connecticut? What took place in the Assembly

which lay open on a table. Suddenly the lights were extinguished, and when they were reproduced the charter could not be found. A patriot named Wadsworth had escaped with it through the crowd and concealed it in the hollow of a stately oak. This tree was called, in commemoration, the Charter Oak, and was

until overthrown by a violent storm in the year 1856. Though the instrument on which their liberties were founded was thus saved, Andros assumed the government. His next step was to supersede Dongan in New York. Thus, in 1688, all the English possessions north of Pennsylvania were united under one despotic government.

This state of things, however, did not last long. In the spring of 1689, news reached Boston, where Andros had fixed his head-quarters, that James II. was no longer king, but had been displaced by William of Orange. The people immediately arose in open revolt. Their former magistrates were restored. Andros was arrested, and sent to England for trial. Representatives were elected, and it was voted that the rights before enjoyed should be resumed. Similar movements were made in the other colonies; and in Connecticut the venerable parchment was drawn uninjured from the hollow oak.

202. The next two years were spent by the people of

---

hall? Where was the charter concealed? What became of this oak? What was the next step of Andros? What put an end to his authority? After his expulsion, what measures were taken by the people? 203. In what did the



Massachusetts in trying to obtain a charter from William III. They finally succeeded, though the instrument was of a totally different character from what they had expected. Many of their privileges were taken away, including the election of officers, who were thenceforth to be appointed by the governor or the crown. The boundaries of the colony were extended to the St. Lawrence, and an exposed frontier was thus added, which it cost much to defend. To reconcile the people to these changes, a native of New England, Sir William Phipps, was appointed governor of Massachusetts. He had acquired a large fortune by raising plate, jewels, and treasure from the wreck of a Spanish vessel in Hispaniola; but, being ignorant and bigoted, he did little to advance the interests of the colony.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

### KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

203. A MUTUAL jealousy had long existed between the French and English in America. The former were far inferior to the latter in number and strength, particularly after their disastrous war with the Iroquois. But they had some strong posts left, and claimed a vast tract, including Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, Labrador, Hudson's Bay, Canada, the valley of the Mississippi, and Texas. Their title to these extensive regions rested on the explorations of French Jesuits, who had set up the arms of France in various parts of the wilderness, and acquired great influence with the native tribes.

204. In 1689, while still ignorant of the burning of Montreal, the French government formally declared war against

---

people of Massachusetts spend the next two years? Mention some of the provisions of the charter they obtained. How was it sought to reconcile the people of New England to these changes? How had Phipps acquired a fortune? What was his character?

203. How did the French and English in America feel towards each other? How did they compare in number and strength? What regions did the French claim? On what did their claim rest? 204. What did the French government

England. Count Frontenac was made governor of Canada, with instructions to protect the French possessions, to destroy the English stations around Hudson's Bay, and to make a descent on New York in conjunction with a French fleet. On reaching the St. Lawrence and learning the losses of his countrymen, he found it necessary to alter his plans; and, sending out emissaries, he excited the tribes in alliance with France to dig up the tomahawk against the English. The Abenakis [*ab-e-nak'-eez*], a branch of the Lenni Lenapees living in Maine [see Map, p. 10], were the first to commence hostilities. They had been treacherously dealt with by English settlers thirteen years before, and rejoiced at this opportunity of revenge.

Two of their squaws were sent to the house of an aged English magistrate named Waldron, and, pleading fatigue, obtained permission to lodge there for the night. Rising after the family had retired, they opened the doors to their confederates. The savages placed Mr. Waldron on a chair on his own table, and bade him "judge Indians" now, as he had done before. A number of them owed him money for goods. Each, drawing his knife with inhuman barbarity across the old man's breast, cried in turn, "Thus I cross out my account." At last, fainting from loss of blood, the unfortunate man fell to the floor. The Indians, after burning his house and others in the neighborhood, returned to their villages with 29 captives. The English settlements on the Penobscot and St. John's were attacked in like manner, and in a short time the Abenakis recovered the whole of their former hunting-grounds.

205. Frontenac now resolved to strike a bold blow, in the hope of inspiring the Iroquois, the old enemies of his nation, with respect for French prowess, and winning them over from the side of the English. Accordingly, in 1690, he fitted

---

do in 1689? Whom did they send out to Canada? What were his instructions? What made him alter his plans? What means did he take for injuring the English? Who were the first to commence hostilities? What made them rejoice at the opportunity? Give an account of their barbarous murder of Mr. Waldron. How many captives did they carry off? What English settlements were attacked at the same time by the savages? 205. In 1690, what did Fronte-

out a force of French and Indians for an attack on the New York frontier. A rapid march of twenty-two days brought them to the neighborhood of Schenectady [*ske-nek'-ta-de*]. About an hour before midnight, they entered one of the gates in the palisade wall that surrounded the village, and found all the inhabitants asleep, even to the sentinel at his post. The terrible war-whoop was raised, and the work of massacre went on for two hours. Completely taken by surprise, the settlers hardly attempted resistance. Some were butchered in their beds; others hid themselves till the flames of their burning dwellings drove them on the tomahawks of their foes; a few escaped half-dressed into the woods in the hope of reaching Albany, but were either lost amid the snow or suffered incredible hardships. At sunset, there had been forty well-built houses in this thriving village; the next morning, hardly one was standing. About sixty of the inhabitants had fallen.

206. At last the English were roused to a sense of their danger; and in 1690, at the suggestion of Massachusetts, delegates from all the colonies as far south as Maryland assembled in New York. They resolved to fit out two expeditions for the conquest of Canada,—a land force to invade the country by way of Lake Champlain, and a fleet to operate against Quebec. The command of the latter was given to Sir William Phipps. After taking Port Royal, Phipps sailed leisurely up the St. Lawrence. But meanwhile Frontenac had received intelligence of his approach through an Indian runner. When Phipps, therefore, arrived before Quebec, he found it prepared for the attack. His summons to surrender was treated with contempt; and, as the land force which he expected, had not arrived, without attempting an assault, he reëmbarked his troops and sailed for home. Violent storms shattered his ships; and, when Phipps returned to Boston, it was found that nothing had been gained by the expedition but an exhausted treasury.

---

nac do? Give an account of the attack on Schenectady. How many houses were destroyed? How many of the inhabitants perished? 206. What did the English colonies do in 1690? How many expeditions did they resolve to fit out?

207. King William's War continued to afflict the colonies till the peace of Rys'-wick, in 1697. The later movements of the French were directed principally against the Iroquois, who still remained faithful to the English. Frontenac invaded their country several times, burned their crops, destroyed their castles, and took a number of prisoners, who were cruelly tortured by the "Christian Indians" in his employ. The latter, also, made descents from time to time on the frontier settlements of the English. One of these furnishes a remarkable instance of courage in a feeble woman.

In March, 1697, a party of Indians attacked a house in Haverhill [*hā'-ver-il*], Mass. [see Map, p. 84]. Its owner, Mr. Dustin, was at work in a neighboring field, and before he could get home the Indians had dragged his sick wife from her bed and dashed out the brains of her new-born infant. Mr. Dustin tried to defend his seven remaining children, bidding them run to the woods while he kept the Indians off with his gun. The party that had taken Mrs. Dustin drove her and her nurse, almost overcome by fatigue and cold, several miles beyond Concord, N. H. Here they stopped for a time; but Mrs. Dustin, hearing that she was to be taken to a distant village, resolved to escape or die. There was a boy in the family of her captor, who had been a prisoner for a year. This boy, at her request, asked his master the proper mode of striking a blow so as to cause instant death. The Indian willingly gave the desired information, and also showed him how to take off a scalp. These instructions being communicated to Mrs. Dustin, shortly before dawn she silently awoke the boy and her nurse, and assigned their respective parts. The work was quickly done. Ten of the sleeping Indians were killed, one woman escaped, and a child was spared. After scalping the savages, that she might prove her story on her return, Mrs. Dustin armed herself with gun and tomahawk, and started for the Merrimack

---

To whom was the command of the naval expedition intrusted? Give an account of Phipps's operations. 207. How long did King William's War afflict the colonies? Against whom were the later movements of the French directed? How were the Iroquois treated? From whom did the frontier settlements of the

with her companions. Having procured a canoe, they descended the river, and were soon among their friends, who had mourned them as dead.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

### WITCHCRAFT IN NEW ENGLAND.

208. In 1692, while King William's War was still at its height, New England suffered from a strange delusion, which originated with a few superstitious ministers and magistrates. Some children of Mr. Parris, who was settled over the church of Salem (now Danvers), Mass., being affected in an unusual manner, their father fancied that they were bewitched, and scourged an Indian servant till she confessed that she was a witch, and had caused their illness. Cotton Mather, an eccentric but influential minister, took the matter up, and great excitement spread through the colony. Public prosecutions were commenced, and a gallows was erected for the guilty at the end of the town. In June, a poor and friendless old woman was tried. Convicted on the evidence of her neighbors, who charged her with being the cause of various misfortunes that had befallen them, she was forthwith hanged. The wildest assertions were blindly credited. Mather himself tells us that the old woman only looked at the spacious meeting-house of Salem, and an invisible demon tore down a part of it.

209. Five women, "all of blameless lives," were convicted at the next session of the court; and these, with five others afterwards found guilty, were hanged. The officer ordered to arrest them refused to assist in what he considered murder, and was himself seized and executed. The excitement became intense. People actually fancied themselves

---

English suffer? Tell the story about Mrs. Dustin. [See Map, p. 84.—Where is Haverhill?]

208. From what did New England suffer in 1692? Where did this delusion originate? In whose family? Who took the matter up? What punishment was decided on for the guilty? What took place in June? What does Mather tell us about this old woman? 209. Soon after this, how many were hanged on

bewitched, and gave evidence against their relations and friends. Testimony that would have been excluded in other cases, was received and acted on. Weak-minded fanatics, children, and even those who were known to have perjured themselves, were admitted as witnesses. When other means failed, the accused were tortured until they acknowledged themselves guilty. One young woman was so wrought upon as to give evidence against her grandfather, but afterwards took back what she had said. The judges, while they accepted her testimony, rejected her recantation, and sent the old man to the gallows.

Among those hanged in August, was a minister named Burroughs [*bur'-roze*], who had denounced the proceedings of Mather and his associates, and declared that there was no such thing as witchcraft. He made a speech on the scaffold, and repeated the Lord's Prayer so affectingly as to draw tears from the spectators. At this moment Mather appeared among the crowd on horseback, and quieted the people with quotations from Scripture. An old man of eighty, refusing to plead because he saw that every trial resulted in conviction, was barbarously pressed to death. This was followed by the execution of eight more unfortunate victims on the gallows. Twenty in all had now become martyrs to the delusion, while upwards of fifty had been frightened or tortured into confession.

210. At last the people began to awake to the horror of such scenes. When the legislature of Massachusetts assembled in October, 1692, numerous petitions for protection were presented. Mather, who gloried in these judicial murders, had feared this; and, in a work entitled "The Wonders of the Invisible World", he sought to prove that the heinous sin of witchcraft really existed among them, and that the proper course had been taken to root it out. Notwithstanding this, the legislature promptly abolished the special court

---

the charge of witchcraft? What was done to an officer who refused to arrest the accused? Describe the excitement that prevailed. What story is told of a young woman? What is said of the execution of Burroughs? What was done to an old man of eighty? By what was this barbarous execution followed? How many in all fell victims to the delusion? 210. What step did the people at last

in which the pretended trials had been conducted. Prosecutions were again attempted; but the eyes of the people were opened, and the accused were acquitted as fast as they were tried. The despotic power of a few fanatics was broken; there was no more hanging or torturing. Most of those who had participated in the bloody work afterwards confessed their error, but Mather defended his course to the last.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

NEW YORK UNDER LEISLER, SLOUGHTER, FLETCHER, AND BELLAMONT.—CAPTAIN KIDD.

211. WHEN news of the fall of James II. was received in New York, a committee of safety, formed of ten citizens, took possession of the fort, and intrusted the government to Jacob Leisler [*lice'-ler*]. His authority was denied by Col. Bayard [*bi'-ard*] and the magistrates of Albany, who held commissions from James II. Having forwarded to King William a candid statement of what had been done, Leisler sent his son-in-law to demand the submission of Albany. This was refused with an open defiance of his power. Bayard continued his opposition; but in a few weeks he fell into Leisler's hands, and was consigned to prison.

Meanwhile the king had appointed Sloughter [*slaw'-ter*] governor, and in 1691 he arrived. Leisler immediately surrendered the fort, but had no sooner done so than he was arrested on a charge of treason. He had ruled nearly two years by the authority of the people, and with the silent consent of the king; but he was now in the power of the governor's council, of which Bayard was a member, and his fate was sealed. A court composed of persons whose opin-

---

take for protection? How did Mather try to keep up the delusion? What course did the legislature pursue? What was the consequence? What is said of those who had participated in the bloody work?

211. What took place in New York, when the news of James Second's fall was received? Who denied Leisler's authority? What steps did Leisler take for enforcing it? How did he treat Bayard? Whom, meanwhile, had the king made

ions were already formed, pronounced him guilty; and Gov. Sloughter, while intoxicated, was persuaded to sign his death-

#### LEISLER ON THE GALLOWE.

in the presence of an immense crowd, who, though overawed by English soldiers, testified with groans and shrieks their abhorrence of the execution. Leisler in his dying speech maintained that his course had been that of a sincere patriot. The people regarded him as a martyr to their cause, and saved pieces of his garments as precious relics. During the execution, his enemies were drowning the rebukes of conscience in wine and revelry.

After making a treaty with the Iroquois at Albany, Sloughter died. He was succeeded by an intemperate tyrant named Fletcher. Fletcher employed himself mainly in quarrelling with the people, whose rights, since the revocation of their

---

governor? On his arrival, what did Leisler do? What charge was brought against him? By whose authority had he held the government? Give an account of his trial. Describe his execution. With whom did Sloughter make a



charter, had been sadly curtailed. In 1698, he gave place to the Earl of Bel'-la-mont, a man of enlightened and liberal views. Bellamont's commission gave him authority over New York, and the whole of New England except Rhode Island and Connecticut.

212. About this time, a person named William Kidd gained a wide notoriety. Having proved himself an able naval officer in the war with France, he was appointed commander of a vessel fitted out by private enterprise in England to cruise against the pirates in the eastern seas. Not finding the voyage as profitable as was expected, Kidd and his men turned pirates themselves. After taking many vessels and accumulating a large amount of treasure, Kidd ran for the West Indies, and there learned that a proclamation had been issued against him in England. In spite of this, he ventured to return to New York. Fletcher, the old patron of pirates, was no longer governor; and Kidd, after secretly depositing part of his treasure and distributing the balance among his crew, proceeded to Boston to meet Bellamont, who was one of the projectors of the enterprise. The latter, not satisfied with his statements, arrested him, and sent him to London for trial. Here, after some delay, granted him in the hope that he would implicate those who had sent him out, Kidd was convicted. He was hanged in chains, in May, 1701, protesting his innocence to the last, and declaring that he had attacked none but French vessels, and consequently violated no law, France and England being then at war.

213. Repeated attempts have been made to find the treasure supposed to have been buried by Captain Kidd. One tradition says that his vessel was taken up the Hudson, and sunk with its valuable cargo at the foot of the Highlands. The general opinion, however, points to Long Island Sound

---

treaty? By whom was he succeeded? What was Fletcher's character? In what did he mainly employ himself? To whom did Fletcher give place? What was included in Bellamont's charter? 212. Shortly before this, who had become notorious? What was Kidd's early history? What led him and his men to turn pirates? After accumulating a large amount of treasure, what islands did Kidd make for? Where did he then go? What action was taken by Bellamont? What became of Kidd? What did he declare to the last? 213. What attempts

as the place, and a box known to have belonged to the pirates was actually found on Gardiner's Island, containing 750 ounces of gold and 847 ounces of silver, besides other valuables. The balance of Kidd's ill-gotten gains have been diligently sought for by treasure-hunters, but in vain. A small island in the Sound, visible from the Connecticut shore, is still known as "Kidd's Island". A cave is shown where the pirates are said to have slept, and a deep hollow in a rock is called "Kidd's punch-bowl". Throughout the whole neighborhood, according to the old song,

"Ever since the days of Captain Kidd,  
The Yankees think there's money hid."

---

## CHAPTER XXIV

SOUTH CAROLINA FROM 1690 TO 1700.

214. AFTER Colleton was deposed in South Carolina, Soth'el, one of the proprietaries and a man of the people's choice, was appointed governor. Though his administration was distinguished by some wise measures, such as the admission of Huguenots to the privileges of citizens, it was on the whole unsatisfactory; and, threatened with legal proceedings, Sothel deemed it best to withdraw. His successors tried in vain to reconcile the differences between the people and the proprietaries. It was not till 1695, when the government fell into the hands of an honest Quaker named Archdale, in whom all parties had confidence, that harmony was restored and prosperity revived. Archdale made a treaty with the Spaniards of St. Augustine, the sincerity of which was proved by mutual acts of kindness. There was now nothing to check

---

have been repeatedly made? Where is it thought the treasure was buried? What was found on Gardiner's Island? Where is "Kidd's Island"? What are still shown? What does an old song say?

214. After Colleton's deposition, who was appointed governor of South Carolina? What course did he pursue? Why did he resign? What is said of his successors? Who was at last made governor? With whom did he conclude

the growth of the colony. Scotland and New England both contributed emigrants, who found in the rich soil and genial climate of Carolina all they desired. The Church of England was established by law, but other sects were tolerated.

215. Rice was first raised in 1696, from seed sent to Archdale from Madagascar. The attempt had been previously made, but without success. In 1698, it was first exported, 16 casks being sent to England.

The cultivation of cotton in America commenced at Jamestown, in 1621; but, not proving profitable, it was abandoned. In 1702, both cotton and silk were produced in South Carolina. The importance of the former was hardly appreciated till a century later.

---

## CHAPTER XXV.

### FRENCH SETTLEMENTS IN THE SOUTHWEST.—CHICKASAW WAR.

216. THOUGH La Salle had taken possession of Louisiana in behalf of France, the Spanish also claimed it under the discoveries of Ponce de Leon and De Soto. Resolved to secure a region whose future importance he foresaw, the French king, immediately after the peace of Ryswick, sent out a company under D'Iberville [*de-bare-veel'*] to colonize the country. They entered "the hidden river" in 1699. Disappointed in what he saw, D'Iberville thought he was mistaken in the place, till the Indians brought him a letter that had been written to La Salle by his lieutenant, which they had kept with superstitious awe for thirteen years. He founded Biloxi [*be-lok'-se*], and in 1700, ascending the river to where Natchez now stands, selected a site for a military

---

a treaty? What was the condition of the colony at this time? 215. When was rice first raised? Where did the seed come from? When was it first exported? When and where was the cultivation of cotton commenced? Where were cotton and silk produced in 1702? How long before the importance of cotton was appreciated?

216. Who contested the French claim to Louisiana? On what grounds? What steps did the French king take to secure the country? When did they enter the Mississippi? What did D'Iberville at first think? What convinced him that he

station and named it Fort Rosalie [*ro-za-le'*]. Thus was Mississippi first settled.

D'Iberville having died, the king of France in 1712 granted Crozat [*kro-zah'*] a monopoly of Louisiana for fifteen years. Finding no mines, and disappointed in the hope of increasing his wealth, in five years he surrendered the colony to the king, leaving in it only seven hundred souls.

217. The next thing tried for the advancement of French interests in Louisiana, was the grand Mississippi Scheme. John Law, a ruined gambler from Scotland, devised a plan for enriching himself and his partners by an indefinite issue of paper money. A company was formed in Paris, which obtained the sole right of coining money, and of trading with Asia, Canada, and the Mississippi valley. When the paper circulation was over \$200,000,000, Law was made Minister of Finance. He kept up the value of his bills by ordering that any one who sought to exchange Mississippi money for silver should forfeit both. It was thought that untold wealth would be amassed, and the stock rose to nearly twenty times its nominal value. But soon the bubble burst; in May, 1720, the notes were worth only ten cents on a dollar, and the company was bankrupt. Thousands were ruined, and Louisiana gained nothing from this grand delusion.

218. In 1718, more French colonists were sent over; a city was laid out with much ceremony and named New Orleans after the Duke of Orleans, then regent. For several years it grew but little; huts were put up without order; and the people who had been sent to build a city encamped on its borders, as an old historian tells us, "waiting for houses". The proprietors of the colony introduced the culture of tobacco, indigo, rice, and silk, and opened the lead mines of Missouri in their search for silver; but, finding that

---

was in the right spot? What places did he find? Who, in 1712, obtained a monopoly of Louisiana? How long did he retain it? What was then the population of the colony? 217. What was next tried for promoting French interests in Louisiana? Who originated the Mississippi Scheme? Give an account of it. How did it result? 218. What city was laid out in 1718? After whom was it named? What was its condition for several years? What did the colonists try

they were losing money, they surrendered their privileges to the crown.

Meanwhile, the Frenchmen at Fort Rosalie had required the high-spirited Natchez, "the children of the sun," to give up their ancient city, that it might be turned into a plantation. Fired by this injustice, and incited by the Chickasaws, the Natchez, in 1729, fell on the fort, and put to death all it contained, except the women and children, and two mechanics. Early in the following year, a party of French from New Orleans revenged this massacre. The Natchez were almost exterminated. Such of the survivors as were not sold into slavery in St. Domingo, sought refuge with other tribes, and lost their very name.

219. The French did not forget the part the Chickasaws had acted, and in 1736 the forces of New France were ordered to concentrate in the Chickasaw country. D'Artaguet *[dar-ta-get']*, governor of Illinois, with the young and accomplished Vincennes *[vin-senz']*, descended the river at the head of a few French and about a thousand Indians. Not daring to wait for the army from New Orleans, on account of the impatience of his red allies, D'Artaguet attacked the foe; but, after carrying two of their posts, he fell mortally wounded in storming a third. The Indians fled, leaving the two French leaders in the enemies' hands. Five days afterwards, Bienville *[be-ang-veel']* made his appearance from below; but the Chickasaws were now strongly fortified by the aid of English traders, and his assaults were repulsed. Within three days, a retreat was ordered. The invaders threw their cannon into the river, and started for home; and the Red Men celebrated their victory by burning D'Artaguet, Vincennes, and the rest of their prisoners, at the stake.

A similar attempt was made by the French in 1739; but

---

to raise? What mines did they open? Notwithstanding this, what did they find it best to do? Meanwhile, what had taken place at Fort Rosalie? How did the French revenge this massacre? What became of the few Natchez that survived? 219. What tribe had incited the Natchez against the French? How did the French seek to punish them? Give the history of D'Artaguet's expedition. Of Bienville's. How did the Chickasaws celebrate their victory? What was the result of a similar expedition in 1739? After this, how long did Louisiana remain tranquil?

the loss of many of their soldiers by disease, led them to conclude a peace with the Chickasaws. After this, Louisiana remained tranquil till its cession to Spain in 1762.

---

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

220. THE peace of Ryswick did not remain long in force. Jealous of the increasing power of the Bourbon family, William III., early in the eighteenth century, declared war against France and Spain, which were both at the time under Bourbon princes. Dying soon after, William was succeeded by Queen Anne, whose name has been given to the war which followed. In the new world, hostilities were commenced in South Carolina. Gov. Moore attacked the Spanish at St. Augustine [see Map, p. 151], in the autumn of 1702. He took the town without difficulty, but the Spanish bravely defended the castle, and sent a messenger to the French commander at Mobile, to come to their aid. Two Spanish vessels soon appeared on the Florida coast, and Moore was obliged to abandon his stores and retreat. Unable to pay the expenses thus incurred, the authorities of South Carolina issued bills of credit, or paper money.

221. Another expedition, undertaken soon after against the Indian allies of the Spanish and French on Ap-pa-lach'-ee Bay [see Map, p. 10], was more successful. St. Marks and other villages were burned, a number of prisoners were taken, and several tribes submitted, and were received under the jurisdiction of Carolina.

222. In 1706, a French fleet from Havana made an attack

---

220. How did William III. feel towards the Bourbons? What did this feeling lead him to do? What is the war called, and why? In the new world, where were hostilities commenced? Give an account of Gov. Moore's expedition. How did the authorities of S. C. meet its expenses? 221. Against whom was the next expedition undertaken? What was its result? [See Map, p. 10.—Where is Appalachee Bay? What Indians lived north of it? What tribe, east? In what direction did the South Carolinians have to go, to reach Appalachee Bay?] 222. What

on Charleston, which was successfully resisted by the people, without aid from the proprietaries. Three hundred Frenchmen were killed or taken prisoners in trying to effect a landing, and one of their ships was captured.

223. In the mean time, the Indians of Maine and New Hampshire, who were in the interest of the French, after lulling the fears of the English by declaring that 'the sun was not more distant from the earth than their thoughts from war', suddenly fell upon the frontier settlements, made a general massacre, and retired beyond the reach of pursuit. In the course of the winter, they assailed Deerfield, in northern Massachusetts [see Map, p. 111]. This place was surrounded by palisades, and guarded nightly by sentinels. On the last day of February, 1704, a party of French and Indians, after a toilsome march from Canada on the crust of the snow, approached the town. Just before dawn, while the sentinels were absent from their posts, they effected an entrance, the snow having drifted against the palisades, and rendered them useless as a defence. The town was soon in flames. Forty-seven of the inhabitants were killed, and 112 made prisoners. The latter, during the march to Canada, suffered intensely from cold and hunger. Not a few sunk by the wayside under the accumulated horrors of the journey, and welcomed the savage tomahawk which ended their sorrows.

---

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA.

224. THE pleasant region west of the Savannah, though claimed by England, remained unsettled for years after Carolina had become a flourishing colony. At last James Ogle-

---

movement was made by the French in 1706? How did it result? 223. By whom were the frontier settlements of the English attacked? What village was assailed? [See Map, p. 111.—Near what river is Deerfield?] Give an account of the attack on Deerfield. How many of the inhabitants were killed and made prisoners? What befell the latter?

224. Who was the first to colonize Georgia? For whose benefit did he do it?

thorpe [*o'-gl-thorp*], a benevolent member of Parliament, who had visited the prisons of the kingdom and restored to freedom hundreds of unfortunate men confined for debt and small offences, proposed to establish in this part of America a colony for the poor and helpless. In 1732, he obtained a charter from George II., in whose honor the new colony was called GEORGIA. The next year, Oglethorpe with his first company of emigrants reached the Savannah, and selected a site for a city.

#### OGLETHORPE AND THE MUSCOGEE CHIEF.

The surrounding region was owned by a small band of Muscogees, whose chief received the strangers kindly, and presented Oglethorpe a buffalo-skin adorned on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle. "The feathers of the eagle," said he, "are soft and signify love. The buffalo-skin is warm and is the emblem of protection. Therefore love and protect our little families." Other Muscogee war-

---

In what philanthropic movement had Oglethorpe previously engaged? From whom was Georgia named? On what river did Oglethorpe choose a site for his city? By whom was the surrounding region owned? What passed between



riors hastened to welcome the English. "The Great Spirit," said one, "who dwells everywhere and gives breath to all men, has sent the English to instruct us." Oglethorpe was not insensible to their kindness, and sought to repay it by sending Moravian missionaries among them.

225. Early in 1733, the city of Savannah was founded. The streets were regularly laid out; the houses were built of uniform size, and surrounded with gardens of fruit and vegetables. Encouraged even beyond his expectations, Oglethorpe returned to England for more emigrants. A company of Scottish mountaineers were sent over under his auspices, and made a settlement at Darien. The governor himself returned in 1736, accompanied by John and Charles Wes'-ley. The former came with the determination to convert the Indians and make Georgia a religious colony; but within two years he returned to England, and subsequently became distinguished as one of the founders of the Methodist church. Another noted divine, the eloquent Whitefield [*whit'-field*], passed some years in the colony, and established an orphan asylum at Savannah, where he preached with great success.

226. Feeling the necessity of defences on the south, Oglethorpe built a fort on St. Simon's Island, at the mouth of the Altamaha [*awl-ta-ma-haw'*], and fixed on the St. John's River as the southern boundary of the English possessions. The Spanish regarded this as an encroachment on their territory, and detained the messengers of the English governor as prisoners. Oglethorpe at once prepared for war. His Indian friends hastened to his aid. The Uchees marched to Savannah in their proudest war-paint, and joined the no less valiant bands of Muscogees that had there assem-

---

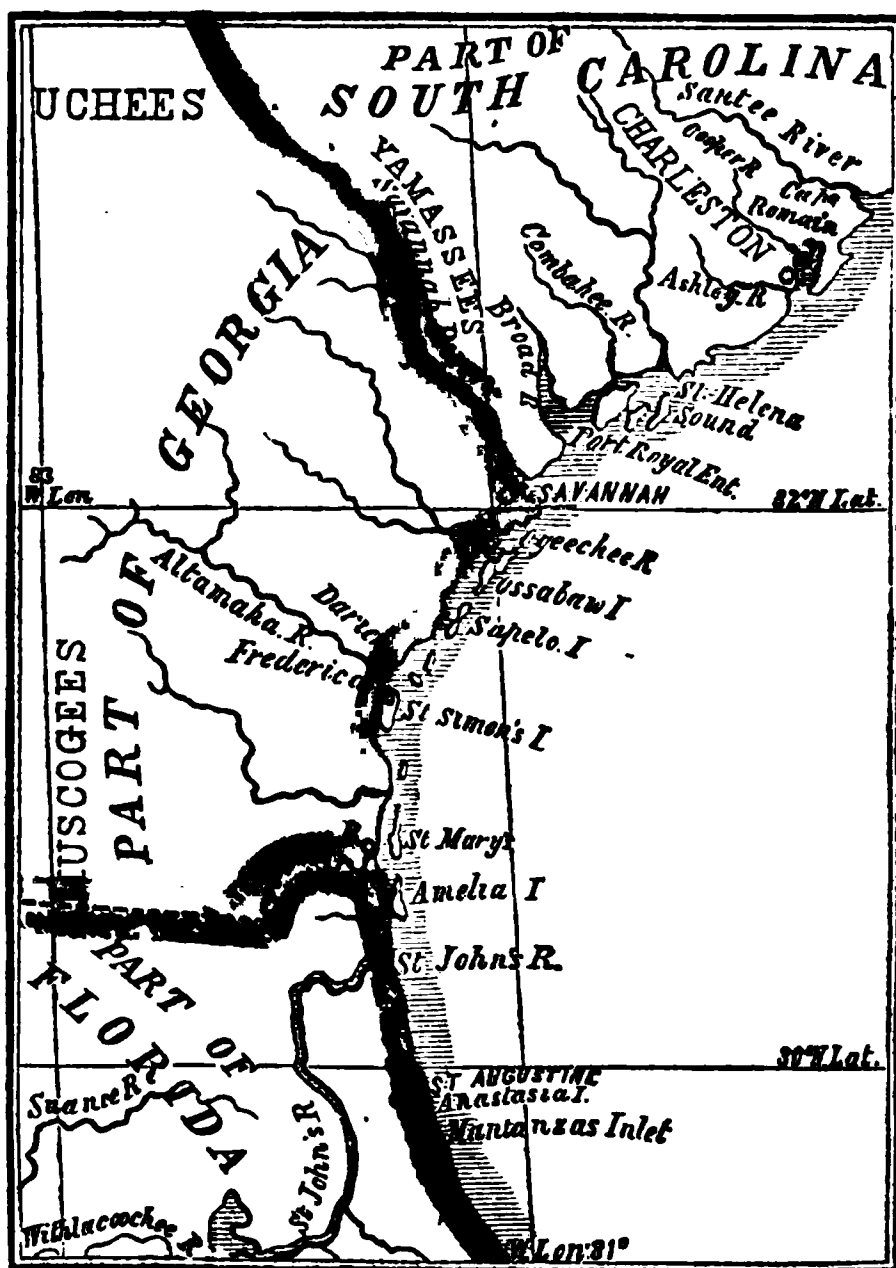
Oglethorpe and the Muscogee chiefs? How did Oglethorpe seek to repay their kindness? 225. In what year was Savannah founded? Describe the city in its infancy. For what did Oglethorpe return to England? Where did the next emigrants come from? Where did they settle? Who accompanied Oglethorpe to Georgia in 1736? What church was afterwards founded by John Wesley? What other noted divine passed some years in Georgia? 226. Where did Oglethorpe build a fort? [See Map.—Where is St. Simon's Island? What place is upon it? What Indian tribe east of the Savannah? On which bank of the Savannah River is Savannah? Where is Darien? Where is St. Augustine? What island is near

bled. Wise negotiations, however, for a time put an end to the difficulty.

In 1739, England declared war against Spain, and Oglethorpe undertook an expedition against St. Augustine. It failed, on account of the strength of the place and the prostration of the invaders by sickness. In 1742, the Spanish became the assailants, and a strong fleet appeared before St. Simon's. Oglethorpe had but a

small force, and was in danger of being cut off; but, by cunningly making his enemies believe that British ships were expected, and that an attack was to be made on St. Augustine during their absence, he frightened them into a retreat.

227. In 1743, Oglethorpe went back to England, nor did he ever revisit his colony. His labors in its behalf had been entirely disinterested; no part of the large grant obtained



GEORGIA AND THE VICINITY IN 1740.

it? What river forms part of the present boundary between Georgia and Florida? What river did Oglethorpe fix on as the boundary between Georgia and Florida? How did the Spanish regard this? How did they treat the English messengers? What did Oglethorpe do? Who hastened to his aid? What, for a time, put an end to the difficulty? When was it revived? In what did Oglethorpe's expedition against St. Augustine result? How did the Spaniards retaliate in 1742? How did Oglethorpe save himself? 227. In 1743, what did Oglethorpe do? What evidence is there that his labors were disinterested? What was the condition of the colony? What were produced in the Moravian set-

through his influence did he keep for himself or his family. Notwithstanding his efforts, the colony had hardly yet begun to prosper. Except in the Moravian settlements, where indigo was raised and 10,000 pounds of silk were produced annually, but little attention was paid to agriculture. The settlers complained of a clause in their charter which prohibited slavery, and the trustees at length found it expedient to disregard the regulations on this subject. Slave labor became common, and agriculture began to flourish. In 1752, the trustees resigned their charter to the king. The liberties of the people were extended; and, when the cession of Florida to the English rendered the frontier secure, nothing remained to interfere with the prosperity of Georgia.

---

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### KING GEORGE'S WAR, 1744 TO 1748.

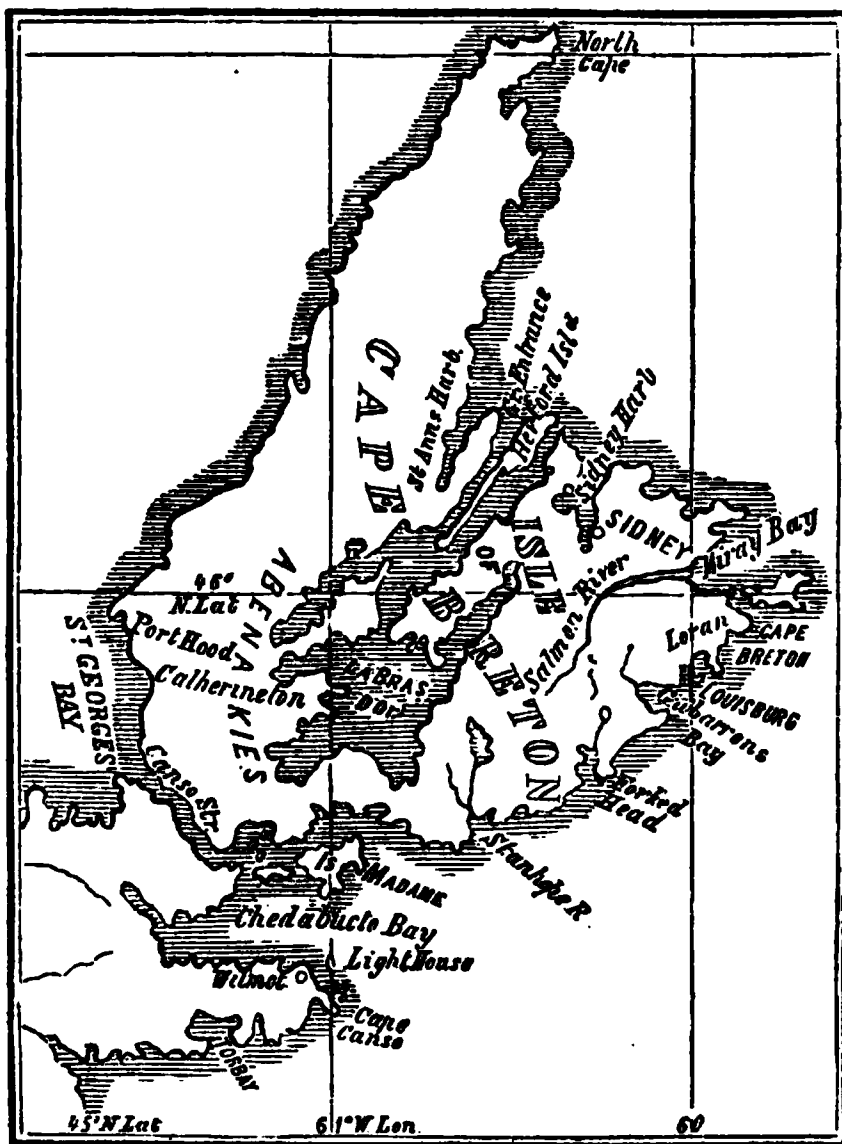
228. As the new world increased in population, it became evident that the conflicting claims of France and England would have to be settled by force of arms. No boundary line had yet been drawn between their possessions on the north or west. The English based their claim chiefly on the Indian titles which they had purchased. To secure such further rights to the soil as the Indians retained, commissioners from Virginia and Maryland, with the governor of Pennsylvania, met the Iroquois chiefs in 1744; and bought, for £200 in gold and a like amount in goods, their title to "all lands that are, or by his majesty's appointment *shall be*, within the colony of Virginia".

---

lements? What is said of agriculture in other parts of the colony? Of what did the settlers complain? What did the trustees find it expedient to do? After this, what is said of the agricultural interests of the colony? What took place in 1752?

228. What difficulties arose between the French and English? On what did the English base their claim? How did they seek to strengthen it? How did the French view this movement? What English post did they attack? [See

The French viewed this movement with distrust, and lost no time in commencing hostilities. An English garrison at Can'-so, on the eastern point of Nova Scotia, was captured, and eighty prisoners were conveyed to Louisburg, one of the chief strongholds of the French in the new world. These men were afterwards allowed to return to Boston, and the information they gave respecting the fortifications of Louis-



CAPE BRETON AND THE ADJACENT PARTS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

burg led the legislature of Massachusetts to undertake an expedition against that post. An army of 3,800 men was raised, and placed under the command of Sir William Pepperell. This force consisted of a strange medley. Hunters, farmers, mechanics, and clergymen, formed into line by the side of well-trained veterans.

General Pepperell's force soon reached Louisburg, and commenced operations by attacking a battery of thirty guns on the shore. It was speedily carried. The enemy had spiked the cannon, to render them useless to their assailants; but a North-amp'-ton gunsmith drilled out the touch-holes,

**Map.**—Where is Cape Canso? What bay is north of it? What bays does Canso Strait connect? What gulf nearly divides Cape Breton? Where is Louisburg? What bay is near it? What became of the prisoners taken at Canso? What did their statements lead the legislature of Massachusetts to do? Describe the force that was raised. How was the place defended? How long did the garrison

and they were soon playing upon their former masters. The efforts of the New Englanders were next directed against the fort, which well deserved its reputation for strength. Its massive walls were forty feet thick at the base and about twenty-five feet high. They were surrounded by a deep ditch, eighty feet in width, and were defended by nearly 200 cannon and a garrison of 1,600 men. After a siege of about six weeks, the French surrendered.

229. The news of this victory was received at Boston with public rejoicings. The people felt proud of having struck so important a blow without the aid of the mother country. They even proposed to follow up their success with an invasion of Canada; but the British Ministry, unwilling to encourage the military power of the colonies, would not co-operate with them, and the scheme was abandoned. The treaty of Aix la Chapelle [*āx lah sha-pel'*] put an end to the war in 1748. According to its provisions, Louisburg was restored to the French, and the brave men of New England were thus deprived of the fruits of their valor.

---

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### COMMENCEMENT OF WASHINGTON'S CAREER.

230. THE peace of Aix la Chapelle left the opposing claims of France and England in the new world still unsettled. While the states of Europe were discussing the terms of this treaty, the boy who was to decide many of the questions it involved, and to fix the destiny of America, was surveying wild lands and running boundary lines in the woods of Virginia. This boy was George Washington.

231. Washington was born at Pope's Creek, West-more'-

---

hold out? 229. How was the news of this victory received at Boston? What did the colonists propose to do? Why did not the British Ministry favor the scheme? What treaty put an end to the war? When? By its provisions, what disposition was made of Louisburg?

230. What is said of the peace of Aix la Chapelle? 231. Where was Washing-

land County, Virginia, on the 11th of February (the 22d, according to the *New Style* \*), 1732. He sprung from an ancient family, whose original name was Wes'-syng-ton. Several of his ancestors were prominent at different periods of English history, and his great-grandfather, who emigrated to America in 1657, had led the forces of Virginia against the Indians. His father, Augustine Washington, died when he was eleven years old; his mother lived to see him the head of a nation. She was a woman of extraordinary powers, and to her wise and high-toned instructions her distinguished son owed much of that intellectual and moral excellence which has immortalized his name.

At school, the young George was a general favorite. He is described as having an expressive face, a rich complexion, a clear blue eye, a winning smile, and an erect, athletic figure. His mind was as vigorous as his frame; and in all sports and exercises, as well as the mimic military manœuvres which the young mountaineers made a part of their education, he was an acknowledged leader. So, in his studies he was surpassed by none. Books, containing his sums and exercises, still preserved, show that care and precision were even at this early period marked traits of his character.

At sixteen, Washington was a proficient in geometry and trigonometry. Surveying he had practically applied in the

---

\* Washington was born on the 11th of February. His birthday is celebrated on the 22d, because the date has been reduced to the New Style of chronology. To correct an error occasioned by the imperfect calendar then prevalent, and make the months correspond with the seasons, the British Parliament, in 1752, retrenched eleven days in September, ordering that the 3d of that month should pass for the 14th. Historians, in giving the dates of events prior to that time, have in some cases, as in that of Washington's birthday, conformed them to the New Style.

---

ton born? When? [See Note.—What is meant by Old and New Style?] What is said of Washington's family? What have we already learned about his great-grandfather? How old was Washington when his father died? What is said of his mother? How was the young George regarded at school? In what terms is he described? What are still preserved? At sixteen, in what was Washington

grounds about his school-house. He was familiar even with its more difficult problems, and made his calculations with ease and accuracy. About this time, his brother Lawrence invited him to his estate on the Potomac, called "Mount Vernon", in memory of the English admiral of

#### MOUNT VERNON.

that name. Here George became acquainted with Lord Fairfax, an extensive land-proprietor, who employed him to survey a large tract on the south branch of the Potomac. The opportunity thus afforded of perfecting himself in the art, was not neglected. In this romantic region, the luxuriance of nature yielded him abundant food for admiration, while the wild beast that crossed his path, and the wandering savage, with his proud paint and girdle of scalps, proved the depth of the solitude. A little straw, or a heap of dry leaves, by the camp-fire, was his bed at night. He was "himself his own cook, having no spit but a forked stick, no plate but a large chip".

232. In 1749, a company, which included Lawrence and Augustine Washington among its members, obtained from the English crown a grant of 500,000 acres on the Ohio. It was called the Ohio Company, and its objects were to trade with the Indians, and settle the country west of the Alleghanies. But in this the French had a voice. The valley of the Ohio had already been visited by their agents, who had

---

a proficient? Where had he practised surveying? What invitation was extended to him about this time? With whom did he become acquainted? How did Lord Fairfax employ him? Describe the region in which he was thus engaged. 233. In 1749, what company was formed? For what did they obtain a

taken possession of it in the name of their country, and sought to make friends and allies of its Indian occupants. They had built a fort at Presq' Ile [*press keel*], now Erie, and in 1752 showed what course they intended to pursue by breaking up a British post on the Miami; and carrying off its occupants to Canada. The chief of the Miami confederacy, who had bravely defended the English, was taken prisoner, and inhumanly killed and eaten by the savage allies of the French.

Alarmed by these movements, the Shawnees, Delawares, and other Ohio Indians, sent the brave Half King to Erie, to remonstrate with the French commissioners. "You and the English are white," said he, "and we live in a country between you. The land belongs to neither of you. The Great Being above allowed it to be a dwelling-place for us." "It is my land," answered the haughty Frenchman; "and I will have it, let who will stand up against it." On hearing that the Half King's mission had been unsuccessful, the western tribes quickly sent ambassadors to the English at Carlisle [*kar-lile'*], Pennsylvania. They were met by the wise Franklin, who conciliated them with gifts and promises of protection.

233. The French had now established posts at Waterford and Venango, in northwestern Pennsylvania; and Governor Din-wid'-die, of Virginia, determined to send a trusty messenger to the commander, to demand the reason of his intrusion on English territory. Washington was selected, at the age of twenty-one, for this important mission. Two years before, through the influence of Fairfax, he had been appointed adjutant-general.

On the 31st of October, 1753, Washington left Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia. After twenty-four days of diligent and fatiguing travel, he reached the place where Pittsburg now stands, and was struck with the military and

---

grant? What were their objects? Who had a voice in this matter? Where had the French built a fort? What course did they pursue? What was done to the Miami chief? Give an account of the interview between the Indian ambassador and the French authorities at Erie. What did the Indians next do? By whom were they met at Carlisle? 233. Where had the French established posts? [See



## VALLEY OF THE OHIO IN 1750.

(Washington's Route from Williamsburg, Va., to the French forts is denoted thus ----.)

commercial advantages of the position. At Logstown he held a friendly conference with the Indians, who declared themselves firm friends of his nation; and thence, with the Half King and other chiefs, he proceeded to Venango. Here he obtained no satisfaction. The commander boastfully declared that his nation intended seizing on the whole of the

---

Map.—Where were these posts? On what water was Presq' Ile? Where is the Miami River? At the junction of what two rivers is Pittsburg? What place was a few miles lower down, on the Ohio? On what did Gov. Dinwiddie resolve? Who was selected for this mission? How old was he? What rank did he hold? When did Washington start? Describe his route. What took place

Ohio valley. No course was left the young ambassador but to go on to Waterford; and this he did through mire and swamp, and across rivers rendered almost impassable by the rains and snows of December. He found the fort strongly defended. Many pine boats and bark canoes were in readiness for the contemplated expedition in the spring. St. Pierre [*peer*], the commandant of the post, sought not to disguise his intentions. He was there, he said, by the orders of his general, and according to those orders he should destroy every English post on the Ohio. Unable to shake his resolution, Washington prepared to go back; but his Indian companions had been so wrought upon with threats, flatteries, and rum, that the Half King alone remained faithful. St. Pierre tried every means to detain the Red Men and win them over from the English; it was only by skilful management that Washington baffled his efforts.

The home journey was full of dangers and difficulties. Intense cold and violent storms set in. The horses having become disabled, it was found necessary to go afoot, while the labor of walking was greatly increased by the deep snow with which the ground was covered. The streams were swollen, and to cross them amid the drifting ice was toilsome and perilous. The life of the youthful hero seems to have been preserved almost miraculously. At one time, he was fired upon at a distance of fifteen paces by an Indian in ambush; at another, he was jerked from a rude raft into the angry waters of the Alleghany. Yet, amid these dangers, he was saved for greater things.

Seldom has so important a mission been intrusted to one so young, and never was mission more faithfully performed. Washington could not induce the French to abandon their claim to the Ohio valley; but he learned all that his government wanted to know respecting their designs and the strength of the forts he visited. Through deserters from New Orleans, he gained much valuable information concern-

---

at Logstown? Where did Washington then go? Give an account of his interview with the French commandants at Venango and Waterford. Who had accompanied him? On preparing to return, what did Washington find had been

ing the French posts on the Mississippi; and during the whole expedition he conducted himself with a discretion and gallantry which gave high promise of future usefulness.

---

## CHAPTER XXX.

### COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

234. THE report of Washington roused the colonists to action. In accordance with his recommendation, the Ohio company commenced the construction of a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and the Monongahela, on the present site of Pittsburg; and Gov. Dinwiddie despatched a body of men to protect the laborers. The death of their colonel on the march threw the command into the hands of Washington. The progress of the party through the heavy roads of the wilderness was necessarily slow; and, before they had performed half the journey, the unfinished work, together with thirty-three men engaged on it, was taken by the French. The latter went on with the building, and speedily erected a strong fortress, which they called Du Quesne [*du kane*], after the new governor of Canada.

This placed the Indian allies of the English in a critical position. The Half King sent an express to Washington, imploring him to come to their aid. This he was doing, as fast as he could cut roads and drag over them the cannon and powder that had been designed for the new fort. On some parts of the route, a day's march carried him no more than a couple of miles. When within a short distance of the French, he hastily constructed a stockade, to which he gave the appropriate name of Fort Necessity, throwing up with

---

done to his companions? Describe the home journey. What dangers did Washington encounter? What is said of this mission? How was it performed? What information did Washington obtain?

234. What was the effect of Washington's report? Where was a fort commenced? What measures were taken for the protection of the laborers? How were these measures defeated? What did the French do with the unfinished fort? What was now the situation of the Indian allies of the English? What message did Washington receive? Describe his march. What fort did he build?

his own hands the first shovelful of earth. This done, he continued his march, and soon had the pleasure of meeting the faithful Half King. A council is held. The chief announces that the French are near at hand in strong force, lying in wait for the wearied Virginians. A night attack is forthwith concerted. The trail of the enemy is found, and leads Washington and his companions, in Indian file, through the impenetrable darkness of a rainy night, to a camp concealed among the rocks, where they are resting in fancied security. Suddenly alarmed, the French rush to their guns, but at the instant Washington orders his men to "Fire!" and discharges his own musket. Hardly for fifteen minutes is the contest protracted. Jumonville [*zhoo-mong-veel'*], the French leader, is slain, with nine of his comrades, and twenty-one prisoners fall into the hands of the English.

Washington had expected reënforcements, as well from the colonies as from the friendly Indians of Ohio. Messengers were sent to hasten their arrival; but only one company came, and they proved rather an encumbrance than an aid, their commander foolishly claiming precedence of the colonial leader because he held his commission from the king. With anxiety Washington heard that the French were concentrating around him, and at last he fell back on Fort Necessity. Here his little band was besieged by 600 Frenchmen and 100 Indians. After a severe fight, which lasted nine hours, the French, though they had gained decided advantages, proposed a parley, and agreed that Washington and his men should march out with the honors of war, retaining their stores and baggage. On the evacuation of this post (1754), no English flag waved west of the Alleghanies.

235. Meanwhile, the necessity of united action on the part of all the English colonies had become obvious. A meeting of delegates from Virginia and every colony north of the

---

Whom did he soon meet? What was the result of their interview? Give an account of the battle. How many were slain and captured? Whence had Washington expected reënforcements? How many companies arrived? What is said of it? What awakened Washington's anxiety? What was he compelled to do? By how many French and Indians was he besieged? Give an account of the siege and its result. 235. What important meeting was held in June, 1754? What

Potomac, was held at Albany in June, 1754. One of the leading objects proposed was to conciliate the Iroquois, who had been invited to the council. Many of their chiefs appeared, including the great Mohawk, Hendrick. While they accepted the proffered pledge of peace, the Iroquois braves warned the English of impending dangers, and complained of their tardiness in erecting fortifications. The delegates promised more vigorous action, and the Indians departed, apparently satisfied, but really discouraged by the want of energy and promptness displayed by their allies.

The council now had leisure to discuss the proposed union. A plan brought forward by Benjamin Franklin was after some debate adopted. By its provisions, a congress was to assemble annually at Philadelphia, composed of from two to seven delegates from each colony, according to its size. This congress was to originate all laws and appoint civil officers, to issue money, deal with the Indians, regulate trade, govern new settlements, raise soldiers, and levy taxes,—all its acts being subject to the veto of a governor-general appointed by the crown. Each colony was to have its own legislature, and to be independent in its internal affairs. Such was the plan of union to be laid before the individual colonies for their adoption.

236. As the author of this important measure comes prominently before us, it will be well to glance at his previous history. Benjamin Franklin was born at Boston, January 17th, 1706. His father, a manufacturer of soap and candles, wished to give the young Benjamin a liberal education with the view of preparing him for the ministry; but his means failed, and he took his son, at the age of ten, into his own establishment, where he employed him in cutting wicks and filling candle-moulds. An ardent thirst for knowledge led our hero to spend every leisure moment in reading, and even to rob himself of sleep that he might con such volumes of trav-

---

was one of its leading objects? Who made their appearance at the council? Of what did the Iroquois chiefs complain? How were they partially appeased? What next engaged the attention of the council? Who proposed a plan of union? What action was taken on it? Mention its chief provisions. 236. When and

els and history as fell in his way. At twelve, he was apprenticed to an elder brother, to learn the art of printing; but, aggrieved by the harsh treatment of the latter, he resolved to leave his native city without the knowledge of his friends, and try his fortune among strangers. The sale of his little stock of books furnished him with the means of travelling. His first stopping-place was New York. Here there was no encouragement to remain, and he continued his journey to Philadelphia, which he reached with a single dollar in his pocket. Refreshing himself with a penny roll and a draught of water from the Delaware, his first care was to seek employment.

Our young adventurer, now seventeen, succeeded in getting a situation in one of the two printing-offices in Philadelphia, and from this time steadily and rapidly advanced. He perfected his knowledge of printing, and learned much of the world, by a residence of eighteen months in London; after which he returned to Philadelphia, gained many new friends, and set up a printing-office of his own. We find him every succeeding year extending his influence, and trying to disseminate information among the people. He founded the first circulating library in America, about 1730. In 1732, he commenced his celebrated "Poor Richard's Almanac", which he continued for twenty-five years. In 1736, he originated the American Philosophical Society, and became clerk of the General Assembly of Pennsylvania.

The fame of Franklin was not confined to America. His discoveries in electricity gained him the highest respect among the scientific men of Europe. He introduced various improvements in the Leyden jar, and was the first to magnetize steel needles and fire gunpowder by electricity. A series of observations led him to believe that thunder and

---

where was Franklin born? Give an account of his youth. At twelve, to whom was he apprenticed? How was he treated? What did he conclude to do? How did he get the means of travelling? Where did he go? What did he do, on arriving at Philadelphia? How old was he? What employment did he find? Where did he afterwards go? On his return to Philadelphia, what did he do? In 1730 and 1732, what enterprises did he embark in? What did he do in 1736? In what branch of natural science was Franklin distinguished? Enumerate some of his discoveries. What opinion did he hold with respect to thunder and

lightning were nothing more than the report and spark of a grand electric discharge from cloud to cloud. Experiment only could determine whether he was right. He had often amused himself in childhood with paper kites; he now made one of silk, and resolved to raise it to the clouds. If the fluid passed down the string to his fingers, his theory would be correct; if not, the speculations of years were groundless. With his son, to whom alone he intrusted his secret, he went out into the fields, in June, 1752, to try the experiment. The kite was raised, and, as it reached a threatening cloud, the philosopher with anxiety awaited the result. There was no sensation. Another cloud came. Franklin presented his knuckle, and to his unspeakable joy received a spark. When the string was wet, the electric fluid gathered in abundance. His theory was thus established beyond doubt or cavil. The news created a great sensation throughout Europe, and the name of Franklin was everywhere spoken with admiration. The lightning-rod was the immediate result of this discovery; and who can calculate the disasters this simple instrument has averted? The poet Barlow did not exaggerate the achievements of Franklin, when he said, .

“ See the descending streams around him burn,  
 Glance on his rod, and with his guidance turn !  
 He bids conflicting heavens their blasts expire,  
 Curbs the fierce blaze, and holds the imprisoned fire.”

---

## CHAPTER XXXI.

### BRADDOCK'S CAMPAIGN.

237. THOUGH France and England were nominally at peace, war continued to desolate the disputed frontier in America. The British ministry at last concluded to aid the

---

lightning? Give an account of the experiment by which he tested his theory. How was the news received in Europe? What was the immediate result of this discovery? What does the poet Barlow say of Franklin?

237. Despite the nominal peace that prevailed between France and England, where did war continue to rage? Whom did the British ministry send to the

colonies, and early in 1755 sent over General Brad'-dock and a detachment from the army in Ireland, for that purpose. Four expeditions were planned; the most important of which, that against the French in the Ohio valley, the commander-in-chief undertook in person. Fort Du Quesne was the first post to be reduced; thence he would direct his victorious arms against Niagara and Frontenac. Conceited and obstinate as he was brave, Braddock would listen to no warnings of danger from Indian ambuscades. The savages might be formidable, he said, to raw American militia, but could make no impression on the king's regulars. Fort Cumberland, at Will's Creek [see Map, p. 158], was soon reached; and here Washington joined the army as aide-de-camp [*aid'-e-kawng*] to the general. Horatio Gates also arrived with two companies from New York. The whole force now amounted to over 2,000 men. A detachment was sent forward to open the roads, and early in June, 1755, the commander-in-chief started with the main body. A march of 130 miles was before them, and they advanced but slowly, levelling the hills and bridging the streams that lay in their path. The French commandant at the fort received tidings of Braddock's advance, and would have retreated had it not been for the urgent advice of a single officer.

238. On the 9th of July, the English army was within seven miles of Fort Du Quesne, moving in perfect military order along the bank of the Mo-non-ga-he'-la. Washington declares that he never saw any thing more imposing than the march of the army on that bright summer morning. All were dressed in full uniform; their polished arms glanced in the sun-light; every movement was made with perfect precision; and the full strains of martial music, startling the wild deer from his lair, broke with strange but striking effect

---

aid of the colonists? How many expeditions were planned? Which did Braddock himself undertake? What posts did he propose successively reducing? How did he treat the warnings of the Americans? To what frontier post did he advance? [See Map, p. 158.—Where is Will's Creek?] Who joined Braddock at this place? How large was his force? When did they start? How did they march? What is said of the French commandant? 238. What progress had the English army made by July 9th? What kind of an appearance did they present



on the solitude of the forest. The road led up a gradual ascent; and near it, on each side, was a ravine ten feet deep, concealed by thick woods and underbrush. The army moved slowly forward through a path about twelve feet wide. In front was a detachment of 350 men under Lieutenant-colonel Gage (afterwards General), and a working body 250 strong. Braddock was behind with the main body.

Twice had the French proposed to the Indians to attack the invading army on its march, and twice had they refused. The commandant was in despair, but one of his officers made a final effort. "I shall go," said he to the chiefs, "and will you suffer your father to go alone?" The Red Men were at last persuaded, and early that same morning on which their enemies were deploying in military splendor on the bank of the Monongahela, a body of 230 Frenchmen and 637 Indians started from the fort, both full of confidence, and the latter declaring that they would shoot down all the English like a single pigeon.

239. The two ravines described above, after running parallel with the road for some distance, converged till they met, and at this point the French encountered the advanced guard of the English. Commencing the attack without delay, they extended their lines down the ravines, and thus commanded both flanks of the enemy. Had Colonel Gage promptly sent aid to the division first attacked, and repelled the foe in front, the issue of the battle might have been different; but, while he hesitated, the critical moment passed. The advanced body and flank guards were simultaneously driven back, and fell in confusion on a regiment that had just come up and was endeavoring to form. The appalling war-whoop was heard on right and left; and the well-trained troops of Britain, who had seen much service elsewhere but none like this, beheld with consternation their brave men fall thick and fast by shots from an invisible foe. In vain

---

on the bank of the Monongahela? Describe the road on which they were marching. Who were in front? Where was Braddock? What was taking place all this time at Fort du Quesne? What did the Indians declare? 239. At what point did the French and English meet? What was immediately done by the French? What fatal error was made by Colonel Gage? What followed?

they returned the fire, at trees and rocks. In vain their gallant officers exhorted them to follow, and clear the adjacent ravines and hills of the lurking enemy. The bewildered men would not obey. They fired wildly, and even shot their own comrades in mistake.

The Virginia Rangers alone retained their presence of mind. Familiar with Indian warfare, each selected a tree and fought the savage in his own style. Washington seemed everywhere present. The other aides had been early disabled; and he alone was left to transmit the orders of his general to the different parts of the field. Four balls passed through his coat, and two horses were shot under him. The Indians singled him out specially for death, but in vain. "Some mighty Manitou protects him," said a disappointed chief, who, with his braves, repeatedly covered him with his musket,—and it was even so.

Braddock had five horses wounded under him, but was still too proud to retreat before the savages. At last a musket-ball passed through his lungs. As he was placed on a cart, sinking from loss of blood, he faintly asked Washington, "What is to be done?" "We must retreat," was the answer; "the regulars will not fight, and the rangers are nearly all killed." The order was given. Frightened, and deaf alike to commands and threats, the regulars broke from their ranks and disgracefully fled, leaving their stores and artillery, and even the private papers of their general, in the hands of the enemy. Never was rout more disastrous. On the side of the English, 26 officers fell and 37 were wounded; the loss among the privates amounted to 714. The enemy had only three officers and 30 men killed, and an equal number wounded.

240. On Washington, whose advice, had it been followed, would have saved the army from surprise, now devolved the melancholy duty of conducting the retreat, or rather cover-

---

How did the British regulars behave? How did the Virginia Rangers conduct themselves? What is said of Washington? What befell Braddock? What passed between him and Washington, after he was wounded? Describe the retreat. What was the loss on both sides? 240. Who covered the flight of

ing the flight, of the survivors. They reached Will's Creek in complete disorder, and filled the garrison with consternation. Dunbar, who was in command of the camp, destroyed the remaining stores and artillery, worth not less than £100,000, to facilitate the evacuation of the place. Braddock died the fourth day after his defeat. The destruction of an army from which so much had been expected excited universal horror throughout America. Attempts to raise new forces for the defence of the border met, for a time, with little success. The French and Indians ravaged the Virginia frontier, and escaped beyond the mountains before the colony had recovered from its alarm.

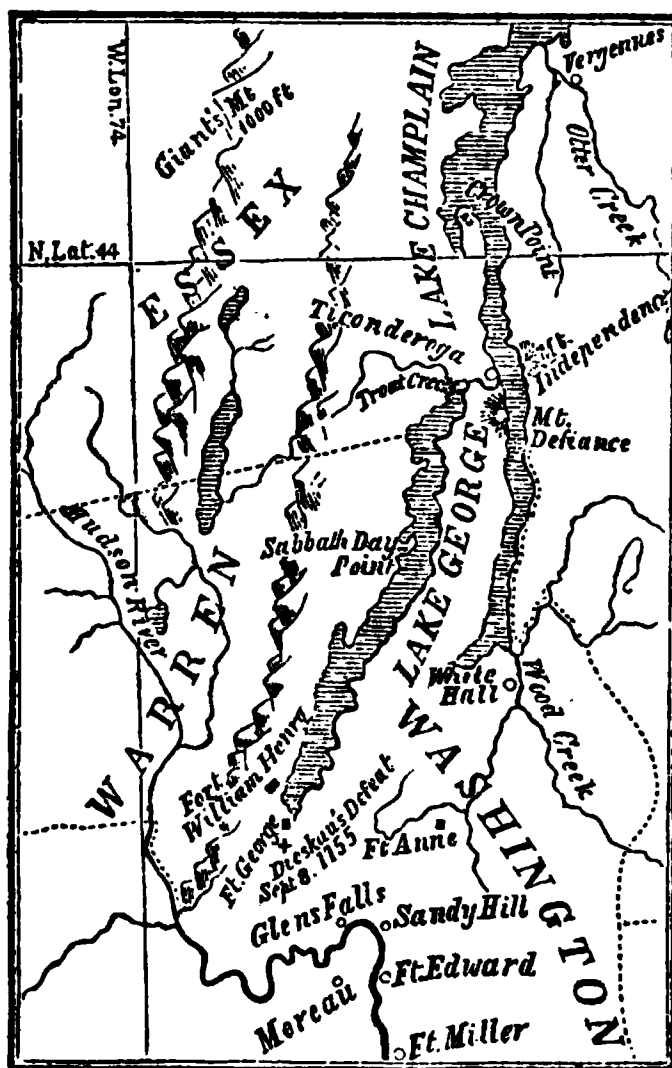
241. The expedition against Niagara under Gov. Shirley, of Massachusetts, accomplished nothing. Braddock was to have aided in this enterprise, and the news of his defeat, added to a series of obstacles, disheartened the army. They advanced no farther than Oswego, at the southeastern extremity of Lake Ontario. After rebuilding the fort at this place and garrisoning it with 700 men, Shirley returned to Massachusetts (Oct. 24th, 1755).

242. The third expedition, directed against the French fort at Crown Point, had been intrusted to William Johnson. With 3,400 men, mostly New England militia, Johnson advanced to the southern shore of the beautiful sheet called by the Indians *Hor'-i-con*, by the French *St. Sacrement* [*sang sak-re-mong'*], and named by him, after his king, *Lake George*. Here he waited for stores and artillery, apparently in no hurry to prosecute the enterprise. Meanwhile, the brave Dieskau [*de-es-ko'*] was descending Lake Champlain, with about 1,400 Canadians and Indians, for the purpose of striking an unexpected blow. He intended to surprise Fort Edward, which had been recently erected, but, misled by his guides, found himself on the way to Johnson's encampment. A body of English, sent against the invaders, were repulsed

---

the surviving British? Where did the remnant of the army assemble? Who commanded there? What did he do? What became of Braddock? What feeling was excited in the colonies by the news of Braddock's defeat? Where did the enemy commit depredations? 241. Give an account of the second expedition. Where is Oswego? 242. Against what post was the third expedition

(Sept. 8th, 1755); and Dieskau, pursuing them vigorously to their camp, would no doubt have defeated Johnson's whole army had he not been deserted by his Indian allies. As it was, he was driven back, himself mortally wounded. A large part of his force was cut off, and Johnson, who had retired from the field early in the engagement, received the credit of a victory wholly due to the colonial troops and their own gallant officers. Instead of following up his success, Johnson (afterwards made a baronet for his



LAKE GEORGE AND THE VICINITY.

victory) allowed the French to intrench themselves strongly at Ti-con-de-ro'-ga, and employed himself in erecting Fort William Henry. On the approach of winter, he garrisoned this post with 600 men, and disbanded the rest of his army.

243. The fourth expedition projected by Braddock had in view the extension of the British possessions on the north-east, and was undertaken by the people of Massachusetts. In May, 1755, a strong force sailed from Boston against the French forts near the Bay of Fundy. These were speedily taken, and their reduction was followed by the subjugation

directed? To whom was it intrusted? How many men were raised? Where did Johnson encamp? [See Map.—In what state is Lake George? What fort is at its southern extremity? What river runs south of it? What creek at its northern extremity? What larger lake just east of it?] For what did Johnson wait? Give an account of Dieskau's movements. What took place, Sept. 8th, 1755? What prevented Dieskau from obtaining the victory? What was his fate, and that of his army? Who received credit for the victory? To whom was it really due? How was Johnson rewarded? What advantage did he allow the French? [See Map.—Where is Ticonderoga? What mountain near it?] In what did he employ himself? On the approach of winter, what did he do? 243. What was the object of the fourth expedition projected by Braddock? By whom

of the whole region between Maine and Nova Scotia, now known as New Brunswick. Nova Scotia had been in possession of the British for some years. It was called A-ca'-di-a, and was inhabited chiefly by a simple and happy race descended from the original French settlers, few English colonists having found their way to this northern region. Left to themselves, the Acadians had prospered greatly, and were now in possession of fine farms and abundant flocks. Coveting these, the British authorities, made secure by the conquest of New Brunswick, proceeded to deprive the inhabitants of the fruits of their frugality and industry. The Acadians were cruelly ordered to leave the province. Seven thousand of them were driven on board of ships, and taken to the southern colonies. Wherever they went, they were maltreated and oppressed. "I know not," says Bancroft, "if the annals of the human race keep the record of sorrows so wantonly inflicted, so bitter and perennial, as fell upon the French inhabitants of Acadia."

244. In May, 1756, war was formally declared, after it had been raging in the new world several years. Montcalm [*mont-kahm*], a distinguished French general, was sent to Canada, and commenced a series of movements which resulted in the capture of Fort Oswego, with its garrison of 1,600 men, 120 cannon, three chests of money, and abundant stores. The churches of Three Rivers, Montreal, and Quebec were

MONTCALEM.

---

was it undertaken? In May, 1755, what was done? What posts did they take? What region did they subjugate? In whose possession had Nova Scotia been? What was it called? By whom was it inhabited? What was their condition? What unjust treatment did they receive at the hands of the British authorities? How many were driven away? Where were they taken? How were they treated there? What does Bancroft say of the Acadians? 244. When was war formally declared? Whom did the French government send to Canada? What place did he capture? With Oswego, what fell into Montcalm's hands? Where

adorned with its colors. Lord Loudoun [*lou'-dun*], the newly-appointed governor-general of the English colonies, had arrived shortly before, but he attempted nothing for the relief of Oswego. The season having been wasted, it soon became necessary to provide winter-quarters for his troops; and the colonists, to their chagrin, found themselves obliged to support thousands of British soldiers who had not as yet struck a blow in their behalf.

---

## CHAPTER XXXII.

### FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR (CONTINUED).—CAMPAIGNS OF 1757-1758.

245. DURING the winter of 1756-57, Fort William Henry was occupied by a band of hardy American rangers, who defied cold and storms. Among them was John Stark, afterwards a successful general in the Revolution. With the aid of skates and snow-shoes, several expeditions were undertaken against the enemy. An army of 1,500 French and Indians from Canada, with dogs to draw their sleighs, and bear-skins for their only protection at night, marched 180 miles for the purpose of surprising the fort, but found the vigilant garrison on their guard, and returned as they came.

246. In January, 1757, the northern governors met at Boston, and determined to raise 4,000 men. Meanwhile, Loudoun complained to the ministry at home that the colonies would not tax themselves, and that he could not coerce them. This was untrue. The colonies were willing to be taxed, but wanted, as was natural, to spend the money themselves. They were tired of the imbecility of British officers.

---

were the colors of the captured fort taken? What British general had arrived shortly before? What is said of his movements? What did the colonists find themselves obliged to do?

245. How did the garrison of Fort William Henry employ itself in the winter of 1756-57? What attempt was made by the French? How did it succeed? 246. What took place in January, 1757? What complaint was made by Loudoun?

In June, 1757, Loudoun went to Halifax, and collected there an army of 10,000 men. He spent most of the summer in drilling them, and then was deterred from attacking Louisburg, as he had intended, by the intelligence that the French fleet contained one more ship than his own. He soon left his parade-ground, and returned to New York.

247. While the English commander was thus trifling, the governor of Canada was drawing the Iroquois and other northern Indians into an alliance. A grand army of French and savages, with Montcalm at its head, advanced towards the forts on the English frontier. Several minor successes were gained, and the Indians, always desirous of making good their escape when they had struck a blow, were eager to return. Montcalm remonstrated with them, and, producing the great war-belt of 6,000 shells, which bound them to remain till the expedition was completed, declared that his great object, the reduction of Fort William Henry, was still unaccomplished. The Red Men were at last persuaded; and on the 2d of August, 1757, 6,000 Frenchmen and 1,700 Indians invested the fort. It was defended by the intrepid Col. Monro, with 2,200 men.

To Montcalm's summons to surrender, Monro returned an answer of defiance, hoping for aid from Gen. Webb, who lay encamped at Fort Edward, only 14 miles off, with 4,000 men. Instead of advancing to the rescue, Webb wrote Monro a letter advising him to surrender. Still the gallant veteran held out, till his ammunition was nearly exhausted, and half his guns had burst. He then felt it his duty to capitulate on the honorable terms proposed by the French commander. One of the conditions was a safe escort to Fort Edward. But, when the retreat commenced, the faithless Indians, incited by the hope of plunder, fell on the ill-fated

---

What was the true state of the case? What did Loudoun do in June, 1757? Give an account of his movements at Halifax. 247. Meanwhile, what was the governor of Canada doing? What expedition did he undertake? What did the Indians want to do? How did Montcalm dissuade them from their purpose? How many men invested Fort William Henry? [See Map, p. 169.—Where was Fort William Henry?] By whom was it defended? To whom did Monro look for aid? What message did he receive from Webb? How long did he hold out? On what terms did he finally surrender? What happened on the retreat? What is said of Webb

English. Despite the efforts of Montcalm and his officers, a general massacre ensued. Only a part of the army reached Fort Edward in safety. Webb, as long as he was secure in his camp, cared little for the honor of his country or the safety of his comrades. Loudoun proposed fixing his quarters on Long Island, and thought that would be a sufficient defence for the continent. At the close of 1757, the French possessions in America exceeded in extent those of the English as twenty to one.

248. In the summer of 1757, the weakness of the English ministry had become apparent, and Pitt, a man of the people, and the wisest of modern statesmen, was intrusted with the management of affairs. America was his first care. The imbecile Loudoun was recalled. The colonies were requested to raise troops, with the promise that the expense would be refunded; and their officers were allowed the same rank as British officers of their respective grades. New life was infused into every branch of the service. The American people had the highest confidence in Pitt, and new armies were soon enlisted.

Three expeditions were projected by the English. Amherst and Wolfe were to besiege Louisburg; Lord Howe and Ab-er-crom'-bie, to attack Crown Point and Ticonderoga; and Gen. Forbes was to advance upon Fort Du Quesne and the Ohio valley.

249. The first of these expeditions was entirely successful. The French commander surrendered the fort, and 5,637 prisoners were sent to England. The British took possession of the whole of Cape Breton [*brit'-ün*] and Prince Edward's Island. Abandoning Louisburg, they made Halifax their capital and stronghold in the northeast.

250. The second expedition was undertaken by the largest army that had yet marched through the forests of America.

---

and Loudoun? At the close of 1757, how did the French and English possessions in America compare in extent? 248. What change was made in the British ministry in the summer of 1757? What first engaged Pitt's attention? What action did he take in American affairs? Enumerate the three expeditions that were projected. 249. What was the result of the first expedition? 250. What is said of the army engaged in the second expedition? How many men embarked for



On the 5th of July, 1758, 9,000 provincial troops and 6,000 British regulars embarked in a thousand boats on the shore of Lake George, for the strong French fort at Ticonderoga, held by Montcalm with about 3,600 men. The young and popular Howe was unfortunately killed in an encounter with a party of French, just as he reached the scene of action, and the sole command thus devolved on the incompetent Abercrombie. An attack on the French lines was unwisely ordered before the artillery had been brought into action. It was conducted with unsurpassed intrepidity, but as bravely repulsed by Montcalm, who had every advantage of position. The English army lost nearly 2,000 in killed and wounded; and Abercrombie, who had taken care to keep out of danger during the assault, retreated to the head of the lake, and sent his artillery and stores to Albany. Nothing was effected during the remainder of the campaign, but the capture and destruction of Fort Frontenac and some armed vessels on Lake Ontario, by a detachment under Gen. Bradstreet.

251. The third expedition owed its success solely to Washington. Contrary to his advice, General Forbes, instead of following Braddock's route, commenced a new road to Fort Du Quesne. His progress was slow, and 300 of his men were cut off by an ambuscade. On this, it was resolved to abandon the expedition for the season; but Washington, having satisfied himself of the weakness of the fort by the accounts of deserters, obtained the general's permission to proceed against it alone with his Virginia Rangers. The French, on his approach, set fire to the works, and fled down the Ohio. Washington raised his country's flag over the smoking ruins (Nov. 25th, 1758), and changed the name of the place to Pittsburg, in honor of the great Pitt. Intrusting its defence to a company of his rangers, he returned to his native state, already illustrious by his achievements, though

---

Ticonderoga? By whom was this post held? What befell Lord Howe? On whom did the sole command then devolve? Give an account of Abercrombie's operations. What was their result? What was the British loss? What was Abercrombie's next movement? What was effected during the remainder of the campaign? 251. To whom is the success of the third expedition attributable? What course was pursued by Gen. Forbes? What was the advice of Washing-

not yet twenty-seven years of age. He was received with distinguished honor, and elected to the House of Burgesses, where he commenced his career as a statesman. Meanwhile, Abercrombie was recalled, and General Amherst was appointed commander-in-chief of the army and governor of Virginia.

---

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR (CONTINUED).—CAMPAIGNS OF 1759–1760.

252. ALIVE to the importance of prosecuting the war in the new world with vigor, Pitt zealously prepared for the campaign of 1759. A well-digested plan of operations was arranged, which there seemed little prospect that Montcalm, left unsupported by the French government, his province already exhausted of men and resources, could successfully oppose. Gen. Stanwix was ordered to reduce the country between Pittsburg and Lake Erie; Prideaux [*prid'-o*], to take Niagara. Ticonderoga was assigned to Gen. Amherst; and Wolfe was to attack Quebec. The first two of these expeditions were successful, though at the siege of Niagara Prideaux was killed. On the approach of Amherst, the French abandoned Ticonderoga and descended Lake Champlain. It was expected that the commander would then march to the north and aid in reducing Canada; but, delaying unnecessarily, he left this difficult enterprise entirely to the intrepid Wolfe.

253. The strength of Quebec was well known, and a powerful armament assembled at Louisburg for its attack. Twenty-two ships-of-the-line and an equal number of smaller vessels, containing 8,000 men and a vast amount of stores

---

ton? How was the fort finally taken? What followed? Where did Washington then go? How was he received and rewarded? What change was made in the command of the British army?

252. What was the plan of operations for 1759, on the part of the British? What was Montcalm's condition? What was the result of the first expedition? What, of the second? What, of the third? 253. Where did the force intended

and ammunition, reached the Isle of Orleans, opposite Quebec, on the 26th of June, 1759 [see Map, p. 216]. Opposed to this powerful array was the renowned Montcalm, in a fortress deemed impregnable, with a force superior in number to the English, though no match for them in spirit or discipline.

After reconnoitring the harbor, and erecting a battery at Point Levi, opposite the city, which destroyed the lower town, though unable to reach the citadel, Wolfe chose and fortified a position on the east bank of the Montmorenci [*mont-moren'-se*]. A continuous ledge of rocks, defended by batteries on every side, guarded Montcalm's intrenchments. The only practicable point of attack appeared to be the French camp on the opposite side of the Montmorenci. A violent assault was made, but the English were repulsed with a loss of 400 men.

The months of July and August passed, and still nothing was accomplished. Left unsupported through the culpable inactivity of Amherst, Wolfe found his most strenuous efforts baffled by the strength of the fortress and the vigilance of its commander. Aware that the eyes of the whole English people were upon him, and thirsting for military glory, he resolved that the season should not pass without a decisive conflict. Three desperate plans of assault he submitted to his council of officers, but all were rejected. As a last resort, it was proposed to effect a landing above the city, and, by ascending to the Plains of Abraham, to force Montcalm to an engagement. A close inspection of the side of the cliff revealed a narrow path, which seemed, from the tents on the top, to be guarded by no more than a hundred men. If these could be surprised, the whole army might ascend in safety. The undertaking was desperate; but there was a

---

for Quebec assemble? Of how many men and ships did it consist? When did they reach the scene of action? [See Map, p. 216.—How is Quebec situated? In what direction from it is Point Levi?] Describe Montcalm's position. What were Wolfe's first movements? How were the French intrenchments defended? Give an account of the first attack. By what were Wolfe's efforts baffled? What resolve did he form? How many plans of assault did he submit? What was proposed, as a last resort? What means was there of ascending the cliff? How was it guarded? What night was fixed upon for the attack? Give an account

chance of success, and for a brave man like Wolfe this was enough.

The plan was carefully kept secret, and the night following September 13th was set apart for carrying it into execution. An hour after midnight, the English forces floated down with the tide to the appointed spot. Having silently landed, they commenced the difficult ascent, supporting them-

selves by the boughs and shrubs that skirted the narrow path. The Canadian guard on the summit gave way after a few shots; the road to Quebec was gained; and, when day

---

of the landing. What followed? 254. How did Montcalm receive the news? Of  
8\*

dawned, Wolfe and his army, inspired by their success, stood on the Plains of Abraham.

254. Montcalm could hardly believe the tidings, yet hastened to meet the enemy, summoning to his support the detachments stationed at different points to guard the heights. He had but 2,000 regulars; the rest of his army consisted of brave but inexperienced Canadians. The French general began the attack. His charge was gallantly received by the English, who reserved their fire till his men were within 40 yards. Before their deadly discharge, the undisciplined Canadians gave way in confusion, and all Montcalm's efforts could not rally them. At this critical point, Wolfe decided the fortune of the day by a well-timed charge with the bayonet. The French on all sides fled. At the moment of victory, Wolfe, already twice wounded, received a third ball in his breast. An officer stood near. "Support me," cried Wolfe, "let not my brave fellows see me drop." He was carried to the rear; it was plain that his last hour had come. "They run! they run!" exclaimed the officer who supported him. "Who run?" asked Wolfe, awaking from the lethargy of death. "The French—they give way everywhere." The spirit of the hero was roused, as he gave his last commands; then sinking back, he exclaimed, "Now, God be praised, I die happy!" And so he perished, having gained the proudest victory yet won by English arms in the new world.

Montcalm, who had conducted himself with equal gallantry, met with a fate hardly less glorious. Everywhere present in the thickest of the fight, he did all that mortal could do to redeem the day; but for once fortune deserted him. Twice he was wounded, the last time mortally. "Death is certain," said the surgeon, "you have but ten or twelve hours to live." "I am glad to hear it," gasped Montcalm; "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." He died the

---

what did his army consist? Give an account of Montcalm's charge. How did Wolfe decide the fortune of the day? What took place at the moment of victory? Describe Wolfe's death-scene. How did Montcalm conduct himself? What befell him? What appeal did he make to the English commander? What marks

next morning, after having written to the English commander, to solicit his clemency towards the French prisoners. A monument raised by the English, and generously inscribed with the names of both leaders, marks the scene of this great battle.

255. Montcalm, in his last hours, suggested to his successor the concentration of the French forces, and a vigorous attack on the English before they should intrench themselves. But he left behind him no one able or willing to make the attempt. On the 17th of September, Quebec surrendered. The news was received with exultation throughout England and America. The remains of the French army assembled at Montreal. Early in the following year, they attempted to recapture Quebec; but, after gaining some advantages, they were obliged to retire before a British fleet sent by Pitt to the relief of the city.

256. On the 7th of September, 1760, Amherst, having united his forces to complete the reduction of New France, appeared before Montreal. The officer in command immediately surrendered not only the city itself, but the whole of Canada, together with Detroit and Mackinaw.

257. Meanwhile, difficulties had arisen in the south with the Cherokees [see Map, p. 10]. They had been faithful friends and allies of the English, and would have so continued had it not been for the course of Governor Lyttleton of South

---

the scene of this great battle? 255. What suggestion was made by Montcalm to his successor? Why was it not acted on? When did Quebec surrender? How was the news received in England and America? Where did the remains of the French army assemble? What did they attempt, the next year? With what success did they meet? 256. What movement was made by Amherst in the fall of 1760? 257. Meanwhile, where had difficulties arisen? [See Map, p. 10.—Where did the Cherokees live?] How were these troubles occasioned? What was

Carolina. By unjustly imprisoning some of their chiefs, who had come at his own invitation to explain misunderstandings and ratify a firmer friendship, he excited the indignation of the outraged Red Men, and brought on an Indian war with all its horrors.

In April, 1760, Colonel Montgomery, with 1,900 men, among whom were those gallant sons of Carolina, Moultrie [*mole'-tre*] and Mar'-i-on, was sent against the Cherokees. After pillaging and burning a number of their villages, Montgomery was led into an ambushade, by which twenty of his men were cut off, and he himself was so alarmed that he beat a precipitate retreat. Fort Loudoun, a frontier stronghold, which was besieged by the Indians but had held out in the hope of relief from Montgomery, soon capitulated. Twenty-three privates and four officers were killed, in retaliation for a similar number of murders by the English; and the rest, nearly two hundred in number, were distributed as slaves among the various tribes.

An anecdote illustrating the strength of Indian friendship is worthy of relation here. Among the prisoners taken at Fort Loudoun, was a trader named Stuart, to whom a chief called Little Carpenter was strongly attached. After giving all he possessed to ransom his friend, and finding there was still danger, the faithful Cherokee took Stuart into the woods as if for the purpose of hunting, and led him for nine days through mountain forests till he found Englishmen to whom he could deliver him in safety.

Montgomery had seen enough of Indian warfare; and, despite the remonstrances of the Carolinians, he set sail for the north, and thence for England. He afterwards had a seat in Parliament, where he showed himself an enemy to both liberty and America.

---

done in April, 1760? Give an account of Montgomery's expedition. What was the fate of Fort Loudoun and its garrison? What story is told, to illustrate the strength of Indian friendship? What was Montgomery's next movement? In what body did he afterwards appear?

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

## PONTIAC'S WAR.

258. ENGLAND and France, having exhausted their resources, concluded a peace at Paris, February 10th, 1763. England had lost thousands of brave men, and added £50,000,000 to her national debt; but she had gained much in the new world. Nearly the whole of North America was now in her possession. Her sway extended from the frozen north to Florida, and from ocean to ocean.

259. When the English began to follow up their victories in Canada by taking possession of the French posts in the west, the Indians regarded them with aversion and alarm. These feelings were heightened by the injustice and contempt with which they were too often treated. At last Pontiac, a bold and eloquent Ottawa, who, with his northern braves, had contributed to the defeat of Braddock, effected in 1763 a union between his own people, the Chippeways, Miamis, Shawnees, Delawares, and other tribes, for the extermination of the English throughout the whole western country. The plot was kept secret, and no suspicion of danger was entertained. Trader, farmer, and soldier, had alike laid aside their arms, in the fond belief that war had ceased. Their security proved fatal. Prowling savages gathered round the forts and settlements. A simultaneous attack was made, and nine British garrisons were surprised in a single day. More than a hundred traders were massacred, and 20,000 persons in western Virginia were driven from their homes by fear of the scalping-knife.

260. At Mackinaw, a number of warriors united in an exciting game of ball, while the garrison lounged about wit-

---

258. Where and when was peace made between England and France? What had England lost and gained by the war? 259. How did the western Indians feel towards the English? How was their dislike heightened? Who formed a combination for exterminating the English? In what year? Who was Pontiac? [See Map, p. 10.—Where did the Ottawas live?] What was the state of things at the English posts? Give an account of the massacre. What took place in western Virginia? 260. What took place at Mackinaw? What, at Pittsburg? 261.



nessing the sport. Suddenly the commander was seized ; a rush was made for the fort, where hatchets and other weapons had been concealed by treacherous squaws, and in an instant seventeen persons were cut down. The rest were made prisoners. The French traders alone escaped. Pittsburg was besieged, but saved by the timely arrival of aid.

261. Pontiac undertook the capture of Detroit in person. At this spot a flourishing settlement had grown up, consisting chiefly of French families, occupied in tilling the ground and trading with the surrounding Indians. To obtain entrance into the fort for himself and his warriors, the Ottawa chief suggested a council for "brightening the chain of friendship". Unsuspicious of treason, Major Gladwin, the commandant, agreed to his proposal. At a given signal the chiefs were to fall on him and his attendants, while a general attack was to be made by their confederates on such of the towns-people as might resist. Fortunately, the night before the intended massacre, an Indian woman brought Gladwin a pair of elk-skin moccasins, which she had made for him. Pleased with their appearance, the major ordered another pair ; but the woman was unwilling to deceive him by promising what she supposed could not be performed. Her hesitation attracted attention, and, on being questioned, she disclosed the plot. Accordingly, at the council Gladwin and his men were on their guard. Pontiac saw that his intended treachery was known, and durst not give the signal. He was allowed to depart with an indignant rebuke from the commander ; and, the next day but one (May 9th, 1763), he returned the favor by laying siege to the fort.

For months the garrison suffered. Their provisions ran out, and their sentinels were in constant danger of being cut off by Indian cunning. It is said that the savages boiled and ate some of their victims. No quarter was shown on either side. But the Indians were unused to the

---

What place did Pontiac undertake to capture in person ? What is said of Detroit ? How did Pontiac obtain entrance into the fort ? What treacherous plot had he laid ? How was it defeated ? What took place at the council ? What was done May 9th, 1763 ? Give an account of the siege. Towards the close of

labor involved in a siege, and before the close of the summer Pontiac found his forces diminishing. Jealousies broke out among the different nations, and finally the desertion of all but his own tribe compelled the great emperor of the west to give up the undertaking. He had shown extraordinary ability in the management of the war, and had even established a bank,—the first known among the aborigines. His notes, which were always punctually paid, consisted of pieces of bark containing the figure of what he wanted to buy, and the picture of an otter, which he had adopted as his hieroglyphic signature. No chief before him had possessed such influence with the western tribes, or succeeded so well in securing their united action.

262. The Indians were now for the most part tired of war, and willingly listened to the proposals of General Bradstreet, who had been sent to the west with 1,100 men, to attack them or treat with them, as might be required. In June, 1764, he made a treaty with twenty-two tribes at Niagara. The following August he reached Detroit, and concluded a peace with all the hostile nations except the Delawares and Shawnees. Pontiac, to avoid signing the treaty, retired to the hunting-grounds of the Illinois. There he attempted to raise another confederacy for the same purpose as before. He was at last stabbed at a council, amid a crowd of chiefs, whom he was trying to excite to war, by a Peoria Indian in the interest of the English.

---

the summer, what did Pontiac find? What obliged him to raise the siege? How had it been conducted? Give an account of Pontiac's bank. 262. In 1764, who was sent to the west? For what purpose? How did the Indians feel? What was done at Niagara? What, at Detroit? How did Pontiac avoid signing the treaty? What became of him?

## CHAPTER XXXV.

## STATE OF SOCIETY IN THE COLONIES.

263. THE English colonies in America were originally confined to the region east of the Alleghanies. At the close of the "French and Indian War", a few adventurous pioneers pushed across the mountains, and commenced settling in the rich valleys of the great western rivers. Educated in the school of hardship, and accustomed to rely upon themselves, they were well fitted to struggle with the difficulties encountered in the wilderness, and to make it blossom like the rose. Active, enterprising, and industrious, they were not long in spreading out over the fruitful region whose vast extent and exhaustless resources were even yet hardly appreciated.

The whole population of the thirteen colonies in 1760 is estimated at 1,700,000. Massachusetts and Pennsylvania were the most populous. There were about 300,000 negroes in the colonies. They were for the most part slaves, and were distributed about as follows: in New England, 15,000; in the Middle Colonies, 80,000; in the Southern Colonies, 210,000.

264. The most populous cities in America at this time were Boston and Philadelphia, each of which, in 1753, contained not far from 18,000 inhabitants. The population of New York was about 12,000. The first church in the latter city had been erected by the Dutch inside of the fort. Trinity Church was built in 1696 on its present site. The houses were not numbered before the Revolution. The price of articles of food was regulated by law, that of beef being fixed at  $4\frac{1}{2}$  pence a pound. The great coal mines of America had

---

263. To what region were the English colonies first confined? What was done at the close of the French and Indian war? What was the character of these pioneers? What is the population of the thirteen colonies estimated to have been in 1760? What states were the most populous? How many negroes were there, and how distributed? 264. What were the most populous cities in America at this time? How many inhabitants did they contain in 1753? What was the population of New York? What is said of the churches of New York? What,

not yet been opened, and wood was the only kind of fuel in use.

Albany was occupied by the descendants of old Dutch settlers, who were noted for their hospitality. A Swedish traveller tells us that the people had seats on the stoops of their dwellings, which in the evening were filled with young people, and that passers-by were "obliged to greet everybody unless they would shock the politeness of this town".

#### SCENE IN ALBANY IN 1770.

265. Previous to the Revolution, nine colleges had been established in the colonies, in the following order: Harvard, William and Mary, Yale, Princeton, Columbia (originally called King's), Brown, Rutgers (then Queen's), Dartmouth, Hampden and Sydney. The first medical college was founded at Philadelphia, in 1764. The young people of these early times were far from having the educational advantages enjoyed at the present day. There were no public schools, and often in large districts no schools of any kind for the greater part

---

of the prices of food? What, of the fuel in use? By whom was Albany occupied? What does a Swedish traveller say about this place? 265. Name, in their order, the colleges established before the Revolution. When and where was the

of the year. Public libraries were almost unknown. There was a small collection of books in the City Hall of New York, which were lent out to readers at 4½ pence a week. In 1754, a subscription was started, which resulted in the establishment of the New York Society Library.

In 1700, there were but four printing-presses in the colonies. The first American newspaper, the Boston News Letter, was issued in 1704. In 1741, Franklin published the first magazine, at Philadelphia. In 1750, there were only seven newspapers in circulation, and no daily was attempted till 42 years afterwards, when the Federal Orrery was commenced at Boston. Few books were published before the Revolution, and these were principally histories, religious treatises, or political essays. No great poem or work of fiction had yet been produced in America.

266. Manufactures at an early period engaged the attention of the colonists, especially at the north. What they needed for their own comfort was readily supplied, and they soon commenced producing different articles for export. Iron, hides, leather, and hats, were sent over to the old world, with considerable profit, till the government, fearing the effect of this competition on manufacturing industry at home, discouraged their exportation. This was the case particularly with hats, which the people of New England produced in such quantities, that we are told, if not restrained, they would soon have supplied the world with them.

With equal disregard for the interests of the colonies, the British government had sought to stifle with various restrictions the spirit of commercial enterprise in America. A brisk coast trade, however, was carried on. The fisheries were not neglected; and the bold seamen of New England

---

first medical college founded? What is said of the educational advantages afforded in these early times? What is said of public libraries? What two are mentioned in New York? In 1700, how many printing-presses were in the colonies? When was the first American newspaper issued? When, the first magazine? When, the first daily paper? What was it called? What is said of books before the Revolution? 266. Where did manufactures receive special attention? What articles were manufactured for export? What is said of the hats made in New England? What measures were adopted by the British government? What was the policy of Great Britain with regard to the commerce of the colonies? What

had even vied with the Dutch in pushing out into the frozen seas of the north in search of whales. At first they confined their efforts to the smaller kinds; but in 1712, one of the adventurous whalers of Nantucket met, far out at sea, one of the largest species, and after a terrible battle succeeded in bringing it into port. Thus was a new impulse given to the whale-fishery in New England.

267. Agriculture, however, was the main reliance of the great body of the people. The richness of the primeval soil well repaid the husbandman for his labor. Maize, tobacco, and the potato, were extensively cultivated in the sunny fields of Virginia and the adjacent colonies. Rice and indigo were raised abundantly in South Carolina. Cotton received attention in the south, and began to be spun and woven. Fifteen years before the Revolution, the wife of Washington kept sixteen spinning-wheels running, and wore the fabrics made in her house under her own direction. The people of North Carolina lived in ease and plenty, relying much on hunting and fishing. Maize, tar, and turpentine, were the principal products of their domain. In the north, foreign as well as native grains and vegetables were everywhere raised. Barley was cultivated in New England from the time of its first settlement. Gosnold sowed it in Martha's Vineyard, in 1602.

268. Travelling facilities, at the time we are speaking of, were exceedingly limited. Railroads, steamboats, and even stage-coaches, were unknown. Passengers were conveyed from point to point on the coast in small sloops navigated by a man and a boy. They engaged to run from New York to Philadelphia in three days, unless in passing through the Narrows they were driven too far out to sea, in which case the voyage might take a week or more. New Jersey was crossed by land in wagons, which started twice a week from

---

progress had been made by the colonists in commercial matters? How was a new impulse given to the whale-fishery in New England? 267. What was the main reliance of the colonists? What was the general character of the soil? What were raised throughout the south? What, particularly in South Carolina? What is said of cotton? What is said of the wife of Washington? How did the people of North Carolina live? What were their principal products? What were raised in the north? Where was barley cultivated? 268. What is said of travelling facilities at this time? How were passengers carried from point to

New York. In 1765, a new line was established, consisting of wagons without springs. The next year, a third line started, which promised to make the journey from New York to Philadelphia in two days; from this unprecedented speed its vehicles were called "flying machines". The first stage-coach in America commenced running in 1772 from Boston to Providence, taking two days to go that distance.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

269. THE people of America were descendants of men who had fled from oppression, and braved the hardships of the wilderness for the blessings of civil and religious liberty. They had endured incredible sufferings, and through their own unaided industry had at last prospered and grown strong. When poor and feeble, they had been neglected by the mother country; as soon as they became worth governing, Britain had sent them governors; and now that they were growing rich, she sought to increase her revenue by taxing them. A pretext was not wanting. Heavy expenses had been incurred by the home government for the protection of the colonies in the French and Indian War; and these, it was claimed, should be reimbursed. The commanders sent over had been generally incompetent, and much of their success was due to the colonial troops and officers who served under them; yet the Americans would not have objected to contributing their share, had they been allowed a voice in laying the tax or directing how it should be appropriated. Having no representatives in Parliament, however, they

---

point on the coast? How long did it take to make the passage from New York to Philadelphia? Give an account of the different lines that ran across New Jersey. When did the first stage-coach in America commence running? On what route? How long did it take to make the journey?

269. From whom were the people of America descended? How were they treated by the mother country? What pretext was assigned for taxing them? Why did the Americans object to contributing their share of the expense? How

claimed that Parliament had no right to tax them. The ministers of George II. had not only asserted the right, but exercised it, by laying duties on various imported articles. The question was freely discussed throughout America, and everywhere a unanimous voice rose from the people that taxation without representation was unjust and intolerable. The law imposing the obnoxious duties was declared unconstitutional and oppressive. In New England it was constantly evaded, by secretly conveying the taxable articles ashore and concealing them from the collectors. To put a stop to this practice, on the accession of George III. in 1760, edicts were issued commanding all sheriffs and constables to aid the collectors, when called upon, in breaking open and searching cellars, houses, or vessels, that were suspected of containing concealed goods.

Salem was the first place in which it was attempted to enforce this law. The inhabitants denied the right of officers to force their dwellings, and the Supreme Court directed that the question should be argued at Boston. The people were represented by James O'tis, an eloquent and able lawyer, who had been advocate-general for the crown, but resigned his office rather than enforce an unconstitutional law. Otis' speech on this question produced a thrilling effect on the vast concourse that heard it. It was the ablest defence of popular rights yet put forth, and confirmed the patriots of Massachusetts in their resolution to resist, even by force of arms.

270. At the south, too, the same spirit was rife. In Virginia, the Church of England was established by law, and its ministers had been voted an annual salary of 16,000 pounds of tobacco each. In 1758, a year of scarcity, with the view of relieving the people, it was enacted by the colonial legislature that the salaries of the clergy, as well as other public

---

had the ministers of George II. exercised this alleged right? What position was maintained by the colonists? How was the law imposing the offensive duties evaded? What was done on the accession of George III.? Where was the first attempt made to enforce this law? What position did the people of Salem take? Where was the question argued? Who spoke in behalf of the people? What was the effect of Otis' speech? 270. Where else was the same spirit rife? What



dues, might be paid in cash, each pound of tobacco being rated at two pence, which was below its real value. The clergy resisted, and the king refused to sign the act. Several years passed, and in 1763 the clergy brought a suit for damages. The cause of the people was in the hands of Patrick Henry.

This distinguished man was born in Virginia, in 1736. A lover of nature, he had preferred rural pleasures and solitary forest rambles to his books, and had grown up with a mind strong but not cultivated, and an education varied rather than profound. He had tried mercantile pursuits and farming without success, and at last, turning his attention to the law, was licensed after six weeks' study. He had reached the age of twenty-seven without distinction; and now he stood in the old Hanover court-house, before the most learned of the colony, the triumphant clergy smiling at his awkwardness, and many an anxious eye bent on him in the crowded audience.

The commencement of his speech made little impression; but, as the young orator warmed with his subject, his eye lighted up with genius, his figure became erect, his expression grand, his action bold, his voice commanding, his words impassioned, his arguments irresistible. Men looked at each other in surprise, then, fascinated, drank in with eyes and ears, in death-like silence, the eloquence of the gifted speaker. The clergy shrank in alarm from his scathing sarcasm; and the jury, under the spell of his glowing appeals, returned a verdict of *one penny damages*. The people shouted with delight at their unexpected triumph, and bore their gallant champion from the court-house on their shoulders.

271. Meanwhile the British ministry, no longer guided by the liberal counsels of Pitt, pushed through Parliament a bill, which laid an impost on wines, increased the duty on sugar, and provided for the more rigid enforcement of the

---

difficulty had arisen between the clergy and the people? In 1763, what did the clergy do? Who pleaded the cause of the people? Give a sketch of the previous history of Patrick Henry. How old was he at this time? Give an account of his triumph in Hanover court-house. What verdict was returned? How did the people reward their champion? 271. What injudicious bill was next passed by

regulations for collecting the revenue. Even before the passage of this bill was announced, the principle it involved was condemned in the strongest terms in a town-meeting at Boston. Samuel Adams, a stout-hearted patriot, who had already proved that taxation and representation were inseparable, protested in the name of the people against the assumption by Parliament of powers fatal to liberty and inconsistent with the rights to which every Briton was born.

272. In 1765, the famous Stamp Act was passed. It had long been contemplated by the enemies of America, but no British statesman, up to this time, had ventured to urge its passage. According to its provisions, no deed, bond, note, lease, contract, or other legal document, was valid, without a stamp, costing, according to the nature of the instrument, from 3 pence to £6. Every newspaper, pamphlet, almanac, &c., was also required to bear a stamp, costing from a half-penny to 4 pence; and on each advertisement they contained a duty of two shillings was imposed. The passage of this act seemed to sound the knell of freedom in America. "The sun of liberty is set," wrote Franklin to Charles Thompson, the future secretary of Congress; "the Americans must light the lamps of industry and economy." "Be assured," was his friend's answer, "we shall light torches of a very different character." Such was the general feeling of the colonists—war, rather than submission to injustice.

The House of Burgesses of Virginia was in session when the news arrived. Odious as the measure was, there was danger in opposing it, and no one durst introduce the subject. Patrick Henry was the youngest member. After waiting in vain for older men to lead the way, he hastily drew up on the blank leaf of an old law-book five resolutions, which in strong terms asserted the rights of the colonies, and denied the authority of Parliament to impose taxes upon them. The reading of these resolutions produced unbounded

---

Parliament? Before the news arrived, where was the principle it involved strongly condemned? What did Samuel Adams do? 272. In 1765, what act was passed? What was the substance of the Stamp Act? On its enactment, what did Franklin write to one of his friends? What was his friend's reply? What was the general feeling throughout the colonies? What body was in session

consternation in the House. The Speaker and many of the members were royalists, and a protracted and violent debate followed. But the eloquence of Henry bore down all opposition. Indignant at the attempt to inthrall his country, the fearless orator, in the midst of an impassioned harangue,

AND GEORGE III., repeated Henry, with flashing eye and unfaltering voice, "may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it." Again the young mountaineer triumphed. The resolutions were carried. They were circulated throughout the colo-

---

when the news arrived? State what took place in the House of Burgesses.

nies, and everywhere excited the same determined spirit that they breathed.

Among those who listened to the inspiring words of Patrick Henry on this occasion, was a young Virginian, destined to play no unimportant part in his country's history. It was Thomas Jefferson, then a student twenty-two years old. Standing in the lobby, he heard the whole discussion. The words of the eloquent patriot found an abiding echo in his heart, and awakened there the sentiment which directed all his future conduct—that "resistance to tyrants is obedience to God."

273. The indignation of the people at the passage of the Stamp Act was not confined to Virginia. Similar resolutions to those of Patrick Henry were passed in New York, Massachusetts, and elsewhere. Early in October, 1765, delegates from nine colonies assembled at New York, and drew up a declaration of their grievances and rights. A petition embodying their views was forwarded to both king and Parliament.

The Act was to go into effect on the first of November, and the excitement became intense as the day approached. Those who were appointed to sell the stamps were burned in effigy, and compelled to resign or quit the country. On the arrival of stamps at the seaport towns, the flags were placed at half-mast, muffled bells were tolled, and the citizens walked the streets attired in mourning. In New York, ten boxes of stamps were destroyed by the people, and the merchants resolved to import nothing from the mother country till the offensive act was repealed. The business men of Philadelphia and Boston followed this example. In the latter city, a handbill was posted at the corners, warning the person who should first distribute or use stamped sheets to take care of his property and person. A paper was issued, bearing for

---

What was the effect of Patrick Henry's eloquence? Who listened to Henry's words on this occasion? What feeling did they awaken in him? How old was Jefferson at this time? 273. In what other colonies were resolutions against the Stamp Act passed? What took place in October, 1765? When was the Stamp Act to go into effect? What was done to the stamp officers? How did the inhabitants express their indignation when the stamps arrived? What was done

its device a snake, on the head of which were the letters N. E. [New England], while the body was divided into several pieces, marked with the initials of the other colonies. The motto, *Join or die*, explained its meaning. In New Hampshire, on the morning of the eventful day, the bells tolled, and the people assembled as if for a funeral procession. A coffin bearing the name of LIBERTY was borne to a grave on the shoulders of eight persons, to the sound of minute-guns. A funeral oration was pronounced, and the coffin was lowered into the grave. Suddenly signs of life appeared. It was raised to the surface, and now bore the inscription LIBERTY REVIVED. Enthusiastic shouts from the multitude, and the triumphant sound of drums and trumpets, greeted the resurrection.

The meaning of these demonstrations was not to be misunderstood. It was evident that the Stamp Act could be enforced only by a resort to arms, and from this Parliament shrunk. The wiser part began to urge its repeal, and Franklin, the agent for Pennsylvania, was brought before the House of Commons (February 13th, 1766) and examined on the various points involved in the controversy. His bold and candid answers increased the high reputation he already enjoyed, and called forth the lasting gratitude of his countrymen. In March, Parliament gave way to the determined spirit of the Americans by repealing the odious act, though it reasserted its right "to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever".

274. Harmony might now have been restored, had not the enemies of America, mortified at their recent defeat, succeeded in passing through Parliament an act for imposing a duty on all tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors, imported into the colonies. At the same time, officers were appointed to enforce the Acts of Navigation and Trade, and the authority of the Assembly of New York, which had refused to quarter British troops at the expense of the colony, was sus-

---

in New York? What, in Boston? What significant device was adopted by a newspaper? What took place in New Hampshire? What was evident from these demonstrations? Did Parliament like to resort to arms? What did the wiser part urge? Who was examined before the House of Commons? What is said of Franklin's answers? What was done in March, 1766? 274. What now

pended till it should comply with the requisitions of Parliament.

This injudicious course again roused the indignation of the colonists, which was increased in the fall of 1768 by the announcement that Parliament had determined to send several regiments to Boston, to reduce the people to submission. A day of fasting and prayer was appointed. Town-meetings and a general convention of delegates from all parts of the province were held at Fan'-eu-il Hall, at which the course of

#### FANEUIL HALL, BOSTON.

the home government was freely denounced. On the 1st of October, the troops landed. The council refused to furnish them quarters, and it was with difficulty that accommodations

prevented harmony from being restored? What injudicious enactments followed? What feeling was awakened in the colonies? How was it increased in the fall of 1768? What action was taken by the people? When did the troops land? What difficulty awaited them? What took place at the next meeting of the Gen-

were procured for them, even at the expense of the crown. When the next General Court met, an armed force was found stationed in the hall. Otis and others protested against so tyrannical an attempt to overawe the members; and, when the governor called on the House to pay for the quartering of the troops, they firmly refused to do so.

275. The governors of the colonies at this time were in the interest of the king, and constantly tried to extend their authority at the expense of the people. Their subordinates followed their example, and sought to enrich themselves by all kinds of extortion. In North Carolina, this was done by sheriffs, constables, and other officers, to such an extent, that the people in some of the southern settlements, unable to bear the burdens thus unjustly imposed, rose in their own defence. They assumed the name of Regulators, and determined to resist the payment of all taxes that were not authorized by law and honestly appropriated. Governor Tryon chose to regard this movement as an insurrection; and, a corrupt grand-jury supporting his views, he proceeded against them with the militia of the colony. The Regulators assembled in alarm when they heard that their fields were being devastated by Tryon's forces, but, lacking arms and ammunition, they were easily defeated. A number of the prisoners were hanged. Some of the best estates in the country were confiscated to the governor and his satellites; and the persecuted Regulators, though convicted of nothing more than a desire to have existing laws honestly executed, were obliged to submit or flee to the west. Not a few chose the latter alternative. The Cherokees granted them land, and they founded a republic which afterwards became the state of Tennessee. Tryon soon went to New York, of which he had been appointed governor, leaving North Carolina to discharge a debt of \$200,000 contracted by his reckless proceedings.

276. The soldiers brought over for the extinction of lib-

---

eral Court? 275. What is said of the governors of the colonies at this time? What, of their subordinates? What took place in North Carolina? How did Governor Tryon choose to regard this movement? What steps did he take? What was the result? What was the origin of the state of Tennessee? Where did Tryon

erty, imbibing the spirit of their masters, conducted themselves so offensively that difficulties with the inhabitants constantly occurred. In New York, early in 1770, they cut down a liberty-pole which had stood three years in the Park. An affray followed, in which the people had the advantage, and a new pole was erected in the upper part of the city. In Boston, the excesses of the soldiers, and the injustice of their officers in screening them from punishment, gave the people just grounds for complaint. A collision between the troops and the citizens (in March, 1770) was the natural result. Three of the latter were killed, and several wounded. This event was called "the Boston Massacre". It produced the deepest excitement, and fatally widened the existing breach. The townsmen, with Samuel Adams at their head, insisted on the immediate withdrawal of the troops, and their commander was obliged to remove them to the neighboring fort.

An occurrence at Providence, also, showed the temper of the times. A royal schooner, the *Gaspee*, cruising near that place, kept annoying the inhabitants by taking their property, firing at market-boats, and illegally seizing the cargoes of such vessels as it overhauled. While chasing a packet, in June, 1772, the *Gaspee* ran aground. This opportunity was not to be lost. The same night, a party from Providence boarded the stranded vessel, and set fire to it, after putting the crew ashore. Every effort to punish the perpetrators of the act failed.

277. The merchants of America adhered to their resolution not to import British commodities, and the effect began to be felt across the Atlantic. An appeal was made to Parliament by London merchants; and, in 1770, Lord North having become prime minister, the offensive duty was removed from every article except tea, on which it was retained, to show that Parliament still claimed the right. It was against this

---

soon after go? 276. How did the soldiers conduct themselves towards the inhabitants? What took place in New York? What, in Boston? On what did the people of Boston insist? What was the result? Give an account of the burning of the *Gaspee*. 277. To what determination did the merchants of America adhere? Where did the effect begin to be felt? What was the consequence? On what ar-



alleged right, however, and not the tax itself, that the Americans had contended; and they were by no means satisfied with such tardy and partial concession. The use of tea was voluntarily laid aside; and, to insure united action, the friends of liberty (now known as Whigs, in contradistinction to the Tories, or advocates of Parliamentary taxation) established committees of correspondence in the various colonies.

No orders being received from America, tea rapidly accumulated in the English warehouses. The duty before laid on its exportation was now removed, with the view of lowering the price, and thus inducing the colonists to purchase it in spite of the import tax. Cargoes were sent to different American ports, but the result showed that the spirit of the colonies was not yet understood. At New York and Philadelphia, the ships, prevented from landing their cargoes, were sent back as they came. At Charleston, the tea was stored in damp cellars, where it was spoiled. At Boston, the captains would have complied with the demands of the citizens and returned to London, but the governor and custom-house officers withheld their permission. Finding the authorities determined to force the tea upon them, the people settled the question for themselves. Seven thousand men assembled in town-meeting on the 16th of December, 1773, a day memorable in history. Fearless speeches were made by Adams, Quincy, and others; at the close of which, an hour after dark, a war-whoop was raised, and about fifty persons, disguised as Indians, were seen to pass the door in the direction of the wharf where the three tea-ships were moored. The vessels were boarded; and the contents of 340 chests of tea were emptied into the water. No resistance was offered, and all the proceedings were conducted in the most orderly manner, in the presence of a vast concourse.

As the party were returning, they passed a house at which Admiral Montague was spending the evening. Raising the

---

ticle was the tax retained? Why? How did the Americans show their aversion to the principle? To insure united action, what did the friends of liberty do? What was done in England, to induce the colonists to purchase tea? Where were cargoes sent? What was the result in New York and Philadelphia? In Charleston? Who prevented the ships sent to Boston from returning? What took

window, the admiral cried, "Well, boys, you've had a fine night for your Indian caper. But, mind, you've got to pay the fiddler yet." "Oh! never mind," replied one of the leaders, "never mind, squire! just come out here, if you please, and we'll settle the bill in two minutes!" The admiral preferred letting the bill stand, and quickly shut down the window.

278. This bold act provoked Parliament to pass the "Boston Port Bill", which forbade the masters of vessels to take in or discharge cargoes in that harbor. The Virginia House of Burgesses was in session when the news of this retaliatory measure was received; a protest against it was at once entered on their journal. Governor Dunmore, to show his disapproval of their action, the next day dissolved the House. They separated, but only to meet elsewhere and pass strong resolutions, declaring an attack on one colony an attack on all, and recommending a general congress for the purpose of deciding on some common course. Similar resolutions were passed in Massachusetts, and by common consent it was ordered that a congress of delegates from all the colonies should meet at Philadelphia in September.

279. Meanwhile, General Gage (unfavorably known in connection with Braddock's defeat) had been appointed governor of Massachusetts. His rash measures hastened the approaching crisis. He tried to weaken the cause of freedom by buying over Samuel Adams with a high office. But this true-hearted man, justly regarded as the leader of the patriotic movements in Boston, whom Jefferson afterwards pronounced "wise in council, fertile in resources, and immovable in his purposes," was as incorruptible as he was brave. "I trust," replied he to Gage's messenger, "I have long since made my peace with the King of kings, and no personal consideration shall induce me to abandon the right-

---

place, December 16th, 1773? Give an account of the destruction of the tea. What story is told of Admiral Montague? 278. How did Parliament punish Boston for this bold proceeding? What did the Boston Port Bill provide? When the news of its passage reached Virginia, what action was taken by the House of Burgesses? How did Gov. Dunmore show his disapproval? What did the assembly do after their dissolution? What was ordered by common consent? 279. Meanwhile, who had been appointed governor of Massachusetts? What course did Gage pursue?

cous cause of my country. Tell Governor Gage, it is the advice of Samuel Adams to him, no longer to insult the feelings of an exasperated people."

280. On the 5th of September, 1774, the Continental Congress met at Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia. Fifty-three delegates appeared, the ablest men of America, representing every colony but Georgia. It was a solemn meeting, for it involved the destiny of America. Adams was there, and Washington, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, and Patrick Henry, never deaf to his country's call. There was but one voice in the assembly, one feeling—never to submit. A petition was addressed to the obstinate king, whose infatuated course was flinging the brightest jewel from his crown; an appeal was made to the people of Great Britain; but preparations for the worst were not forgotten.

281. Despite the efforts of Gage, the Assembly of Massachusetts met in October, 1774. John Hancock, a graduate of Harvard and one of the ablest statesmen of the Revolution, was elected president. Active preparations were made for the war, which it now required little sagacity to foresee. Measures were taken for organizing the militia. Officers were appointed, and a committee of safety was empowered to call the citizens together whenever circumstances required. The people, too, did their part. There was no shrinking from the impending struggle. The anniversary of "the Boston massacre" was solemnly celebrated in that city; on which occasion Dr. Joseph Warren, afterwards a martyr to liberty at Bunker Hill, setting the threats of British officials at defiance, stirred the deepest sympathies and strongest passions of an immense audience.

282. Even the boys of Boston caught the spirit of their sires. They were wont to amuse themselves in winter by building snow-houses, and skating on a pond in the Common.

---

What passed between him and Samuel Adams? 280. Where did the first Continental Congress meet? When? How many delegates attended? What colonies were represented? Name some who were present. What was the unanimous feeling of the assembly? What action did they take? 281. When did the next assembly meet in Massachusetts? Who was elected president? What steps were taken? How was the anniversary of "the Boston massacre" observed? 282. What injuries did the boys of Boston receive from the soldiers? To whom

The soldiers wantonly interfered with their sports, and their complaints to the inferior officers were disregarded, and even ridiculed. A number of the largest boys at last waited on General Gage, and informed him that they had come for satisfaction. "What!" said Gage; "have your fathers been

GENERAL GAGE AND THE BOSTON BOYS.

teaching you rebellion, and sent you here to exhibit it?" "Nobody sent us," answered the leader, with flashing eye. "We have never injured your troops; but they have trampled down our snow-hills, and broken the ice of our skating pond. We complained, and they called us young rebels, and told us to help ourselves if we could. We told the captain, and he laughed at us. Yesterday our works were destroyed for the third time, and we will bear it no longer." The British general could not restrain his admiration. "The very children here," he exclaimed, "draw in a love of liberty with the air they breathe. Go, my brave boys, and be assured if my troops trouble you again they shall be punished."

283. In March, 1775, the Virginia legislature again as-

---

did they complain? Relate what passed between them and Gen. Gage. 283. When

sembled. Patrick Henry, the great orator of the Revolution, was a member. Believing war inevitable, he introduced resolutions providing for the organization of a republican army, and in their support delivered a memorable speech whose electrical effect can now hardly be imagined, though it will never be read without emotion. "I know not what course others may take," said he, after kindling the spirits of those who listened with his burning eloquence, "but for me, give me liberty or give me death."

The struggle was at hand. An appeal to the God of battles alone was left.

284. Before entering on the history of the contest, it is necessary to glance at an important event in the southwest. The treaty of Paris had transferred Louisiana from France to Spain, contrary to the wishes of its people. Their repugnance to the change was heightened in 1768, by the arrival of a Spanish governor of haughty manners and arbitrary principles, who enforced the restrictive system of his country, to the great injury of their commerce. Attached to the French crown, and feeling that they ought not to be transferred from one king to another without their own consent, the people of New Orleans, supported by those of the country parishes, established an independent republic; and the Spanish governor, unable to exercise his authority, retired to Havana. The new government lasted not long. General O'Reilly [*ri'-le*], sent over with an army for that purpose, restored Spanish authority, and the leaders of the liberal movement expiated their offence in dungeons or on the gallows.

---

did the Virginia legislature again assemble? What resolutions were introduced by Patrick Henry? What is said of the speech he delivered in their support? 284. How was Louisiana affected by the treaty of Paris? How was this change liked by the people? What increased their aversion to it? What bold step did they take? What was the fate of the movement and its leaders?

## **PART III.**

### **REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD,**

**EXTENDING FROM THE BREAKING OUT OF THE REVOLUTION,  
A. D. 1775, TO THE ORGANIZATION OF A GOVERNMENT  
UNDER THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, 1789.**

---

#### **CHAPTER I.**

##### **BATTLE OF LEXINGTON.**

285. AN act of Parliament, passed in February, 1775, declared that a rebellion existed in Massachusetts, and that an additional force should be sent over to Boston. About 3,000 British troops were already there. Boston Neck, which connected the peninsula on which the rebellious town was built with the main-land, had been fortified by Gage, and a line of sentinels stationed there cut off the inhabitants from communication with the surrounding country. The patriots, however, had secretly conveyed their cannon, as well as a quantity of powder and cartridges, out of the city, concealing them in loads of manure with which they passed the guard unsuspected. Their principal depot was at Concord, about eighteen miles northwest of Boston. Of this Gage was aware; and he resolved to send a strong detachment thither, to destroy their stores and secure the persons of Hancock and Samuel Adams, whom he supposed to be in that vicinity. Arrangements were made with the greatest secrecy; and on the 18th of April, 1775, an hour before mid-

---

285. What was declared by act of Parliament, February, 1775? How many British troops were already in Boston? What precautions had been taken by Gage? How had the patriots evaded them? Where was the principal depot of the Americans? What did Gage resolve to do? For what purposes? What took place April 18th, 1775? Who had penetrated the designs of Gage? What

night, 800 men, under Lieutenant-colonel Smith, set out for Concord.

Notwithstanding the precautions of the British general, the vigilant Warren had penetrated his designs; and hardly had the expedition started when messengers were despatched by different routes to give the alarm. A lantern was suspended in the steeple of the North Church, which was seen by the people of Charlestown, and they also sent trusty men to alarm the country. Smith had not advanced far before he heard the sound of musketry and the ringing of bells; and, apprehending danger, he sent back for reënforcements, and threw out a detachment in advance to secure the bridges.

Before five the next morning, the British advanced guard, commanded by Major Pitcairn, reached Lexington [see Map, p. 84], ten miles from Boston, on the Concord road. On the green, a body of minute-men, hastily gathered and poorly equipped, were ready to receive them. "Disperse, ye rebels," cried the British leader. The Americans stood their ground: Pitcairn discharged his pistol at them, and a volley from his men followed. A few shots were returned; but the Americans gave way, with a loss of 7 men. The main body now came up, and the march was resumed for Concord. They arrived there at seven. The inhabitants had received news of the intended movement about midnight, and had conveyed part of the arms and ammunition to a place of safety. The rest was destroyed. Meantime a large body of minute-men had assembled, and a skirmish took place, which resulted in the loss of several on both sides, and the retreat of the British from a bridge which they had seized.

286. The work of destruction having been completed, the British began to return. This was the signal for the brave yeomanry of the surrounding country. Posting themselves

---

means were taken for alarming the country? Before he had advanced far, what did Smith hear? What did this lead him to do? Who commanded the advanced guard? Before five, April 19th, what place did Pitcairn and his men reach? [See Map, p. 84.—Where is Lexington? In what direction from Boston? In what direction is Concord from Lexington? How far?] Whom did the British find drawn up on the green? Give an account of the battle of Lexington. Where did the British then go? What took place at Concord? 286. After destroying the stores, what was the next step of the British? Describe the retreat from Con-

in houses, and behind sheds, trees, and fences on the roadside, they poured in an unrelenting and deadly fire on the retreating army. Even boys and old men hastened to strike a blow for their country. Thus for miles the British marched, their officers falling and their ranks thinning under a continuous fire which they were unable to return with effect. Colonel Smith was severely wounded, and his men, sinking under fatigue and discouraged by their losses, were in danger of being entirely cut off, when they were met, eleven miles from Boston, by a timely reinforcement of 1,000 men under Lord Percy. Received by their comrades in a hollow square, they threw themselves on the ground, and were allowed a short rest to fit them for the balance of the march.

The patriots, notwithstanding Lord Percy's field-pieces, continued the pursuit to Charlestown. Here the disastrous retreat terminated, the British having lost 65 killed, 180 wounded, and 28 taken prisoners. On the opposite side, 59 were killed, 39 wounded, and 5 missing. The first battle of the Revolution was fought, and its result was not such as to discourage the colonists.

287. At this early period were commenced those acts of savage cruelty which too often disgraced the British troops in the course of the war. Percy allowed his men to plunder and fire a number of houses on the route. In one of these a woman was lying sick, and her child had taken refuge under the bed. The former was barbarously dragged out of the house, and one of the marauders, seeing the boy's foot protrude, wantonly pinned it to the floor with his bayonet. No groan escaped the little hero; but the merciless soldiers reduced the house to ashes and hurried on to other outrages.

---

cord. What saved Smith and his men from destruction? On meeting Percy's reinforcement, what did the weary troops do? How far did the patriots continue the pursuit? What was the loss on both sides? 287. What commenced at this early period? What did Percy allow his men to do? What instance of barbarity is mentioned?



## CHAPTER II.

## CAPTURE OF TICONDEROGA.—WASHINGTON ELECTED COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF.

288. It was felt that the war had begun in earnest, and 20,000 patriots soon assembled in the vicinity of Boston, surrounded the city, and threatened to cut off the British army from provisions. Meanwhile, the legislature of Connecticut resolved to strike a blow. A committee was sent to the frontier with \$1,000, to fit out an expedition against Ticonderoga. The command was given to Colonel E'-than Allen, already distinguished as a leader of the "Green Mountain Boys". The company so called had been organized three years before, to prevent New York from extending her jurisdiction over the region they occupied, now known as Vermont. Colonel Allen was assisted by Benedict Arnold, afterwards a traitor, but then a brave and esteemed patriot. An army 270 strong was soon collected on the east side of Lake Champlain [see Map, p. 169], opposite Ticonderoga. It was intended to cross in the night, but so few boats were at hand that at daylight on the 10th of May (1775) only the officers and 83 men had landed on the western shore.

Not daring to wait for more, lest he should be discovered and cut off by the garrison, Allen addressed his little band and marched directly to the fort. The surprise was complete. As Allen entered the sally-port at the head of his men, a sentinel snapped his gun at him, and ran to raise the alarm. The Americans followed, and the garrison were roused from sleep only to find themselves prisoners. Colonel Allen made his way to the commander's apartment and ordered him to surrender. "By what authority?" demanded

---

288. What immediately followed the battle of Lexington? What was done by the legislature of Connecticut? To whom was the command of the expedition against Ticonderoga given? As what was Ethan Allen already distinguished? For what had the company called "the Green Mountain Boys" been organized? By whom was Allen assisted? How large a force was raised? Where did they rendezvous? What difficulty did they experience in crossing the lake? What was the consequence? What was Allen now obliged to do? Give an account of

the astonished officer. Raising his sword as if to strike, Allen replied, "In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress." Resistance was vain, and the British commander was obliged to surrender the post, together with 48 men, 122 cannon, several vessels, abundant stores, and a large supply of powder, which was much needed in the camp at Boston. Two days afterwards, Crown Point was taken without resistance. These achievements, performed without the loss of a single man, greatly encouraged the colonists.

289. The subsequent career of the brave but eccentric Allen is worthy of relation. In the autumn of 1775, he attempted the capture of Montreal, but, after a desperate struggle, was made a prisoner. He was sent to England, and suffered much on the voyage from being confined with 34 others in a room about 20 feet square. This was all forgotten, however, on the return voyage, when an opportunity for ample revenge occurred. A conspiracy was formed for killing the captain and taking possession of the vessel; but Allen, though on his way to a prison-ship, and aware of the sufferings in store for him, refused to take part in it. Exchanged at last for a British officer, he was made commander of the Vermont militia. The British tried to buy him over, but in vain.

290. Love of country was the ruling passion in Ethan Allen's breast. His brother favored the British, aiding them with his means, and sending them from time to time such information as he thought would be of service. When Ethan ascertained this, he at once laid the fact before the authorities, advising them to confiscate his brother's property and apply it to the defence of the country.—His eventful life terminated in 1789.

291. The same day that Ethan Allen captured Ticonderoga, the Continental Congress commenced its second session at Philadelphia. Among its members were Thomas Jefferson,

---

the surprise of the fort. What was surrendered along with the fort? Two days after, what post was taken? What was the effect of these achievements on the colonists? 289. What is related of Allen's subsequent history? To what office was he finally raised? What attempt was made by the British? 290. What is said of Ethan Allen's love of country? To prove this, what story is told respecting him and his brother? When did Ethan Allen die? 291. What body met on

whom we have met before, listening to the eloquence of Henry, and John Adams, a native of Massachusetts, now in his fortieth year. Distinguished for his industry and business habits, Adams was one of the most useful members of the House. He had constantly opposed the encroachments of Parliament, yet had shown his independence by defending the British soldiers concerned in the "Boston Massacre", on their trial for that offence.

Though still hoping for concessions from the mother country, Congress vigorously prepared for war. Bills of credit were issued to the amount of \$3,000,000. The appointment of a commander-in-chief next engaged attention. John Adams, in a powerful speech, set forth the high qualities which should be possessed by the person selected for this office, and concluded by nominating one of their own body, in whom they were all combined—George Washington, of Virginia. The House was taken by surprise, for but few had known the speaker's intention. No one was more surprised than Washington himself, who immediately left the room. The next day he was unanimously elected.

292. The news of the stand taken at Lexington rapidly spread throughout the country, and was everywhere received with enthusiasm. In a remote part of Virginia, a tall young man hastened to bear the news to a company in the woods. He expressed his feelings in a fervid speech, and they lost no time in arming for liberty. This youth was John Marshall, the future chief-justice. Just a month after the battle, the news reached Charlotte, N. C. The people immediately met, declared themselves freed from allegiance to the king, and promised to defend the independence thus asserted with their lives and fortunes. *This was the first proposal to throw off the British yoke.* Their countrymen at the north were

---

the same day that Ticonderoga was captured? What new members made their appearance in Congress? What is said of John Adams? For what did Congress still hope? What steps did they take in preparation for war? Whom did they appoint commander-in-chief? Relate the circumstances. 292. How was the news of the battle of Lexington received? What took place in a remote part of Virginia? Who was the person that made the announcement? What took place at Charlotte, N. C.? For what as yet were the northern patriots contending?

in arms merely for rights to which, as British subjects, they believed themselves entitled. The people of Charlotte were the first to declare in favor of complete independence.

293. The governors of the colonies had received orders to secure all arms and military stores collected by the people. According to these instructions, Lord Dunmore, on the 20th of April, seized on the powder in the magazine at Williamsburg, Va. The people, with Patrick Henry at their head, demanded restitution, and the governor had to pay for the powder in full. The amount (about \$1,500) was transmitted to Congress. After fortifying his residence, the mortified Dunmore issued a proclamation against Henry and his associates. This incensed the people, and some intercepted letters written by the governor, in which he grossly misrepresented the colonists, added to their indignation. Justly alarmed for his safety, Dunmore took refuge on board of a British vessel. About the same time, the governors of North and South Carolina were obliged to pursue a similar course.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

294. THE British army in Boston was increased in May, 1775, to 10,000 men, by reënforcements from England and Ireland, commanded by Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne. On the 12th of June, Gage issued a proclamation offering pardon to all who would abandon the cause of the colonies, except Samuel Adams and John Hancock, who were declared outlaws.

295. The American army, though larger than that of the enemy, was poorly equipped and disciplined. Their officers,

---

What were the people of Charlotte the first to advocate? 293. What orders had the governors of the colonies received? What did Lord Dunmore do on the 20th of April, 1775? What action was taken by the people? What was the result? What governors had to pursue a similar course?

294. How was the British army increased in May, 1775? What was the substance of the proclamation issued by Gage in June? 295. How did the American

however, were men who had seen service. Ar'-te-mas Ward, of Massachusetts, held the chief command. On the 16th of June, it was ascertained that Gen. Gage intended to seize and fortify Bunker Hill. At nine o'clock at night, Colonel Prescott was despatched from Cambridge with a thousand men to anticipate the movement. Mistaking Breed's Hill for Bunker's in the darkness, they commenced intrenching themselves on the former eminence, which was nearer to Boston, and more exposed to the fire of the British ships. The name of Bunker Hill, however, is universally given to the engagement that followed. The men worked with the utmost diligence, and so noiselessly that they were not discovered till dawn, either by the ships or the British sentinels on Copp's Hill, Boston, whose "All's well!" they distinctly heard at intervals through the night.

The surprise of the British may be imagined, when, at day-break on the 17th, they beheld a strong intrenchment, six feet high, commanding their camp. A strong battery planted there would force them to evacuate the city. Gage called a council of war, and it was agreed that the Americans must be driven from their position. Three thousand veterans were detached for this duty, under Generals Howe and Pig'-ot. The Americans ceased working as they saw their enemies land at Morton's Point, and hoisted the flag of New England. They were but 1,500 in number, deficient in ammunition, exhausted by labor, and suffering from hunger and thirst; yet they were sustained by an undaunted spirit. Generals Putnam and Warren had now joined their ranks. The latter, though only 35 years of age, was distinguished no less as a physician than as president of the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts. He had no military experience, and was urged not to expose himself in battle; but the sound of the cannon wooed him to the field. On his arrival, Col. Prescott offered him the command, as his superior officer; but War-

---

army compare with the British? What is said of their officers? What was ascertained on the 16th of June? What defensive measures were taken by the Americans? Give an account of the occupation of Breed's Hill. How did the Americans spend the night? What did the British behold in the morning? What course was agreed upon in a council of war? How many men were detached for

ren replied that he had come to learn, and, borrowing a musket, served bravely as a private.

At three o'clock, the British ships and batteries poured in a terrible fire on the redoubt. The first American that fell was horribly mutilated, and his comrades, unaccustomed to such sights, crowded around. Fearful of the effect, Colonel Prescott ordered that he should be instantly buried. "He is the first man that has been killed," said he, "and he is the last that will be buried to-day. To your posts, my gallant fellows, and let every man do his duty." And every man did his duty.

296. The British troops moved slowly in perfect order up

---

the attack? Under what generals? Where did they land? [See Map.—What isthmus connects the peninsula on which Charlestown stands with the main-land? How high is Breed's Hill, on which the battle took place? In what part of Boston is Copp's Hill?] What did the American troops do, when they saw the British land? What was the condition of the Americans? By whom were they joined? What is said of Dr. Warren? At three o'clock, what was commenced by the British? What took place when the first American was killed? 296. Give

the hill. The Americans awaited their approach in silence. They had been ordered to reserve their fire till they saw the whites of the enemies' eyes, and Gen. Putnam aided in restraining their impatience. When the British had reached the prescribed point, Prescott waved his sword above his head and shouted FIRE! A deadly discharge was poured upon the advancing columns. Platoon after platoon was swept down; the ranks were broken, and the survivors hastily retired. They were rallied for a second charge under cover of a smoke produced by the burning of several hundred wooden houses in Charlestown, which the British had wantonly set on fire. Again the Americans lay perfectly quiet, till the enemy were within ten rods of the redoubt. Again they swept down officers and men, and again the British veterans retreated. Gen. Clinton now crossed with 1,000 fresh troops. It was resolved to make another attack, though some of the officers declared that it was leading their men to certain death. After a few moments' rest, during which, in the face of a destructive fire, a small party of Americans crossed Charlestown Neck and joined their countrymen, the British troops a third time commenced the ascent.

The patriots, as before, poured in a galling fire; they shot down a number of officers, and wounded Howe himself. Unfortunately, however, their ammunition gave out. The British rushed up to the parapet, and, as they mounted it, were received with stones and clubbed muskets. Resistance being hopeless, Prescott ordered a retreat. He himself and Warren were the last to leave the redoubt. The latter, having done good service, was about joining his companions, when he received a musket-ball in the head, and was instantly killed. In him America lost one of her truest friends. The British general, on hearing of his fall, said it was worth that of 500 ordinary rebels.

---

an account of the first charge of the British. Of the second. Who now arrived on the field? What was it resolved to do? What did some of the officers declare? How were the Americans reënforced? How was the third charge of the British received? What obliged the Americans to retreat? Who were the last to leave the redoubt? What befell Warren? What did the British general say

297. The retreat of the provincials was bravely covered by detachments of their countrymen who had occupied a position in the rear during the engagement. Evening found them safely encamped at Prospect Hill, a mile from the battle-ground. They had lost 115 killed, 305 wounded, and 32 prisoners. On the British side, 226 were killed, 828 wounded and missing. The battle had taken place in sight of the whole people of Boston. The roofs and steeples, as well as the surrounding hills, were filled with anxious women and children, whose destinies depended on the issue of the day. The Americans had the decided advantage, though the British, remaining masters of the field, claimed the victory.

298. Israel Putnam, familiarly known as "Old Put", one of the heroes whose names are embalmed in the glories of Bunker Hill, was born in Salem, Massachusetts, 1718. He emigrated to Connecticut, and his life from early youth was full of romantic adventures. At one time we see him descending into the wolf's den, and shooting her by the light of her own glaring eyes; at another, actively engaged in the French and Indian War, now saving a comrade's life at Crown Point by killing a French sentinel, and anon escaping from his enemies with twelve bullet-holes in his blanket. In 1756, he found himself the prisoner of a party of savages, who, after driving him for miles under a heavy load, bound him to a stake, and prepared to burn him to death. Already had the flames scorched his skin, when a French officer burst through the crowd, scattered the brands, and saved his life. Shortly afterwards, Putnam was surprised by Indians just above the rapids in the Hudson. A glance showed him that his only chance of escape lay in threading the channel of the boisterous passage. With amazement his pursuers saw his boat leap into the seething waters, shoot through yawning whirlpools, dash past hidden rocks, and at last dart out into the placid waters far below.

---

on hearing of his fall? 297. By whom was the retreat of the provincials covered? Where did they encamp? What was the loss on both sides? Who had witnessed the engagement? Which side gained the victory? 298. Where was Gen. Putnam born? To what colony did he emigrate? What is said of his life from early youth? Mention some of his early exploits. What happened to him in 1756?



Putnam's remarkable presence of mind was again displayed at Fort Edward. The barracks caught fire ; and, separated from them only by a thin partition, was a magazine containing 300 barrels of gunpowder. The men fled in alarm from the scene of danger ; but Putnam persisted in pouring water on the flames, put out the fire, and, at the expense of some severe burns, saved the fort. He was in the field ploughing, when he heard of the battle of Lexington. Leaving his plough where it was, without even changing his clothes, he hastened to Cambridge. The British offered him the rank of major-general and a large sum of money, if he would desert the American cause ; but the sturdy patriot scornfully refused, and paid them for the insult on the bloody field of Bunker Hill. He appears to have directed the movements of the patriots on that occasion jointly with Col. Prescott.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### INVASION OF CANADA.

299. THE day before the battle of Bunker Hill, Washington accepted the office of commander-in-chief, expressing his sense of the high responsibilities it involved, and declining to receive any remuneration except the payment of his expenses. After removing his mother to a place of safety, he set out at once for Cambridge, where he arrived July 2d, 1775. He found an army of 14,500 men, with little or no knowledge of military manœuvres. Months of constant drilling were spent in making them effective soldiers. There were no engineers ; and almost every difficulty that can be conceived had to be encountered in conducting the siege. Even powder was wanting ; and it was with great difficulty that a small supply was obtained.

---

Shortly afterwards, where was he surprised by the Indians ? How did he escape ? What other story is told, illustrating Putnam's presence of mind ? How was he engaged when he heard of the battle of Lexington ? What did he do ? What offer was made him by the British ? How was it received ?

299. What did Washington do on the day before the battle of Bunker Hill ? What were his next movements ? What state of things did he find, on arriv-

300. On the 6th of July, Congress, in an able manifesto, set forth its reasons for taking up arms. It also established a line of posts for the communication of intelligence, under the superintendence of Franklin. This same month, Georgia, which had not before taken part in the movement, joined her sister colonies, and chose delegates to Congress.

301. Knowing that large stores were collected at Quebec, and believing that the people would join in the Revolution if opportunity offered, Congress determined on an expedition against Canada, and placed General Montgomery at its head. St. John's surrendered to the invaders on the 3d of November; the country was overrun, and Montreal was taken. The time for which many of the American soldiers had enlisted, now ran out; and, as they insisted on returning, Montgomery was left with no more than 300 followers to advance upon Quebec.

Meanwhile, 1,100 Americans, under Benedict Arnold, now raised to the rank of colonel, were marching through the northern wilderness of Maine to the succor of their countrymen. No one at the present day can estimate the hardships which that devoted band were called on to endure; now forcing their way through tangled thickets and over pathless mountains; and now wading through swollen rivers, pushing their boats before them, or borne away by rapids, and struggling for life amid the waves;—worn out, sick, cold, hungry, disheartened. Not a few gave up the expedition, and returned to Massachusetts. With some of his bravest men, Arnold pushed on to a French village for supplies, leaving the rest of his force in a most critical position. The last ox was killed and distributed; the last dog was eaten with avidity; then roots and moose-skin moccasins were their only resource. When the aid sent back by Arnold reached the famished band, they had eaten nothing for two days.

---

ing at Cambridge? 300. What was done by Congress in July, 1775? What action was taken by Georgia? 301. Whither did Congress determine to send an expedition? What led them to do so? Who was placed at its head? What places were taken by Montgomery? What then put a stop to his victorious movements? How many remained with him, to proceed against Quebec? Who was advancing to his aid? With how many men? By what route? Give an account of the difficulties encountered by Arnold's men. How did he save them

Even such suffering, however, could not discourage these brave hearts. Among them were not a few noted in later times—Morgan, Greene, and Meigs [*megz*], all benefactors of their country,—and Aaron Burr, then a youth of 20, afterwards vice-president of the United States.

At last, surmounting incredible obstacles, the heroic band stood before Quebec, and effected a junction with the army of Montgomery, who took command of the whole. Together they numbered but 900 effective men. A commander less brave and energetic would have shrunk from attacking those massive walls with so insignificant a force. Montgomery hesitated not; he had been there before under Wolfe, and remembered his glorious example. After besieging the place three weeks, and finding that his few small cannon could make no impression on its defences, on the last day of the year 1775, with the approval of his officers and men, he prepared for an assault.

302. Four divisions issued from the American camp, two of which were to make feigned attacks for the purpose of distracting the enemy's attention. Montgomery was to approach along the St. Lawrence, Arnold by the St. Charles; and both, having united their forces, were to storm the Prescott gate. Montgomery, having toiled over enormous masses of ice,

---

from perishing? What was their condition when relief arrived? Mention some of Arnold's followers who afterwards became noted. At last, when did they arrive? Who took the command? How many effective men were found in both divisions? What was the prospect of success? How long did Montgomery besiege Quebec? What did he find? On what did he then resolve? What day was selected for the attack? 303. [See Map. —At the confluence of what two

amid drifting snow which nearly blinded him, saw a rude blockhouse defended by a battery of three-pounders. "Men of New York," he cried, "you will not fear to follow where your general leads! March on." Rushing at the head of his troops to the assault, he was almost immediately swept down, with both his aides and a number of privates, by a discharge of grape-shot. Disheartened by the loss of their leader, the rest of the division retreated to Wolfe's Cove.

Arnold's narrow path to the lower city was commanded by muskets and cannon. Advancing at the head of his division, he received a ball in the leg, which obliged him to leave the field, and give up the command to Captain Morgan. The first barrier was carried, and the city entered. But, with only 200 men, most of whose muskets were rendered useless by the snow, it was impossible for Morgan either to carry the defences before him or to make good a retreat. Overpowering forces gathered around, and he was compelled to surrender. In this assault 160 Americans were killed, and 426 made prisoners. The British loss was only 20.

303. The death of Montgomery was regarded as a national calamity. Even in Britain, eulogies on his character were delivered. Arnold, with his remaining force, encamped about three miles from the city, and continued the blockade. He was superseded in April, 1776, by Gen. Wooster, who, the following month, gave way to Gen. Thomas. Quebec still maintained a successful resistance; and rumors of Carleton's approach, with a powerful army, soon reached the American camp. A hasty retreat was made, and the whole of Canada was recovered by the British.

---

• rivers is Quebec situated? What village near Point Levi? In what direction from the city was the battle-field of Wolfe and Montcalm? State Montgomery's plan of attack. Give an account of Montgomery's movements and fall. Give an account of Arnold's movements. To whom did he leave the command? What advantage did Morgan at first gain? What was the final result? What was the loss on both sides? 303. How was the death of Montgomery regarded? What course did Arnold pursue? By whom was he superseded? What obliged the Americans to retreat?

## CHAPTER V.

## SIEGE AND EVACUATION OF BOSTON.

304. THE idea of a complete separation from Britain, originated, as we have seen, in North Carolina, began to gain ground in the colonies; but Congress still determined on a last appeal. A petition for redress was sent to England, but received no attention from either king or Parliament. On the contrary, acts were passed prohibiting trade with the colonies, and authorizing the capture of American vessels, the hiring of German soldiers, and the transportation of 25,000 additional English troops to the new world. On this, Congress gave up all hope of reconciliation, and prepared for a vigorous defence. Military stores were collected. Powder was bought in foreign ports, and its manufacture was commenced at home. Privateers were commissioned, from the bold attacks of which British commerce suffered much till the termination of the war.

305. In the fall of 1775, Gen. Gage was superseded by Sir William Howe, after having sent British men-of-war to ravage different parts of the coast. Falmouth [*fal'-muth*], now Portland, Maine, was levelled to the ground. Other places were threatened. Newport escaped only by contributing a weekly supply for the fleet.

306. The British still had hopes of deterring New York from taking part against the king, and Governor Tryon was authorized to use persuasion, threats, and even bribery, with its citizens for that purpose. Congress, however, baffled his efforts, by ordering that all persons dangerous to the liberties of America should be seized; for, on this, the governor took refuge on a British ship.—Lord Dunmore was still giving

---

304. In the hope of reconciliation, what step was taken by Congress? How was the petition received? What acts were passed by Parliament? How did Congress then feel? What defensive steps were taken? 305. In the fall of 1775, who was made British commander-in-chief? What place was bombarded? How did Newport escape a similar fate? 306. What means did Gov. Tryon take for retaining the people of New York in their allegiance? How did Congress baffle

trouble in Virginia. Towards the close of 1775, he attacked a body of provincials near Norfolk, but was defeated. A royal vessel having arrived soon after, he gratified his revenge by reducing the place to ashes. Famine, sickness, and storms, finally compelled him to retire with his fleet to the West Indies.

307. Winter passed without hostilities between the two armies at Boston.

The country was impatient to hear of some great victory, and Congress urged Washington to attack the enemy; but, hampered by a want of ammunition and other necessities, it was not till March 4th (1776) that he deemed it prudent to act on the offensive. Gen. Thomas was sent by night to throw

up intrenchments on Dorchester Heights, which commanded the city and harbor. Though the ground was frozen, the work progressed rapidly. On discovering the movement of the Americans in the morning, Howe resolved to drive them from their position. A storm prevented him from making the attempt till they were too strongly fortified to be dis-

---

his efforts? Give an account of Lord Dunmore's movements. 307. What was the state of things in the American camp before Boston? What did Congress urge Washington to do? When did he commence the attack? What was his first offensive movement? [See Map.—Where are Dorchester Heights? Who commanded the American right wing? The centre? The left wing?] What

lodged. Unable to hold the city in the face of the battery on the heights, Howe was obliged to evacuate Boston; and, on the 17th of March, the whole land and naval force of Britain, with about 1,500 loyalists, left the harbor. This event was hailed with joy by the defenders of America, particularly by those patriots who had been shut up in the besieged city. They had hardly been able to obtain the necessities of life. Provisions had risen to four times their usual value. Wood had become so scarce that the pews of churches, the counters of stores, and the timber of unoccupied buildings, had been used for fuel. The thanks of Congress were voted to the besieging army, and a gold medal was struck in commemoration of the event.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### BRITISH ATTACK ON CHARLESTON.—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

308. THE British directed their first active operations in 1776 against the south. On the 4th of June, Admiral Parker appeared off Charleston with a strong fleet direct from England, conveying 2,500 troops, of which Gen. Clinton took the command. The people of Carolina, having received intelligence of the intended attack, were not unprepared for it. Six thousand men had collected in and about the city. A fort of palmetto-wood and earth, hastily erected on Sullivan's Island, and defended by 26 cannon and 500 brave men under Col. Moultrie, commanded the channel. Another fort on the opposite side of the island was held by Col. Thompson. Gen. Lee had hastened from the north, to conduct the defence.

On the 28th of June, the British commenced a heavy can-

---

was Howe's first determination? What changed it? What was he finally compelled to do? When did he evacuate Boston? Describe the condition of those within the city during the siege. How did Congress show their gratitude for this success?

308. Against what place was the first offensive movement of the British in 1776 directed? Who conducted the attack? What preparations had been made by the people of Carolina? Who commanded them? Describe the attack and de-

nonade on Fort Sullivan (afterwards called Moultrie in honor of its gallant defender). The wood of which it was built was so soft, that, instead of splitting, it closed over the balls that struck it, without receiving any injury. Not so, however, with the British ships, on which the patriots poured a destructive fire. At one time, the quarter-deck of Parker's flag-ship was cleared of every man except the admiral himself. Gen. Clinton landed 2,500 men on Long Island, and attempted to cross to Sullivan's Island, but Thompson's riflemen drove him back.

#### SERGEANT JASPER AT FORT MOULTRIE.

Many heroic deeds that will live in history, were performed that day. The first republican flag unfurled in the

---

fence on the 26th of June. [See Map, p. 209.—In what direction was Fort Moultrie from Charleston? What islands in Charleston harbor? What is said of Admiral Parker's flag-ship? What attempt was made by Clinton? Give an account of Jasper's exploit. How did Gen. Rutledge reward the hero? What



south waved over the palmetto fort. Early in the action it was cut down by a cannon-ball, and fell upon the beach. Sergeant Jasper leaped over the parapet, recovered the flag, fastened it to a staff, and again set it up, amid a shower of balls from the British fleet. Gov. Rutledge rewarded the hero by presenting him his own sword and a lieutenant's commission. The former he accepted, but modestly declined the latter, saying that, since he could neither read nor write, he was not fit to be an officer.

Late in the action, Admiral Parker ordered the crew of one of his vessels, which was disabled, to set her on fire and abandon her. The ship was left with guns loaded and colors flying. No sooner had her crew departed than she was boarded by the Americans, who carried off her flags and bells, fired her guns at Parker's ship, and bore away three boatloads of stores.

For more than nine hours the British kept up the attack, but without making any impression on the fort. Only ten Americans were killed, and 22 wounded. The enemy's loss in killed and wounded amounted to 225. After lying to a few days to refit, the fleet sailed for the north.

309. On the evacuation of Boston by the British, Washington set out with most of his army for New York, now threatened by the enemy. He arrived there April 14th, 1776. Feeling that nothing could be done with men whose terms of service were constantly expiring, he prevailed on Congress to provide for a three years' enlistment, and to offer a bounty of \$10 to each recruit. The army at New York was thus in a few months increased to 27,000 men; but nearly half of them were unfit for duty from sickness or a lack of arms. Even had this whole force consisted of effective men, it would have been insufficient for the defence of a line 15 miles long, any point of which was liable to attack. Fortifications commenced by Gen. Lee before the arrival of

---

other achievement was performed? How long did the British keep up the attack? What was the result? Mention the loss on both sides. 309. On the evacuation of Boston, where did Washington go? When did he arrive in New York? What did he induce Congress to do? How large an army was thus raised? What was its condition? How long a line had to be defended? What was done at Brook-

Washington, were completed and extended. A detachment was stationed at Brooklyn, on the western extremity of Long Island, opposite New York, and there also defensive works were constructed.

310. The Virginia Legislature had recommended Congress to declare the colonies absolved from their allegiance to the crown; and similar requests were made from various quarters. On the 7th of June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee, of Va., moved that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, *free and independent states*. Thomas Jefferson, of Va., John Adams, of Mass., Benjamin Franklin, of Penn., Roger Sherman, of Conn., and Robert R. Livingston, of New York, were appointed a committee to draft a Declaration of Independence. Jefferson, as chairman, prepared the important document. It was reported to Congress, and, after being discussed several days and slightly amended, was adopted at two o'clock on the 4th of July, 1776.

On this eventful day, the streets of Philadelphia were crowded with excited citizens, anxious to learn the decision of Congress. The bell-ringer of the old state-house had taken his post in the steeple at an early hour, that he might lose no time in announcing to the people that their independence was formally declared. The old man had grown impatient at the delay, when suddenly he heard the joyful shout, "Ring! Ring!" from his boy, whom he had stationed to give him notice of the anticipated event. Loudly pealed the old bell, and as loudly were its tones greeted by the delighted citizens. The glorious Declaration was signed by all the members present, and the thirteen colonies were thenceforth known as "the Thirteen United States of America".

The news was everywhere hailed with joy. Washington, on receiving a copy of the document, caused the troops to be paraded, and the Declaration to be read to each brigade. The citizens of New York pulled down the leaden statue of

---

lyn? 310. What was Congress now importuned to do? Who made the first motion on this subject? Mention the names of the committee appointed to draft a Declaration. Who prepared the document? How was it received by Congress? What is said of the people of Philadelphia? What, of the bell-ringer of the state-house? By whom was the Declaration signed? What were the thirteen colonies

George III. from its pedestal in the Bowling Green, and afterwards had it moulded into republican bullets. In Philadelphia, the people illuminated their houses, lighted bonfires, tore down the king's arms from the court-house, and burned them in the streets. • In Boston, the Declaration was publicly read in Faneuil Hall, amid the acclamations of assembled thousands.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

311. ON evacuating Boston, General Howe went to Halifax, whence he soon after set sail for New York. By the 8th of July, he had landed 9,000 men on Staten Island, and four days afterwards his brother, Admiral Howe, arrived with reënforcements from England. These, with Clinton's detachment and subsequent arrivals, swelled the British army to 30,000 men. Of these, a large part were Germans, generally known as Hessians, because most of them were furnished by the Landgrave of Hesse Cas'sel. The British government paid the princes from whom they hired these mercenaries \$36 for each man, and guaranteed to protect their dominions from attack.

312. General Howe had been instructed to try conciliatory measures with the Americans. Accordingly, he issued a proclamation, offering pardon to all who would return to their allegiance. Congress caused this document to be published in the papers of the day, to show the people that the king would still be satisfied with nothing but their absolute submission. Howe next sent an officer to the American camp with a letter addressed to George Washington, *Esq.* Washington would not receive it, inasmuch as it did not

---

thenceforth styled? What did Washington do on receiving the news? What demonstrations were made in New York? In Philadelphia? In Boston?

311. What course did Howe take, on leaving Boston? On the 8th of July, what did he do? By whom was he joined? How large an army did he soon have? From what country did a large part of them come? What were they called? On what terms did the British government procure these mercenaries? 312. What had Howe been instructed to do? Give an account of his efforts at negotiation.

recognize his public position. The address was then altered to George Washington, &c., &c.; and the officer who brought the letter tried to satisfy the commander that these *and-so-forths* bore any meaning he might wish to give them. Washington still declined. He would receive no letters, he informed the British officer, that were not directed to him as commander of the American army. He had heard that Lord Howe was empowered to grant pardons; but, as those who were guilty of no fault needed no pardon, he did not see the necessity for any communication.

313. These attempts having failed, Howe determined to assume the offensive without further delay. On the 22d of August (1776), General Clinton crossed from Staten Island to the southwest point of Long Island, with 10,000 men and 40 cannon. Nine thousand Americans had been stationed in and about Brooklyn, under Generals Sullivan and Stirling, and Putnam was hastily sent over from New York, to take the chief command. The British landed without opposition, and advanced in three divisions, by three different roads, crossing the thickly wooded heights that ran across the island and separated them from the Americans. Gen. Grant took the direct left-hand route along New York Bay. The British centre, consisting of Hessians under Gen. Heister [*hise'-ter*], advanced by the Flatbush road. Clinton, who commanded on the right, was to take a circuitous route and fall on Sullivan's rear. The attack was skilfully planned and well carried out.

On the morning of the 27th, Grant advanced as far as the hills now embraced in Greenwood Cemetery. Here he was met by Stirling with 1,500 men, and an engagement ensued, without any positive advantage on either side. Heister pushed on to within a short distance of Gen. Sullivan, and kept up a brisk cannonade on his front. It was answered with spirit by the Americans, till, to their dismay, they heard a distant

---

313. On what did Howe now resolve? What was done by the British, August 22d, 1776? How many Americans were stationed near Brooklyn? By whom were they commanded? How many roads crossed the heights of Long Island? Give an account of the British advance. What was Clinton's division to do?

## THE BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

Americans □ □ □. British ■ ■ ■.

firing behind them. Clinton had gained the Jamaica road, and was rapidly advancing on their rear. Almost surrounded, they could hope for safety only in a hasty retreat. This Sullivan attempted; but it was too late. The British already held the road, and drove his men back on the Hessians. Only a few forced their way through Clinton's ranks. After a desperate struggle, Sullivan, with many of his officers and men, was obliged to surrender.

Cornwallis [*korn-wol'-lis*] hastened on towards the Bay, to cut off Stirling's division. A sharp conflict ensued, and the Americans, driving the enemy back, reached Go-wan'-us Creek. In trying to cross the stream, a number were drowned; others feared to attempt the passage, and were

---

[See Map,—what bay east of Brooklyn? Where did the British land? What British vessels below the Narrows? What village near Gen. Sullivan's position?] Give an account of Grant's movements. Of Heister's. Of Clinton's. How was Sullivan's retreat cut off? What became of him and his men? Describe Stir-

made prisoners. Stirling himself was taken, and comparatively few of his men reached Fort Putnam in safety. The British were completely victorious. Their loss was but 367 in killed and wounded; that of the Americans amounted to 1,650, 1,100 of whom were prisoners. The latter, doomed to suffer in loathsome prison-ships, almost regretted that they had not fallen on the field.

314. While the battle was still raging, Washington crossed from New York. With anguish he beheld the slaughter of his best troops; nor could he attempt their relief with men from the fort, for already the garrison was too small for its defence. All he could hope to do was to save the remnant of the army. Fortunately Howe did not attack the fort, but, encamping about a third of a mile from it, waited for the fleet to come up. The next morning (August 28th), the British commenced firing on the fort. At midnight a heavy fog arose, which hid the armies from each other throughout the following day. On the evening of the 29th, the men were silently paraded, and about midnight they commenced embarking from the point now occupied by the Fulton Ferry. The boats moved noiselessly with muffled oars; and in the course of six hours, the whole army, with their baggage and munitions, the heavy artillery alone excepted, crossed in safety to New York. Washington remained till the last company had embarked. He had not slept for two days, so great was his anxiety to save his men.

315. Secure of his prey, Howe had no suspicion of what was going on. A woman living near the ferry discovered the movement, and sent a negro to the British general with the intelligence. But providentially falling into the hands of the Hessians, who could not understand what he said, he was detained till his information was too late to be of value. When the discovery was made, soon after dawn, a troop of

---

ling's engagement with Cornwallis. What was the fate of Stirling's division? What was the loss on both sides? What was the fate of the prisoners? 314. What is said of Washington? Where did Howe encamp? Give an account of the movements of August 28th and 29th. Describe the retreat to New York. 315. By whom was the movement of the Americans discovered? How was the intelligence prevented from reaching Gen. Howe? What was found soon after dawn?

British horse was despatched to the river, but the last boat of the retreating Americans was beyond their reach. Mortified that he had allowed the enemy to escape, Howe took possession of Fort Putnam, and allowed his men a few days' rest.

The overthrow on Long Island was every way disastrous to the Americans. Besides their actual loss, it deprived the army of their self-confidence, led to the desertion of hundreds, and prevented many from espousing the republican cause. The defeat of the Americans is attributable in part to their total want of cavalry, but principally to their neglecting to have a sufficient guard on the Jamaica road. It is said that a single regiment at the proper point could have prevented Clinton's advance.

316. Supposing that the Americans might now incline to peace, Howe sent Sullivan on parole with a proposition to Congress. A committee was appointed by that body to confer with the British general; but, as neither party would make concessions, nothing was effected. Franklin was on this committee; and, when Howe spoke of England's being ready to protect the colonies, he begged to assure his lordship that the colonies felt fully able to protect themselves.

317. The British army was soon ready to attack New York, and Washington felt that, with the means at his command, he could not successfully oppose them. Accordingly, he removed his stores to the forts above the city, and commenced retreating to the north. It being highly important to gain some knowledge of Howe's movements, Captain Nathan Hale, of Connecticut, undertook to visit the British camp as a spy. He reached the English lines in safety, and obtained the desired information. On his way back, however, he was recognized by a tory relative, who arrested him and took him to Howe's head-quarters. He was executed on the 22d of September. The services of a clergyman, and

---

What did Howe do? What was the effect of the battle of Long Island? To what is the defeat of the Americans attributable? 316. What attempt at negotiation was now made? How did it result? What answer was made by Franklin? 317. What were Washington's next movements? What dangerous enterprise

even the use of a Bible, were denied him; and letters which he had written to his mother and sisters were destroyed. His last words were, "I only regret that I have but one life to give to my country."

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### WASHINGTON'S RETREAT.—BATTLE OF WHITE PLAINS.

318. On the 15th of September, a large detachment of the British army crossed the East River, three miles above the city, and spread out across the island. Most of the American army had made good their retreat towards the Harlem River; but the rear-guard, consisting of 4,000 men under Putnam, would have been cut off, had not a whig lady, at whose house the British generals called for refreshments, managed to detain them with her hospitalities till the danger was past. Putnam's men had been fifteen hours under arms, and not a few fell before reaching camp from the effects of fatigue and excessive heat.

319. So discouraged were the Americans by their recent disasters that Washington found some vigorous movement necessary to restore their confidence. The morning after the British landed, an opportunity occurred. Several parties of the enemy approached the American camp. Engaging their attention by an attack in front, Washington sent Colonel Knowlton and Major Leitch to fall upon their rear. The British, though reënforced, were driven from the field with the loss of more than 100 men. The Americans lost about half that number, among whom were the two brave officers just mentioned.

320. The British now held possession of New York. At midnight on the 20th of September, a fire broke out in the

---

was undertaken by Capt. Nathan Hale? Give an account of it. What was Hale's fate?

318. What movement was made by the British, September 15th, 1776? Whither had the main body of the American army retreated? How was their rear-guard saved? 319. What took place on the morning of September 16th? What was the loss on both sides? 320. What took place in New York on the 20th of Septem-



city, which was not arrested till 493 buildings, including Trinity Church, were consumed. Meanwhile, the Americans were strengthening their position on the upper part of the island. A double line of intrenchments was hastily thrown up, and Fort Washington was erected on a rocky height overlooking the Hudson. Among those who distinguished themselves by their skill in the construction of these defences was Alexander Hamilton, now about 20 years of age. The mathematical perfection of his work elicited the admiration of Washington, who invited him to his quarters, and soon made him his chief aide-de-camp and counsellor.

321. Deeming the American works too strong to be attacked in front, Howe determined to gain their rear; and, having sent part of his fleet up the Hudson to prevent communication with the west and south, he moved up the Sound with the greater part of his army, and took a position northeast of Washington's camp. To avoid an engagement, the American commander, after leaving a garrison of about 3,000 men in Fort Washington, which it was resolved to hold to the last extremity, withdrew his main body from Manhattan Island, and, after a trying march, fixed his head-quarters at White Plains. On the 28th of October, Howe came up, and a furious cannonade commenced. The Americans, having been driven from one of their positions, fell back a short distance, and intrenched themselves so strongly during the ensuing night that Howe deemed it prudent to wait for reinforcements. Before he was ready to renew the attack, Washington withdrew to North Castle, among the hills south of the Croton River. Howe did not follow, but, after remaining several days at White Plains, retired towards New York.

322. The plans of the British general were not known; but Washington, apprehending a descent upon Philadelphia, left Gen. Lee with about 4,000 men at North Castle, and

---

ber? Meanwhile, what were the Americans doing? Who distinguished himself in this work? To what post was Hamilton soon raised? 321. What were the next movements of the British? How did Washington meet them? Where did he fix his head-quarters? What took place, October 28th? Where did Washington finally go? What did Howe do? 322. What did Washington apprehend?

crossed the Hudson. He fixed his headquarters at Fort Lee [see Map], a post on the Jersey shore, nearly opposite Fort Washington, held by Gen. Greene. Here he received intelligence from the north. Arnold had bravely met the British naval force on Lake Champlain. Crown Point was in possession of the enemy, but Ticonderoga seemed to be safe for the season.

323. On the 17th of November, Fort Washington was unexpectedly attacked by an overwhelming force. The American chief sent a message across the river to the commandant, to hold out till evening, that

AMERICAN [□ □ □] AND BRITISH [■ ■ ■]  
ARMIES AT WHITE PLAINS.

he might try to bring off the garrison. But their ammunition failed, and the fort was surrendered with 2,818 men. The British had nearly 1,000 killed and wounded. The loss of this stronghold caused a general depression among the friends of America. Washington was censured for attempting to hold the post, as well as for want of courage in not

---

What course did he pursue? [See Map.—Where did the British land, October 12th? What river lay between their route and that of the Americans? What river still farther to the west?] Where did Washington fix his headquarters? What intelligence did he here receive? 323. What took place, November 17th? How many Americans surrendered? What was the British loss? What was

meeting the enemy in the field. Without knowing the disadvantages under which he labored, many condemned his successive retreats, which alone insured the safety of his army and the ultimate establishment of American liberty.

324. On the 19th of November, the British crossed the Hudson. After taking Fort Lee, which was abandoned on their approach, they started in pursuit of Washington's army, now reduced to 3,000 men. Orders had been sent to Lee, to bring on his detachment from North Castle, but they were disobeyed on various pretexts. A rapid and melancholy retreat across New Jersey was conducted by Washington in his usual masterly manner, the British pressing closely on his rear. The American troops suffered much, many of them being without shoes, and leaving blood-stained tracks on the frozen ground. At last they reached the Delaware at Trenton, and, the boats having been secured for a distance of 70 miles, crossed to Pennsylvania. Cornwallis came up soon after; but, instead of bridging the river or building boats, he preferred waiting till the ice should enable him to cross, stationing detachments at Princeton, New Brunswick, and various points on the Jersey shore of the Delaware.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### BATTLES OF TRENTON AND PRINCETON.

325. WASHINGTON's army seemed on the eve of dissolution. The defeats it had sustained, its lamentable condition, and the news of advantages gained by the British in Rhode Island and elsewhere, led to constant desertions, and deterred those who favored the patriot cause from arming in its de-

---

the effect of the capture of Fort Mifflin? 324. What was the next movement of the British? How large was Washington's army? What orders were sent to Lee? Describe the retreat of the Americans. What was their condition? How far did Cornwallis continue the pursuit? While waiting to cross on the ice, what disposition did he make of his troops?

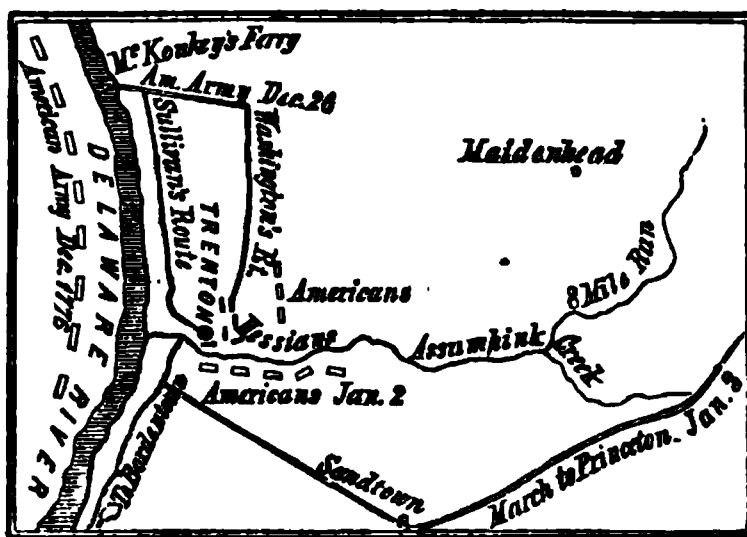
325. What was the condition of Washington's army? What causes led to desertions? What did Congress deem it prudent to do? What befell Gen. Lee?

fence. Philadelphia was in danger, and Congress deemed it prudent to remove to Baltimore. General Lee, advancing leisurely in spite of Washington's commands, and taking quarters at a distance from his troops, was captured by a scouting party of the enemy. But Sullivan, who had been exchanged for a British general, succeeded to his command, and speedily effected a union with Washington. About the same time, some recruits from Pennsylvania reached the American camp, and the commander-in-chief thus found himself at the head of about 5,000 men.

326. To revive the spirits of his countrymen, Washington resolved on a bold enterprise. Trenton was occupied by 1,500 Hessians, under Col. Rahl, and a troop of British horse. Supposing that the Germans, according to their custom, would spend Christmas in revelry, and rest soundly after their carousals, he determined to attempt a surprise. The night of December 25th was starless and stormy. The Delaware was full of ice. Two divisions of the American army were unable to cross; but the third, under Washington and Sullivan, made the passage, and at four on the morning of the 26th commenced their march for Trenton.

The surprise was successful. Col. Rahl, still engaged in his revels, was suddenly startled by the sound of musketry. Hastening to his men, he found them hemmed in on all sides, and, while endeavoring to form them for action, he was mortally wounded.

Nearly a thousand Hessians at once threw down their arms.



MOVEMENTS ABOUT TRENTON, DEC. 26TH,  
1776—JAN. 3D, 1777.

What became of his army? How was Washington's force further increased? 326. On what did Washington resolve? By whom was Trenton occupied? Describe the crossing of the Delaware. [See Map.—At the junction of what two streams is Trenton? Which general took the route nearest the river?] How was Col. Rahl engaged? What did he do? What befell him? How many Hessians surrendered? What was Washington's next movement? How many men

The rest, with the British horse, had made good their escape. Aware that he could not hold Trenton against the superior force which could be concentrated there in a few hours, Washington recrossed the Delaware with his prisoners and spoils. He had lost but four men, two of whom were frozen to death. This brilliant achievement restored the courage of his men and the confidence of the people. Howe, in alarm, ordered Cornwallis, who was on the point of embarking for England, back to New Jersey. Congress invested Washington with extraordinary powers, gave him the absolute control of the war, and endeavored to carry out the measures he suggested. Fourteen hundred soldiers, whose terms were about expiring, were induced to remain six weeks longer by a bounty of \$10 apiece.

327. Four days after this victory, Washington again crossed the Delaware, and took post at Trenton. On the 2d of January, 1777, news was received that Cornwallis was approaching with a powerful force. After some skirmishing, the Americans fell back, and, night coming on, both parties rested on their arms [see Map, p. 233]. Washington did not like either to hazard an engagement, or, by a retreat, to leave Philadelphia exposed to the enemy. He therefore conceived the bold design of marching by a circuitous route to Princeton, and surprising the British force stationed at that place. Leaving his fires burning, he silently withdrew his men, and early on the morning of the 3d of January reached Princeton.

The surprise would have been complete, had not the Americans met a brigade of the enemy already on the march for Trenton. An engagement took place, and the American van, under Gen. Mercer, having no bayonets, was driven back. The British pursued, but at this moment Washington came up, and placed himself between his flying troops and the advancing enemy. Col. Fitzgerald, his aide, thinking that the

---

did he lose? What was the effect of this achievement on the Americans, on the British, and on Congress? How were 1,400 soldiers induced to remain? 327. On the 28th of December, what did Washington do? A few days after, what news was received? What did the Americans do? [See Map, p. 233.—What position did the Americans take, January 2d? What place was on the Princeton road?] What bold design was conceived by Washington? How was the surprise prevented? Give an account of the engagement. What story is told of Washing-

general's death was certain, drew his hat over his face that he might not see him fall. A roar of musketry followed, and Fitzgerald's heart almost ceased to beat as he looked up to ascertain the fate of his commander. To his joy, his beloved chief was uninjured. The British were repulsed, but the Americans sustained a heavy loss in the fall of Gen. Mercer. He was trying to rally his men on foot, when he was struck to the ground and surrounded by the enemy. Refusing to ask for quarter, he defended himself with his sword, till he received a mortal wound from a British bayonet.

The first intimation received by Cornwallis of his adversary's successful manœuvre, was the distant roar of cannon. Mortified at having been out-generalled, he hastened to the field of battle, but arrived too late. Washington had achieved a victory, and retired. The Americans, completely exhausted by want of sleep and their late exertions, at length reached Morristown in safety, and there Washington established his winter-quarters. The British lost about 400, killed, wounded, and captured, in the battle of Princeton; the Americans, one-fourth of that number.

328. Cornwallis proceeded to New Brunswick, but was assailed on the route by hostile parties, who hung on his rear, cut off stragglers, and embarrassed his movements. The brutal outrages of the invaders, particularly the Hessians, from which not even the loyalists were exempt, awakened general indignation and led many to take arms against them. Several expeditions were sent out by Washington, which resulted in the recovery of the greater part of New Jersey; New Brunswick and Amboy being at last the only posts held by the British. A scarcity of tents and blankets occasioned for a time great distress in the American camp; but this was relieved by a generous contribution from the people of Philadelphia.

---

ton's exposure? Who gained the victory? Relate the circumstances of Gen. Mercer's fall. What was Cornwallis's first intimation of Washington's movement? What did he do? Where did Washington fix his winter-quarters? What was the loss on both sides in the battle of Princeton? 328. What is said of Cornwallis's march to New Brunswick? What led many to take up arms against the British? To what posts in Jersey were the British at last confined? What occasioned distress in the American camp? How was it relieved?

## CHAPTER X.

## LA FAYETTE'S ARRIVAL.—TRYON IN CONNECTICUT.—CAPTURE OF GEN. PRESCOTT.

329. IN March, 1776, Congress had sent Silas Deane, of Connecticut, to solicit the aid of France. He was joined by Benjamin Franklin and Arthur Lee. The French court, always hostile to England, listened to the American commissioners with respectful attention, but hesitated to lend any open assistance to a cause whose chance of success seemed so slender. Aid, however, was secretly furnished. More than 20,000 stands of arms and 1,000 barrels of powder reached America in the course of the ensuing year.

The nobility of France generally looked on the movements of the American people as a rebellion against their lawful sovereign; and, though they heartily disliked England, they felt little sympathy with the republican cause. There was one among them, however, a young captain of dragoons, who believed the people right in resisting oppression and viewed their struggles with admiration. This was the Marquis de La Fayette [*dū lah-fā-et'*]. At an entertainment given to a brother of the English king, he first heard of the Declaration of Independence. Its arguments carried conviction to his heart; and, though allured by brilliant prospects at home, and just married to a woman whom he tenderly loved, he devoted himself to a cause which he felt to be as just as it seemed hopeless. Promised by Mr. Deane a commission as major-general in the United States army, La Fayette determined to set out at once. But there were difficulties in the way. His family objected to his going; the British minister opposed it; and the king withheld his permission. The young marquis, however, was not to be deterred by such obstacles. Purchasing a vessel, he escaped the officers sent

---

329. Who were sent to France to solicit aid for the United States? What was the result of their efforts? How did the French nobility generally feel towards the Americans? Who is mentioned as an exception? Where did La Fayette first hear of the Declaration of Independence? What resolve did he at once

to detain him, and, with De Kalb and a few others who sympathized with America, arrived at Charleston. He received the promised commission in July, 1777, before completing his twentieth year. His acquaintance with Washington commenced a few days after, and ripened into a firm and uninterrupted friendship.

330. Towards the close of April, 1777, Gov. Tryon was sent from New York with 2,000 men, to destroy some American stores collected at Danbury, Conn. He accomplished the work, and, on his return to the coast, gratified his malice by plundering the inhabitants and devastating the country. A body of militia hastily assembled under Generals Wooster, Arnold, and Silliman, and handled the marauders so roughly that they were glad to reach their boats. Tryon lost about 300 men; the Americans, one-fifth as many. Gen. Wooster, though a man of seventy, fought with all the vigor of youth, and was mortally wounded. Arnold received the fire of a whole platoon at a distance of thirty yards, but escaped uninjured.

331. Soon after this, Colonel Meigs retaliated, by crossing from Connecticut and burning 12 British vessels and a large quantity of stores at Sag Harbor, near the eastern extremity of Long Island. He brought back ninety prisoners, without the loss of a single man.

332. Another exploit, in Rhode Island, showed no little daring. The command of the British forces in that quarter devolved on Gen. Prescott, whose tyranny excited the indignation of the inhabitants. Feeling secure in the presence of a large naval force in the bay, he fixed his quarters, with a small guard, about five miles from Newport. Lieutenant-colonel Barton, of Providence, having received from a deserter a full description of the place, set out with 40 brave men, on the night of July 10th, 1777, to capture the British

---

form? What rank was promised La Fayette? What difficulties stood in the way of his going? How did he conquer them? When did he obtain his commission? How was he received by Washington? 330. What expedition was undertaken by the British towards the close of April? Give an account of the manner in which the invaders were met. What was the loss on each side? 331. Give an account of Meigs's expedition. 332. Who commanded the British forces in Rhode Island? What is said of his conduct? Where had he fixed his quar-



general. Rowing silently past the enemy's camp, so near that they heard the call of the guard, they landed about a mile from Prescott's lodgings, and proceeded thither with all speed. A British sentinel demanded the countersign. "We have none," replied Barton, "but have you seen any deserters here to-night?" The sentinel supposed the party to be friends, and before he perceived his mistake was seized, disarmed, and threatened with instant death if he made any noise. The Americans soon reached the house. Prescott's door was locked, but a negro forced it open with his head. Barton seized the general, whom he found sitting up in bed,

#### CAPTURE OF GEN. PRESCOTT.

and hurried him half-dressed to the boats. A soldier had escaped from the building and alarmed the cavalry; but they laughed at his fears, and said that he must have seen a ghost. Not till the Americans had reached the shore was the truth discovered. The British fleet fired on the brave little party, but they escaped uninjured. "You have made a bold push

ters? Who undertook to capture him? Give an account of Barton's expedition. What passed between Prescott and Barton after they had landed? How did Congress reward this exploit? 233. When did Congress adopt a national flag? Describe it.

to-night," said Prescott, as they landed, beyond the reach of pursuit. "We have done as well as we could," answered Barton. Congress rewarded this gallant act by presenting Barton a sword and promoting him to the rank of colonel.

333. In July, 1777, Congress adopted a national flag, consisting of thirteen stripes, alternately red and white, with thirteen white stars in a blue field. The number of stars was afterwards increased, a new one being added for each new state admitted into the Union.

FLAG OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN AND SURRENDER.

334. WHILE Howe was endeavoring to bring Washington to an engagement, Gen. Burgoyne, who had concentrated an army of 10,000 men in Canada, was advancing towards the head-waters of the Hudson. His object was to effect a junction with the southern army, after garrisoning the important posts on his route and thus cutting off Washington's communication with the eastern states. On the 21st of June he gave a war-feast, on the west bank of Lake Champlain, to 400 Indians, among whom was Little Turtle, afterwards the leader of a powerful confederacy. The chiefs promised their aid, and, as they looked on his splendid array, believed his boastful promise of a speedy triumph over the "rebels".

The invading host soon reached Ticonderoga, which was

---

334. Meanwhile, who had succeeded to the command in Canada? Give an account of Burgoyne's movements and object. On the 21st of June, what took place? What post did Burgoyne soon reach? Who commanded at Ticonderoga?

commanded by Gen. St. Clair, and garrisoned by about 3,000 Americans. St. Clair had determined to hold out to the last extremity ; but, to his dismay, he soon saw the British erecting batteries on Mount Defiance [see Map, p. 169], a rocky height commanding the fort, which he had deemed inaccessible. A speedy retreat was necessary. Before daylight on the 6th of July, the ammunition and stores were on the way to Skenesborough [*skeenz'-bur-ro*], now Whitehall, at the head of the lake. At the same time the army silently crossed and took the road for Fort Edward, to join Gen. Schuyler [*ski'-ler*] and the rest of the northern army. The British, after pursuing St. Clair and defeating his rear-guard, took Skenesborough and the valuable stores there collected. Early in July, Burgoyne had issued a proclamation offering pardon and protection to all who would abandon the rebel cause, and threatening those who adhered to it with the severest punishment. This was met by Schuyler with a counter-proclamation, in which he reminded his countrymen of the protection that had been extended to the people of New Jersey, and warned them against listening to the deceitful promises of the enemy.

335. The loss of so many strongholds in the north, without a blow in their defence, produced general alarm, and led many to charge Schuyler and St. Clair with inefficiency ; but an investigation instituted by Congress proved that they had done all that the means at their command allowed. Some of the ablest officers in the American service were ordered to the north, to aid in arresting Burgoyne's advance : among these were Lincoln, to whom the Massachusetts troops were intrusted ; Arnold, noted for his fiery courage ; and Morgan, with his famous corps of riflemen. Burgoyne's advance was slow, for it was necessary to remove the obstructions which the Americans had placed in his way. On the 30th of July, he reached Fort Edward, which Schuyler was compelled to

---

What had St. Clair resolved ? What altered his determination ? Give an account of the retreat. What were Burgoyne's next movements ? What proclamation had Burgoyne issued ? How did Schuyler reply ? 335. With what were Schuyler and St. Clair charged ? What was the result of an investigation into their conduct ? What officers were sent to the north ? What is said of Burgoyne's advance ? What place was reached, July 30th ? On what places did Schuyler suc-

abandon. The American army fell back successively on Saratoga, Stillwater, and the Mohawk, near its junction with the Hudson.

336. The Indians who had promised Burgoyne their friendship, accompanied his army, committing their usual barbarities whenever opportunity offered. One of their bloody acts at this time excited universal abhorrence. Near Fort Edward, in the family of her brother, lived Jane M'Crea [*ma-kra'*], who was engaged to Lieutenant Jones, of the British army. When Burgoyne's approach was announced, Mr. M'Crea, being a whig, started for Albany; but Jane, in the hope of meeting her lover, ventured to remain with a Mrs. McNeil [*neel*], a neighbor and friend, who, being a loyalist and cousin of the British General Frazer, apprehended no danger from the approaching army. On the 27th of July, however, the house was surrounded by Indians, and Mrs. McNeil and Jane were seized and hurried off by different parties. An alarm having been raised in the American camp, they were pursued and fired upon. Mrs. McNeil was forced to the ground by her captors that the bullets might pass over her, and reached the British camp in safety. Soon after, another party of Indians came in, and Mrs. McNeil, to her horror, recognized among the scalps in their possession the long glossy hair of her friend. The Indians were charged with having murdered her on the road. They asserted, however, that she was killed by an American ball, while they were trying to bring her off, and that they had then scalped her to obtain the bounty which the British were in the habit of paying. Lieutenant Jones secured this sad memento of his betrothed, and resigned his command. His resignation not being accepted, he deserted. More than fifty years, we are told, he lived remote from society, a heart-broken man, observing each anniversary of the day that proved fatal to his happiness.

337. Before leaving Canada, Burgoyne had detached Col. St. Leger, with about 700 men, to reduce the valley of the

---

cessively fall back? 336. By whom were many barbarities committed? Tell the story of Jane M'Crea. What became of Lieut. Jones? 337. Before leaving Cana-

Mohawk. His force being doubled by Indians and tories, who joined him as he advanced from Oswego, he devastated the country, and laid siege to Fort Schuyler, previously called Fort Stanwix, on the site of the present village of Rome, N. Y. This post was bravely defended by Col. Gan'-se-voort, but the ammunition and supplies of the garrison were insufficient for a siege. Gen. Her'-ki-mer, while advancing to their relief with a body of militia, fell into an ambushade at O-ris'-ka-ny, was defeated and mortally wounded. The only hope of aid now rested on Gen. Schuyler. Two officers of the garrison undertook to inform him of their critical situation. Leaving the fort at night, during a violent storm, they crept to the Mohawk, crossed it on a log, threaded their way through hostile Indians, and at last reached Schuyler's camp. Arnold and 800 men volunteered to relieve the beleaguered fort. Unwilling to risk an engagement with a superior force, if it could be avoided, Arnold had recourse to stratagem. A tory prisoner under sentence of death was pardoned on condition that he would go to St. Leger's camp and spread the report that a large American army was within a few hours' march. His statements, confirmed by a scout also sent by Arnold, produced such a panic among the Indians and British, already discouraged by the brave resistance of the garrison, that they precipitately fled, leaving their tents, baggage, provisions, and artillery behind them. St. Leger's force was completely dispersed.

338. Meanwhile Gen. Schuyler was collecting reënforcements, and strengthening his position at the mouth of the Mohawk, where he had determined to make a stand against the enemy. Burgoyne, on the other hand, finding it difficult to obtain provisions, and hearing that the Americans had large supplies at Bennington, sent Col. Baum thither

---

da, what expedition had Burgoyne sent out? By whom was St. Leger joined? What place did he besiege? By whom was Fort Schuyler defended? Under what disadvantages did the garrison labor? Who attempted to relieve them? What befell Gen. Herkimer? How was Schuyler informed of the danger of Fort Schuyler? Who volunteered to go to its relief? Relate Arnold's artifice. What was the result? 338. What was Gen. Schuyler doing in the mean time? What

with 500 regulars and Tories and a number of Indians, to seize on whatever he could find. A few miles from Bennington, Baum was met by Gen. Stark, with a body of New Hampshire militia, and such volunteers as could be hastily raised. The two armies came in sight of each other on the 15th of August, but a violent rain prevented them from engaging. A minister who had come with part of his flock to strike a blow for his country, was impatient at the delay; but Stark comforted him with the promise, that, if the next day was clear, he should have fighting enough. And he kept his word.

Early on the 16th, Stark prepared for the attack. As he beheld the enemy's columns forming, he exclaimed, "See, men! There are the red-coats. We must beat to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow." For two hours the battle raged furiously. At last the British were driven from the field, with the loss of their artillery and baggage. A few hours after, a detachment which had been sent to the aid of Baum, shared the same fate. In these engagements, the British had 207 killed, and about 600 taken prisoners; the American loss amounted to 200 in killed and wounded. Four brass cannon and munition-wagons, 900 swords, and 1,000 stands of arms, were secured by the victors.

339. The patriotism which actuated the Americans at this time is illustrated in the case of an old man who had five sons at the battle of Bennington. A neighbor who had just come from the field, told him that one of them had been unfortunate. "Has he proved a coward or traitor?" anxiously asked the father. "Worse than that," was the answer; "he has fallen, but while fighting bravely." "Then," said the father, "I am satisfied." The true-hearted patriot afterwards declared it was the happiest day of his life, to know that his five sons had fought nobly for freedom, though one had fallen in the conflict.

---

expedition did Burgoyne send out for provisions? By whom was Baum met? On what day? What anecdote is told of a minister who had joined the army? Give an account of the battle of Bennington. What was the loss on each side? What spoils were taken by the Americans? 339. What story is told of a patriot who

340. The defeat of St. Leger and Baum was a severe blow to Burgoyne's prospects. It deterred the loyalists from joining his ranks, discouraged him from sending out other expeditions, and showed him that the "rebels" were not so contemptible as he had supposed. The courage of the Americans was raised in proportion. The outrages of the Indians excited universal abhorrence, and fears for their own safety led many to oppose the invading force.

341. Three days after the battle of Bennington, Horatio Gates superseded General Schuyler in the command of the northern army. Born in England in 1728, Gates had served in the French and Indian War, and was wounded at Braddock's defeat. Having taken up his abode in Virginia, he early embraced the republican cause, and aided Washington in the siege of Boston. The noble-minded Schuyler keenly felt the injustice of Congress in depriving him almost at the moment of victory, of the glory due to his labors; yet, with the devotion of a true patriot, he gave Gen. Gates all the information he possessed, and assisted him to the best of his ability.

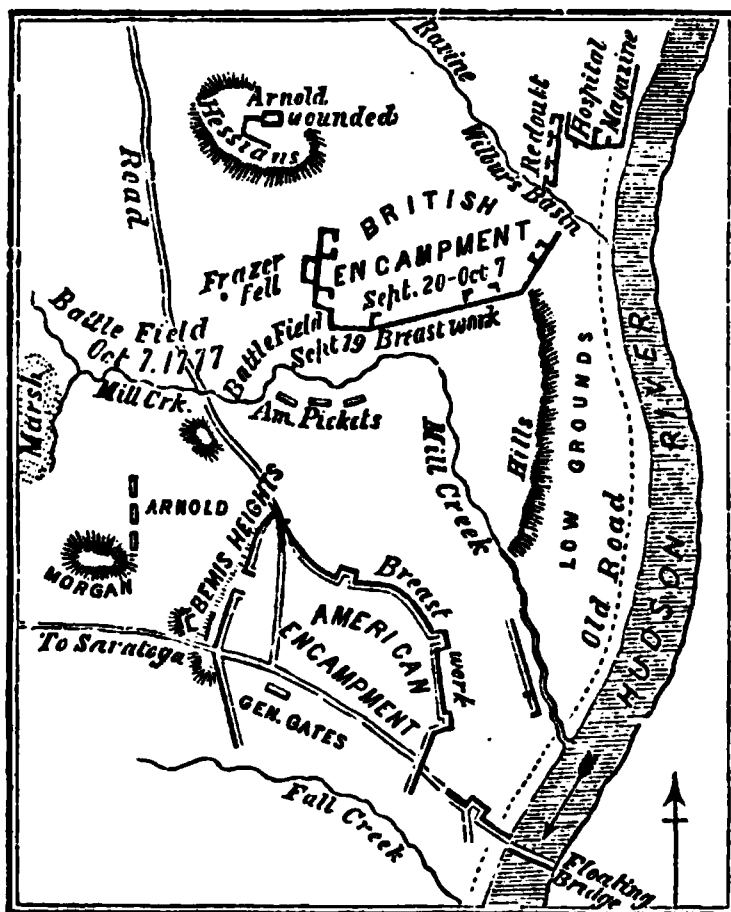
342. The American army having been increased by the arrival of both regulars and militia, it was resolved to move sixteen miles up the river, in the direction of the enemy, and arrest Burgoyne's progress at Bemis's Heights, on the west bank of the Hudson. Fortifications were erected there, under the superintendence of Kosciusko [*kos-se-us'-ko*], a Polish officer, now twenty-one years of age, who, on Dr. Franklin's recommendation, had been commissioned as an engineer in the American army. The British commander, whose difficulties increased as he advanced, moved slowly along the bank of the Hudson, and at length halted within two miles of the American camp.

The first battle of Stillwater, or Bemis's Heights, took place on the 19th of September. The British advanced to the

---

had five sons at Bennington? 340. What was the effect of St. Leger's and Baum's defeat? 341. What change was made in the command of the northern American army? What is said of Gates's previous history? What was Schuyler's course on being superseded? 342. What was Gates's first movement? Who aided in fortifying Bemis's Heights? What is said of Kosciusko's previous history?

attack in three columns. Gates, who at first seemed inclined to receive them in his intrenchments, was finally persuaded to send out Morgan's corps against the Canadians and Indians on the surrounding hills. The latter were driven back by an impetuous charge. Arnold soon engaged Burgoyne's advanced guard, under Gen. Frazer, in a bloody encounter, which, with a slight intermission, lasted till night. Officers who had served in Europe, de-



SCENE OF THE TWO BATTLES OF STILLWATER, OR BEMIS'S HEIGHTS, SEPTEMBER 19TH, AND OCTOBER 7TH, 1777.

clared that they had never seen so hot a fire continued so long. Darkness separated the combatants, the Americans retiring to their camp, and the enemy resting on their arms near the field of battle. The former had the advantage, losing only 319, in killed, wounded, and missing, while the British loss amounted to over 500. The American marksmen, ascending trees, had fired at those who were conspicuous in the ranks of the enemy. A shot thus aimed at Burgoyne, struck down an officer by his side; and in the confusion it was reported that the British commander had fallen. The honor of the day belonged to Arnold; but the jealous Gates not only neglected to mention his services, in reporting the battle, but even took from him the command of his division.

343. Burgoyne did not immediately renew the conflict,

---

Give an account of Burgoyne's movements meanwhile. When did the first battle of Stillwater take place? [See Map.—What stream ran between the British and the American encampment? On which side of this stream did the two battles occur?] What at first seemed to be Gates's determination? What was he at length persuaded to do? Give an account of the battle. On the approach of night, what did the contending parties do? State the loss on each side. What was done by American marksmen? What report was spread? To whom did the honor of the day belong? What acts of injustice were committed by Gates? 343.



but encamped on the west bank of the Hudson, at Wilbur's Basin. Gates was soon reënforced by 2,000 New England troops, under Gen. Lincoln, who, hanging on Burgoyne's rear, had surprised several of his garrisons, and cut off his line of communication. The armies thus remained in sight of each other for more than two weeks, the Americans being constantly strengthened by accessions from the neighborhood, and the British as constantly weakened by the defection of loyalists and Indians. Frequent skirmishes took place, and Burgoyne's army was kept in constant alarm. Among the incidents worthy of relation was a daring attempt on the part of twenty young farmers to take an advanced British picket. Moving noiselessly to within a few yards of the post, the leader suddenly sounded an old trumpet, and with a tremendous yell his men rushed on the enemy, who supposed that Gates and his whole army were upon them. "Ground your arms, or you are dead men!" cried the captain, and the frightened guard were not slow in obeying. When it was too late to resist, they found, to their mortification, that they were prisoners to a party inferior in number to themselves.

344. Burgoyne's position was now critical in the extreme. His men were put on short allowance, and even then his stock of provisions threatened to give out in a few days. The vigilance of the Americans prevented supplies from reaching him. Urgent messages for aid had been sent to Gen. Clinton, at New York; but nothing had been heard from him in reply. It was clear that the only hope for the British army was in fighting its way through the American ranks.

On the 7th of October, the British drew up in line of battle. After some skirmishing, the Americans commenced the action by charging the enemy's front. The British at first could not withstand their impetuous attack, but soon rallied, and in turn drove back their assailants. So close

---

Where did Burgoyne encamp? By whom was Gates reënforced? What had Lincoln's men been doing? What is said of each army? Relate the exploit of twenty young farmers. 344. What is said of Burgoyne's position? To whom had he sent for aid? What was the only hope for the British army? When did

was the struggle that a single cannon was five times taken and retaken by the contending parties. At length the patriots succeeded in retaining it; and Colonel Cilley [*sil'-le*], after having leaped upon it and dedicated it to the American cause, wheeled it round upon the enemy and fired on them with their own ammunition. Not till their best officers had fallen, were the British finally driven back.

Meanwhile Gen. Frazer's division had fallen on the American flank. They were repelled by Morgan's corps, which then furiously charged the British right. At this point, Arnold, who had been unjustly deprived of his command, and was impatiently watching the progress of the battle, could restrain himself no longer. Hastily mounting his large brown horse, he spurred towards the hottest of the fight. Gates, fearing that he would gain fresh laurels, sent Major Armstrong after him with orders to return. But Arnold was already out of reach. He was received with shouts of exultation by the men whom he had before led to victory. With a desperation akin to madness, he charged Frazer's brigade, now rallying under its intrepid commander. Perceiving that Frazer was the soul of the British army, Morgan directed several of his riflemen to make him the special object of their aim. A ball soon struck the general's saddle; another wounded his horse in the neck. Despite these warnings, he refused to retire, and in a few moments fell, mortally wounded.

Frazer's fall decided the battle. Burgoyne in vain tried to rally his men. Driven from their intrenchments by Arnold's impetuous attack, they left the Germans at their side unsupported. The latter gave one volley and fled. Arnold received a ball in the same leg which had been mangled at Quebec, and was here at last overtaken by Major Armstrong, with Gates's order to return. He did return, but not till he had achieved a glorious victory, with little aid from Gates,

---

the second battle of Stillwater take place? Give an account of the engagement in front. Describe Frazer's movements. What was done by Arnold? Give an account of Frazer's fall. What effect had Frazer's fall on the fate of the battle? Describe Arnold's attack on the British intrenchments. What was the result? What befell Arnold? What did each party do on the approach of night? What

who had kept himself all day in the camp. Night set in, and the contest ceased. The Americans kept possession of the field, and Burgoyne fell back, with the intention of retreating by way of Fort Edward. In this second battle of Stillwater, he lost 700 men; the Americans, about 150.

345. Burgoyne soon found that retreat was impossible. He was hemmed in on all sides; provisions were failing him; and there was no prospect of assistance from New York. A council of war held October 13th decided to capitulate. While the officers were deliberating, grape-shot swept across the table at which they were seated. On the 16th, the terms were settled. The whole British army, consisting of 5,791 men, surrendered, with their arms and baggage, 42 cannon, and a large quantity of ammunition. The news of this brilliant victory awakened fresh hope and courage in every patriot breast.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

### MOVEMENTS OF HOWE AND WASHINGTON IN 1777.

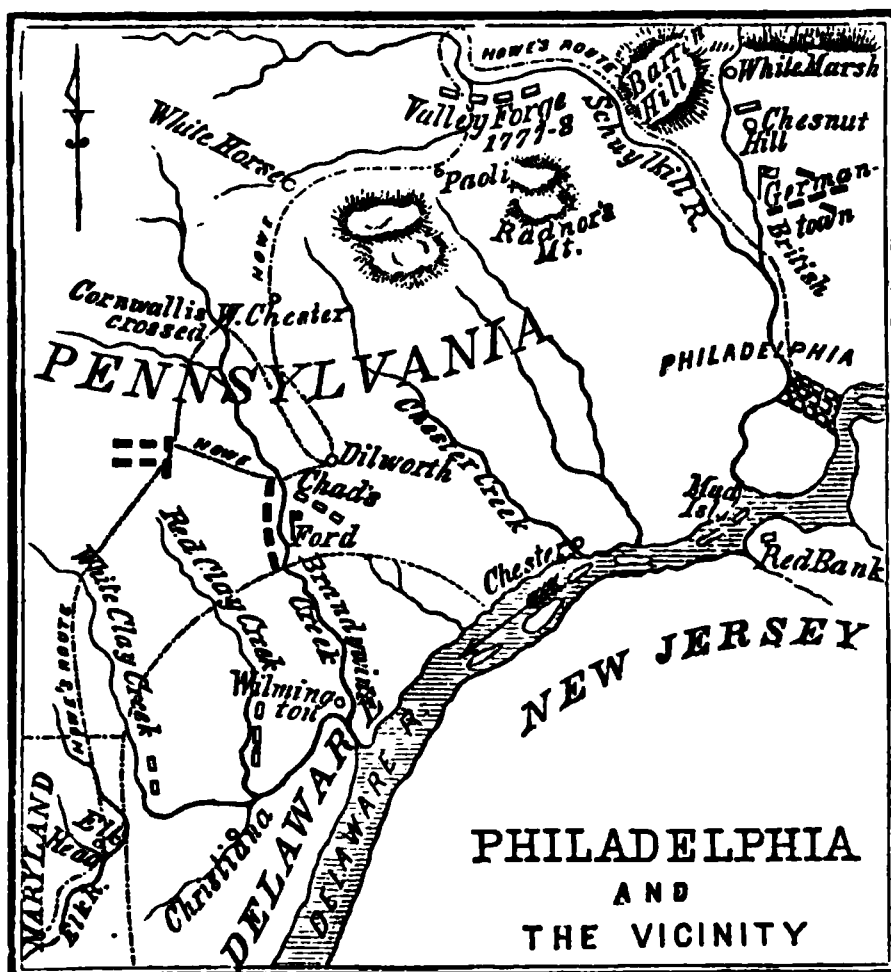
346. WHILE the advantages just described were being gained in the north, Washington was endeavoring to preserve his army from the superior force of Howe. Having received some reënforcements, the American commander, in the latter part of May, moved from Morristown to Middlebrook, N. J. Howe, after vainly trying to bring him to an engagement, proceeded to Staten Island and thence put to sea with about 18,000 men, leaving a strong force under Clinton to defend New York. After remaining at sea over a month, he entered Chesapeake Bay, and landed at a point on the Elk River about 50 miles from Philadelphia, on which city he intended to make a descent.

---

was the loss on each side? 345. What was now Burgoyne's condition? On the 13th of October, what was decided on? When were the terms settled? What were surrendered to the Americans? What was the effect of this victory on the patriot cause?

346. While these events were transpiring in the north, what was Washington doing? What movement was finally made by Howe? How long did the British

Washington had penetrated his design, and was already on the march with 14,000 men — of whom, however, only 8,000 were fit for service. Unwilling as he was to hazard a general engagement, he could not allow Philadelphia to fall into the hands of the enemy without striking a blow in



its defence. The British slowly approached, and on the 11th of September reached Chad's Ford on Brandywine Creek, where the Americans lay encamped. One division under Cornwallis took a circuitous route, crossed the creek higher up without opposition, and fell on the American right which had been sent to oppose them. In vain Sullivan, La Fayette, and Stirling, endeavored to stem the tide. La Fayette was wounded and narrowly escaped capture. The timely arrival of Greene's division (which made a memorable march of four miles in forty-two minutes) saved this part of the American army from entire destruction. Wayne, who opposed the British in front, was also driven back. The battle of Brandywine thus resulted in a total defeat of the Americans, with a loss of 300 killed, 600 wounded, and nearly 400 prisoners. The British loss was about 90 killed, and 500 wounded and missing.

Among those who did good service at Brandywine was

---

remain at sea? Where did they land? What city was threatened? What course did Washington take? When did the hostile armies meet? Where? [See Map. —Into what does Brandywine Creek empty? Mention some other creeks that run nearly parallel to it. Between what two rivers is Philadelphia?] Give an account of Cornwallis's attack on the American right. What was the result in

Count Pulaski [*pu-las'-ke*], a Polish noble, who had tried to liberate his country from the Russian yoke. Failing in the attempt, he had sought a new field on which to battle for freedom. For his gallantry in this action Congress made him a brigadier-general.

347. His defeat at Brandywine did not prevent Washington from resolving on another battle; but a violent and protracted storm so injured his arms and ammunition that he was obliged to give up the idea and retreat. Slowly and wearily his men toiled over the miry roads, many of them having no shoes to protect their feet. A movement on the part of the British, which threatened Reading [*red'-ding*], where the American stores were deposited, forced Washington to take a new position and leave the road to Philadelphia open to the enemy. Gen. Wayne was stationed with 1,500 men to check their advance, but he was surprised by a midnight attack, and driven back with the loss of nearly 300 men. Philadelphia was thus left at the mercy of the British, and on the 26th they entered the city in triumph. Eight days before, Congress had adjourned to meet at Lancaster. They soon after removed to York, where they continued to hold their sessions till the recovery of Philadelphia the following year.

The British were now in pleasant quarters; but otherwise they gained little by the capture of Philadelphia. The country was still unsubdued, and, as long as Howe was stationary, was likely so to remain. Franklin in his usual witty way remarked, that, instead of Howe's having taken Philadelphia, Philadelphia had taken Howe.

348. In the mean time, Washington was not idle. Having received a reënforcement of 2,500 men, on the 4th of October he surprised the British troops stationed at Germantown, six miles from Philadelphia [see Map, p. 249]. The Americans at

---

front of the line? State the loss on each side. Who is mentioned as having done good service at Brandywine? What was Pulaski's previous history? How was he rewarded? 347. Notwithstanding his defeat, on what did Washington resolve? What prevented another engagement? What obliged Washington to leave the road to Philadelphia open? What befell Wayne? When did Howe enter Philadelphia? Where had Congress removed? What did the British gain by taking Philadelphia? Repeat Franklin's remark. 348. What was done by

first gained important advantages, and would have achieved a victory had not some of the militia failed to perform the part assigned them. A thick fog arose; the British rallied, and finally repelled the assault. The American loss was estimated at 1,000 men, including Gen. Nash, of North Carolina; that of the British was not far from 600. Shortly after this repulse, Washington retired with his army to White Marsh, 14 miles from Philadelphia [see Map, p. 249]. The sufferings of his men increased with the coldness of the weather.

349. The navigation of the Delaware was still in the hands of the patriots. Several miles below Philadelphia, Fort Mifflin, on Mud Island [see Map], commanded the channel; and opposite to it, on the Jersey shore, was a strong fort at Red Bank. Heavy timbers armed with iron bars pointing down the river had been sunk near Fort Mifflin, to prevent the passage of vessels. To open communication between his army and fleet, it was necessary for Howe to destroy these defences. Batteries were erected on the Pennsylvania shore opposite Mud Island, and a party was sent down on the Jersey side to storm the works at Red Bank. They entered the fort without opposition, and supposed that it was theirs, but were soon apprised of their mistake by a well-directed fire, which mortally wounded their leader and disabled 400 of his men. The American commandant, unable to defend the whole of the extensive works, had abandoned part of them, and with this warm reception repulsed the enemy. The attack on Fort Mifflin was at first equally unsuccessful. Two British vessels ran aground, one of which was abandoned by its crew, while the other was set on fire by the Americans. At length, however, the enemy reached such a position that both garrisons were obliged to retire and relinquish to them the command of the river.

---

Washington on the 4th of October? [See Map, p. 249.—In what direction is Germantown from Philadelphia? Near what stream is it?] Give an account of the battle of Germantown. State the loss on each side. To what place did Washington then retire? [Near what stream is White Marsh? What hill near it?] 249. Which party held possession of the Delaware? What works gave the Americans possession of the river? What hostile movements against these works were

350. The joyful news of Burgoyne's surrender, received about this time, served to relieve the depression occasioned by Washington's reverses. It roused Howe to additional exertion. At midnight, December 2d, 1777, he held a council of war at a house occupied by a Quaker named Darrah. Mrs. Darrah, who was a true friend of her country, suspected that something important was going on; and, silently rising after retiring to bed, she overheard an order for the British troops to start the following night for the purpose of surprising Washington at White Marsh. Returning to her room, she feigned sleep, but spent the rest of the night in meditating how she could save her countrymen. Not daring to trust any one with her secret, she obtained a permit to pass the British lines, on pretence of having to go to mill for a bag of flour. The ground was covered with snow, but she heeded it not, and hastening on met an American officer to whom she delivered the important information. The next night, she observed the British marching forth on their expedition. They silently approached the camp of Washington, but, to their astonishment, found the whole American army drawn up in readiness to receive them. For three days Howe remained in the neighborhood, but Washington would not leave his intrenchments to give him battle. On Howe's return to Philadelphia, Mrs. Darrah was closely examined, as to whether any member of her family had been awake on the night in question, but nothing was discovered.

351. The weather now rendered it necessary for Washington to withdraw his army from the field to permanent winter-quarters. These he fixed at Valley Forge, on the southwest side of the Schuylkill [*skool'-kill*], 22 miles from Philadelphia. A march of eight days, over frozen ground on which they left the marks of their bleeding feet, brought his men to the spot. Most of the neighboring inhabitants were Tories, and, as the British bought their produce at high prices

---

made by Howe? Give an account of the attack at Red Bank. Of that on Fort Mifflin. 350. What joyful news was now received? How did it act on Howe? Tell the story about Mrs. Darrah. 351. What did the weather now oblige Washington to do? What place did he select for his winter-quarters? [See Map, p. 249.—How is Valley Forge situated? In what direction is it from White Marsh?

and paid for it in gold and silver, it was almost impossible for Washington to procure provisions in exchange for the paper money of Congress. He was authorized to seize on what he needed, wherever it could be found within seventy miles of the camp; but many of the farmers concealed their grain, and even resisted the American foraging parties. Meanwhile the British, 19,500 strong, were revelling in comfort and plenty at Philadelphia. This was the dark hour of the American Revolution.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### THE AMERICAN ARMY AT VALLEY FORGE.

352. THE deplorable situation of the American army at Valley Forge, during the dreary winter of 1777-78, can hardly be imagined. Four thousand men were unable to

### VALLEY FORGE.

---

What place south of it? How long were the army in reaching it? What is said of the neighboring inhabitants? What difficulty troubled Washington? What was the condition of the British army at this time?



move out of their huts for want of clothing. A whole pair of shoes was hardly known in the camp. Exposure and the want of proper food brought on putrid fevers and other fatal disorders. The officers fared but little better than their men. The paper money issued by Congress had depreciated so much that the pay of a general was hardly sufficient to keep him in clothes.

This lamentable state of things filled the breast of Washington with inexpressible anguish, which was increased by the injustice of some of his countrymen. The Pennsylvania Legislature censured him for withdrawing his troops to winter-quarters. Congress wavered in its confidence, and in appointing a new board of war gave a prominent place to Gates, Conway, Mifflin, and others known to be hostile to the commander. Some even demanded that he should be superseded by Gates or Lee. Washington bore these unjust complaints with patience, knowing that time would place things in their true light. He was not wrong. The proposition to remove him was met with indignant remonstrances from all parts of the country; and Congress, finally convinced that the blame rested with themselves for not making suitable provisions, took measures for the proper equipment of an efficient army.

353. Unbounded joy was soon diffused through America by the news that France had at length (February 6th, 1778) recognized the independence of the United States, and entered into a treaty of alliance with its commissioners. This was brought about by the unremitting labors of Franklin. A general favorite at the French court, he had embraced every opportunity of proving to the king and ministry the certainty of his country's ultimate triumph in the struggle with England. Burgoyne's surrender furnished him with an irresistible argument, and the long-desired treaty was obtained.

---

352. Describe the situation of the Americans, both men and officers, at Valley Forge. What other cause of grief had Washington? How were the unjust complaints against the commander received? What did Congress finally decide to do? 353. What joyful news reached America in the spring of 1778? By whom

FI  
C  
FC

354. The arrival of Baron Steuben threw another ray of light on the gloom which overshadowed the patriot army at Valley Forge. Steuben had served as aide-de-camp and lieutenant-general under Frederick the Great, king of Prussia. Congress gladly accepted his services, and found them of immense value in organizing and disciplining the army. In May, 1778, at Washington's request, he was appointed inspector-general, and the results of his experience were soon apparent.

355. Washington attempted little during his melancholy sojourn at Valley Forge. Towards the close of spring, 1778, La Fayette was sent with 2,100 men to Barren Hill, on the Schuylkill, twelve miles from Valley Forge, to keep the foraging parties of the enemy in check, and to be ready for action in case of any decided movement. With the connivance of a tory, at whose house the marquis lodged, Howe forthwith laid a plan to cut off the detachment. Fortunate-

---

and how were the French induced to make this alliance? 354. What important addition did the army at Valley Forge receive? What is said of Baron Steuben? To what office was he appointed? 355. Give an account of La Fayette's escape at

ly La Fayette discovered the scheme in time to defeat it by a skilful retreat. Washington, who had observed through a spy-glass the threatening movements of the enemy, could hardly restrain his joy when his beloved brother-in-arms reached the camp in safety.

356. The British ministry began to perceive, that, although victories had been gained, little was really done towards reducing America, and the alliance with France rendered their prospects for the future still worse. Accordingly, commissioners were sent over with liberal proposals, which would have been accepted before the war commenced, but which now came too late. Bribery was freely tried, but in vain. Among those whom the commissioners ventured to approach in this way was Gen. Reed, of Pennsylvania. Ten thousand guineas and a profitable post were offered him, if he would use his influence to bring about a reconciliation. "I am not worth purchasing," was the reply of the honest patriot; "but, such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me."

357. In March, 1778, the country received a severe blow in the loss of Captain Nicholas Biddle, one of its ablest naval officers. After capturing a number of prizes in the U. S. frigate Randolph, he encountered the Yarmouth [*yar'-muth*], a British ship of 64 guns, and in the midst of the engagement his vessel blew up. Captain Biddle and all his men, except four who were picked up by the enemy, instantly perished.

---

Barren Hill. What is said of Washington's solicitude on this occasion? 356. What was now evident to the British ministry? What course did they therefore pursue? Give an account of their attempts at negotiation. What passed between them and Gen. Reed? 357. What severe blow did the country receive in March, 1778?

## CHAPTER XIV.

CAMPAIGN OF 1778.—MONMOUTH.—NEWPORT.—SAVANNAH.  
—WYOMING.

358. ON the 24th of May, 1778, Gen. Howe, who had requested the home government to recall him, left Philadelphia, after a splendid tournament given by his officers in his honor. About a month afterwards, Sir Henry Clinton, on whom the chief command now devolved, evacuated the city with the whole British army. Washington followed the enemy across New Jersey. Contrary to the advice of some of his officers, he resolved on a general engagement; and, on the 28th of June, when the British were about leaving Monmouth [*mon'-muth*], they found the Americans drawn up for battle. The attack was conducted by Lee, who had been released by the British in exchange for Gen. Prescott. After a series of mistakes, Lee, without any apparent reason, began to fall back. The retreat soon turned into a flight. The Americans were hurrying over a morass, sinking in the mire and falling before their pursuers, when they were met by Washington at the head of the rear line. Angrily rebuking Lee, the American commander arrested the flight of his broken regiments, and led them back against the enemy.

The British were stopped in their successful career. Lee fought throughout the rest of the action with desperate courage, and many deeds of valor were performed on both sides. The gallant conduct of Mary Pitcher, the wife of an American artillery-man, must not be forgotten. While bringing water to her husband from a spring, she saw him fall, and heard an order given for withdrawing his gun, as there was no one to manage it. The heroic woman immediately took her hus-

---

858. In May, 1778, who assumed command of the British army? How did Howe's officers testify their respect? What was Clinton's first movement? What was Washington's course? Where did an engagement take place? By what American general was the attack conducted? How had Lee obtained his freedom? Tell how Washington turned the fate of the battle. Tell the story of Molly

band's place, and discharged his duty in a way that elicited the warmest admiration. Washington afterwards appointed her a sergeant in the army, and she was well known by both French and Americans, who honored her with the appellation of "Captain Molly".

After a severe contest, in which now one party and now the other had the advantage, the Americans remained masters of the field. They passed the night on it with the intention of renewing the battle in the morning, Washington resting among his men with no other bed than his cloak; but Clinton silently departed three hours before dawn. The total loss of the British was about 500, 59 of whom fell from the excessive heat; that of the Americans was 229. Clinton's army proceeded to Sandy Hook, and was thence conveyed by the fleet to New York. Washington crossed the Hudson, and fixed his quarters at White Plains.

Offended by the rebuke he had received, Lee, the day after the battle, sent an insulting letter to Washington. The latter had him arrested for disobeying orders and disgracefully retreating. A court-martial, of which Lord Stirling was president, found him guilty, and suspended him from his command for a year. His interest in the cause of liberty was thus abated, and he never rejoined the army.

359. In July (1778), a French fleet, conveying a strong land force, under Count D'Estaing [*des-tang'*], arrived off the coast of Virginia. Measures were concerted for besieging the British at Newport, R. I., and D'Estaing entered the harbor early in August. Before operations had fairly commenced, Admiral Byron approached Newport with a British fleet. D'Estaing sailed forth to meet the enemy, but a terrific storm separated the combatants. Byron made for New York, and the French returned to Newport. Meanwhile Sullivan, who commanded on the part of the Ameri-

---

Pitcher. Who remained masters of the field? How did the Americans pass the night? How, Washington? How did Clinton avoid continuing the engagement? State the loss on each side. Where did Clinton go? Where did Washington fix his quarters? What is said of Lee's subsequent history? 359. What took place in July, 1778? What place was it decided to attack? Before operations commenced what induced the French to leave the harbor? What separated the com-

cans, had begun the siege. The tempest which had separated the fleets, swept the shore in all its fury. It is still remembered in Rhode Island as "the great storm". Tents were blown down, stores destroyed, and the works damaged. On the return of the French fleet, Sullivan recommenced operations; but his hopes were soon blasted by an announcement from D'Estaing that he was going to Boston to refit his vessels. The remonstrances of La Fayette and Greene were ineffectual; and Sullivan, thus deserted, was compelled to raise the siege. On the 29th of August, he repelled with intrepidity an attack of the British; but, finding himself in danger of being cut off, he effected a masterly retreat by night, without the knowledge of the enemy. The close of the eastern campaign thus left both parties in the same condition in which they were at its beginning.

360. The frontier of New York and Pennsylvania, since the dispersion of the Indians at Fort Schuyler, had been comparatively secure from their depredations; but in 1778 it was again ravaged. At the solicitation of British agents, a body of Iroquois joined a band of tories under Col. John Butler, and advanced towards Wy-o'-ming. This settlement lay in the beautiful valley of the Susquehanna. It contained a population of several thousand, but had contributed so largely to the patriot army that few able-bodied men were left for its defence. As the ruthless invaders approached, fearful accounts of their barbarity were received. The women and children flocked from the surrounding region to a fort near the present site of Wilkesbarre [*wilks'-bar-re*], and 300 men with a few boys, under Zebulon Butler (no relation of the British colonel's), advanced to meet the enemy.

The Americans fought bravely, and even gained ground, till one of their officers, wishing to take a more favorable position in the rear, bade his men "fall back". The order

---

batants? Where did the fleets go? Describe "the great storm". How were Gen. Sullivan's hopes blasted? Who remonstrated with D'Estaing, but in vain? What was Sullivan compelled to do? Give an account of his subsequent movements. What was the position of both parties at the close of the eastern campaign? 360. By whom was the frontier ravaged in the summer of 1778? Towards what settlement did they advance? Where was Wyoming situated? How had it been left defenceless? On the approach of the invaders, what did the in-

was misunderstood, and the unfortunate word "retreat" was passed along the lines. Panic seized the soldiers, and a general flight ensued. Many were shot and tomahawked as they ran; some threw themselves into the river; a few escaped to the fort, where the helpless women were screaming with terror. That night the Indians held possession of the battle-field, and tortured their prisoners with all the cruelties that savage cunning could invent. Captain Bidlack was thrown alive on burning-coals, and kept there with pitchforks till he expired. Six prisoners were ranged near a stone on the river-bank, and held by savages, while Queen Esther, an old Seneca half-breed, walked round them in a circle, singing the death-song like an infuriated demon, and striking them with her club and hatchet till every man was killed. The stone is still called Queen Esther's rock.

The next day the fort was invested. It was surrendered to the British leader, on his promise to protect its defenceless occupants; but no sooner were the savages admitted than they glutted their thirst for blood by tomahawking and scalping all whom they met. The unfortunate people of Wyoming were compelled to flee from their once happy valley to distant and securer settlements. Few survived the horrors of the flight. Some escaped the Red Man's knife, only to find a slower death from exposure and fatigue. Others, dragging their weary limbs they knew not whither, lost their way on the mountains or hid in caverns till starvation ended their sufferings. Distracted mothers hurried their children through the wilderness, and, when their little ones fainted on the way and died, folded the lifeless bodies to their hearts, and bore them many a toilsome mile to save them from the hungry wolves. Lovely Wyoming was desolate.

These frightful scenes were reënacted in November, in Cherry Valley, N. Y. Brant, a noted Mohawk, in conjunc-

---

habitants do? Who advanced to meet the enemy? Give an account of the battle. How did the Indians spend the ensuing night? Give some instances of their barbarity. What was done the next day? On what promise, did the fort surrender? How was this promise kept? Give an account of the massacre of Wyoming and

tion with a band of tories, suddenly fell upon the settlement, and killed or carried off most of its inhabitants. The country around was ravaged for miles, and the tories vied with their savage allies in cold-blooded ferocity towards their unfortunate victims.

361. In November, 1778, Clinton determined to change the scene of his operations to the south, and despatched 2,000 men under Lieutenant-colonel Campbell, and a fleet under Admiral Hyde Parker, against Savannah. The city was held by General Robert Howe, with 900 men, who, though ill prepared for battle, made a brave resistance. The appearance on their rear of a body of New York tories, guided by a negro, obliged them to retreat; and during this movement 100 men fell and 453 were taken. Admiral Parker crowded the latter, with others who refused to join the royal army, on board of prison-ships; many of them perished, and became the food of crows and buzzards. The whole of eastern Georgia was speedily subdued.

362. About the time of the massacre at Wyoming, an expedition was undertaken against the western tribes by Gen. Clarke, of Virginia. Having seized Kaskaskia, he induced the Indians to take an oath of allegiance to Virginia, and the county of Illinois was organized as part of that state. The British governor of Detroit, hearing of this, invaded the country in December, 1778. Appearing before the American post at Vincennes, he demanded its surrender. Captain Helm, who commanded the station, holding a smoking match over his single cannon, demanded that the garrison should have the most favorable terms. The British commander assented, but was somewhat mortified to find, on entering the fort, that he had granted the honors of war to *two men*, who were its only occupants.

In February, 1779, Gen. Clarke set out from Kaskaskia

---

the flight of the inhabitants. Give an account of the massacre of Cherry Valley. 361. What expedition was sent out by Clinton in November, 1778? By whom was the city held? Give an account of the battle. How many men were lost on the retreat? How did Admiral Parker treat the prisoners? What part of Georgia was speedily subdued? 362. Give an account of Gen. Clarke's expedition. [See Map, p. 158.—Where is Kaskaskia? Where is Vincennes?] Give an account of



with 170 men for the recapture of Vincennes. The rivers were high. The Wabash [*waw'-bash*] had overflowed the country, so that Clarke and his men were obliged to wade for miles waist-deep in water. Nearly starving, they fortunately captured an Indian party from which they obtained a small supply of buffalo-meat. After great hardships, they reached Vincennes, and the British governor, who had gained the name of the "hair-buying general" from the number of scalps he had purchased, deemed it prudent to capitulate.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

CAMPAIGN OF 1779.—MOVEMENTS IN SOUTH CAROLINA.—  
CAPTURE OF STONY POINT.—SULLIVAN'S INDIAN EXPE-  
DITION.—SIEGE OF SAVANNAH.—PAUL JONES.

363. AT the commencement of the year 1779, the British army in the south consisted of 3,000 effective men, under the command of Gen. Pre-vost'. They were opposed by Lincoln, with a force smaller than the enemy's and far inferior to them in discipline and equipments. Prevost began the campaign by attempting the conquest of South Carolina. A body of regulars was sent to take possession of Port Royal Island, but was driven back by Gen. Moultrie. Soon after, a party of 700 Tories on their march to the British army were defeated by Col. Pickens; and some of their leaders, who fell into the hands of the Americans, were tried and executed as traitors.

Encouraged by this success, Lincoln sent Gen. Ashe to take a favorable position at the confluence of Brier Creek and the Savannah. Shortly after his arrival, a party of British crossed the creek some miles above and surprised the

---

the capture of Vincennes by the governor of Detroit. What was done by Gen. Clarke, in February, 1779? Describe the march to Vincennes. What was the result?

363. With how many men did the British general, Prevost, commence the southern campaign in 1779? With how many, the Americans? What was the first enterprise undertaken by Prevost? What was its success? What victory was achieved by Col. Pickens? What was Lincoln's first movement? Give an ac-

American camp. Most of the militia threw down their arms and fled. Some escaped by swimming, but over 300 were killed and taken. The British commander now regarded Georgia as completely subdued, and filled the various state offices with partisans of the king. Gen. Lincoln was trying to recover the ground thus unfortunately lost, when a movement of the enemy towards Charleston obliged him to march hastily in that direction. Pulaski's "American legion", and Governor Rutledge with a strong body of militia, threw themselves into the city, and held it till Lincoln's approach forced the besieging army to retire. The heat soon became so intense that both parties gave up active operations till October.

364. During Prevost's incursion, the whig families in the neighborhood of Charleston suffered much from the brutality and rapacity of his soldiers. Plantations were devastated. Money, jewels, and plate, were carried off; slaves were stolen, to be sold in the West Indies; and what could not be taken away was destroyed. On St. John's Island, the family of a Mr. Gibbs were driven from their house. In the midst of rain and flying bullets, they made their way to some negro-cabins, when it was discovered that a little boy had been forgotten. A girl of thirteen years offered to return for the child. Obtaining entrance with difficulty, she found the object of her search in the third story, bore him off through a shower of balls, and reached her friends uninjured. The boy thus saved was known in the war of 1812 as Gen. Fenwick.

Mrs. Wilkinson has left us an account of a visit made to her house on Young's Island, 30 miles from Charleston, by a band of the enemy. They plundered the estate, drove away the horses, tore the buckles worn by the ladies of the house from their shoes, and rudely plucked the rings from their fingers. Mrs. Wilkinson begged them to leave her a few indispensable articles of clothing, but received only curses in

---

count of Ashe's defeat. What was now done by the British commander? Where was Lincoln next obliged to go? How was Charleston saved till his arrival? What prevented further operations? 364. How did Prevost's men conduct themselves? What story is told of Mr. Gibbs's family? Who was the boy thus saved?

reply. A soldier belonging to the marauding party was afterwards wounded and taken prisoner by some Americans. One of the ladies whom he had plundered, returning good for evil, hastily tore up her only remaining handkerchief to bind his bleeding arm.

365. The winter of 1778-79 was passed by the northern American army at Middlebrook, N. J. In preparing for the spring campaign, Washington found both the men and officers of the New Jersey brigade disposed to abandon the service, in consequence of the backwardness of Congress in paying them and providing for their wants. Their beloved general could not blame them, for he had often expostulated with Congress on the subject; but his tender solicitations and warm appeals to their love of country induced them still to suffer in the holy cause.

366. To command the Hudson at the crossing called King's Ferry, about 40 miles from New York, Washington selected for fortification two elevated headlands on opposite sides of the river, known as Stony and Verplanck's Point. Before the defences were completed, Gen. Clinton moved up the river with a strong force. The troops at Stony Point retired at his approach, and the other garrison, unable to stand the heavy fire of the British from the opposite heights, surrendered (June 1st, 1779) as prisoners of war. The fortifications were completed without delay, and Col. Johnson was left in command of Stony Point, with a garrison of 600 men.

STONY POINT AND VICINITY.

While these posts remained in the enemy's hands, Ameri-

---

What took place at Mrs. Wilkinson's? 365. Where did Washington pass the winter of 1778-79? What disposition was manifested by the New Jersey brigade? How were they induced to remain in the service? 366. How did Washington propose to command King's Ferry? [See Map.—What two forts on the Hudson north of Stony Point? What village south of Stony Point? What mountain southwest of West Point?] Who attacked the defences at Stony and Verplanck's

can messengers had to take a circuit of many miles in bearing communications between the east and south; Washington, therefore, determined to recover them, and intrusted the difficult enterprise to Gen. Wayne. On the 15th of July, Wayne's detachment of light infantry mustered 14 miles below Stony Point. The day was spent in marching through narrow defiles and over ragged rocks. At eight in the evening, they halted about a mile from the fort. From this point they were guided by a negro named Pompey, who was in the habit of visiting the garrison after his day's work to sell them strawberries. Accompanied by one or two of Wayne's advanced guards, Pompey boldly approached the outposts, and gave the countersign, while his companions, watching their opportunity, seized and gagged the sentinels.

Thus the Americans reached the base of the bluff undiscovered. The fort, as they gazed up at it, seemed almost impregnable. It lay on a rocky height, accessible only by a steep and narrow path. At half past eleven, Wayne's army commenced the ascent. They were not observed till within a few feet of the pickets. Here they received several shots, but pressed forward with the bayonet. The roll of the drum roused the sleeping garrison, and quick discharges of cannon and musketry met the advancing columns. Wayne was wounded, and bade his aides carry him forward that he might die at the head of his men. He soon found, however, that his injury was not mortal. His comrades pressed gallantly on, and the British were obliged to surrender. Their loss amounted to 63 killed and 543 made prisoners. Wayne had but 15 killed and 83 wounded. The next morning, the cannon were turned on the works at Verplanck's Point. But before any impression was made on them, Wayne, fearing an attack from New York, destroyed the fort and beat a retreat. Congress had a gold medal struck in honor of this brilliant achievement.

---

Point? What was the result? Who was left in command of Stony Point? What enterprise was projected by Washington? To whom did he intrust it? When and where did Wayne's light infantry muster? How did they succeed in passing the outposts? Describe their ascent of the bluff. Give an account of the assault. What was the result? State the loss on each side. What was done the next morning? At length what did Wayne deem it prudent to do? How did Con-

367. About this time, the merciless Tryon was sent to New Haven, with 2,500 men, to burn the shipping in that port. The militia rallied in its defence, but were driven back; and several vessels, together with large quantities of military and naval stores, were destroyed. Tryon then visited Fairfield, Norwalk, and Greenwich, all of which he reduced to ashes.

368. The massacres of Wyoming and Cherry Valley were still fresh in the memory of the Americans; and in August Gen. Sullivan was sent, with nearly 5,000 men, to punish the Iroquois by destroying their villages and devastating their country. On the Ti-o'-ga River he was met by the Indians in full force under Brant, and a band of Tories headed by Sir John Johnson. They had thrown up works in European style, and bravely defended them till the Americans gained some high ground on their flank, when they gave way in confusion. Fleeing to swamps and forests, the Red Men left their pleasant villages and luxuriant corn-fields, from the Susquehanna to the Genesee, entirely at the mercy of the invaders. Fearful was the vengeance inflicted. Whole villages were given to the flames. At Wyoming, no mercy was shown but the hatchet; here, none but the firebrand. On the 14th of September, Sullivan reached the metropolis of the Genesee valley; 128 buildings and 160,000 bushels of corn were there destroyed. The whole region was swept as by a tornado; and the terrible vengeance of "the Town-destroyer", as they called Washington, was never forgotten.

369. On the 1st of September, Count D'Estaing, who had gained some victories in the West Indies, appeared off Savannah with his fleet. The British under Prevost were still in possession of the city, and Gen. Lincoln hastened to co-operate with the French against them. Prevost was summoned to surrender by the French admiral, but was unwisely allowed a day for consideration. Employing this time in

---

gress commemorate this victory? 367. Give an account of Tryon's expedition to Connecticut. 368. Who was sent to punish the depredations of the Iroquois? Give an account of the battle with Brant. What followed on the part of Sullivan? What place was reached by the Americans, September 14th? What were there committed to the flames? What name did the Indians give Washington? 369. On the 1st of September, who appeared off Savannah? By whom was the city still held?

strengthening his defences, the British commandant finally announced his determination to hold the city. A heavy cannonade was opened by the besiegers. The town suffered severely. The inhabitants were driven to their cellars, and ventured in the streets only at the peril of their lives. Prevost could not have held out more than ten days; but the restless D'Estaing was in a hurry to leave, and gave the Americans their choice, either to raise the siege or carry the place by storm. Though it was risking a victory already certain, Lincoln would not allow his allies to depart, but declared himself ready for the attack.

On the 9th of October, the French and Americans advanced against the British works in three divisions. They were received with a heavy fire, which mowed down whole platoons, and wounded the French leader. Still they pressed on, and the flags of France and South Carolina were soon waving from the parapet. In a moment, the men who placed them there fell by a discharge of musketry. Sergeant Jasper, the hero of Fort Moultrie, beheld the flag of his state in the act of falling; springing forward, he fixed it securely on the parapet, and fell, mortally wounded, in the act. Just then a charge of fresh troops from the garrison swept the assailants from the works.

In other parts the attack was equally unsuccessful. The gallant Pulaski, one of America's noblest defenders, rushing forward with the consecrated banner placed in his hand by Moravian nuns, was struck down by a cannon-ball, to rise no more. His followers were driven from the field; and the British obtained a complete victory. Lincoln wished to renew the attack; but D'Estaing refused to do so, and withdrew his fleet. The American general, mortified at the failure of an enterprise which nothing but the caprice of his ally had defeated, led his diminished army to Charleston.

370. Among the names conspicuous in American history at this period, is that of John Paul Jones. A native of Scot-

---

Who hastened to join in the attack? Give an account of the siege of Savannah. What unwise course was proposed by D'Estaing? Describe the assault. Give an account of Jasper's fall. Of Pulaski's. What was the result? What did D'Estaing proceed to do? Whither did Gen. Lincoln move? 370. What is said

land, he early embarked in the naval service of the United States, and was the first to unfurl the banner of the Republic on the Delaware. The capture of 16 prizes in little more than six weeks proved his activity and prowess. In 1778, he enlarged his sphere of operations, and kept the coast of Scotland and England in constant alarm. Boldly entering the harbor of Whitehaven, he took two forts, and fired the shipping they protected. Hurrying from point to point, wherever a prize was to be taken or a daring deed to be achieved, he seemed everywhere present and always invincible. In September, 1779, in the *Bon Homme Richard* [*bo-nom' re-shar'*] (*good man Richard*), of 40 guns, accompanied by the *Alliance* and several smaller vessels, Jones encountered, off the coast of Scotland, a British merchant fleet returning from the Baltic under convoy of two frigates. The commander of the *Serapis*, a 44-gun frigate, bore down on the Americans, and one of the most terrible actions recorded in naval history followed. Jones, that the enemy might have no advantage from the superior size of their guns, brought his vessel so close to the *Serapis* that their sides touched. Broadside after broadside was poured in by both parties. The *Serapis* was soon in flames, and the *Bon Homme Richard*, little more than a shapeless hull, had most of her guns silenced. The British attempted to board the latter, but were repulsed. The *Alliance* now came up, and, after first giving her consort a broadside by mistake, turned her guns on the enemy. The *Serapis* struck. Her flames were arrested, and Jones, finding that his own vessel was sinking, hastily transferred his crew to the captured frigate. Of 375 men, with whom he had begun the action, 300 were either killed or wounded. Meanwhile the consort of the *Serapis* had also surrendered, and the American victory was thus complete. With some difficulty, Jones brought his shattered prizes to the coast of Holland.

---

of John Paul Jones? At the commencement of the war, how did he prove his prowess? In 1778, what did he do? Relate his exploit at Whitehaven. What was his vessel called? On the 23d of September, what did he encounter? Give an account of the engagement with the *Serapis*. How did it result? How many men did Paul Jones lose? What did he do with his prizes?

## CHAPTER XVI.

CAMPAIGN OF 1780.—FALL OF CHARLESTON.—PARTISAN  
WARFARE IN THE SOUTH.—BATTLE OF CAMDEN.

371. THE winter of 1779-80 was passed by one division of the northern army of the United States at West Point, under Gen. Heath; by the other, at Morristown, N. J., under Washington. Lincoln commanded at the south; and, as all hope of recovering Georgia had vanished with the repulse at Savannah, he confined himself to efforts in behalf of South Carolina, particularly Charleston, now threatened by the British. On the 10th of February, 1780, a fleet of the ene-  
my landed a strong

were erected at various points. Gen. Clinton now demanded the surrender of the city; but Lincoln, who had been reën-

---

371. Where did the northern army of the United States spend the winter of 1779-80? To what did Gen. Lincoln confine his attention? Give an account of the investment of Charleston. [See Map.—What large island southeast of Charleston? At the mouth of what creek did the British galleys lie? Near what river was



forced, resolved to hold out as long as possible. A destructive fire was at once commenced by the enemy.

General Hu'-ger had been stationed near the head of Ashley River with a body of cavalry. On the 14th of April, his detachment was surprised and dispersed by Tarleton. Four days after, Cornwallis arrived from New York with 3,000 additional men. An incessant cannonade was maintained, and the condition of the inhabitants was deplorable in the extreme. Cannon-balls were continually flying through the air, shells exploding, buildings falling, and flames crackling. It was impossible to hold out longer. On the 12th of May, articles of capitulation were signed. Four frigates, 400 pieces of artillery, and 5,000 Americans, of whom the garrison constituted about one-half, thus fell into the hands of the enemy.

372. The British followed up their success at Charleston with active measures for completing the subjugation of South Carolina. Garrisons were stationed at different points, and 2,000 men were despatched towards North Carolina to overawe the whigs in that direction. Tarleton, with 700 horsemen, overtook a party of retreating Americans under Col. Bu'-ford at Waxhaws, and put them to the sword while asking quarter. For a time the patriots of Carolina seemed paralyzed. Many consented to recognize the king's authority, on condition that they would not be required to serve in the war; and Clinton, believing that South Carolina was "again entirely English", left Cornwallis in command of the southern army, and returned to New York.

373. Soon after his departure, the overbearing conduct of the British, and their violation of the terms of the surrender, opened the eyes of the people, and awakened a determined spirit of resistance. Some of the principal citizens of Charleston were seized and imprisoned. More than a thousand per-

---

the British hospital?] What befell Huger's detachment of horse? By whom was Clinton reënforced? Describe the situation of the besieged city. What took place on the 12th of May? What did the British gain by the surrender? 372. How did the British follow up their success? Give an account of Buford's defeat. What did Clinton think with respect to South Carolina? Whom did he leave in command of the southern army? 373. After Clinton's departure, what course was

sons were deprived of their property and driven from their homes. Reports of these outrages were not long in spreading over the state, and no stronger argument against making terms with the enemy was needed. Sumter, Wynn, and others, organized parties, with the determination of keeping the field till their country was free. Living in the woods on the precarious food they afforded, ready for march or battle at a moment's notice, these brave hearts were the scourge of the British and tories,—appearing when least expected, cutting off straggling parties, swooping down on the rear of their armies, always fearless and generally victorious. Sometimes they met the enemy with but three rounds of ammunition to each man; and often part of a company took the field unprovided with arms, waiting to obtain those of their companions who should fall.

374. In June, 1780, Cornwallis despatched a party of cavalry and tories to crush some of these troublesome rebels. On the way, they stopped at the house of a Mrs. Bratton, and asked where her husband was. "In Sumter's army," was the reply. Incensed at this avowal, the commander was prevented from killing her only by the solicitation of a brother officer. During the night, the patriots in the neighborhood learned of the arrival of the enemy. A small force assembled, and the British were captured. Among the prisoners was an officer, on whom, for previous offences, sentence of death was pronounced. As a last favor, he begged to be led into the presence of Mrs. Bratton. Recognizing him as her preserver, she interceded in his behalf, and his life was granted to her prayers.

375. Among the most successful partisan leaders was Francis Marion, a descendant of the Huguenots of South Carolina, who had served in early life against the Cherokees, and subsequently at Fort Sullivan and Charleston. While hastening to join the American regiments, then on their march to the south, he organized a mounted band of about twenty

---

pursued by the British? What was the consequence? Who organized parties to oppose the British? Describe the partisan warfare of this period. 374. Relate an incident that happened in June, 1780. 375. What partisan leader was particularly distinguished? Where had he seen service? Describe Marion's "ragged

men and boys, some white and others black. Their wretched clothing gained for them the name of "the ragged regiment", and led the proud Gates, who had just been appointed to the command of the southern department, to dispense with their services in the regular army, and send them to the interior of Carolina. Though Gates was ashamed of "the ragged regiment", their gallant leader was not. Increasing their number from time to time, as circumstances allowed, he achieved with their aid a series of minor though brilliant victories.

Still Cornwallis remained master of South Carolina. Camden [see Map, p. 286] was his principal rendezvous in the upper country, and thither the tories flocked. Meanwhile, the American army just alluded to was slowly approaching. Its command had been intrusted to the veteran De Kalb; but, towards the end of July, Gen. Gates superseded De Kalb by the appointment of Congress. Elated by his former success, Gates resolved to strike a decisive blow, and pushed rapidly on, though his men were suffering much from sickness and scarcity of food. As he advanced, the British outposts fell back on Camden; and by the middle of August the two armies lay encamped within a short distance of each other, ready for battle.

376. The hopes of southern patriots were revived by the news of Gates's approach. A number of farmers, hunters, and others, who were tired of the British yoke, quickly appeared in the field; and Sumter, who was called to their command, soon found himself at the head of 600 men. With these he dispersed several bodies of the enemy near the Great Pe-dee'. On the 6th of August, he attacked a large detachment at Hanging Rock. The powder used on this occasion was saved by the heroism of two women. It had been

---

regiment". What did Gates think of it? What did it enable Marion to achieve? To what place did the tories flock? What was the American army doing? Who commanded it? What did Gates resolve to do? On what place did the British outposts fall back? What was the position of the armies at the middle of August? 376. What effect had Gates's approach on the southern patriots? What partisan leader took the command? Where did Sumter operate with success? [See Map, p. 286.—Where is the Great Pedee? Where is Camden? On what river is Hanging Rock?] On the 6th of August, what did Sumter do? How was his

stored in a house occupied by Mrs. Thomas with her daughter and son-in-law, which was attacked by a party of the enemy. Aware that Sumter's army would be powerless if the ammunition were taken, they determined to defend it to the last extremity. The doors were barricaded. The two women loaded guns, and the son-in-law discharged them with such rapidity and effect, that the British supposed a body of men to be posted there, and gave up the attack. The powder was saved, but there was only enough to afford each man two charges. With this small allowance, the battle of Hanging Rock was commenced. Fortunately the Tories fled early in the action, and the ammunition they left behind enabled Sumter's men to repel the bayonets of the British. Nothing but the arrival of reinforcements saved the latter from total defeat.

Among the boys who began a brave career under Sumter in the battle of Hanging Rock, was Andrew Jackson, not yet fourteen years of age. He and his brother were soon afterwards captured, but in the spring of 1781 they were set free by an exchange of prisoners. Both were sick with small-pox at the time; Andrew survived, his brother died. The account they gave of the sufferings of their countrymen on the prison-ships in Charleston harbor induced their widowed mother, with a few other intrepid women, to visit them, at the risk of insult and danger, with food, clothing, and medicine. Having contracted the fatal prison fever on board one of the ships, Mrs. Jackson died on her return, a short distance from Charleston, a martyr to the heroic spirit which animated the daughters of Carolina in "the times that tried men's souls". The young Andrew, thus left without a single relative in the land of his birth, devoted much of his life from this time to the service of his country, who afterwards rewarded his fidelity with the highest office in her gift.

377. Sumter's success, added to the intelligence of Gates's rapid approach, alarmed Cornwallis, and he hastened from

---

powder saved from the British? How many charges did each man have? How was a further supply obtained? How did the battle of Hanging Rock terminate? Who began a brave career at Hanging Rock? How old was he? What befell Andrew Jackson and his brother? Give an account of their mother's fate.

Charleston to Camden to take command of the army, which had been left under Lord Rawdon. Eight hundred men were too sick to take the field. A still larger number in the American ranks were unfit for service from the same cause; so that, after sending the sick with his extra stores and luggage to Waxhaws, Gates found he had but 3,663 men in his camp. With this force drawn up in order of battle, at ten o'clock on the night of August 15th, 1780, he set out in profound silence, in the hope of surprising the enemy.

By a singular coincidence, Cornwallis had formed the same design; and about the time that Gates marched for Camden, he left his quarters to surprise the American camp. Neither party was aware of the other's movements; and, at two on the morning of the 16th, much to their surprise, the hostile forces met. The discovery was made on both sides at the same moment, and firing immediately commenced. The interval till daylight was employed in preparing for a general engagement. Hardly had the battle begun, when part of the American militia, quailing before the terrible fire to which they were exposed, threw down their arms and fled. In vain the regulars nobly seconded the efforts of the intrepid De Kalb; they were forced to give way before the superior discipline of the British regiments. Tarleton's cavalry completed the rout, and strewed the road for miles with dying and dead. The defeat at Camden cost the Americans great quantities of stores, and nearly 2,000 men, killed, wounded, and captured. De Kalb, the friend of La Fayette and fellow-sufferer with Washington at Valley Forge, fell in the battle, pierced with eleven wounds, and died a prisoner three days afterwards. A lieutenant, who threw his arms round his commander to save him from the bayonets of the foe, was himself mortally wounded. Forty-five years after the death of De Kalb, a monument was erected to his memory at Camden, the corner-stone of which was laid by La Fayette.

---

377. Who took command of the British army at Camden? How many of Cornwallis's men were unfit for service? How large a force had Gates? Where did Gates send his sick? What was his plan of operations on the 15th of August? What was contemplated by Cornwallis? Under what circumstances did the hostile armies meet? What followed? Give an account of the battle of Camden.

Gates was unable to rally his men. Over dreary miles of swamp and pine-barrens they held their flight. Many who had before been wavering, now hastened to show their devotion to the king and secure a share of the spoils by joining in the pursuit. At last, harassed and exhausted, the remnants of the defeated army found refuge in Charlotte, N. C.; and there, after a time, Gates was superseded by Gen. Greene.

378. Carolina was now completely at the mercy of the British. Sumter, after capturing some stores at Water-ee' Ford, was surprised by the active Tarleton, and lost most of his men. Marion retired to his forest fastnesses, but was still the scourge of hostile parties, on whom he fell when they deemed themselves most secure. For a time, this gallant partisan and his men were the only active defenders of American liberty in the south.

379. During the year 1780, Congress was continually hampered in its action by a want of money. At the commencement of the war, the feeble colonies, having no funds at command, had been obliged to issue bills of credit, for the payment of which they pledged the public faith. The cause of liberty required constant advances; and in 1780 it was found that no less than \$200,000,000 of continental money (as it was called) was in circulation.

At first the bills passed at par, that is for the full sum which they promised to pay; but, as Congress kept issuing large amounts, which it could not redeem with gold or silver, people would not take them, except at a great discount, or allowance. Thus, in April, 1780, one silver dollar was worth forty in continental bills; and soon afterwards no less than \$75 in bills was given for one in specie. A pair of boots at this time sold for \$600 continental money. To injure still more the credit of Congress, the British flooded the

---

What did this defeat cost the Americans? What able general fell? Where has a monument been erected to De Kalb's memory? Describe the retreat of the American army. Where did the remnants of the army assemble? Who superseded Gates? 378. What befell Sumter? Who for a time was the sole defender of the American cause in Carolina? 379. Describe the financial difficulties of Congress. At last how much continental money was in circulation? For what did the bills originally pass? What caused them to become less valuable? To what extent did they depreciate? What means did the British take to injure the

country with counterfeit bills, which it was impossible to distinguish from those that were genuine. At last no one would take continental money on any terms; those who had it on hand were plunged in the greatest distress, and all business was paralyzed. In this desperate state of affairs, a few noble-hearted patriots stepped forward to the relief of their suffering country. Robert Morris, with the aid of some influential fellow-citizens, established a bank in Philadelphia, which was found so useful that Congress pledged the faith of the United States to sustain it, and in 1781 established the bank of North America on the same basis, intrusting Mr. Morris with its management.

380. The noble efforts of the women of our country must not be forgotten. Wishing to do all in their power for the holy cause, they organized societies and made up large quantities of clothing with their own hands for the suffering soldiers. Particularly was this done in Philadelphia, where Dr. Franklin's daughter and the wife of Gen. Joseph Reed took a prominent part in the movement. No less than \$7,500 worth of clothing was thus contributed; and many a needy and ragged soldier invoked a blessing on the tender-hearted women of the dear land for which he fought, when he was enabled, through their labors, to exchange his tattered garments for a warm and comfortable suit.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### ARNOLD'S TREACHERY.—BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

381. THE British attempted little in the north during 1780; and the condition of Washington's army prevented him from acting on the offensive. Notwithstanding the re-

---

credit of Congress? What was the result? Who came forward to the aid of Congress? How were the difficulties in question for a time relieved? 380. How did the women of America contribute to the relief of the soldiers? Where, in particular, was this done?

381. What is said of operations in the north during 1780? What hampered

lief afforded from time to time by public-spirited men, it was found difficult to provide food for the soldiers; and, as their terms expired, they withdrew from the service. When, therefore, a French fleet, which had been sent to the aid of America through the influence of La Fayette, arrived at Newport, on the 13th of July, Washington had neither the men nor the supplies necessary for coöperating with it. Before he was ready to take the field, the arrival of a strong British fleet at New York made the enemy once more masters of the sea, and kept the Americans and their allies from active operations.

382. Hardly had the hopes of Washington been thus disappointed, when a blow was struck at the cause of liberty in a quarter where it was least expected. Gen. Arnold, whose services at Quebec, Stillwater, and elsewhere, we have mentioned in high terms, had been placed in command at Philadelphia after its evacuation by the British, but had there been guilty of dishonesty and made himself generally offensive to the inhabitants. By order of Congress, he was tried before a court-martial, and, in compliance with its verdict, was reprimanded by Washington. This punishment, though well deserved, excited in Arnold's soul a fierce thirst for vengeance, and left him no rest till he had devised a plan for betraying his country to the enemy. Professing unaltered attachment to the cause he had defended with his blood, he solicited the command of West Point, at that time the most important post in the hands of the Americans. Having received the desired appointment in consideration of his previous services, he forthwith proposed to Gen. Clinton to betray the fortress into his hands. Clinton, who believed that the loss of this post would put an end to "the rebellion", gladly listened to the offer, and sent Major Andre to confer with the traitor on the conditions of the surrender.

Andre sailed up the Hudson on the Vulture, a British

---

Washington's movements? On the 13th of July, 1780, what arrived? Before Washington was ready to coöperate with the French, what took place? 382. What city had been intrusted to Arnold? What is said of his course at Philadelphia? How was he punished? To what did this excite him? Of what fortress did he obtain command? [See Map, p. 264.—How is West Point situated?] To whom



sloop-of-war, landed in the evening a few miles below West Point, and shortly after midnight was met by Arnold in a thicket near the shore. Here the details of their scheme were discussed in whispers; but morning dawned before they had finished, and they withdrew to a house within the American lines. In the course of the morning (September 22d), the terms were settled. Arnold was to receive £10,000 and the rank of brigadier-general in the British army. Clinton was to ascend the river and appear before West Point, which would be given up after a show of resistance. Plans of the work and a statement of its condition were given to Andre, who concealed them in his stockings. The bargain having been concluded, Arnold returned to his head-quarters at Beverly Robinson's house, after giving Andre a pass, with which in the evening he set out for New York city. Taking the east side of the river, he

BEVERLY ROBINSON'S HOUSE, ARNOLD'S HEAD-QUARTERS.

reached the neighborhood of Tarrytown in safety [see Map, p. 264]; but there, almost within sight of the British lines, he was stopped by three patriots, John Paulding, Isaac Van Wart, and David Williams. Supposing from what they said that they were royalists, Andre avowed himself a British officer; but, on discovering his mistake, he produced Arnold's pass, and begged that he might continue his journey. The suspicions of his captors were aroused, and, insisting on a search of his person, they discovered the important papers

---

did he make proposals for its surrender? Who was sent to confer with Arnold? Give an account of their interview. Where did they go when it became light? What conditions were agreed on? What were given to Andre? On the conclusion of the business, where did Arnold go? When did Andre start? Give an account of his capture. [See Map, p. 264.—In what direction is West Point from

already mentioned. Refusing to release him, even for ten thousand guineas, they bore him to the nearest American post. The officer there in command, not suspecting Arnold, sent Andre to his quarters with a letter explaining why he was detained; but, on consultation with others, the order was countermanded. Andre was taken to North Salem, whence he wrote to Washington, informing him of his name and rank, and the circumstances in which he was placed.

On the morning of Andre's arrest, Arnold expected Washington at his quarters; but, as the latter did not arrive, he sat down to breakfast with his family. While there, a letter was placed in his hands, announcing Andre's capture. Calling his wife up-stairs, he told her that they must part at once, perhaps forever, and bade her a hasty adieu. Mrs. Arnold, who was unacquainted with her husband's treacherous designs, dismayed at his words, fell fainting to the floor. Hastily kissing his infant boy, who lay asleep in the cradle, the traitor left the house by an unfrequented path, and escaped in his barge to the Vulture, which lay a few miles below. Here he not only refused to give the boatmen their fee, but even offered to surrender them as prisoners to the British. The captain of the Vulture, however, despising his meanness, paid the men and let them go.

Washington presently arrived at the Robinson house, and, not finding Arnold, crossed to West Point. Here he was equally unsuccessful. Returning to Robinson's, he soon had an explanation of Arnold's absence in the news of Andre's capture and the papers found on his person. Unfortunately, it was too late to arrest the traitor. A letter was shortly after received from him, soliciting protection for his wife. It found her frantic with despair at her husband's disgrace. She was treated kindly by the American officers, and allowed to rejoin the unworthy object of her affection.

---

Peekskill? What was the ground about Tarrytown, on which Andre was captured, called? Where was Andre taken at first? Where, finally? From North Salem, to whom did Andre write? State the circumstances under which Arnold learned the discovery of his plot. Describe his parting interview with his wife. How did he escape? How did he treat the boatmen to whom he owed his escape? Meanwhile, who arrived at the Robinson house? Where did he seek Arnold? What at length explained Arnold's absence? How did his wife feel? How was

383. Washington now fixed his head-quarters at Tappan, and Andre was conveyed thither under a strong escort. He was tried by a court of fourteen generals, among whom were La Fayette, Greene, Steuben, and Stirling. The prisoner conducted his

WASHINGTON'S QUARTERS AT TAPPAN.

own defence, and made a plain statement of the facts, denying that he was a spy, inasmuch as he had entered the American lines on the invitation of an American general. The court, however, after long deliberation, pronounced him a spy, and sentenced him to death. Andre was a brave, amiable, and accomplished man; and his sentence, though just, excited the sympathies of Americans as well as British. Clinton tried every means to effect his release. Washington proposed to exchange him for Arnold; but, gladly as the British general would have done this, he felt that he could not honorably break his faith even with a traitor, and reluctantly declined the offer. The sentence was carried into effect on the 2d of October. Andre showed no fear of death, but asked to be shot, instead of hanged. Even this last request Washington felt compelled to refuse. The remains of the unfortunate officer were buried near the place of execution, but were afterwards disinterred and taken to London, where they now rest in Westminster Abbey. The three honest

---

she treated? 383. Where did Washington now fix his head-quarters? Who was brought there? Give an account of Andre's trial and defence. What was the verdict? What was Andre's character? What efforts were made by Clinton? What did Washington propose? How was this proposal received by Clinton? When was the sentence carried out? What was Andre's last request? What

patriots who refused his bribes, were rewarded by Congress with a silver medal and a pension of \$200 a year.

384. Washington could not give up the hope of punishing Arnold for his perfidy, and with the aid of Major Lee laid a plan to capture him. A Virginian named John Champe undertook the dangerous enterprise, which was kept a profound secret. Champe left the American camp late at night. An alarm was given; but Lee, aware of the cause, managed to give the pretended deserter sufficient time to make good his escape to a British boat. He played his part so well that he was received without the least suspicion into Arnold's legion of loyalists and deserters. The traitor's quarters were in the lower part of Broadway, New York. Champe's plan was to seize him in the garden back of his house, gag him, and convey him in a boat across the river. He was prevented from executing it by Arnold's accidentally changing his quarters. Compelled to accompany his regiment to Virginia, he at last found an opportunity of rejoining his old companions, among whom the story of his risks awakened no little interest. Arnold received the promised reward, and wreaked his malice on America by devastating different parts of the country; but, on his arrival in England, he was treated with universal contempt. In his native country, his name was always mentioned with detestation. "I was born in America," said Arnold years afterwards to a French statesman, "I lived there to the prime of my life; but, alas! I can call no man in America my friend."

385. After his success at Camden, Cornwallis proceeded to overrun North Carolina. Advancing as far as Charlotte, he waited for Major Ferguson, who had been sent to the mountain-region to enroll the royalists, and overawe those that favored the patriot cause. Ferguson met with more resistance than he anticipated. At one place, a lady at whose house he stopped, after waiting on him and his officers at ta-

---

became of Andre's remains? How were his captors rewarded? 384. Who laid a plan to capture Arnold? By whom was the enterprise undertaken? Give an account of Champe's adventures. What is said of Arnold's subsequent history? What remark did he make to a French statesman? 385. What were Cornwallis's movements, after gaining the victory of Camden? Who was sent to the moun-

ble, stole from the room, mounted a wild young horse, rode to a neighboring encampment of Americans, and warned them that they were in danger of attack. She was absent so short a time that she escaped suspicion; and, when the British attempted to surprise the Americans shortly before daylight, they found the latter ready to receive them with loaded rifles. In the battle which ensued, the British were repulsed with great loss.

By this time the mountaineers were collecting in numbers, under Colonels Campbell and Shelby and other distinguished officers. Even the want of ammunition did not keep them from the field. They made their own powder, from nitre found in the mountain caverns and charcoal burned by the women on their own hearths. A thousand of these determined men gave chase to Ferguson's detachment, and overtook it at King's Mountain on the 7th of October. Encamped on the top, the British felt secure; but with such impetuous courage and deadly aim were they attacked, that their leader and many of his best officers fell, and the rest, finding themselves hemmed in on all sides, surrendered. Their total loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, amounted to over 1,100 men. The Americans had but 20 killed, though a large number were wounded. Ten tories, who had been active in robbing and murdering their countrymen, were hanged the following morning.

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

CAMPAIGN OF 1781.—THE COWPENS.—GUILFORD COURT  
HOUSE.—NINETY-SIX.—EUTAW SPRINGS.

386. THE commencement of the year 1781 found the affairs of America in a more hopeless condition than ever.

---

tain-region? For what purpose? Tell how a body of Americans was saved from surprise. Under what leaders did the mountaineers collect? How did they get powder? Where did they overtake Ferguson's detachment? When? [See Map, p. 286.—Where is King's Mountain?] Give an account of the engagement. What was the loss on each side? What was done to ten of the captured tories?

Congress had resolved to have an efficient army in the field by the 1st of January. But men would not enlist when the sufferings of those already in the service were known throughout the land; and it was even feared that the few already enrolled, would have to be disbanded for want of food. On the night of January 1st, 1781, the Pennsylvania regiments broke out into open mutiny, declaring that they would march to Philadelphia, and compel Congress to redress their wrongs. Gen. Wayne, who was a great favorite with his men, tried to no purpose to restrain them. They presented their bayonets to his breast, and 1,300 strong commenced their march to Philadelphia. Washington was at New Windsor; and, not feeling sure of the disposition of the other troops, he thought it best to let Congress settle the difficulty. A committee of that body met the disaffected men, and succeeded in satisfying them. While still insisting on their rights, they were as stanch patriots as ever; not only had they no idea of joining the royal army, but they even handed over to Gen. Wayne, as spies, several emissaries, who had come to seduce them into the British service.

The example of the Pennsylvanians was soon followed by the New Jersey brigade; and Washington found it necessary to put down the mutiny by force, and execute its leaders on the spot. These demonstrations showed Congress the necessity of more earnest efforts for obtaining funds and properly supporting the army. As the resources of America seemed to be exhausted, an agent was sent to France for the purpose of obtaining a loan. In February, 1781, Robert Morris was appointed superintendent of finance. By using his private credit for the government, he restored confidence in the honesty of Congress and its ability to pay its debts. The Bank of North America was established by his recom-

---

386. Describe the state of affairs in America at the commencement of 1781. What apprehensions were entertained? What took place, January 1st, 1781? What passed between the insurgents and Gen. Wayne? Where was Washington? What did he deem it best to do? How did Congress settle the difficulty? What did the mutineers do to the British emissaries? By whom was this example of mutiny followed? What course was pursued by Washington? What was the consequence of these demonstrations? Where was it attempted to obtain a loan? What office was conferred on Robert Morris? State the measures taken

mendation and placed under his direction. Securing all the gold that he could obtain in the United States, he redeemed the bills of the bank as they were presented, and then privately sending round agents, again got possession of the gold, and was ready to redeem more. It was out of his power to make good the \$200,000,000 of continental money already issued; but the engagements entered into from this time were promptly met, and the army was kept from disbanding.

387. Congress, in 1777, had agreed upon certain "Articles of Confederation", to serve as a basis of union for the states. Several years elapsed before these articles were ratified by all the members of the confederacy. Maryland was the last to accept them, March 1st, 1781.

388. On his appointment to the command of the southern department, General Greene reorganized the army, and stationed detachments at various exposed points. A division of 1,000 men under Gen. Morgan, one of the heroes of Stillwater, was posted at the junction of the Broad and Paco-let' Rivers [see Map, p. 286]. Tarleton, with a superior force, was despatched against them. The Americans fell back to a favorable position at the Cowpens; and there, on the 17th of January, 1781, an obstinate engagement took place. Tarleton's men charged with that fierce impetuosity, which in former battles had at once insured victory by throwing the American militia into confusion; but on this occasion they were received with a firmness they had not expected, and the deadly aim of men used to the rifle. This brave resistance made the British veterans waver, and a vigorous charge of Col. Washington's cavalry, supported by the infantry under Col. Howard, decided the fortune of the day in favor of the patriots. The Americans lost about 70 men, of whom but 12 were killed. The British loss amounted to 100 killed and 533 captured. Valuable spoils, including 35 baggage-

---

by Mr. Morris to sustain the credit of Congress. 387. What is said of the "Articles of Confederation"? 388. What was Gen. Greene's first care on assuming command? Where was Morgan posted? [See Map, p. 286.—Describe the Broad River. The Pacolet. Where were the Cowpens situated?] Who was sent against Morgan's detachment? Where did Morgan and Tarleton meet? Give an account

wagons and 100 dragoon horses, fell into the hands of the victors.

Tarleton, who had been wounded by Col. Washington in a personal encounter during the battle, could not forgive his antagonist. Some time afterwards he remarked in company that he had heard Col. Washington was so ignorant he could not write his own name. "Ah! colonel," replied a whig lady who was present, "you should know better; for you bear evidence that he *can make his mark*."

389. Cornwallis was much chagrined at Tarleton's defeat. Destroying his heavy baggage, he set out with all speed in pursuit of Morgan, who, after the victory at the Cowpens, had made for Virginia. By rapid marches the Americans reached the Catawba, and crossed it just two hours before the British army arrived at the bank. As the day was nearly spent, Cornwallis concluded to wait till morning; but during the night a heavy rain set in, and the river was so swollen that for three days it was impassable. At the expiration of that time, the pursuit was resumed.

Meanwhile Gen. Greene, who had hastened to Morgan's aid, assumed command of the retreating army. While Cornwallis was crossing the Catawba, the American general entered the town of Salisbury [*sawlz'-ber-re*], drenched with rain and overcome with fatigue. The hostess of the inn at which he put up, hearing him say that he was "hungry, alone, and penniless," after preparing his dinner, brought him all the money she had, and bade him take it, at the same time assuring him that the people were still devoted to the cause of liberty.

390. Encouraged and refreshed, Gen. Greene continued the retreat with all possible haste. That same evening he reached the Yad'-kin, a few miles north of Salisbury, and Cornwallis passed the night at the latter place. Before dawn, the whole American army had crossed the river. Hardly were they safe on the other side, when another heavy

---

of the battle of the Cowpens. What anecdote is told of Tarleton? 389. Where did Morgan go after his victory at the Cowpens? What did Cornwallis immediately do? Give an account of the crossing of the Catawba. Who now assumed the command of the American army? What story is told of the landlady at Salis-



rain commenced; and, by the time the British came up, they found a swelling flood which it was impossible to cross. Cornwallis marched up the west side of the river to Huntsville, effected the passage at that place, and pressed on to intercept the weary Americans before they should reach the fords of the Dan.

On the 7th of February, Greene and his men reached Guilford Court House, 150 miles from the Cowpens. A short rest was here allowed them, and a junction was effected with the remainder of the army. Still they were too weak to face the enemy, and the retreat was continued. Cornwallis, who had crossed higher up, moved by forced marches in a parallel direction, and both armies advanced at the rate of 30 miles a day. Greene reached the ford first, and on the 14th the

---

bury? 390. What was the position of Greene and Cornwallis on the ensuing night? [See Map.—Describe the Yadkin. What is its name in South Carolina? How is Salisbury situated?] What detained Cornwallis here? What river was next to be reached? Give an account of the march of the hostile armies. Who

whole army got over in safety. Cornwallis here gave up the pursuit, and retired to Hillsborough. Both Morgan and Greene displayed great ability in conducting this memorable retreat. The men bore their hardships with the most praiseworthy fortitude. Their clothing was wretched; their shoes were completely worn out. During most of the march they had eaten but one meal a day, and had slept in the open air, there being no time to pitch their tents.

391. As soon as his army had recovered from its fatigue, Greene again took the field, with the view of harassing the enemy. He avoided a general action by constantly changing his position, but sent out detachments which encountered the enemy with success. On one occasion, a band of tories mistook Col. Lee's troop for a company of their own men, and were cut down by the Americans, while exclaiming, "God save the king!" For three weeks this kind of war was continued, and so scarce were provisions that the American general was often obliged to ask his soldiers for a piece of bread.

On the 15th of March, Greene determined to hazard an engagement. His army had been increased by reënforcements to 4,400 men, more than half of whom were militia, and at Guilford Court House [see Map, p. 286] he offered battle to the enemy. Hardly had the action commenced, when the American militia, seized with a panic, gave way. The regulars allowed the retreating militia to pass through their ranks, and maintained the conflict for an hour and a half. The superior discipline of the British, however, finally prevailed. Gen. Greene, seeing his men forced back, and apprehending a failure of ammunition, drew off his army in good order, but was obliged to leave his artillery in the hands of the enemy. By the latter this victory was dearly bought. They had lost 600 men and many valuable officers. Four hundred and nineteen Americans were killed and

---

reached the ford first? Where did Cornwallis then proceed? What is said of this famous retreat? 391. What was Greene's next movement? What policy did he pursue? What mistake was made by a band of tories? What is said of the scarcity of provisions? Where did Greene make a stand on the 15th of March? With how many men? Give an account of the battle of Guilford Court House. [See Map, p. 286.—Where is Guilford Court House?] State the loss on each side.

wounded, and many of the militia embraced the opportunity to desert. A dark, rainy night succeeded this day of slaughter. The dead and wounded were left on the field, and many perished for want of shelter.

392. Though a victor, Cornwallis deemed it prudent to retreat; and Greene, who had retired a short distance, was soon on his track. The British reached Wilmington early in April. Greene passed on with the view of recovering South Carolina. Cornwallis left the defence of that state to Lord Rawdon's division, which was already there, and towards the close of April set out with his army for Virginia. We must go back a few months, to note what was there transpiring.

393. On the 4th of January, Arnold, who had sailed from New York with instructions to devastate southern Virginia, landed near Richmond with 1,600 men and destroyed a quantity of stores. Burning with hate against the patriots whom he had tried to betray, he sent out detachments in different directions, whose course was marked with blood and flames. With malignant pleasure he set fire to private as well as public property, and laid waste many a happy home and thriving plantation.

To stop these outrages, La Fayette was sent to Virginia with 1,200 men, and the French fleet was despatched from Rhode Island to prevent Arnold's escape by sea. A British squadron started in pursuit of the French; and an engagement took place off Cape Henlopen, which rendered it necessary for the latter to return. Clinton then sent a reënforcement of 2,000 men to the aid of Arnold, and the work of devastation was carried on more vigorously than ever. La Fayette exerted himself to the utmost to protect the country, but his force was inadequate to the purpose. His men were chiefly from the north; and fears of the climate and the superior numbers of the enemy, led many to desert. La Fay-

---

What proved fatal to many of the wounded? 392. After this victory, where did the British retire? [See Map.—Where is Wilmington?] Describe Greene's next movements. What did Cornwallis do? 393. Give an account of Arnold's proceedings in Virginia. What measures were taken to stop these ravages? How were the French prevented from coöperating? How was Arnold reënforced?

ette set forth the baseness of such conduct to his soldiers, and told them that, if those who wished to abandon their comrades would make known their desire, he would give them a permit to leave. Not a man accepted the offer, nor were there any more deserters. General enthusiasm prevailed; a sergeant who was unable to walk even hired a place in a cart that he might keep up with the army. The generous Frenchman rewarded the devotion of his followers by supplying them with shoes, linen, and other necessities, at his own expense.

394. On his arrival from North Carolina, Cornwallis took command of the army in Virginia, and continued to ravage the country. The tobacco warehouses and shipping of Petersburg were destroyed. Wherever there was a fine plantation, the British made a descent, and the royal cavalry obtained a new supply of horses at the expense of the whig farmers. Tarleton captured several members of the Legislature at Charlottesville, and burned part of the stores there collected, the rest having been saved by Jefferson. After spending most of the summer in these operations, and destroying property to the value of \$10,000,000, Cornwallis collected his forces, and retired to Yorktown, which he proceeded to fortify.

395. We left Gen. Greene in April, 1781, on the march for South Carolina. Lord Rawdon, the British commander, lay at Camden; and thither Greene marched with his main body. He encamped at Hobkirk's Hill, a mile from the enemy's lines. On the 25th of April, a British prisoner escaped and bore such information to Lord Rawdon as induced him to make an immediate attack on the Americans. For a time the latter had the advantage; but at the moment of victory a band of regulars gave way. Greene was forced to retreat, but lost in the action only 18 killed, to 38 on the part of the British.

---

Under what difficulties did La Fayette labor? How did he put a stop to desertions? Give an instance of the subsequent enthusiasm of his troops. How did La Fayette reward them? 394. Give an account of Cornwallis's and Tarleton's operations in Virginia. Whither did Cornwallis finally retire? 395. On entering South Carolina, to what place did Greene proceed? Where did he encamp? What

396. Marion and Lee, meantime, were enjoying a series of triumphs on the Congaree. Among the points which they attacked was Fort Motte, the residence of a whig lady, which the enemy had taken and fortified. The garrison refused to surrender; and, as Rawdon had destroyed his works at Camden and was on his way down the river, there was no time for a siege. Mrs. Motte insisted that the assailants should fire her house to dislodge the enemy. She produced a large bow, and burning arrows soon set the shingled roof in flames. The occupants tried to put out the fire; but, as often as they appeared, Marion's riflemen drove them back. At length, to save their lives, they surrendered. The flames were extinguished; and Mrs. Motte, restored to her home, sumptuously entertained the officers of both armies.

397. One after another, the posts of the British were taken, and at last only Ninety-Six, Augusta, and Charleston remained in their possession. The first of these was strongly fortified, and garrisoned by 550 tories, under Col. Cru'ger. On the 22d of May, Gen. Greene appeared before it, and with the aid of Kosciusko commenced a regular siege. The tories made a gallant resistance, in the hope of relief; and, though Greene pushed the work with unremitting energy, the approach of the British commander compelled him to raise the siege, after an unsuccessful assault. At Augusta the Americans were more successful; the garrison at that place capitulated, on the 5th of June, to Col. Pickens.

Soon after leaving Ninety-Six, it became important for Greene to communicate with Sumter; but, as the surrounding country was filled with British and tories, no one offered to undertake the dangerous mission. In this emergency, a girl of eighteen years, named Emily Geiger [*gi'-ger*], volunteered to make the attempt, and received from Greene a letter and verbal message which he wished conveyed. Mounting a

---

led Rawdon to attack him? Give an account of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill. 396. Describe the movements of Marion and Lee. Give an account of the siege of Fort Motte. [See Map, p. 286.—Where was Fort Motte?] 397. What became of the minor posts of the British? At last what places alone were left them? [See Map, p. 286.—How is Augusta situated? How, Ninety-Six?] Give an account of the siege of Ninety-Six. How was Greene compelled to raise it? Who attacked Augusta? With what success? Tell the story of Emily Geiger. Whither

swift horse, Emily performed part of the distance in safety, but was finally stopped by two tories, who suspected that she might be engaged on some secret service. Left alone for a moment, the heroic girl embraced the opportunity to swallow Gen. Greene's letter; and, nothing suspicious being

#### EMILY GEIGER AND THE TORIES.

found upon her, she was allowed to proceed. Sumter's camp was reached. The message was delivered, and with such effect that Greene's army was soon strong enough to assume the offensive. Rawdon was obliged to retreat, and Greene sought amid the hills on the Santee to restore the health and energies of his men.

398. Gen. Greene next moved towards Charleston, and various brilliant achievements were performed in the vicinity of that city by Sumter, Marion, Lee, Horry, Taylor, Hampton, and James. Several detachments of the enemy were defeated and dispersed, and some vessels laden with valuable stores were burned. Alarmed for the safety of the city,

---

did Rawdon retreat? 398. To what place did Greene next turn his attention? What leaders performed brilliant achievements in the vicinity? To what measures did Lord Rawdon resort? Under what circumstances had Col. Hayne prom-

Rawdon called upon those who had taken an oath of allegiance to the king, to come forward for its defence. Among these was Col. Isaac Hayne, who, on the capture of the city by the British, to obtain his liberty and a last interview with his dying wife, had promised to support the royal government, on the assurance that he would not have to take up arms in its behalf. After receiving the last sigh of his wife, and following one of his children to the grave, Col. Hayne had remained at home, taking no part in the conflict, till he received Lord Rawdon's summons to repair to his standard. As by this act the British violated their agreement, Colonel Hayne felt that he was absolved from his part of the contract. Collecting a troop of horse, he ranged the country; but, after gaining some advantages, was defeated and captured. He was sentenced to death. In vain his fellow-citizens, in vain the ladies of Charleston, in vain the sister of the prisoner and his orphan children, implored Lord Rawdon's mercy. On the 4th of August, Col. Hayne was hanged like a common criminal.

399. At this juncture Lord Rawdon returned to England, leaving Col. Stuart in command of the British army in South Carolina. Stuart took a position at Eutaw Springs; and Greene, whose army had been increased by reënforcements to 2,600 men, attacked him at that place. The battle was fought on both sides with desperate courage. At last the British ranks were broken. As they gave way, Col. Campbell, who had contributed much to the success of the Americans, fell mortally wounded; his last words were, "I die contented." Col. Washington received a bayonet wound, and was taken, while half his troop of cavalry fell on the field. Still the rout of the British was general, and the Americans, thinking the battle was over, seized upon the captured stores. While they were thus scattered and off

---

ised to support the royal government? Give an account of his subsequent history. 399. What did Lord Rawdon do, at this juncture? On whom did the command of the British devolve? Where did Stuart take a position? [See Map, p. 286.—Where were Eutaw Springs?] What took place at Eutaw Springs? Which party gave way? Give an account of Col. Campbell's fall. What befell Col. Washington and his troop? How were the Americans nearly surprised? What

their guard, the enemy rallied and returned to renew the engagement. The vigilance of Greene saved his men from a surprise, and with some loss he drew them off. Though the British remained masters of the field, the Americans had the decided advantage in this battle. The former lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, not far from 700 men; the American loss was 555. The next day, Stuart destroyed his stores, and retreated towards Charleston, leaving 1,000 stands of arms behind him.

This battle closed the long contest in the Carolinas. The patriot cause was once more triumphant. Congress voted the highest honors to General Greene and his officers, who throughout the whole campaign had conducted themselves with distinguished ability and valor.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

### SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

400. ON the last day of August, 1781, a French fleet under De Grasse [*dū gras*] arrived in Chesapeake Bay; and it was agreed between the French and the American commander to attack Cornwallis, now strongly intrenched at Yorktown. Washington, who had been threatening New York, carefully concealed this new design, and, withdrawing his army from the Hudson, marched rapidly towards Virginia. Clinton did not become aware of his movements till it was too late to prevent them; but he tried to recall Washington by sending Arnold to devastate Connecticut. Used to this business, and glad to have an opportunity of glutting his malice, Arnold landed on the Thames [see Map, p. 91], took the posts on the west side of the river, and sent Col. Eyre [*āre*] against Fort Griswold on the other side. Col.

---

was the final result? State the loss on each side. What was Stuart's next movement? What is said of this battle? What honors were rendered to Gen. Greene?

400. What took place, August 31st, 1781? On whom was an attack concerted? What did Washington do with his army? How did Clinton try to divert him from his purpose? Give an account of Arnold's expedition. Of the massacre at



Ledyard made an heroic defence, but had at last to surrender. Eyre, wounded in the attack, was succeeded by Major Bromfield. "Who commands this fort?" asked Bromfield, as he entered. "I did, but you do now," answered Ledyard, presenting his sword. Seizing the weapon, Bromfield plunged it into the bosom of his prisoner. The example was followed by his men, till a great part of the garrison was killed or wounded. After burning New London, and committing various other outrages, Arnold returned to New York.

Washington was not diverted from his purpose, but, leading on his army with all possible despatch, joined La Fayette's division, and the French troops, which had already disembarked before Yorktown. The command of the latter was assumed by the Count de Rochambeau [*dū ro-shong-bō'*]. On the 28th of September, the allied armies took their respective positions. They were not long in opening their

---

Fort Griswold. With whom did Washington's army effect a junction? Who took command of the French? [See Map—On what river were Cornwallis's works? What part of the American line did La Fayette command? What American generals between him and Washington? What French general was stationed

batteries. Four British vessels were set on fire in the harbor by a fierce discharge of red-hot balls. Two redoubts of the enemy, so situated as to harass the besiegers, were stormed and carried, one by the Americans, the other by the French, with a steady courage which assured Washington of success. The best feelings prevailed between the allied armies. The American soldiers cheerfully sacrificed their own comfort to increase that of their comrades, sleeping without complaint in the open air that their allies might be provided with tents.

401. Breaches were soon made in the British works. A desperate sally, at first successful, proved of no ultimate advantage; and, as the batteries of the besiegers were brought nearer and nearer, all hope gradually disappeared. Cornwallis could see but one chance of escape, and, slender as it was, he resolved to try it. On the opposite bank of the York River was Gloucester [*glos'-ter*] Point [see Map, p. 294], where 2,000 Frenchmen lay intrenched. The plan of the British commander was to destroy his baggage, to abandon his sick and wounded, to transport his efficient men in the silence of night across the river, to force a passage through the French lines, to mount as many of his men as possible, and make his way by rapid marches to Clinton.

The night of October 16th was selected for this desperate attempt. The first detachment landed on the Gloucester shore in safety; but a storm set in with such fury that the boats bearing the second division were driven down the river. The wind and rain continued till daylight, and it was found impossible to get the remainder of the army across. Those who had landed, after being exposed to the storm for hours, were brought back in the morning, and all expectation of escape was thenceforth abandoned.

402. Perceiving that further resistance was useless, and

---

near Washington?] What injury was inflicted on the British shipping? What assured Washington of success? What evidence is mentioned of the good feelings of the Americans towards their allies? 401. What was the effect of the fire of the besiegers? What desperate plan was formed by Cornwallis? Give an account of the attempt. 402. To what was Cornwallis at length forced? Where were the terms of capitulation settled? When did the surrender take place?

disappointed in the hope of succor from Clinton, Cornwallis on the 17th solicited a cessation of hostilities, with the view of surrendering. The terms of the capitulation were settled at the house of a Mr. Moore, near Yorktown; and on the 19th of October, the land force, artillery, and stores were surrendered to Washington; the ships and seamen, to De Grasse. The whole number of prisoners was 7,015. During the siege, the British had lost 552 men; the allies about 300. Eleven thousand Americans and 5,000 Frenchmen took part in the siege.

MOORE'S HOUSE NEAR YORKTOWN.

The scene of the surrender was imposing. Thousands of patriots assembled from the surrounding country to witness the humiliation of that ruthless army and its detested commander. The British came forth gayly dressed, but without flying colors, since that honor had been denied the American army on its surrender at Charleston. Cornwallis would not appear, but sent his sword by Gen. O'Hara. Lincoln was selected by Washington to receive this token of submission, as a solace for the mortification he had experienced in surrendering Charleston the preceding year. Twenty-eight standards were presented to American sergeants by as many British captains. The soldiers then laid down their arms, and returned to their quarters, whence they were subsequently taken to Pennsylvania.

---

[See Map.—Where?] Mention what the Americans gained by this surrender. What loss was sustained on each side during the siege? How many Americans and French took part in the siege? Describe the surrender. Where were the British prisoners eventually taken? How were the officers treated? What story

Notwithstanding the excesses of which Cornwallis and many of his officers had been guilty, they were treated with great consideration by their conquerors. The British leader, however, could not forget his humiliation. On one occasion, when he was standing before Washington with his hat off, the latter remarked, "My lord, you had better be covered from the cold." "It matters not, sir," replied Cornwallis, raising his hand to his brow, "it matters not what becomes of this head now."

403. On the very day of the surrender, Clinton set out from New York for the relief of Cornwallis, with 25 ships-of-the-line and 7,000 of his best men. Off the coast of Virginia, he learned to his dismay that he was too late, and he could only retrace his course.

404. News of the success at Yorktown rapidly spread through the country. One of Washington's aides bore the glad tidings to Philadelphia. Arriving at night, he proceeded at once to the house of the president of Congress, and knocked so loudly that a watchman was on the point of arresting him for disturbing the peace. He was forgiven, however, on announcing his joyful news. The bell of the old state-house soon pealed forth in exulting tones. Some were speechless with delight, while others wept; and the aged door-keeper of Congress died from excessive joy. Congress voted the highest honors to all who had aided in gaining this important victory. Washington celebrated the occasion by releasing those who were under military arrest. Religious services were performed in the several brigades, and the troops were invited to unite in returning thanks to that Divine Power who had crowned their labors and sufferings with success.

---

is told of Cornwallis? 403. Give an account of Clinton's unsuccessful attempt to relieve Cornwallis. 404. How was the news of the surrender conveyed to Philadelphia? How was it received? To whom were the thanks of Congress rendered? How did Washington celebrate the occasion?

## CHAPTER XX.

## END OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

405. SHORTLY after the surrender of Cornwallis, Washington, accompanied by a number of officers, paid a visit to his mother at Fredericksburg, Va. For six years she had not seen him, and now he returned loaded with honors. A ball was given by the citizens in honor of their visitors, which the venerable lady attended. As she entered the room,

WASHINGTON.

leaning on the arm of her illustrious son, her dignity of mien deeply impressed all who were present; and La Fayette, on the termination of the war, would not leave the country without bidding a last adieu to the mother of Washington.

406. The days of trouble were not yet over. Notwithstanding their losses in America, the British ministry showed no disposition to give up the war; and it was indispensable for Congress, if it would maintain the advantages already gained, to raise and support an army. How could this be done with an empty treasury? It was only by unceasing exertions that Mr. Morris had thus far maintained the credit of the nation and met the expenses of the last southern campaigns. To eke out his scanty means, he had employed an

---

405. Describe Washington's visit to his mother. 406. By what difficulties was Congress beset? By whose exertions had the credit of Congress been sustained?

agent to accompany Greene's army, without the general's knowledge. Aware of the sufferings of the soldiers from want of food and clothing, he knew that Greene would at once spend in their behalf whatever was placed in his hands, without retaining aught for future emergencies. He directed his agent, therefore, to relieve Greene only in small amounts and when his difficulties seemed insurmountable. Several times was the army thus saved from dissolution, the mysterious agent disappearing as soon as he had placed the money on the table. At the commencement of 1782, not a dollar remained in the treasury. The states were called upon by Congress to contribute \$2,000,000, but made no response. Mr. Morris had exhausted all the means at his command, and was so discouraged that he was tempted to resign his office.

407. Lord North, George Third's prime minister, received the news of Cornwallis's surrender "as he would have received a cannon-ball in his breast"; yet both he and the king obstinately determined to continue the war. The English people, however, heavily taxed for its support, felt differently. Burke, Fox, and other Parliamentary leaders, vehemently opposed any further efforts to reduce America; and early in March, 1782, the House of Commons passed strong resolutions against the war. Lord North resigned, and a ministry favorable to peace succeeded. Sir Guy Carleton was sent to take command of the British forces. He reached New York in May, and made propositions to the American authorities; but Washington, finding that he would not recognize the independence of the United States and was prepared to treat with them only as revolted colonies, warned the people against listening to his offers. Not till Grenville was sent to Paris with full powers to treat with France and America, was any well-grounded hope of peace entertained.

---

Tell the story about Robert Morris's secret agent. What was the condition of the treasury at the commencement of 1782? What response did the states make to the demands of Congress? What was Mr. Morris tempted to do? 407. How did Lord North receive the news of Cornwallis's surrender? How did he and the king feel? How, the people? What resolutions were passed in March, 1782? What followed? Who was sent over to command the British army? What propositions did he make? How were they met by Washington? When, at length,

408. As soon as the people of the United States thought that the war was likely to end, they began to relax their exertions and to demand of Congress the pay justly due them for past services. While Washington did all he could to soothe their discontent, he urged upon Congress the necessity of meeting their engagements to those who had served them faithfully in the hour of need. The British, to be sure, had ceased offensive operations; but they might resume them at any moment, and with an army on the point of mutiny there could be little hope of successful resistance. The discontent rose to its greatest height in the spring of 1782, in the camp at Newburg. Nothing but their love of Washington restrained the army from asserting their rights by violence; and never did Washington display more judgment than in dealing with the disaffected at this critical period.

In May, 1782, Washington received from Col. Nic'-o-la, through whom the discontented troops generally made their complaints, a letter setting forth the belief of the army that Congress was neither willing nor able to redress their wrongs, and expressing a desire to place their beloved chief, as *king*, at the head of the nation. This offer filled Washington with grief and alarm. He rejected it without hesitation; solemnly declaring that the reestablishment of royalty would be fatal to those liberties which were more precious than life.

Winter found the American army still unemployed at Newburg and New Windsor. In February, 1783, they again sent a petition to Congress, which had as yet done nothing for their relief. An indefinite answer was returned. Goaded by poverty, the officers, who were almost as great sufferers as their men, authorized one of their number to prepare an address, advising bolder measures and calling an assembly of the soldiers to decide upon the proper course of action. Before the appointed day, Washington convened his officers.

---

was a well-grounded hope of peace entertained? 408. When it seemed likely that the war would terminate, what demands were made of Congress? What advice did Washington give Congress? Describe the disaffection in the camp at Newburg. What took place in May, 1782? Where did the army spend the winter of 1782-3? What dangerous measure was resorted to by some of the officers? How

In vivid colors he depicted the impropriety and danger of the steps they proposed, and called upon them to forbear from involving him, themselves, and their country, in one common ruin. The sympathizing leader who had shared all their hardships, spoke with deep feeling and was listened to in silence. At the close of his remarks he retired; and the assembled officers, after a short consultation, decided to follow his advice.

409. Meanwhile, the negotiations for peace were progressing at Paris. John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens, acted in behalf of the United States. They obtained from Great Britain an acknowledgment of the independence of their country, and articles of peace were signed on the 20th of January, 1783. Intelligence of the fact was received by Congress in March, and was hailed with rejoicings. The sufferings of self-denying patriots during eight years of hardship were thus at last rewarded with that priceless freedom for which they had sighed, struggled, and bled.

410. Washington still labored to relieve the immediate necessities of the troops, and discharged all who could find the means of returning home. Many thus left without tumult, although their claims were unsettled and they had not a penny in their pockets. Only one company, formed of recent levies from Pennsylvania, created any serious difficulty. Entering Philadelphia, they marched to the state-house, and threatened summary vengeance if they were not immediately paid. After a few hours they retired, and Washington prevented a repetition of the violence by promptly sending a detachment to disperse the mutineers and arrest their ring-leaders. Notwithstanding this warning, Congress left Mr. Morris almost entirely to his own resources. Four months' pay for the army was all that his utmost exertions could raise.

411. In August, 1783, Sir Guy Carleton received orders to evacuate New York. The loyalists, fearing to stay after the

---

did Washington avert the danger? 409. Meanwhile, what was going on at Paris? Who acted for the United States? What did they obtain from Great Britain? When were articles of peace signed? How was the news received? 410. Give an account of the disbanding of the troops. What was done by one company? How much pay was raised for the army? 411. What orders were received by



departure of the army, removed as rapidly as possible to Nova Scotia and elsewhere; and, the preliminary arrangements having been made, the 25th of November (still celebrated in New York as "evacuation day") was fixed on for the final withdrawal of the troops. The British had been in possession of the city for seven years; and during that time had made it the principal receptacle for the unfortunate Americans who fell into their hands. The prison-ships were moored chiefly in

Wallabout [*wol'-la-*  
*bout*] Bay. On one

of these, the Jersey, a thousand men were sometimes confined. Their food consisted of mouldy bread, spoiled meat, and other unwholesome

#### THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.

and refuse articles. Such a diet, added to foul air and want of exercise, brought on a variety of diseases which swept them off by hundreds. Every morning the command was heard, "Rebels, bring out your dead." The bodies of the deceased were carried ashore and buried near the bay, in graves so shallow that they were often washed bare by the waves. Twenty-five years after the close of the war, some patriotic citizens proposed to gather up the remains of the prison-ship martyrs, and have them suitably interred. The bones of 11,000 men were collected, and followed by a large procession to a vault prepared for their reception near the Brooklyn Navy Yard.

On the 25th of November, the British troops left New York; and, as they departed, the American army, with Gen. Washington and his aides, Governor Clinton, and many former citizens of the place, entered from the north. The Brit-

---

Carleton, in August, 1783? What was done by the loyalists? On what day was New York evacuated? How long had the British held the city? For what had they used it? How were those on board the prison-ships treated? Where were they buried? What was afterwards done with their remains? Give an account

ish flag had been left flying by the retreating army. It was nailed to the flag-staff of Fort George, and, that it might not be taken down, the steps leading to it had been removed. A boy, however, was soon seen ascending the staff. Nailing on cleat after cleat as he went up, he reached the top, and, amid the roaring of artillery and the cheers of a delighted people, the ensign of Britain gave place to the stars and stripes of the young republic.

412. On the 4th of December, Washington took leave of his officers, who assembled at his quarters to hear his parting words. It was an affecting scene. All that they had done and suffered together, all that they had hoped and feared, rushed before their minds. "With a heart full of love and gratitude," said Washington, "I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be prosperous and happy, as your former ones have been glorious and honorable. I can not come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged if each of you will come and take me by the hand." Gen. Knox stood nearest, and turned to grasp the hand of his commander. Their emotions were too deep for utterance; not a word was spoken. The rest followed, with full hearts and moistened cheeks. This trying scene over, Washington crossed to the Jersey shore, and thence proceeded to Annapolis, where Congress was in session.

413. At Philadelphia Washington stopped long enough to submit to the comptroller an account of his expenses during the war. They amounted to £11,311, every item being distinctly entered by his own hand. On the 19th of December (1783) he reached Annapolis, and four days afterwards, before a full meeting of Congress and in the presence of numerous spectators, he surrendered his commission. An address full of patriotic sentiments was delivered by Washington, to which Gen. Mifflin, then president of Congress, replied in a touching and affectionate manner, offering the

---

of the evacuation of New York and the raising of the American flag. 412. What was done by Washington, December 4th? Describe the parting scene between Washington and his officers. Where did Washington then proceed? 413. What did Washington do at Philadelphia? How large a bill did he present? Where was Congress in session? When did Washington reach Annapolis? Describe what took place on his surrender of his commission to Congress.

commander-in-chief the homage of a grateful nation, and invoking on his head the blessing of the Almighty. It was a spectacle seldom witnessed—an adored chief, with royalty within his reach, voluntarily resigning his power and returning to private life.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

### FORMATION OF A FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

414. THE independence of the United States was now acknowledged by Great Britain, France, Russia, Sweden, Spain, and Denmark; but it was still questionable whether it could be maintained, amid the formidable difficulties with which Congress was beset. The war had cost \$135,000,000, and debts were still outstanding, to foreign governments and unpaid soldiers and officers, to the amount of \$40,000,000, on which Congress was not even able to meet the interest. The states refused to act in concert, and no revenue could be collected without their coöperation. Unsupported, baffled, and even censured, Mr. Morris resigned the office of superintendent of finance, but was induced to continue in the discharge of its duties till November 1st, 1784, when a board of three commissioners was appointed to succeed him. Seldom has an abler financier appeared for the relief of a distressed country. Under his management, the expenses of the war were reduced from eighteen to four millions of dollars a year.

415. During the war, most of the states had remodelled their constitutions. Their forms of government were now strictly republican, and bore a general resemblance to each other. The privilege of voting was extended to every citizen, except, in several states, such as were not possessed of a

---

414. What countries had now acknowledged the independence of the United States? What difficulties environed Congress? What was done by Robert Morris? By whom was he succeeded? What is said of Mr. Morris? 415. During the war, what had been done by most of the states? What is said of their forms of government? Mention some of their provisions. What feelings began to

certain amount of property. The common law of England prevailed, except when modified by special enactments. As a general thing, religious liberty was allowed. The affairs of each state were regulated by a governor and two houses of delegates, chosen by the people. The different members of the confederacy were thus entirely independent of each other, and, now that the war was over, jealousies began unfortunately to arise between them. A want of union at home prevented the nation from being respected abroad. It was obvious that the power of Congress was but nominal.

416. Hardly had the war terminated when complaints were made in England that debts due from American citizens could not be collected. Congress, having no power to enforce their payment, could only refer the claimants to the individual states. The latter alleged that the British armies had carried off many slaves from the American people, and that not until these were restored could the debts in question be justly claimed. There were also other causes of difficulty, which threatened to lead to a renewal of the war. The whole western frontier suffered much from the incursions of Indians, instigated, it was believed, by the British, and furnished with arms and ammunition at the posts still remaining in their hands in the west.

In 1785, John Adams was appointed minister plenipotentiary to the court of Great Britain (or St. James, as it is called), and was there introduced to the king whom he had so long and successfully opposed. George III. received him kindly, and assured him that though he had been the last to agree to the separation of the United States, he would be among the first to meet their friendship as an independent power. Mr. Adams labored hard at London to obtain a fair commercial treaty for his country, but without success. The heavy duty laid by Great Britain on the productions of

---

arise between the several states? What was the effect abroad of this want of union? 416. Soon after the conclusion of peace, what complaints were made by England? How were these claims met by Congress? How, by the individual states? What other cause of difficulty was there? Who was appointed minister to the court of St. James? How was Adams received by the king? What did he try to obtain? With what success? What kept the productions of America out

America kept them comparatively out of market, to the great injury of its merchants and farmers.

417. Various causes combined to render the condition of the Americans distressing in the extreme. They had hoped for an immediate immigration from Europe, and a proportionate increase in the value of their lands; but in this they were disappointed. All kinds of business were in a state of depression, and the energies as well as the resources of the country seemed exhausted. In the midst of these embarrassments, the people were loaded with heavy taxes for the support of government. Open threats of rebellion were the consequence; and in Massachusetts, 1,500 men took up arms. In December, 1786, while the Supreme Court was in session at Springfield, Daniel Shays, who had been a captain in the Revolution, took command of the insurgents, seized on the court-house, and compelled the judges to retire. Gov. Bowdoin [*bo'-dn*] called out the militia, and intrusted their command to Gen. Lincoln. By a vigorous course the rebellion was suppressed. Fourteen of the ringleaders were taken and condemned to death, but afterwards pardoned. Quiet was thus restored, but all true friends of their country were filled with gloomy apprehensions. The need of a stronger government was now more than ever apparent.

418. Even before these dangerous movements, the defects of the "articles of confederation" had been generally felt. In January, 1786, the legislature of Virginia had proposed a convention of delegates from the several states, to regulate the commercial relations of the country. In the following September, delegates from five states met at Annapolis; but, feeling that in so important a work every state should be represented, they adjourned after recommending Congress to call a general convention. Their suggestion was acted on, and representatives from every state except Rhode Island assembled at the state-house in Philadelphia, in May,

---

of the English market? 417. Describe the state of affairs in America. What provoked serious discontent in the people? How was this feeling manifested in Massachusetts? Give an account of Shays's rebellion. 418. What had been felt with respect to the articles of confederation? What recommendation was made by the legislature of Virginia? Give an account of the convention held in Sep-

## THE OLD STATE-HOUSE (INDEPENDENCE HALL) AT PHILADELPHIA.

1787. George Washington was elected president, and the members generally were men of distinguished ability and patriotism. This body remained in session with closed doors over three months, and produced that glorious Constitution, which was the origin of our prosperity, and is still our pride as a nation.

419. No sooner was the constitution presented to the people than it was severely criticised, and in some quarters opposed. It was impossible to suit all: here one point was denounced, and there another. Every objection, however, was ably answered by Madison, Jay, and Hamilton, who maintained that local interests should give way to the greatest good of the greatest number. Their arguments prevailed. Within a year, the instrument was ratified by a majority of the states. In New York it met with little favor, Alexander Hamilton being almost its only advocate in the convention with which its adoption or rejection rested. But Hamilton was a host, and he threw himself into the cause with all his powers. Just before the vote was to be taken, he rose, and in a speech of three hours pleaded most forcibly

---

tember, 1786. What took place in May, 1787? Who was chosen president of the convention? What was the character of its members? How long did it remain in session? What was the result of its labors? 419. How was the constitution received? By whom were the objections brought against it answered? How was it received by a majority of the states? How, in New York? Give an account

for its adoption. His opponents objected to the question's being put immediately after such a speech. The House adjourned till the following day; but that burning eloquence was not forgotten, and New York pronounced in favor of the constitution, July 26th, 1788. North Carolina and Rhode Island remained for a time undecided, but they also finally accepted it.

420. The constitution thus originally adopted has received some few additions and amendments. Its chief points should be familiar to every student of his country's history. They are as follows:—

THE LEGISLATIVE POWER of the government is vested in a Congress consisting of two houses, known as the Senate and the House of Representatives. The senate is composed of two members from each state, elected by the respective legislatures for a term of six years. Vacancies occasioned by death or resignation during the recess of the legislature of any state, are temporarily filled by the governor till the legislature reassembles. The terms are so arranged that but one-third of them expire at the same time, so that two-thirds of the body are always experienced members. No person can be a senator that has not attained the age of thirty, and been nine years a citizen of the United States. The vice-president of the United States is president of the senate, but has only a casting vote. All impeachments are tried before this body.

The house of representatives is composed of members chosen by the people every second year. Each state has a certain number proportioned to its population; the territories have one delegate each. A representative must have attained the age of twenty-five, and been seven years a citizen of the United States. When a vacancy occurs, a new election by the people takes place on the governor's call. The house chooses its own Speaker, and has the sole power of finding

---

of Hamilton's efforts in its behalf. 420. In whom is the legislative power vested by the constitution? Of whom is the senate composed? How are vacancies in the senate filled? How are the terms arranged? What is the requisite age for a senator? Who is president of the senate? In what case has he a vote? What are tried before the senate? Of whom does the house of representatives consist?

impeachments. [The term *speaker* is borrowed from the English House of Commons; and the presiding officer is so called because it is through him that the house *speaks*, or communicates with the other branches of the legislature.]

Congress meets every year at the national capital on the first Monday in December. The members are paid from the public treasury [\$5,000 a year], and are privileged from arrest for all offences except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, while attending a session of their respective houses, or on their way to or from such a session. No person can at the same time be a member of either house and hold office under the United States. Congress has power to collect taxes and duties; to borrow money on the credit of the United States; to regulate foreign commercial relations; to establish laws respecting naturalization and bankruptcy; to coin money and provide a punishment for counterfeiting; to fix the standard of weight and measures; to establish post-offices; to grant authors and inventors exclusive privileges by copyrights and patents; to declare war; to raise armies and maintain a navy; to provide for organizing the militia; to make laws for the District of Columbia, or any other tract that may become the seat of government; &c., &c. Bills for appropriating money must originate in the house of representatives, but may be amended or rejected by the senate. A bill passed by a concurrent vote of the two houses of Congress, before it can become a law, must be signed by the president of the United States; if he vetoes it (that is, returns it unsigned with his objections), it is null and void, unless passed by two-thirds of both houses.

THE EXECUTIVE POWER of the government is vested in a President, who holds his office for four years, and who, with the Vice-President, is thus elected. The people of each state [in South Carolina, the legislature] choose as many Electors

---

What are the requisites for filling this office? How are vacancies filled? What power is confined to this house? Whence is the term *speaker* derived? Why is the presiding officer so called? How often does Congress meet? When? How are the members paid? What privilege do they enjoy? What is forbidden to the members of both houses? Mention the powers vested in Congress. Where must bills appropriating money originate? What power has the senate over them? What is necessary before a bill can become a law? In whom is the executive



as they have senators and representatives in Congress. These electors meet in their respective states, and ballot for a president and vice-president. A record of the votes is made and transmitted sealed to the seat of government; where they are opened in the presence of the senate and the house of representatives. The person who has a majority of the electoral votes becomes president. If there is no majority, the election goes to the house of representatives; in that case, the members from each state cast one vote, and a majority of the states elects. The president of the United States must be a native citizen and thirty-five years of age, and must have resided in the country for at least fourteen years.

In case of the president's death, resignation, removal from office, or inability to discharge its duties, the vice-president takes his place; and, in case of the vice-president's disability, the president of the senate *pro tempore* officiates as president. The president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and with the consent of the senate makes treaties; and appoints ministers, consuls, judges of the supreme court, and other officers. [The salary of the president is \$25,000 a year; that of the vice-president, \$8,000.]

THE JUDICIAL POWER of the United States is vested in "one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may from time to time order and establish". The judges of the Supreme Court hold office during good behavior. Their jurisdiction extends to all cases arising under the laws and treaties of the United States; to controversies in which different states, ambassadors, ministers, or consuls, are concerned; &c.

Due provision is made for the amendment of the constitution, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary.

---

power vested? Describe the manner in which the president and vice-president are chosen. If there is no majority, how is the president elected? What are the requisites for making a person eligible to the presidency? In case of the president's death or disability, who takes his place? What is done in case of the vice-president's disability? What are the salaries of these officers? What powers are vested in the president? In whom is the judicial power vested? How long

421. About the time of the framing of the constitution, Congress, having obtained from several of the states a cession of large tracts in the west, included in their charters but still unsettled, organized the region bounded by the Ohio, the Mississippi, the great lakes, and Pennsylvania, into "the North-west Territory".

---

do the judges hold office? To what does their jurisdiction extend? When may the constitution be amended? 421. What was done by Congress in 1787?

## **PART IV.**

### **CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD,**

**FROM THE ORGANIZATION OF A GOVERNMENT UNDER THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, A. D. 1789, TO THE PRESENT TIME.**

---

#### **CHAPTER I.**

**WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789-1797.**

422. On the 14th of April, 1789, Washington received an official announcement that he had been unanimously elected president of the United States under the new constitution. Two days afterwards he bade adieu to Mount Vernon and set out for New York, where Congress was in session. Official receptions, addresses, and triumphal arches, awaited him everywhere on the route. On reaching the city, he was received by Gov. Clinton and conducted with military honors, in the midst of a vast concourse, to a residence which was placed at his disposal. On the 30th of April, he was inaugurated, at Federal Hall, on the site of the present Sub-treasury. The oath of office was administered by Chancellor Livingston, on the balcony in front of the Hall, in the presence of a great multitude. Immediately after the ceremony, Washington proceeded to the senate-chamber, and delivered an address replete with exalted sentiments.

423. John Adams had been elected vice-president; and both houses, having organized a few weeks before the inau-

---

422. Who was elected first president under the new constitution? When did Washington receive the announcement? When did he start from Mount Vernon? What is said of his journey and his reception in New York? When and where did his inauguration take place? Describe the scene. What was done by

the Mississippi. The people of the west naturally looked to this river as their only means of reaching a market; and, that they might not lose the advantages it offered, some of the frontier settlers proposed to separate from the republic, and unite with the Spanish territory of which New Orleans was the metropolis. The hostility of the Indians, who had not as yet laid aside the tomahawk, was a fruitful source of anxiety. These were

---

Washington after the ceremony? 423. Who had been elected vice-president? Enumerate the difficulties by which the new government was embarrassed. To

a few of the subjects that required the immediate attention of government, added to which was the ever-pressing want of money. After long deliberation, Congress determined to raise a revenue by laying duties on the tonnage of vessels and all imported articles.

424. One of the first acts of Congress was to create three departments, the heads of which were known as the Secretary of Foreign Affairs (afterwards Secretary of State), the Secretary of the Treasury, and the Secretary of War. These, together with the Attorney General, were to act as advisers of the president, constituting what was called his Cabinet. Two new departments have since been created (the Navy and the Interior), the heads of which, with the Postmaster General, have seats in the cabinet. The secretaryship of state is the highest cabinet office; this Washington bestowed on Thomas Jefferson, who had been governor of Virginia for two years, and had represented his country at the French court from 1784 to 1789. Alexander Hamilton was made secretary of the treasury. Gen. Knox, who had been at the head of the artillery department throughout the Revolution, was appointed secretary of war, and Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, attorney general.

425. Having directed the secretary of the treasury to present at the next session some plan for restoring the national credit, Congress adjourned on the 29th of September. North Carolina accepted the constitution in November.

426. The president was at first overrun with visitors, who made serious inroads on his time. He soon found it necessary to appoint a fixed hour for their reception, and confine himself at other times to his official duties. Notwithstanding this precaution, he was compelled to labor incessantly, and during the first year of his presidency was twice prostrated by excessive toil. Soon after the adjournment of Congress,

---

what means did Congress resort for raising a revenue? 424. What three executive departments were created by Congress? What did their heads, with the Attorney General, constitute? What departments have since been created? Which is the highest cabinet office? On whom was it bestowed? Name the other members of Washington's cabinet. 425. When did Congress adjourn? What did it do before adjourning? When did North Carolina accept the constitution? 426. How did Washington prevent his time from being consumed by

he set out on a visit to New England, and was received by the people with every mark of affection. On his return to New York he learned that Gen. Lincoln, who had been sent to treat with the Creeks of Georgia, had failed in his attempts. The Creek chief, at the head of 2,000 warriors, had met the American commissioner, but suddenly broke off negotiations and refused to sign a treaty. About a year afterwards, the attempt was repeated with success.

427. Congress had imposed upon Hamilton a difficult task. Amid financial embarrassments of every kind, it was required of him to provide a revenue for the government and to revive its credit. But his genius was equal to the work. He took the true ground, that, to maintain its credit, the country must pay its honest debts. This principle fortunately prevailed in Congress, and provision was made for the gradual payment of \$54,000,000. From this time confidence was entertained in the integrity of the government, and with confidence prosperity returned. Too much credit can not be given to the far-seeing policy of Hamilton. In the eloquent language of Webster, "He smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue burst forth. He touched the dead corpse of public credit, and it sprang upon its feet."

428. In May, 1790, Rhode Island adopted the constitution, and the confederacy then embraced all of the thirteen original colonies.

429. The insecurity of the settlers on the western frontier early engaged the attention of Congress. Emigrants from the Atlantic states had already penetrated to various points in the valleys of the Ohio and the Mississippi. In 1769, Daniel Boone, a bold hunter of North Carolina, with five enterprising men like himself, explored the wilds of what is now called Kentucky. Boone afterwards returned, and led a larger party to the fruitful region where he had determined

---

visitors? What is said of the labor required of him? How was he received on his visit to New England? Give an account of the attempts of the United States to negotiate with the Creeks. 427. What is said of the task required of Hamilton? What ground did he take? What measure of Congress secured the confidence of the country? What does Webster say of Hamilton? 428. In May, 1790, what took place? 429. What early engaged the attention of Congress? Give an account of early explorations and settlements in Kentucky. What is said of the

to spend the remainder of his life. Hunting and trapping in luxuriant forests, living on what their rifles afforded, sleeping in cane-brakes, fighting and flying from the Indians by turns, now captured and anon escaping, this little band, increased from time to time by new-comers, underwent a variety of adventures that seem more like the fictions of romance than the truths of history. The natives, ever averse to encroachments on their domains, maintained a perpetual warfare, which required untiring vigilance on the part of the whites. The great chief Pontiac had fallen; but Little Turtle, a famous Miami warrior, was ever ready when a blow was to be struck at the hated pale-face.

430. When Great Britain gave up the war in 1783, the western tribes under Little Turtle resolved to continue it. A party of unprincipled men had shortly before murdered some Indians who had been converted by Moravian missionaries and had taken no part in the war. Thirsting for vengeance, the Ohio tribes carried devastation far and wide, putting to death their prisoners with cruel tortures. The whites, though they had now become more numerous and powerful, were hardly strong enough to repel the fierce Algonquins. In August, 1782, a party of savages appeared before Bryan Station, five miles from Lexington, Kentucky, and tried to draw the garrison out from their log defences. Failing in this, they pretended to depart; but the old hunters, skilled in all the artifices of Indian warfare, felt sure that they were lying in ambush near the fort. At this critical time their water gave out, and it was necessary to obtain a fresh supply. The spring was a short distance off, near a thicket of trees and bushes in which it was supposed the savages were concealed. If the men went out, it was almost certain they would be shot down and a rush made for the fort; but it was thought, if the women went to the spring, the enemy would refrain from firing and wait for a more favorable opportunity. The heroic women of the fort undertook the per-

---

adventures of Boone and his comrades? How did the natives feel towards them? What chief was ever ready to strike a blow at the whites? 430. What did the western tribes do in 1783? What provocation had they shortly before received?

## HEROISM OF THE WOMEN OF BRYAN STATION, KY.

ilous task. Going carelessly to the spring, as if they suspected nothing, they filled their vessels and bore them back to the fort. Five hundred rifles were aimed at them while they were dipping up the water, but not one was fired. The shrewd pioneers of the wilderness had judged Indian character aright. The next day, the surrender of the fort was demanded; but a spirited refusal was returned, and no further attempts were made on its brave defenders.

431. Congress having purchased of the Indians a large tract north of the Ohio, a new impetus was given to emigration. In 1788, a party of New-Englanders commenced the first permanent settlement in Ohio at Marietta. In the same year, Matthias Denman bought the land on which the city of Cincinnati stands. With the aid of a school-master he laid out a town there, the first log hut being built in December, 1789, on what is now the corner of Main and Front streets.

---

How was this injury avenged? Tell what happened at Bryan Station. 431. What gave a new impetus to emigration? Give an account of the first permanent settlement in Ohio. What was the origin of Cincinnati? What occasioned great



The exposed condition of these important settlements in the Ohio valley, as well as the intrigues of the Spaniards, who were trying to detach the west from the Union, was a source of great anxiety to both Washington and Congress. Gen. St. Clair, a Revolutionary officer of high character, was appointed first governor of the territory; and a fort (named after Washington) was erected within the present limits of Cincinnati, on a spot where the aboriginal mound-builders had constructed one of their vast works. In purchasing the tract referred to, great care had been taken to get the sanction of all the tribes supposed to have an interest in it; but others, who had not signed the treaty, afterwards claimed to be part owners of the land, and assumed so threatening a tone that Congress had no alternative but war. In the fall of 1790, 1,400 men, ill disciplined and poorly equipped, were sent under Gen. Harmer against the Miami villages, on the present site of Fort Wayne, Ind. They reached their destination in safety, and the fields of the Miamis were devastated. Harmer then divided his army into detachments, for the pursuit of the scattered Indians. One of these was soon defeated by Captain Wells, a Kentuckian, who had been carried off by the savages when a boy and was now one of their chiefs; another was led into an ambuscade by Little Turtle, and cut to pieces. The remains of the unfortunate army with difficulty made their way back to Fort Washington.

432. The news of Harmer's reverses produced general dissatisfaction; and the president hastened to send a more efficient army into the wilderness. Gen. St. Clair was selected as its leader. Advancing gradually into the enemy's country, he found himself on the 3d of November, 1791, encamped with 1,400 men near a branch of the Wabash, at a place afterwards called Fort Recovery. The Indians were in strong force near at hand, and that very night held a council to decide upon their course. Their leading spirit was Little Turtle,

---

anxiety to Washington and Congress? Who was appointed first governor of the North-west Territory? What fort was erected? What claims were soon raised? What was Congress compelled to do? Give an account of Harmer's expedition. 432. What was the consequence of Harmer's reverses? Who was selected as his successor? Where did St. Clair find himself, November 3d, 1791? What was

an impassioned orator, a fearless warrior, six feet in height, of muscular frame, dignified manners, stern features, and forbidding expression. He was at this time forty-five years old, and dressed in the most imposing style of Indian display, at least twenty ounces of silver ornaments hanging from his nose and ears. In the dusky circle round the council-fire, this wily savage presented a well-digested plan for surprising the American army, and with fiery eloquence persuaded his brother chieftains to adopt it.

Three hours before daylight on the 4th of November, the American army was paraded under arms, and about sunrise it was dismissed to make preparations for an immediate march against the Indian villages. While the men were thus engaged, a single rifle was heard in front, and the next moment a deadly fire was poured in on all sides. The militia, who were posted in front, rushed through the ranks of the regulars; but the latter kept their ground, and returned as well as they could, yet with little effect, the fire of their unseen enemies. St. Clair, though enfeebled by disease, made every effort to save his men. Borne hither and thither on his litter, wherever the contest raged most fiercely, he gave his orders with coolness and judgment, and directed vigorous charges to be made at different points. For a moment, success followed these efforts; but the whoop of the fearless chief would be heard, echoed by a thousand voices, and the Red Men would press on more fiercely than before. Terrible havoc was made, and it became evident that a timely retreat alone could save the army from total destruction. An impetuous charge was made by Col. Darke, with such spirit that the Indians were obliged to fall back, and through the open space thus gained the sad remnant of the devoted army rushed in a hasty retreat. Gen. St. Clair was assisted to mount one of the few remaining horses, and followed his flying regiments. The news of this disastrous overthrow

---

done by the Indians that same night? Give an account of their council. Describe Little Turtle. What decision was arrived at? What was the state of things in the American camp the next morning? What was suddenly heard? How did the militia behave? Give an account of the battle. How was a retreat made good? What is said of Gen. St. Clair? What followed this overthrow?

appalled the whole nation, and called forth again loud clamors from those who opposed the government. A third expedition became necessary; and, determined that it should have a capable leader, Washington gave the command to Gen. Wayne, the "mad Anthony" of the Revolution.

433. Meantime Congress was still occupied with financial matters. The business community labored under discouraging embarrassments, for which a uniform currency, enjoying the confidence of the people, seemed to promise the only remedy. To create this, Hamilton projected a national bank, which was chartered by Congress in March, 1791, under the name of the Bank of the United States. It was located at Philadelphia, which had become the seat of government, had a capital of \$10,000,000, and was empowered to issue bills, discount notes, and receive deposits. The beneficial effects of this institution on all kinds of business were immediately felt.

434. As we have seen, a strong party had from the outset opposed the constitution. Their chief argument against it was that it gave too much power to the general government, and limited that of the individual states. This party, which embraced Jefferson and other distinguished patriots, soon became known as "Republicans", "Democrats," or "States' Rights Men," in opposition to the "Federalists", as those were called who approved of a strong central government. Hamilton was one of the ablest federalist leaders, and his measures, particularly those relating to the bank and the collection of the revenue, were severely denounced by his opponents. The duty, or excise, laid on domestic spirits was peculiarly unpopular in western Pennsylvania; and public meetings were held, at which such officers as

---

What was resolved on? Who was intrusted with the command of the third expedition? 433. What still occupied the attention of Congress? What seemed to be the only remedy? What was projected by Hamilton? When was the Bank of the United States chartered? Where was it located? What was its capital? What was it empowered to do? What were its effects? 434. What objection was urged against the constitution? What two parties were formed? What distinguished man was a republican? Who was a strong federalist leader? What measures of Hamilton were denounced? What measure in particular was opposed? Where? What steps were taken? Who were the successful candidates

should attempt to collect it were threatened with violence. Notwithstanding the warmth of party feeling, however, Washington, whose first term expired March 4th, 1793, was unanimously reëlected. Adams was also rechosen to the vice-presidency. Meanwhile, New York having surrendered her claims in consideration of \$30,000, Vermont was received into the Union in 1791; and the following year Kentucky became a member of the confederacy.

435. In August, 1793, the American people were visited by a calamity to which up to this time they had been strangers. The yellow fever broke out in Philadelphia with such virulence that in three months, out of a population of 60,000, no less than 4,000 perished. The terror of the people was unprecedented, and all who could deserted the city. Among those who remained to minister to the sick, was Dr. Benjamin Rush, whose treatment of the disease was eminently successful. This illustrious man was a native of Pennsylvania, and a graduate of Edinburgh University, whence he returned to practise in Philadelphia. A signer of the Declaration of Independence and a medical writer whose works are still studied with profit, Dr. Rush was distinguished alike as a patriot and a man of letters. He died in 1813, at the age of 72.

436. Hardly had the country recovered from the alarm created by the pestilence, when a renewal of difficulties in western Pennsylvania produced fresh consternation. The people there had been encouraged to open insurrection by the course of Mr. Ge-net', the agent of the revolutionary party in France, whose arrival in America had been the signal for the organization of democratic societies hostile to government, on the plan of the Jacobin clubs of Paris. It was agreed among the disaffected that no tax should be paid on whiskey. The U. S. marshal was fired upon, the

---

at the second election under the constitution? What new states were admitted into the Union? When? 435. What calamity visited the American people in August, 1793? Where did the yellow fever break out? Give an account of its ravages. Who treated the disease with success? What is said of Dr. Rush? 436. By what troubles was the yellow fever followed? What had encouraged the people of western Pennsylvania to open insurrection? What did they do to the

inspector fled, and his guard was forced to surrender to a company of insurgents. The "whiskey rebellion" having assumed this dangerous aspect, Washington issued a requisition for a force sufficient to suppress it. Gen. Henry Lee, then governor of Virginia, was placed in command, and Hamilton accompanied the army. On reaching the seat of the rebellion (October, 1794), it was found that the insurgents had dispersed. Gen. Morgan, with a considerable force, was left west of the mountains during the winter, and no further trouble from this cause was experienced.

437. Meantime Gen. Wayne was cautiously advancing, with over three thousand men, on his expedition against the western Indians. On the 13th of August, 1794, having reached the neighborhood of the Maumee Rapids, where the enemy had assembled, he despatched a messenger to their camp with propositions of peace. Ten days were asked for consideration; but Wayne still advanced, and on the 19th the hostile tribes met in council. Elated by their former success, most of the chiefs fiercely pronounced for war. Little Turtle alone dissented. Twice, he said, they had defeated the Americans; they could not always expect the same good fortune. The pale-faces were now led by a chief who never slept, and something told him that they should listen to his offers of peace. The counsels of the wise Miami were disregarded. War was decided upon, and Blue Jacket, a Shawnee warrior, was elected commander-in-chief.

At a late hour that night two of Wayne's soldiers entered the Red Men's camp, to discover their decision. The warriors slept; and the two spies stealthily advanced over their prostrate bodies, until they found an Indian girl awake. Presenting their arms, they compelled her to follow, and, on reaching a safe distance from the camp, obtained from her the desired information. Never was a daring deed more gallantly or successfully performed.

---

United States authorities? Give an account of the suppression of the "whiskey rebellion". 437. What was Wayne doing meanwhile? What took place, August 16th, 1794? What did the Indians do on the 19th? State what passed in the Indian council. Whom did the Indians choose as their leader? Relate the

## WAYNE'S SCOUTS IN THE INDIAN CAMP.

The following morning, Wayne marched without delay towards the Indian town. He was received with a warm fire; but an intrepid charge drove the Indians from their cover, and put them completely to rout. The pursuit was continued for several miles, and over two hundred of the enemy were slain. All the Indian villages for a distance of fifty miles were destroyed, and one of the most beautiful valleys of the west was reduced to desolation. So humbled were the Red Men of the North-west Territory by this defeat, that they expressed a general desire for peace. Wayne invited them to a council in July, 1795, and offered to make a treaty with them, on condition that they would surrender all the land east of a line drawn from Fort Recovery to the mouth of the Kentucky River, embracing almost the whole of what is now Ohio and part of Indiana. Some of the chiefs objected to giving up so large a tract.

---

heroic achievement of two of Wayne's scouts. What did Wayne do the following morning? How was he received? Give an account of the battle that followed. [See Map, p. 845.—Where did Wayne's battle take place? Into what does the Maumee empty?] How were the Indians punished? What desire did they express, the following year? On what condition did Wayne propose peace? How

An express was sent to consult the government on the subject, and instructions were returned to Gen. Wayne not to insist on the line he had proposed, but to accept that offered by the Indians. Before these orders arrived, however, he had extorted from some of the chiefs a reluctant assent to his terms, and, throwing the instructions just received upon the table, he declared that the treaty should be signed as it then stood. He carried his point. The treaty *was* signed, and the contest of years was ended.

"Mad Anthony Wayne" was long remembered by the Indians of the west. He is said to have told them, that, if ever they violated their treaty, he would rise from his grave to fight them. Whether this threat kept them faithful to their agreement or not, it is certain that for years the frontier enjoyed a security which it had never before known. Having thus creditably performed his task, Wayne embarked on Lake Erie, on his way to Philadelphia. While the blasts of December (1796) were tossing his vessel on the boisterous waves, his spirit took its flight from earth. The hero was buried at Presq' Isle, now Erie.

438. The Indian War having been brought to a successful close, the republicans next seized on the foreign policy of Washington as a subject for the most violent condemnation. On the breaking out of the French Revolution, it was thought in this country that the people were honestly struggling for liberty; and many, gratefully remembering the aid extended to America in her hour of need, proposed engaging actively on the side of France in the wars that followed. Washington immediately issued a proclamation to the effect that strict neutrality must be maintained. Genet, the French minister, finding the government firm, threatened to appeal to the people. This Washington regarded as an insult to the nation, and at his request the obnoxious minister was recalled.

---

was this offer met by the Indians? What instructions were received from the government? How were they treated by Wayne? What did Wayne tell the Indians? What was the state of the frontier after his victory? What became of Wayne? Where was he buried? 439. Of what did the democrats next complain? What had been the feelings of many in America on the breaking out of the French Revolution? What course was pursued by Washington? What threat was made,

A storm of abuse from the opposite party followed. The president was unjustly accused of a criminal regard for British interests, and even of drawing money from the treasury without due authority.

When the news arrived that John Jay, after long negotiations, had concluded a treaty with the English government, which provided for the surrender of the posts in the west, and established more friendly relations between the two countries, the excitement was increased. Mr. Jay was burned in effigy, a copy of the treaty was consigned to the flames before his house in New York by a large concourse, and Hamilton, who attempted to address them, was driven from the ground with stones. The republicans had a majority in the house of representatives; and the violent language used by their leaders before that body convulsed the whole country. The people were at last alarmed for the consequences, and the opposition gradually became less violent. Washington, though urged to serve for a third term, declined a re-election. In 1797 he withdrew to private life, having previously, in a Farewell Address, laid before the nation his views respecting their true policy. This parting advice has ever been regarded by the people of the United States as one of the most valuable treasures left them by the father of his country.

439. In 1796, a third new state, Tennessee, was admitted into the confederacy. It was originally a part of North Carolina, and its pioneer settlers had gone through their share of trial and suffering. In 1790, North Carolina relinquished its claim to the country, and it had been organized by Congress as "the Territory south-west of the Ohio". In 1795, Tennessee had a population of 77,000.

---

by Genet? What followed? What tone was assumed by the republican leaders? What unjust charges did they bring against Washington? What news was soon received? How did the anti-federalists express their disapprobation? What party had a majority in the lower house of Congress? What course was pursued by their leaders? What was done by Washington in 1797? 439. When was Tennessee admitted? What is said of its previous history? What was the population of Tennessee in 1795?



## CHAPTER II

## JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1797-1801.

440. JOHN ADAMS, of Massachusetts, was chosen as Washington's successor, and Thomas Jefferson was at the same time elected vice-president. The former was regarded as the head of the federal party, which, though still in the majority, was fast losing ground before the republicans, of whom Jefferson was the acknowledged leader.

441. Early in Adams's administration, difficulties with France assumed a serious aspect. The American minister was not only refused an audience by the French Directory, but ordered out of their territory. At the same time the U. S. flag was insulted on the ocean, a number of vessels being captured by French cruisers. These outrages silenced even the warmest advocates of French interests, and preparations were made for war. An army was organized, and, in compliance with the general voice of the nation, Washington was appointed commander-in-chief.

The honor of America was gallantly vindicated on the ocean by Captain Truxton and a few brave seamen. Truxton had taken many prizes from the British during the Rev-

---

440. At the next election, who were made president and vice-president? What were their politics? 441. What difficulties arose early in Adams's administration? What preparations were made by the U. S.? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? By whom was the honor of America vindicated on the ocean? What

olution, and was now one of the six captains of the infant navy of the United States. In February, 1799, while cruising in the frigate *Constellation*, he fell in with the French vessel *L'Insurgente* [*lang-soor-zhont'*], which surrendered after a spirited action. The next year, he encountered another French frigate, *La Vengeance* [*lah vong-zhons'*]. After an action of five hours, the enemy was silenced; but a gale separated the combatants, and the French vessel escaped. She afterwards entered port in a shattered condition, with 160 men killed or wounded.

442. Gen. Washington did not live to see peace restored. Exposure to a slight rain brought on inflammation and fever, which proved fatal on the 14th of December, 1799. When he found that death was approaching, he said to his physician, "I am dying—but I am not afraid to die." Calmly the good and great man met his end. The death of Washington was regarded as a national bereavement. Due honors were paid to his memory in Congress. Party spirit was for a time forgotten, and the whole country mourned its illustrious father.

443. Alarmed at the bold appeals of the partisans of France and their violent denunciations of the government, the federalists succeeded in passing through Congress two bills, known as the Alien and the Sedition Law. The former authorized the president to require all aliens, or foreigners, whom he considered dangerous to the peace of the country, to depart within such a time as he should specify. The latter forbade, under certain penalties, conspiracies against government, and all publications designed to bring it into disrepute. The passing of these bills awakened more violent opposition than ever. The legislatures of Virginia and Kentucky declared them unconstitutional and void. Happily the conclusion of peace, in 1800, with Napoleon, who had become First Consul of France, allayed the excitement, and

---

is said of Truxton's previous history? Give an account of his achievements in 1799 and 1800. 442. Give an account of Gen. Washington's death. How was it regarded? 443. What bills were passed through the influence of the federalists? State the substance of the Alien and the Sedition Law. What followed their pas-

rendered it unnecessary to put the Alien and Sedition Laws into execution.

444. In December, 1800, Congress met for the first time at the city of Washington, which has ever since been the national capital. It is situated in the District of Columbia, a tract originally ten miles square, presented to the general government by Maryland and Virginia. The portion given by Virginia was afterwards ceded back to that state, so that the District is now confined to the Maryland side of the Potomac. The city was laid out in 1792; and its population in 1800 amounted to over 8,000. It lay in the midst of a wilderness, described as containing "here and there a small cottage, without a glass window, interspersed among the forests, through which you travel without seeing any human being".

445. The first census of the United States was taken in 1790; another was completed in 1800. They show the following results:—

|          | Whole Population. | Slaves. | Post-offices. | Exports.     |
|----------|-------------------|---------|---------------|--------------|
| In 1790, | 3,929,328         | 697,696 | 75            | \$20,205,156 |
| In 1800, | 5,309,758         | 896,849 | 903           | 70,971,780   |

446. At the close of Adams's term, he was again put in nomination by the federalists, in conjunction with Charles C. Pinckney, of South Carolina; the republicans supported Thomas Jefferson, and Aaron Burr, of New York. When the electoral votes were counted, it was found that Jefferson and Burr were in advance of the other candidates, both having the same number. This threw the election into the house of representatives, which gave the presidency to Jefferson and made Burr vice-president.

---

sage? How did it become unnecessary to put them into execution? 444. Where did Congress meet in December, 1800? How is Washington situated? What was the original size of the District of Columbia? To what is it now confined? When was Washington laid out? What was its population in 1800? What was the state of the surrounding country? 445. When was the first census of the U. S. taken? Compare the whole population in 1790 with that in 1800. The slaves. The post-offices. The exports. 446. Who were the candidates of the two parties at the close of Adams's term? On whom did the election devolve? Who were finally chosen?

## CHAPTER III.

## JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801-1809.

447. JEFFERSON appointed James Madison, of Virginia, his secretary of state, and continued him in that office throughout his administration. In 1802, the eastern part of the North-west Territory was admitted into the Union, under the name of Ohio. The western portion had previously been organized into the Territory of Indiana. Vincennes was its capital, and

THOMAS JEFFERSON.

William Henry Harrison (afterwards president) had been appointed its first governor.

448. One of the most important acts of Jefferson's administration was the purchase of Louisiana. Napoleon had in 1800 compelled the Spanish government to cede this extensive tract to France, and had made every preparation for establishing at the mouth of the Mississippi a strong military colony, conveniently situated for encroaching on the neighboring territories of Great Britain, Spain, and the United States, as his ambition might dictate. Notwithstanding the protest of the American minister, 20,000 men under Bernadotte [*ber-na-dot'*] (afterwards king of Sweden) were ready

---

447. Whom did Jefferson make secretary of state? When was Ohio admitted? What had been done with the western portion of the North-west Territory? What was made the capital of Indiana? Who was appointed its first governor? 448. What was one of the most important acts of Jefferson's administration? To whom had Louisiana been transferred? What did Napoleon at one time contemplate? What made him alter his plans? What did he then

to sail for the new world, when a fresh quarrel with England changed the plans of the French emperor. He now resolved to concentrate all his forces for an invasion of the British Isles, and offered to sell Louisiana to the U. S. The American ministers, James Monroe and Robert R. Livingston, though unauthorized to make so extensive a purchase, took the responsibility of closing with Bonaparte's offer. The advantages of the arrangement were so obvious that it was promptly ratified by the home government. Fifteen millions of dollars were paid for this valuable territory, about one-fifth of which was allowed as an indemnity for injuries committed by the French on the commerce of the United States.

449. The American government, following the example of the maritime powers of Europe, had sought to protect its commerce in the Mediterranean from the depredations of piratical craft, by paying tribute to the Barbary States (as the countries on the northern coast of Africa are called). When Capt. Bainbridge visited Algiers in 1800, with a national frigate, to make the annual payment, the dey, or governor, wishing to send an ambassador to Constantinople, demanded the use of his vessel for that purpose. To Bainbridge's remonstrances the dey insolently replied, "You pay me tribute, by which you become my slaves, and therefore I have a right to order you as I think proper." As the guns of the fort bore directly upon his vessel, the American captain was obliged to submit. He bore the dey's agent to Constantinople, and was the first to unfurl the banner of his country in that harbor. The Turks had never heard of the United States; but, on learning that their visitors were from the new world discovered by Columbus, they treated them with marked courtesy.

Subjected to such annoyances and finding that American commerce still suffered, the U. S. government remonstrated in such strong terms as to provoke a declaration of war on

---

propose? How did the American ministers receive his offer? How was their action liked at home? How much did Louisiana cost? 412. How had the American government sought to protect its commerce in the Mediterranean? What passed between Capt. Bainbridge and the dey of Algiers? How did the Turks receive their visitors? What action was taken by the U. S. government? How

the part of Yu'-sef, who had usurped the throne of Tripoli [*trip'-o-le*]. In October, 1803, Commodore Preble [*preb'-bl*] arrived before Tripoli with a naval force; still the bashaw refused to treat. While reconnoitring the harbor, the Philadelphia, an American vessel, had struck on a rock, and fallen a prey to the Tripolitans, who consigned its crew to slavery. Lieutenant Decatur undertook to destroy this ship in the enemy's harbor. Followed by seventy volunteers, he boarded her, drove the enemy from her deck, and made good his retreat in the face of the Tripolitan batteries, without losing a single man.

In August, 1804, the American commodore commenced bombarding the city. The fire was continued for five hours, during which several gun-boats of the enemy were destroyed and their fort received serious injury. Alarmed by this, as well as by the news that Eaton, the American consul, was approaching overland with an army, in conjunction with the rightful bashaw, Yusef at length came to terms, and the American flag was for some years treated with respect by the Barbary powers.

450. Hamilton, on leaving the cabinet, had fixed his residence at New York, where he devoted himself to the practice of law, and obtained the highest eminence in that profession. His chief rival, both in law and politics, was Aaron Burr, a man of great talents but little principle, whom we have already mentioned as having been elected to the vice-presidency. While still holding that office, Burr ran for governor of the state of New York, but was defeated by a large majority, owing in a measure to Hamilton's influence. This, added to other causes, led Burr to challenge his illustrious rival. Unhappily, the latter accepted, and the duel was fought at Weehawken, July 11th, 1804. Hamilton fell mortally wounded (in his forty-eighth year), on the very spot where his eldest son had shortly before likewise been killed

---

did the bashaw of Tripoli retaliate? Who appeared before Tripoli, in October, 1803? What befell the Philadelphia. Relate a gallant exploit of Decatur's. Give an account of the bombardment of Tripoli. What brought the bashaw to terms? 450. Where had Hamilton fixed his residence? To what profession did he devote himself? Who was his chief rival? What was Burr's character?

in a duel. The death of Hamilton from such a cause produced a profound sensation. Men of all parties had regarded him as the most brilliant ornament of the nation. They had felt that "whoever was second, Hamilton must be first".

451. From this time Burr, was loathed by his countrymen. George Clinton, of New York, superseded him in the vice-presidency, while Jefferson was reëlected president by a large majority, and entered on his second term, March 4th, 1805. After bidding adieu to the senate in an eloquent valedictory, Burr took a tour through the west, visiting the principal towns, and everywhere leaving the impression that he contemplated some grand scheme not yet to be disclosed. His design seems to have been either to wrest Mexico from Spain, or to detach the west from the Union and erect it into a separate government with himself at its head. In July, 1806, in a letter to Gen. Wilkinson, whom he desired to interest in his enterprise, he partially unfolded his plans, and announced that seven thousand "choice spirits" were pledged to their support. Wilkinson communicated this information to the president, and Burr's movements were thenceforth narrowly watched.

452. On a beautiful island in the Ohio, near Marietta, an Irish exile named Blen-ner-has'-set had erected an elegant mansion, which he and his accomplished wife had rendered a centre of attraction to people of refinement throughout the neighboring country. Burr, who was a man of fascinating manners, gained admission to this paradise and induced its owner to participate in his schemes. The lovely island soon became the chief resort of the conspirators, and Burr remained there till he had completed his plan of operations. After his departure, the authorities of Virginia sent an officer to arrest Blennerhasset. He was received by the high-spirited mistress of the island, who, with a pistol in each

---

For what office did Burr become a candidate? How was he defeated? What was the unhappy consequence? How has Hamilton always been regarded? 451. What was the effect of the duel on Burr's reputation? Who were the successful candidates at the next election? After taking leave of the senate, what was Burr's course? What designs does he seem to have entertained? How were his designs made known to the president? 452. Who was Blennerhasset? Where did he live? Give an account of Burr's dealings with him. Give an account of

hand, ordered him to depart on pain of instant death. The officer deemed it prudent to retire, and Blennerhasset made good his escape. He reached Bermuda, and was there known as a lawyer as late as 1837.

453. Meanwhile, Burr's operations were so openly carried on that the government could no longer hesitate. Instructions were issued to suppress the expedition, and early in 1807 its leader was arrested and taken to Richmond for trial. Two indictments were found against him, one for treason, the other for organizing an expedition against a country with which the U. S. was at peace. While awaiting trial, Burr was committed to the common jail, where criminals of every grade were confined. A blanket was given him for a bed; and, marking out a space for himself, he lay down to rest. The wretched inmates of the place wondered, as they beheld a man who had wanted but one vote to make him president of the U. S. reduced to their own level—and wondered still more to see him sleeping calmly after such a reverse of fortune. His trial excited intense interest. The jury returned a verdict of "not guilty", a result to which Mr. Burr's able defence and unsurpassed powers of persuasion no doubt contributed much. Though he escaped the penalty of treason, his public career was at an end. He returned to the practice of law, but, all confidence in his integrity being lost, the remainder of his life was passed in obscurity. He died in 1836, at the age of 80.

454. The region now called Oregon was little known to the world, even two centuries after other parts of the Pacific coast had been explored. Navigators, in quest of a northern passage between the oceans, had sought a harbor on its inhospitable shore, but without success till May, 1792, when Captain Gray, of Boston, entered the mouth of a noble river, which he called "Columbia" from the name of his vessel.

---

the attempt to arrest Blennerhasset. What became of him? 453. What steps was government obliged to take? When was Burr arrested? Where was he taken for trial? For what was he indicted? What excited the wonder of his companions in jail? What verdict was returned? What contributed much to this result? What was the subsequent history of Burr? 454. What is said of the region now called Oregon? What had led navigators to its shores? Who was the first to find a harbor there? What claim was put forth by the U. S.? What



The United States immediately laid claim to the region drained by this river and its tributaries. In 1804, at Jefferson's suggestion, a party of thirty-five soldiers and hunters was sent out under Captain Lewis and Lieutenant Clarke, to cross the Rocky Mountains and explore the continent as far as the mouth of the Columbia. They spent the winter of 1804-5 among the Mandan Indians, at the Falls of the Missouri. In the spring they resumed their journey, and November brought them to their point of destination.

The adventures of the explorers were embodied in a narrative which was read with avidity by thousands. They had passed more than two years at a distance from civilized society, had travelled 6,000 miles among savage tribes, and returned with the loss of but a single man. Hair-breadth escapes often saved them from the ferocious beasts of the forest and Indians hardly less ferocious. One night some of the party espied a huge grizzly bear near a river by which

---

ADVENTURE OF LEWIS AND CLARKE'S EXPLORING PARTY.

---

was done in 1804? Where did the explorers spend the ensuing winter? When did they reach their point of destination? How many miles did they travel?

they were encamped, and approaching within forty yards gave him the contents of their guns. Four balls entered his body, but served only to make him more furious. He rushed towards them, and on the way received another volley from two of the hunters who had prudently reserved their fire. Before they could reload, the angry beast was upon them, and they fled to the river. Two found refuge in a boat, and the others, hiding in a clump of willows, wounded him again and again, till they also were forced into the water. The bear pursued, and had almost overtaken one of the hunters when he received a bullet in his brain and fell.

455. In 1805 and the following years, American commerce suffered much from British aggressions. The United States maintained a strict neutrality in the wars that were convulsing Europe, but their rights as a neutral nation were disregarded. Vessels sailing under their flag on the high seas were subjected to frequent and flagrant injuries. England authorized her officers to stop them, to examine their crews, and impress for their own ships whatever seamen they chose to regard as British subjects. These outrages American vessels were often too weak to resist. The frigate *Chesapeake*, when starting on a distant voyage, was unexpectedly attacked by the British ship *Leopard*, which had been enjoying the hospitality of an American port. Several of her crew were killed, and four men were impressed and carried on board of the *Leopard*, on the plea that they were deserters. Jefferson, in a proclamation, immediately ordered all British vessels-of-war to quit the waters of the United States. The English government disavowed the act and promised reparation; but nothing satisfactory was done. The president further retaliated, by laying an embargo on American vessels, that is, forbidding them to leave port. This was done to distress England, for American ships during the war had done most of the carrying trade of Europe. The embargo,

---

Relate their adventure with a grizzly bear. 455. What cause of trouble arose in 1805? To what outrages were American vessels subjected? What befell the *Chesapeake*? What was immediately done by the president? What was the course of the English government? How did Jefferson further retaliate? What was the effect of the embargo? How long did it remain in force? What was

however, was found so injurious to the commercial interests of the north, that after fourteen months it was repealed, and a non-intercourse act was passed in its stead.

456. In the midst of these difficulties, Mr. Jefferson's second term expired. Declining a reelection, he announced his determination to return to private life. Though some partisans charged him with pursuing too timid a course

JEFFERSON'S SEAT, MONTICELLO, VA.

in relation to the aggressions of England, all respected him as a man of high talents and stern integrity, who had labored honorably and successfully for his country. An epitaph placed on his monument by his own direction tells us that he was the "Author of the Declaration of Independence; of the statute for religious freedom in Virginia; and the father of the University of Virginia".

457. Before leaving this period, we must notice one of those great inventions that mark an epoch in the world's history. Its projector was Robert Fulton, a native of Pennsylvania, at this time about forty years of age. His education was imperfect, and he had figured in early life as a sketcher of landscapes and portraits. During a visit to England, he learned what was then known respecting the powers and applications of steam, and conceived the idea of employing it in navigation. The poet Darwin, shortly before, in the spirit of prophecy, had written,

"Soon shall thy arm, unconquered steam, afar  
Drag the slow barge, or drive the rapid car,"—

and Fulton resolved to bring the prophecy to pass.

---

finally substituted for it? 456. How did Jefferson feel with respect to reflection? What is said of his character? What does his epitaph tell us? 457. What great invention belongs to this period? By whom was it made? What is said of Ful-

Full of the thought, Fulton went to Paris, and there, amid discouragements of various kinds, devised an engine adapted to the purpose. In 1806, he returned to New York; and, aided by Mr. Livingston, whom he had met in France, he commenced on the East River the construction of the first steamboat. It was 100 feet long, 12 feet wide, and 7 feet deep. The work went on, though it was prophesied on all sides that it would be a failure. At last the boat (originally named the Clermont, but afterwards the North River) was completed, and removed to the Jersey shore. On the 2d of September,

## FULTON'S CLERMONT.

1807, Mr. Fulton invited his friends to join him on a trial trip. The word was given, but it was found that the engine would not move. Who can conceive Fulton's anxiety, as he hastens below to ascertain the cause of the difficulty? Is the cherished project of years after all but a dream? Is he to incur loss and ridicule by the utter failure of his plans? No! he finds the obstacle, removes it. The wheels revolve, and the boat glides freely over the waters of the Hudson. Honor and fortune are his: a giant stride has been taken in the march of intellect.

The Clermont plied for some years between New York and Albany. Before this the passage had been made in sloops, and required from six to ten days. The Clermont performed it in 36 hours, at a charge of \$7 to each passenger. For several years the Hudson could boast of the only steamboat in the world.

---

ton's previous history? What had Darwin written shortly before? Where did Fulton devise his first engine? Where did he then go? By whom was he aided? Where did he commence the construction of his boat? What were its dimensions? What was its name? Give an account of the trial trip. What became of the Clermont? What is said of the time and price of a passage between New

458. In the summer of 1809, Thomas Paine, whose writings had been of great service to the patriot cause in the Revolution, died in his 73d year. He was born in Norfolk, England, received an imperfect education, and in early life followed his father's vocation, which was that of a stay-maker. A political pamphlet, of which he was the author, introduced him to the notice of Franklin, by whose advice he went to America. He arrived on the eve of the Revolutionary struggle, and, by his famous pamphlet entitled "Common Sense" and other publications, helped to impress on the minds of the people the necessity of an entire separation from the mother country. The legislature of Pennsylvania recognized his services by presenting him £500. Congress voted him \$3,000; and from New York he received 500 acres of land. Paine subsequently took part in the French Revolution, but was arrested and imprisoned, and narrowly escaped with his life. At the age of 65, he returned to America; but his attacks on religion, added to his intemperate habits, prevented him from being treated with the consideration which he would otherwise have received, and his life closed in obscurity and wretchedness.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, FROM 1809 TO 1812.

459. JEFFERSON was succeeded, March 4th, 1809, by James Madison of Va., who appointed Robert Smith, of Maryland, secretary of state. George Clinton was reëlected vice-president. The difficulties with Great Britain first engaged the president's attention. The non-intercourse act,

---

York and Albany? How long did the Clermont remain the only steamboat in the world? 458. Who died in the summer of 1809? Where was Thomas Paine born? What vocation did he follow in early life? What introduced him to Franklin's notice? What services did he render in the Revolution? How were these services rewarded? What was Paine's subsequent history?

459. By whom was Jefferson succeeded? Who was elected vice-president at the same time with Madison? What subject first engaged the president's atten-

passed just before his inauguration, was still in force, but did not afford a sufficient remedy. The popular cry of "Free Trade and Sailors' Rights" was heard all over the land; and government at last made peremptory demands of England, the refusal of which, it was understood, would result in war. No concessions could be obtained. Mr. Pinkney,

JAMES MADISON.

disappointed in his negotiations, left London on the 1st of March, 1811; and shortly afterwards Mr. Madison dismissed the British minister.

460. While affairs were in this position, Captain Bingham, of the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*, discovered at a distance the American ship *President*, under Commodore Rodgers, and gave chase. As he neared the *President*, Captain Bingham began to doubt whether he was authorized in making an attack, and finally altered his course. The American commodore now in turn pursued. As he approached, a gun was fired from the *Little Belt*, and an engagement followed. The British vessel was severely injured, and thirty of her men were disabled. On the *President*, but one was wounded.

461. The charter of the Bank of the United States expired on the 4th of March, 1811. Its management had been judicious, and its effects beneficial; but, after a long discussion, which engaged the leading statesmen of the country, both houses refused to recharter it; the senate by the

---

tion? Give an account of what passed between Great Britain and the United States in the early years of Madison's administration. 460. Give an account of the engagement between the *Little Belt* and the *President*. 461. When did the

casting vote of the vice-president, the lower house by a majority of one.

462. The rapid strides with which the western Indians beheld civilization advancing upon them once more awakened their hostility, and made them ready, despite their fears of Wayne's threat, to unite under the first shrewd leader that should present himself. Such a leader was found in the Shawnee chief Tecumseh. This famous "king of the woods" was born on the Mad River, Ohio, in 1768. He was distinguished in childhood for bravery and endurance, and, when he grew up, took part in the various battles fought by his people in defence of their hunting-grounds. He had uniformly opposed the cession of territory to the United States, and had refused his signature to the treaty made with Wayne. Finding it for the time useless to resist, he had then tried to wean his countrymen from their intemperate habits, and to form such a combination among all the Indian tribes as would prevent any further sale of their lands. Partial success in these efforts encouraged Tecumseh to assume a bolder tone. He denied the validity of existing treaties; and, when the U. S. agent remonstrated with him for transgressing the bounds settled by Wayne, he replied that "the Great Spirit above knew no bounds, neither would his red children acknowledge any".

The efforts of the Shawnee chief were seconded by his brother, who pretended to be a prophet sent by the Great Spirit to reform his countrymen. While Tecumseh was engaged in visiting the frontier tribes for a distance of 1,000 miles, the Prophet was acquiring great influence among the adjacent nations. Crowds flocked to hear the new doctrines which he preached. He finally fixed his head-quarters at the mouth of the Tippecanoe (in the western part of Indiana), where he built a town for his followers. Supported by his brother's influence, and encouraged by British agents, Te-

---

charter of the Bank of the U. States expire? What is said of the attempts to re-charter it? 462. What once more awakened the hostility of the western Indians? Who appeared as their leader? Where was Tecumseh born? What is said of his early history? Finding it useless to resist, to what did he confine his efforts? Encouraged by his success, what ground did he finally take? By whom were

cumseh in 1810 felt that the time for action had arrived. A messenger was sent to Gov. Harrison to ask for a conference, and the wily chief received permission to visit Vincennes with a small party of warriors. He came with 400. The suspicions of the general were awakened, and in making arrangements for the council, which was held in a grove near the town, he took care to provide against treachery. It was well he did so. While he was speaking in reply to Tecumseh, the latter insolently interrupted him, and the other Red Men made hostile movements as if for an attack. The decisive measures of Gov. Harrison, however, overawed them, and Tecumseh was allowed to depart with a rebuke for his perfidy.

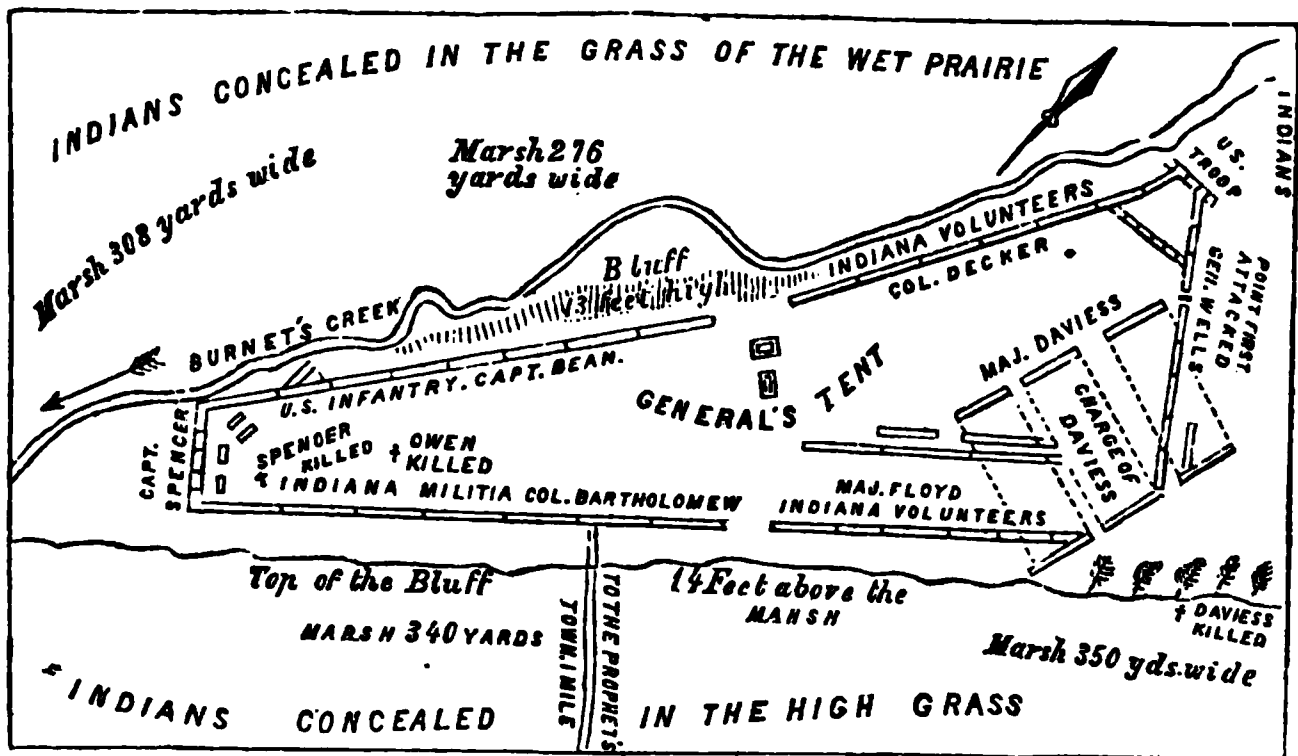
463. In 1811, after paying Gov. Harrison another visit, and disavowing all hostile purposes, Tecumseh went to the south, to bring over the Creeks to his league. Some of the tribes willingly listened to his fiery harangues, and accepted the bundle of red sticks, which was the emblem of their union for a bloody war; but one of the Georgia chiefs received the sticks in such a way that Tecumseh distrusted his sincerity. Sternly eying the suspected warrior, he threatened the whole tribe with the vengeance of Heaven, and declared that when he reached Detroit he would stamp on the ground and shake down every house in their village. The Creeks counted the days; and by a strange coincidence, when the predicted time had about arrived, the whole southern country was visited by an earthquake. Trees that had borne the gales of centuries trembled and fell; the waters of the Mississippi were convulsed; and the town of New Madrid was swallowed up by its boiling waves. As the terrified Creeks beheld the earth shake and their wigwams totter and fall, they remembered the vengeful words of the Shawnee, and cried in consternation, "Tecumseh has reached Detroit!"

---

Tecumseh's efforts seconded? What did the Prophet pretend? In what was he engaged, while Tecumseh was enlisting the more distant tribes? In 1810, what did Tecumseh do? Give an account of his interview with Gen. Harrison. 463. In 1811, where did Tecumseh go? For what purpose? How was he received? What passed between him and one of the Georgia chiefs? How was Tecumseh's



464. So alarming were the accounts of Tecumseh's movements, that government finally instructed Gen. Harrison to march against the Prophet's town and destroy it unless a satisfactory treaty was signed. Volunteers were raised for the expedition. Early in November, 1811, the U. S. army approached the Tippecanoe. It was met by Indian ambassadors, who expressed a strong desire for peace, and promised that the Prophet would the next day sign the required treaty. That night the men lay encamped in order of battle. About two hours before dawn (November 7th), one of the sentinels espied something moving in the grass, and fired. The discharge was answered by the terrible war-whoop of the Indians, who had crept up to surprise the sleeping army, and now with rifle and tomahawk rushed to the very doors of the tents. Not one in twenty of Gen. Harrison's men had been in battle before, but they stood their ground like heroes. Fierce and repeated charges were made by the Red



PLAN OF THE BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.

Men, whom the pretended Prophet had inspired with extraordinary courage; but each time they were repulsed. Har-

threatening prediction fulfilled? 464. What instructions were issued by government in 1811? Early in November, 1811, where were Harrison and his army? By whom were they met? How did they pass the night? What took place two hours before dawn? What is said of Gen. Harrison's men? [See Map.—Where were the Indians concealed? On what creek was the battle? How high was

rison hastened from point to point, exhorting his men to keep an unbroken line till daylight should enable them to drive the savages from their position.

The wounds inflicted by the Indians were unusually painful, in consequence, as it was afterwards found, of their having chewed their bullets, and thus given them a rough surface, which tore the flesh and caused poignant torture. Every charge of the savages was followed by fearful screams from the wounded. Still the troops maintained their line. Gen. Harrison, though marked for special aim, escaped with no further injury than the loss of a lock of hair, cut off by a bullet. At last the wished-for dawn appeared. The assailants were soon dislodged from their cover, and pursued to a neighboring swamp. They left 40 dead upon the field; the Americans lost 62 killed, and 126 more or less injured. Gen. Harrison, as tender-hearted as he was prudent and brave, carefully ministered to the wounded, and shared his stores with his men, who for a time had no food but horse-flesh. The Prophet's town was destroyed, and the victorious army returned to Vincennes. The defeat of Tippecanoe was a severe blow to Tecumseh. In hazarding a battle during his absence, the Prophet disobeyed his direct commands, and thus forfeited his confidence; nor did the Indians any longer believe in the sacred character of one whose predictions and promises had proved utterly false.

465. The twelfth Congress of the United States met November 4th, 1811. It contained many already distinguished as statesmen, and others destined to become so. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, appeared for the first time in the house of representatives; Henry Clay, of Kentucky, was elected speaker. Congress without delay prepared for war with England. It was resolved to enlist 25,000 regulars and

---

the bluff occupied by the Americans? What general commanded near the point first attacked? Describe the charges of the Red Men. What did Harrison exhort his men to do? What is said of the wounds inflicted in this battle? What was the cause of this? What injury did Gen. Harrison receive? On the appearance of dawn, what was done? What was the loss on each side? How did Gen. Harrison treat his men? What did the victorious army then do? What effect had this defeat on the Prophet's standing? 465. When did the twelfth Congress meet? What new members made their appearance? What measures were

50,000 volunteers; and the respective states were directed to arm and equip their proportion of 100,000 militia for the defence of the coast and frontier. Import duties generally were doubled, and a loan of \$11,000,000 was authorized.

While the country was anxiously waiting for Great Britain's final response, Louisiana was admitted as the seventeenth state of the Union (April 8th, 1812); and the Territory of Missouri was organized, with St. Louis as its capital. Soon after, the answer of the British ministry arrived. They would abandon no measures, however injurious or offensive to the United States, which the war with France made it their interest to employ. All hope of peace was now laid aside. Clay, Calhoun, and others, took the ground that further submission would be incompatible with the honor of America. Accordingly, war was declared by a vote of 79 to 49 in the house, and 19 to 13 in the senate. On the 18th of June, 1812, President Madison signed the bill, and war was formally proclaimed the following day.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED), 1812.

466. ON the declaration of war, Gen. Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed commander-in-chief of the American army. His force consisted mostly of New York militia, stationed at Plattsburg and on the Niagara frontier. Twelve hundred Ohio volunteers, raised while the question of war was still under discussion, together with 300 regulars, were placed under the command of Gen. William Hull, whose Revolutionary services entitled him to the confidence of his countrymen. Gen. Hull had been governor of Michigan

---

taken, in anticipation of war? When was Louisiana admitted? What territory was organized? What answer did the British ministry finally make to the demands of America? What ground was taken by Clay, Calhoun, and others? When and by how large majorities was war declared?

466. Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American army? Of what did his force mainly consist? To whom was the command of the northwestern army intrusted? Of whom did it consist? What office did Gen. Hull hold?

from the time of its organization as a territory in 1805; and his representations, as well as the hope of stopping the machinations of British agents and the Indian outrages which they had caused, led the U. S. government to project an invasion of Canada as the first step in the campaign. Hull hastened to Dayton, Ohio, to take command of his men, and led them by slow and laborious marches through the wilderness towards Detroit. He soon realized that this small force was totally inadequate to the object proposed; and the men, on their side, became equally convinced of the inefficiency of their commander.

467. Gen. Hull had expected that war would be declared, but by some mismanagement no news of that event reached him till some time after it was known to the British. The very day he received the intelligence, a boat containing his baggage, stores, official papers, &c., was captured by the enemy. On the 9th of July, Hull received instructions to proceed with the invasion of Canada; and three days afterwards he crossed to Sandwich, on the British side of the Detroit River. With an insignificant force containing but 300 men that had seen service, his only chance of success lay in marching on the enemies' posts before the Canadian militia could be armed for their defence. Hull's course, however, was just the opposite. Ev-

---

Through his representations, what did the U. S. government project? Where did Hull go, to take command of his men? On the road to Detroit, what did they mutually find? 467. What was the first loss on the part of the Americans? By what was it caused? On the 9th of July, what instructions did Hull receive? Three days afterwards what did he do? What would have been his only chance

ery movement was characterized by indecision and delay. By the time the American general was ready to attack Malden, the first British fort that lay before him, it was strongly garrisoned with regulars and militia. New difficulties now arose. Tecumseh called his warriors to the field, and joined the British army. Supplies were cut off, and the invaders suffered for food. An intercepted letter stated that all the Indians of the north were preparing for a descent on the United States. Gen. Dearborn had agreed with the governor of Canada to suspend hostilities, except on that part of the frontier occupied by Hull; and Gen. Brock, thus released from the necessity of defending Niagara, was hastening with reënforcements to the relief of Malden. Hull was not the man to hazard an attack with all these dangers before him. Hastily retreating, he abandoned the Canada shore and returned to Detroit.

468. Mackinaw was at this time one of the most exposed posts belonging to the United States. It was a great emporium for furs, traders from Albany and Montreal resorting thither at certain seasons to buy from the Indians the products of their traps and rifles. Before the feeble garrison at this place had heard that war was declared, they were attacked by a force of British and Indians, and obliged to surrender.

469. No sooner had Gen. Brock reached Malden and assumed command of the whole British army, than he led his forces to Sandwich, and prepared to attack Detroit. Tecumseh was the only one acquainted with the surrounding country, and the British commander called on him for information. Spreading a piece of elm-bark on the ground, he drew his knife, and without hesitation sketched an accurate plan of the whole region, with its hills, rivers, roads, and marshes. Brock was so pleased with this ready display of talent that he took a sash from his person and bound it round the waist of his ally. About this time, Tecumseh was made a general in the British army.

---

of success? What course did he pursue? What was the state of Malden by the time he was ready to attack it? What new difficulties now arose to embarrass him? What did they lead him to do? 468. What is said of Mackinaw? Give an account of its capture. 469. What was Gen. Brock's first step, on assuming com-

On the 16th of August, 300 British regulars, 450 Canadians, and 600 Indians, crossed the river a short distance below Detroit, under cover of several armed vessels. No attempt was made to prevent them from landing; but, on their march to the fort, they were annoyed by parties of Americans. The latter, also, stood ready to receive them at their advanced battery, which was favorably planted, in such a way as to sweep with grape-shot the approaching columns of the enemy. There was every prospect of a successful resistance; but, at the critical moment when the order to fire was expected, Hull, unable to repress his fears, seemed to lose all presence of mind. Hardly had shots been interchanged, when, to the chagrin of his men, who are said to have wept when they beheld the disgraceful signal, he raised a white flag over the fort. No stipulations were made for the honors of war. Not only Detroit, with its garrison, stores, and public property of every kind, but the whole of Michigan, was surrendered to the British.

470. Gen. Hull was afterwards exchanged for thirty British prisoners, and tried by a court-martial for treason and cowardice. Col. Cass (afterwards U. S. senator from Michigan) and other officers who had served under him condemned him in unmeasured terms; at the same time, it was clear that government had ordered the invasion to be made with a very inadequate force, and had not properly supported the army of the north-west or attended to the suggestions of its general. Hull was found guilty of cowardice and sentenced to be shot; but, in consideration of his Revolutionary services, he was pardoned by the president.

471. About the time that Detroit surrendered, Fort Dearborn, on the present site of Chicago, was invested by a body of savages. The commander, feeling that he could not make

---

mand of the British? How did he obtain information respecting the surrounding country? How did he reward Tecumseh? [See Map, p. 345.—What river separates Detroit from Sandwich? What two lakes does the Detroit River connect? In what direction is Sandwich from Malden?] What movement was made by Brock on the 16th of August? How were the British annoyed on their advance? What is said of the Americans' advanced battery? What was the prospect? Give an account of Hull's conduct. What did the British gain by this surrender? 470. Give an account of Hull's trial and sentence. 471. About

good a defence with his small garrison, proposed to surrender the post on condition that he and his men should be allowed to retire in safety. The Indians assented; but, learning that a quantity of powder and whiskey had been destroyed to prevent its falling into their hands, they attacked the retreating soldiers on their march, killed some, and distributed the survivors among the neighboring tribes. The next day, they burned Fort Dearborn to the ground.

472. The mortification of the American people at the loss of Detroit was relieved by the triumphs of their brave sailors. The whole efficient naval force of the country consisted of 8 frigates, 8 sloops and brigs, and 170 small gunboats. With these was to be encountered the proud mistress of the ocean, with her thousand vessels. About the middle of July, Captain Isaac Hull, in the American frigate *Constitution*, fell in with a British squadron and was chased by five vessels, but managed to escape by superior seamanship. On the 19th of August, while cruising near the Gulf of St. Lawrence, he encountered the *Guerriere* [*gāre-e-āre*], one of the finest frigates in the British navy. She had for some time been on the lookout for Yankee craft, as her officers contemptuously called them, and carried at her mast-heads two flags, one with her name, the other bearing the inscription "Not the Little Belt," alluding to the vessel which had been roughly handled by the President before the war. The *Constitution* made ready for action, and approached the enemy. Broad-sides were received from the *Guerriere*, and several men fell at the guns. The crew burned with impatience to return the fire; still no order was given. At last the experienced eye of Hull told him that he had reached the right position, and in a voice of thunder he gave the word. Broadside after broadside was poured in. The decks of the *Guerriere* were swept; her masts fell; she became unmanageable and

---

this time, what fort was invested by savages? What did its commander propose? State what followed. What was done to the fort? 472. How was the mortification of the Americans at the loss of Detroit relieved? How large was the naval force of America and Great Britain at the commencement of the war? What frigate was commanded by Capt. Isaac Hull? What befell him in July? What, on the 19th of August? What flags did the *Guerriere* carry? Give an account of the engagement between the *Constitution* and the *Guerriere*. What was the

struck her colors. Fifteen of her men were killed and sixty-three wounded. She had received such injuries that it was impossible to bring her into port, and the next day she was blown up. The Constitution had but seven men killed and seven wounded.

473. Capt. Porter, of the Essex, soon afterwards separated a British brig from her convoy, and found on board \$14,000 in specie and 150 soldiers. He next captured the Alert, after an action of eight minutes. The frigate President had the good fortune to overhaul an English packet with \$200,000 on board; and the Argus took several valuable prizes, which she brought safely into the port of New York. Lieutenant Elliott (afterwards Commodore) made an important capture on Lake Erie in October, taking the Caledonia as she lay in fancied security under the guns of a British fort, and bringing her off with a cargo of furs worth \$200,000. Commodore Chauncey also operated with success on the same lake, having got together a few vessels mounting in all 32 guns, with which he kept in check a British fleet bearing six times that number.

474. Capt. Jacob Jones, in the sloop Wasp, also sustained the honor of the American arms. On the 13th of October, he met the British brig Frolic, convoying a fleet of merchantmen, and an action ensued. The Frolic fired as she rose on the waves, and only injured the rigging of her antagonist. The Wasp poured in her broadside as she descended, and nearly every shot told on the hull of the enemy. Having approached the Frolic so near that his rammers while he was loading touched her side, Capt. Jones ordered his men to board. A melancholy scene of destruction lay before them. The decks were covered with dead and dying. The colors were left flying, only because there was no one to haul them down. But three officers and a private at the helm were left alive on deck. Unfortunately, the Americans

---

loss on each side? What became of the Guerriere? 473. What achievements were performed by Captain Porter? What was done by the President and the Argus? What capture was made on Lake Erie? Describe Commodore Chauncey's operations on the same lake. 474. Who commanded the Wasp? What brig did he encounter? Give an account of the engagement. On boarding the



could not secure their prize. The British seventy-four, *Poictiers* [*poi-teerz'*], coming along before the *Wasp* could make sail, captured both vessels and took them into Bermuda.

475. The frigate *United States* was commanded by Capt. Decatur, one of the heroes of the Tripolitan War. On the 25th of October, 1812, he encountered the British frigate *Macedonian* off the Azores. After an action of an hour and a half, the *Macedonian* surrendered. Decatur was as distinguished for courtesy as courage. When Capt. Carden tendered his sword to him, he replied that he could not think of taking the sword of an officer who had defended himself so gallantly, but would be happy to grasp his hand.

476. Commodore Bainbridge, in the *Constitution*, on the 29th of December, added another to the brilliant triumphs of the American navy. Running along the coast of Brazil, he descried a British frigate, and gave chase. After a spirited action, which lasted an hour, the enemy struck. The captured vessel was found to be the *Java*. She carried fewer guns than the *Constitution*, but a larger force; having, besides her regular crew, 100 men designed for the East India service.

The news of these achievements raised the national enthusiasm to the highest pitch. Those hearts of oak who had thus won glory for America on a field where it was least expected, received the grateful homage of the nation. Congress rewarded them with complimentary resolutions, as well as something more substantial. Fifty thousand dollars was appropriated as prize money to the *Constitution* for the capture of the *Guerriere*, and a like amount for the *Java*. The crew of the *Wasp* received \$25,000; and \$100,000 went to the captors of the *Macedonian*. Besides those mentioned, a number of minor actions took place from time to time, in which the Americans were for the most part victorious. Pri-

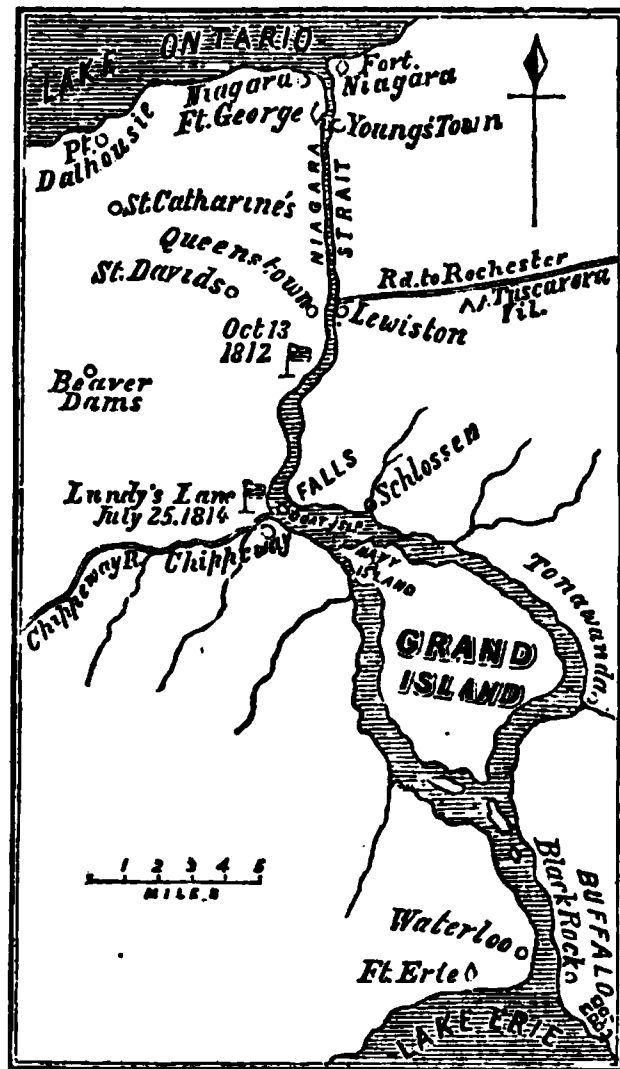
---

Frolic, what did Captain Jones find? What happened before the *Wasp* could make sail? 475. By whom was the *United States* commanded? What vessel did she encounter? When and where? What was the result? What passed between Capt. Carden and Decatur? 476. What engagement took place off the coast of Brazil? When? How did the vessels compare in force? What was the result of the engagement? How was the news of these achievements received? How were their heroes rewarded? What is said of the minor actions that took

vateers scoured the ocean, and British commerce suffered as it had never done before. In the course of the year, 250 vessels and 3,000 sailors, besides valuable cargoes, were captured from the enemy.

477. Meanwhile, important events were transpiring on the frontier of New York. By the time the armistice granted by Gen. Dearborn had terminated, a body of militia and a few regulars had gathered at Lewiston, on the Niagara River, under Gen. Van Rensselaer. The troops were impatient for action, and their commander determined to cross the Niagara and make an attack on Queenstown. With some difficulty boats were procured; and, on the 13th of October, the van of the invading army crossed under Colonels Van Rensselaer and Christie, who

were joined by Lieutenant-colonel (afterwards Lieutenant-general) Scott as a volunteer. The British were driven from their batteries, and the heights were speedily carried. Rallying under Gen. Brock, they attempted to regain their ground, but were repulsed with loss, their commander himself, falling with a mortal wound. The Americans now desired to fortify their position, but no implements had been brought over. Not more than a thousand men had as yet crossed;



THE NIAGARA FRONTIER.

place? How many British vessels and sailors were captured in 1812? 477. Where were important events meanwhile transpiring? Where had some American militia assembled? Under whom? [See Map.—How is Lewiston situated? What place is opposite to it, on the Canada side? In what direction does the Niagara River flow? What lakes does it connect? Is Queenstown above or below the Falls? What islands in the Niagara?] What did Van Rensselaer determine to do? When did the van of the invading army cross? Under what leaders? Give an account of their movements. After carrying the heights, what did the Americans desire to do? What prevented them from so doing? How many

and, as there was immediate necessity for reënforcements to meet the fresh columns of British and Indians, advancing under Gen. Sheaffe [*shefe*], Van Rensselaer returned to Lewiston to hasten the embarkation of his remaining troops. The men stood ready on the shore; but the sight of their wounded comrades brought back to camp had suddenly dampened their ardor. They denied the constitutional right of the general to lead them out of their own state, and refused to embark. Meanwhile those on the Canada side, thus basely abandoned to the enemy, after maintaining for a while an unequal struggle, at length had to surrender. Sixty were killed, 100 wounded, and the rest were taken prisoners. Van Rensselaer resigned his command in disgust, and was succeeded by Gen. Smyth, who was a good tactician, but had seen little service. After projecting two invasions of Canada, both of which were unsuccessful, Smyth also resigned.

478. Thus far the reverses of the Americans on land had been as decided as their triumphs on the ocean. Twice they repulsed the enemy at Ogdensburg, and these successes, with the defeat of a party of British and Indians by Col. Pike during a rapid incursion into Canada, were the only victories of which they could boast. Nothing more was attempted during the remainder of the season. The presidential election engrossed the attention of the people during the fall, Madison being warmly opposed by those who condemned the war. He was chosen, however, for another term, and the vice-presidency was conferred on Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts.

479. The reassembling of Congress in November was the signal for violent discussion between the advocates and opponents of the war. The latter pointed to the successive defeats of the campaign, and complained in strong terms of the inefficient measures of government. Still Congress pre-

---

Americans had crossed? What rendered it necessary to have immediate reënforcements? Where did Van Rensselaer go? What position did his men take? What was the consequence of this cowardly conduct? What was the American loss? What did Van Rensselaer do? By whom was he succeeded? What is said of Gen. Smyth? 478. What had thus far been the fortune of the Americans on land? What were the only victories of which they could boast? 479. What

pared to prosecute hostilities with vigor. Provision was made for the increase of the army, and the construction of four ships-of-the-line, six frigates, and six sloops-of-war.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED), 1813.

480. EARLY in 1813, in deference to public sentiment, Madison made some changes in his cabinet; appointing William Jones, of Pennsylvania, head of the navy department, and Gen. Armstrong secretary of war. James Monroe, who had been secretary of state ever since the commencement of the war, continued at the head of the cabinet. The thirteenth Congress commenced an extra session on the 24th of May. Daniel Webster took his seat for the first time in the house of representatives, and Henry Clay was reëlected speaker. The federalists, as a body, constantly voted against the measures proposed by government. Some of them, however, including Rufus King, senator from New York, supported the president on the ground, that, though unwisely commenced, the war should be vigorously prosecuted.

481. The only force in the field for the protection of the western frontier, after the fall of Detroit, was a body of Kentucky volunteers, who had promptly responded to the call of the executive, before the news of Hull's surrender was received. In accordance with the universal wish, the governor of Kentucky had appointed Gen. Harrison to the command of this force, though he was not a resident of the state. Hardly had Harrison joined his men, and inspired them with

---

ensued on the reassembling of Congress? Of what did the opponents of the war complain? What measures were taken by Congress?

480. Early in 1813, what changes were made in the cabinet? Who remained secretary of state? When did Congress meet? Who appeared in the lower house for the first time? Who was elected speaker? What was the course of most of the federalists? What position was taken by a portion of that party?

481. What was the only force now in the field for the defence of the western frontier? Who was appointed to their command by the governor of Kentucky?

confidence and enthusiasm, when he was obliged to give way to Gen. Winchester, whom the national government had appointed to the command of the north-western army. The volunteers expressed their dissatisfaction freely; and it was found expedient to yield to their wishes, and supersede Winchester with the veteran who more than all others enjoyed the confidence of the west. With his commission Harrison received extraordinary powers, which no officer before him had enjoyed except Washington and Greene in the Revolution. He was required to defend the whole frontier from Pennsylvania to Missouri, and immediately began to reorganize the army.

October, 1812, found Harrison and his men on the march for Detroit, which post it was resolved to recover. Their route lay through a swamp that seemed interminable, and the soldiers suffered much. Their officers, however, bore every hardship with them, and they continued to advance. Their progress was necessarily slow, and the approach of winter obliged Gen. Harrison to defer the attack on Detroit till spring. He fixed his head-quarters at Franklinton, Ohio, and stationed a division of his army, under Gen. Winchester, at Fort Defiance, on the Maumee.

482. Early in January, 1813, Winchester received information that the inhabitants of Frenchtown, on the Raisin River, were in danger of attack; and, though he thereby ran the risk of disconcerting the plans of his commander, he marched forth to their help. The enemy were found and dispersed. Shortly afterwards, Winchester's camp was attacked by an army of 1,500 British and Indians, from Malden, under Proctor. After a struggle, which cost each party not far from 300 men, the surviving Americans surrendered on the

---

Who, by the national government? What change did the administration soon find it expedient to make? What powers were intrusted to Gen. Harrison? What was he required to do? Where were Harrison and his men in October, 1812? What post was it proposed to recover? Give an account of their march. What did the approach of winter compel Harrison to do? Where did he fix his head-quarters? Where was Gen. Winchester stationed? 482. What information did Winchester receive early in January? [See Map, p. 345.—Where is Fort Defiance? Into what does the Maumee empty? Where is Frenchtown? Into what does the Raisin empty?] What did Winchester do? Give an account of

recommendation of their general, who had been taken, and the pledge that their lives and property should be safe. Proctor immediately returned to Malden with such of his prisoners as were able to walk, leaving the rest behind without any guard to protect them from his bloodthirsty allies. Hardly had the British departed when the savages gave free vent to their passions, robbing, torturing, and scalping their defenceless victims. The British officer left in command made no attempt to save the sufferers. To revenge the losses they had sustained in the battle, the Indians finally set fire to two houses in which most of the wounded were crowded, driving back into the flames those who attempted to escape. Such of the Americans as survived these atrocities were taken to Detroit, where they were dragged through the streets and offered for sale. The people of the place sacrificed every thing they could spare to ransom them, and remonstrated with Proctor for allowing such barbarities, but without effect.

483. The loss of this important division deranged General Harrison's plans. He was too weak to attack Detroit, and could only hope to hold the ground already occupied. Fort Meigs [*megz*] was commenced at the Rapids of the Maumee; and the whole American force, 1,200 strong, labored day and night to complete it before the enemy should gather for its attack. They needed all their haste. Hardly had they completed their works, and surrounded them with a ditch dug in the frozen ground, when Proctor with his British, and Tecumseh with 600 warriors from the Wabash, appeared before the fort. Their batteries opened on the 1st of May, but a high breastwork of earth protected the Americans, and little impression was made on their defences. The Indians fired into the fort from trees, which they climbed for the purpose. On one occasion, a soldier was mortally wounded at

---

his expedition. By whom was he attacked at Frenchtown? What was the result of the battle? How did Proctor keep his pledge? How were the prisoners that were left behind treated? 493. What was the consequence of the loss of this division? What was the most that Harrison could hope to do? What fort was erected? Where? By whom was it soon invested? When did the enemy open their batteries? By what were the Americans protected? How did the Indians

the side of Harrison; on another, a ball struck the bench on which the general was sitting. Still he escaped, though constantly employed in directing the defences. His example made every man a hero.

On the 4th of May, news reached the beleaguered garrison that Gen. Clay, who had come by rapid marches with a reënforcement of 1,200 Kentuckians, was within a few miles of the fort. Harrison sent orders that a detachment from this force should land on the left side of the river and destroy the British batteries, while a sortie was made from the fort against those on the right side. The latter movement succeeded, and 45 prisoners were taken. On the left side, Col. Dudley was less fortunate. His men gallantly drove the British from their batteries; but the joy of Gen. Harrison, who was watching them with his glass, was turned into consternation, when, instead of retreating to their boats, according to his orders, he saw them preparing to maintain their position. Already the main body of the enemy was in motion to intercept them. Foreseeing their fate unless they saved themselves by an immediate retreat, Harrison offered \$1,000 to any one who would cross the river and warn Col. Dudley of his danger. The mission was undertaken; but, before the messenger could get across, the Americans were cut off. About 80 were killed, and 550 taken prisoners; 150 escaped to their boats.

The prisoners were treated with the usual barbarity. Gen. Proctor took no pains to save them. The savages, while glutting their thirst for blood, were suddenly startled by terrible shouts in their own tongue, and the next moment Tecumseh dashed into the circle. Two Indians were in the act of killing a helpless American who had surrendered. Hurling the murderers to the earth, he drew his knife and tomahawk, and dared any of the affrighted throng to take the life of an unresisting prisoner. Even Proctor escaped not

---

try to pick off the garrison? What narrow escapes had Gen. Harrison? What news reached the garrison of Fort Meigs, on the 4th of May? What orders were sent by Harrison? What was the success of the sally? What was Col. Dudley's success on the other side? What fatal mistake did he make? What did Harrison soon see? How did he try to save them? What was the result? How were

the rebuke of the indignant chief, who on various occasions displayed a more Christian spirit than his Christian ally. "Your Indians can not be restrained," was Proctor's answer. "Go put on petticoats," indignantly interrupted Tecumseh; "you are not fit to command men." Finding that he could neither frighten Harrison into a surrender, nor make any impression on his defences, the British general soon abandoned the siege.

484. The gallantry of American seamen, though not marked by the same uniform success as in the preceding year, continued to be the theme of admiration. On the 23d of February, Capt. James Lawrence, in the *Hornet*, after having shortly before captured a brig containing \$20,000, encountered off the coast of South America the *Peacock*, a vessel about equal in size to his own. After an action of fifteen minutes, the *Peacock* struck, and raised signals of distress. She was found to be sinking rapidly, and, despite the efforts of both victors and vanquished, went down, carrying some of her own crew, and three of the *Hornet*'s. Captain Lawrence, on his return to port, was greeted with the usual honors, and appointed to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*. Sailing out of Boston, with imperfect equipments and an ill-assorted crew, he met the British frigate *Shannon*. Early in the action, the brave Lawrence was wounded. His last order as he was carried below, "*Don't give up the ship!*" has ever since served as a watchword for American sailors. In a few moments, a hand grenade thrown from the deck of the *Shannon* fell in the *Chesapeake*'s arm-chest and exploded with disastrous effect. The enemy immediately boarded, and the *Chesapeake* was soon theirs. In killed and wounded she had lost nearly 150 men, to 79 on the part of the British. Capt. Lawrence expired after four days' suffering (at the age of 31), and was buried at Halifax with the honors of war. His remains were afterwards removed to New York.

---

the prisoners treated? Describe Tecumseh's noble conduct. What passed between him and Proctor? 484. What is said of the gallantry of American seamen during the year 1813? Give an account of the engagement between the *Hornet* and the *Peacock*. To what vessel was Capt. Lawrence appointed on his return?



FAIL OF CAPTAIN LAWRENCE.—"DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP."

This reverse was followed by another in August. The sloop *Argus*, after carrying the American minister to France, had cruised in the British Channel, committing great havoc among the enemy's shipping. Several vessels started in pursuit, one of which discovered her by the light of a ship that she had taken and fired. A well-contested action followed, which resulted in the capture of the *Argus* and the destruction of a great part of her crew.

Commodore Porter, in the *Essex*, had selected the Pacific for his sphere of action. In a five months' cruise, extending over the summer of 1813, he captured twelve armed whalers, of which he fitted up several as tenders, and despatched others to the United States with valuable cargoes of oil.—On the 5th of September, Lieut. Burrows, in the *Enterprise*, a few days' sail from Portland, fell in with the English vessel

---

Give an account of the engagement between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*. What was the loss on each side? What became of Capt. Lawrence? What reverse followed in August? Recount Commodore Porter's achievements. De-

Boxer. The British had nailed their colors to the mast, so that they could not draw them down ; but, after an engagement of more than half an hour, in which both commanders were mortally wounded, they cried for quarter and surrendered. Burrows refused to be carried from the deck. When the sword of his vanquished adversary was presented to him, he pressed it to his heart, and said, "I die contented." The two commanders were buried side by side with military honors, at Portland.

485. In the spring of 1813, the British government, feeling assured that the war with Napoleon would soon terminate, sent over additional forces for the defence of their possessions in the new world. The Americans, not discouraged by the last campaign, still contemplated an invasion of Canada ; and the brave Pike, now raised to the rank of brigadier-general, was laboriously drilling 2,000 of his countrymen at Sackett's Harbor, to prepare them for a descent as soon as the season would allow. On the 25th of April, 1,700 picked men embarked ; and, crossing Lake Ontario, they landed on the 27th, in face of a severe fire from the enemy, two miles from Toronto (then called York), the capital of Upper Canada. Two redoubts having been taken, Gen. Pike halted his columns within 300 yards of the British barracks, which seemed to be abandoned. An officer was sent forward to reconnoitre. Suddenly the air was rent by a deafening explosion. The earth shook. Huge logs and heavy masses of stones were scattered in all directions. The British had connected a slow match with their magazine, and lighted it as they retired.

Had the Americans not halted as they did, few would have survived to tell the sad story ; as it was, 200 of their number were instantly killed or wounded. Pike was felled to the earth by a heavy stone ; but, forgetting the anguish of his

---

scribe the conflict between the Enterprise and Boxer. Describe the death-scene of Burrows. Where were the two commanders buried ? 485. What was done by Great Britain in the spring of 1813 ? What did the Americans still contemplate ? How was Gen. Pike preparing for the invasion ? When did the invading army start ? Where did they land ? After taking two redoubts, what did Gen. Pike do ? What followed ? How was the explosion caused ? How many Americans were disabled ? Who was among the number ? What did Pike tell his

mutilated frame, he cried out to his men, "Move on, my brave fellows, and revenge your general!" And they did move on, with three loud huzzas. The British gave way. Gen. Sheaffe, with a portion of his regulars, escaped; the rest surrendered. York, together with public property to the amount of half a million of dollars, fell into the hands of the victors. Among the trophies transmitted to the War Department was the mace used by the speaker of the provincial legislature, above which a human scalp was found suspended. Gen. Pike lived long enough to hear the victorious shouts of his men, and to have the captured flag of the enemy placed under his head; then the light gradually faded from his eye, and he expired without a groan. This brave man had previously distinguished himself by his explorations in the service of government, having been the first to penetrate the wilds of Kansas and the valley of the Upper Mississippi.

486. After their victory at York, the American army, reinforced to 6,000 men, and led by Generals Dearborn and Lewis, proceeded to Fort George, near the mouth of the Niagara River [see Map, p. 351]. This post was taken without difficulty, and along with it a number of prisoners, though most of the garrison made good their escape. The enemy, in alarm, blew up their remaining posts on the Niagara River, and retreated to Burlington Heights, at the western extremity of Lake Ontario. A superior force of Americans set out in their pursuit, but were attacked at night by the British, while encamped a few miles from their lines. The enemy were so warmly received that they beat a retreat, but they had managed in the *mêlée* to capture the American generals, and the officer left in command shrunk from the responsibility of further offensive operations, and fell back to await orders from Dearborn. This was unfortunate; an immediate

---

men? What was the result? What fell into the hands of the victors? What trophy was sent to the War Department? Describe Gen. Pike's death-scene. For what besides his military talents was he distinguished? 486. Where did the American army next proceed? [See Map, p. 351.—Where is Fort George? What place nearly opposite to it on the New York side?] By whom were the Americans led? What post was taken? What was done by the enemy? Who set out in their pursuit? What took place during the night? Who were captured in the *mêlée*? What was the consequence? What happened to the British gen-

attack on the British could hardly have failed of success, for their general also had been separated from his army in the darkness, and was found the next day several miles from camp with neither hat nor sword.—During the absence of the American troops on this expedition, a thousand of the enemy made a descent on Sackett's Harbor; after destroying some of the stores there collected, they were repulsed by the militia under Gen. Brown, with considerable loss.

487. After his unsuccessful siege of Fort Meigs, Proctor had returned to Malden, where he remained several months inactive. In the latter part of July, he again approached Fort Meigs. Sending Tecumseh with his Indians into the neighboring woods, to make a noise as if a battle were raging there, he tried to draw the garrison out from their defences. But Gen. Clay, who was in command, was not to be thus deceived; and Proctor proceeded to attack Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky [see Map, p. 345], commanded by Major Croghan [*krog'-an*], a youth of twenty-one. Gen. Harrison, on hearing of the threatened attack, sent word to Croghan to retire with his garrison if artillery was brought against the fort, unless such a force of Indians should be collected as would render retreat dangerous. Before the order arrived, the woods around the fort were already filled. The young commander had no alternative but to hold out to the last extremity, and he sent one of his runners to inform Harrison of the fact. Supposing that his messenger might fall into the hands of the enemy, and wishing to mislead them, he closed his despatch with these words, "We have determined to hold this place, and by heavens we can!" Contrary to his expectation, the runner reached Gen. Harrison. The despatch was not explained; and Harrison, thinking that Croghan was wilfully disobeying orders, suspended him from

---

eral? Give an account of the enemy's descent on Sackett's Harbor. 487. Where did Proctor go after his unsuccessful siege of Fort Meigs? Towards the close of July, what did he do? What stratagem did he employ to draw the Americans out? Failing in this, whither did he proceed? [See Map, p. 345.—In what direction was Lower Sandusky, or Fort Stephenson, from Fort Meigs? On what river? Name the six forts in north-western Ohio.] By whom was Fort Stephenson defended? What order did Croghan receive from Gen. Harrison? What was the state of things by the time he received it? Recount the circumstances

command. But the siege had already commenced; no one could reach the fort, and Croghan remained happily ignorant of his general's displeasure.

Five hundred British regulars and eight hundred Indians appeared before the fort on the 1st of August. Proctor called on the garrison to surrender, as the only means of escaping massacre when the fort should be taken. The heroic Croghan answered, that, when the fort was taken, a massacre would do no harm, for none of its defenders would be left alive. A brisk cannonade was at once commenced by Proctor. Croghan had nothing with which to reply except one six-pounder; but, by firing it from different points, he tried to make the enemy believe that he was well provided with artillery. At length he judged from appearances that the besiegers would concentrate their forces on the north-west angle of the fort; and here, having loaded his piece heavily with slugs and grape-shot, he placed it in an embrasure carefully concealed from the enemy.

As he supposed, the British soon prepared to storm the fort, and a column of 350 men approached the north-west angle, where the broken appearance of the wall invited attack. "Come on," cried Colonel Short, leaping into the ditch, "give the Yankees no quarter!" In a few seconds the ditch was filled with men, eager to scale the wall now but thirty feet distant. At this critical moment, a sheet of flame burst from the masked cannon. Fearful was its execution. The ditch was filled with dead and dying. A galling fire of musketry from the walls completed the discomfiture of the enemy. A retreat was ordered, and before dawn the following day the whole army had disappeared. Their loss was estimated at 150, while the Americans had but one killed and seven wounded. The conduct of Croghan was readily explained to Harrison's satisfaction, and loudly applauded by his admiring countrymen.

---

that led Harrison to suspend Croghan from command. What prevented any one from superseding him? On what day was the fort invested? By how many of the enemy? How did Croghan answer Proctor's summons to surrender? How did he reply to the enemy's cannonade? What conclusion did Croghan soon come to? How did he prepare to meet their assault? Give an account of the attack

488. Commodore Chauncey's victorious pennon now floated over the broad waters of Ontario, but the enemy were still masters of Lake Erie; to Oliver H. Perry (a native of Rhode Island, then in his 28th year) was assigned the difficult task of wresting it from them. The U. S. had no efficient naval force on the lake; and Perry was obliged to build his own brigs from the trees that fringed its shores. Working with unremitting diligence, he soon had nine vessels, carrying in all 54 guns, ready for action. With this little fleet, early in August, he stood boldly out into the lake; and the British slowly retired before him. Their force, consisting of six vessels, mounting 63 guns, was commanded by Commodore Barclay, a veteran who had fought with Nelson at the Nile and 'Traf-al-gar', and had already lost an arm in the service of his country. Perry had never seen a naval battle.

After proceeding to Sandusky Bay, where he was furnished with men by Gen. Harrison, Commodore Perry made for Malden, and displayed the American flag before the stronghold of the enemy. The British fleet seemed in no hurry to meet him. On an island in the Detroit River several thousand Indians had assembled, to witness the expected engagement. Mortified at the backwardness of his allies, Tecumseh rowed over to Malden in his canoe to see what was the matter. "You told us," said he to Proctor, "that you commanded the waters. Why do you not go out to fight the Americans? There they are, daring you to meet them." Proctor could hardly satisfy the impatient chief by telling him that 'the big canoes of his great father, King George, were not quite ready'.

489. On the 10th of September, Commodore Barclay bore

---

and repulse. What completed the discomfiture of the enemy? What were they obliged to do? What was the loss on each side? 488. On what waters was Commodore Chauncey victorious? What task was assigned to Commodore Perry? Of what state was Perry a native? How old was he at this time? Where was he obliged to get his vessels? Describe the fleet which he soon had equipped. What did he do in August? What was the naval force of the British on the lake? By whom was it commanded? How was Perry furnished with the requisite number of men? For what place did he then make? What seemed to be the disposition of the British fleet? Who had assembled to witness the engagement? What passed between Tecumseh and Proctor? 489. What movement was made

down towards the American fleet with his vessels arrayed in order of battle. Perry had longed for that hour. His flag-ship, the *Lawrence*, engaged the two largest vessels of the enemy and promptly returned their fire for more than two hours, till every man on board was killed or wounded except eight, who could manage but one gun and fired it the last time only with the aid of Perry himself. Finding he could do nothing more in the *Lawrence*, the American commander leaped into a boat and transferred to the *Niagara* his flag, which bore the immortal words of the dying *Lawrence*, *Don't give up the ship!* In performing this manœuvre, he had to pass within pistol-shot of the British line; and, though he stood proudly erect in his boat, a conspicuous mark for the sharp-shooters of the enemy, he escaped uninjured. The few survivors on the *Lawrence* gave three cheers as they saw him mount the deck of the *Niagara*, and the battle was renewed more fiercely than ever.

Taking advantage of a fresh breeze, Perry now plunged through the enemy's line, giving a raking fire right and left, a masterly manœuvre which turned the fortunes of the day. The smaller vessels came up and seconded the movement. Numerous acts of heroism were performed, which will be long remembered by a grateful nation. From one of the vessels the last remaining sponge of the longest cannon fell over into the lake. A gunner, seeing that without it the best piece on board would become useless, coolly plunged into the waves, recovered the important sponge, was drawn up by his comrades, and was soon loading and firing as calmly as if nothing had happened. A seaman on board of the *Lawrence* was struck by a cannon-ball in the shoulder, but refused to be carried below, and with his remaining hand rendered all the assistance in his power.

---

by Commodore Barclay on the 10th of September? [See Map, p. 345.—Where did the fleets meet? A few miles from what islands?] Describe the engagement of Perry's *Lawrence* with the two largest vessels of the enemy. After two hours' hard fighting, what did Perry find it necessary to do? In performing this manœuvre, where did he have to pass? After reaching the *Niagara*, what masterly movement did Perry execute? How was this manœuvre seconded? What heroic act was performed by an American gunner? What is said of a brave seaman on the *Lawrence*? How long after Perry reached the *Niagara* was the issue of the

Within fifteen minutes after Perry reached the Niagara, the issue of the battle was decided. Commodore Barclay, wounded and fainting from loss of blood, felt that there was no alternative but surrender. His colors were hauled down; and 600 men, more than the whole number of surviving Americans, fell into the hands of their victors. They were treated with a kindness which was in marked contrast with the barbarity of Proctor. Barclay always characterized his conqueror as "a gallant and generous enemy", and declared that his conduct to his prisoners was alone sufficient to immortalize him. About four hours after the action commenced, Perry sent the following expressive despatch to Gen. Harrison:—"We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and a sloop."

When the Americans took possession of Barclay's flag-vessel, they found three Indians skulking in the cabin. Before the engagement commenced, these sharp-shooters, who were eager to distinguish themselves in naval conflict, had been placed in the round-tops, to pick off the American officers with their rifles. Before they had a chance to display their skill, however, the cannon-balls came whistling through the rigging too close to be pleasant, and the heroes of the round-top made the best of their way to the deck. As the vessels closed, the deck became still more uncomfortable; and, leaving the American officers to take care of themselves, they got as far below as they could, and there remained till the vessel was taken. A pet bear, more courageous than the savages, was found enjoying itself on deck, lapping up the blood of the fallen.

490. Gen. Harrison immediately followed up Perry's glorious victory with an invasion of Canada. He landed near Malden, and started in pursuit of Proctor and Tecumseh, who had dismantled the fort and were in full retreat. On the 28th of September, the American army reached Sand-

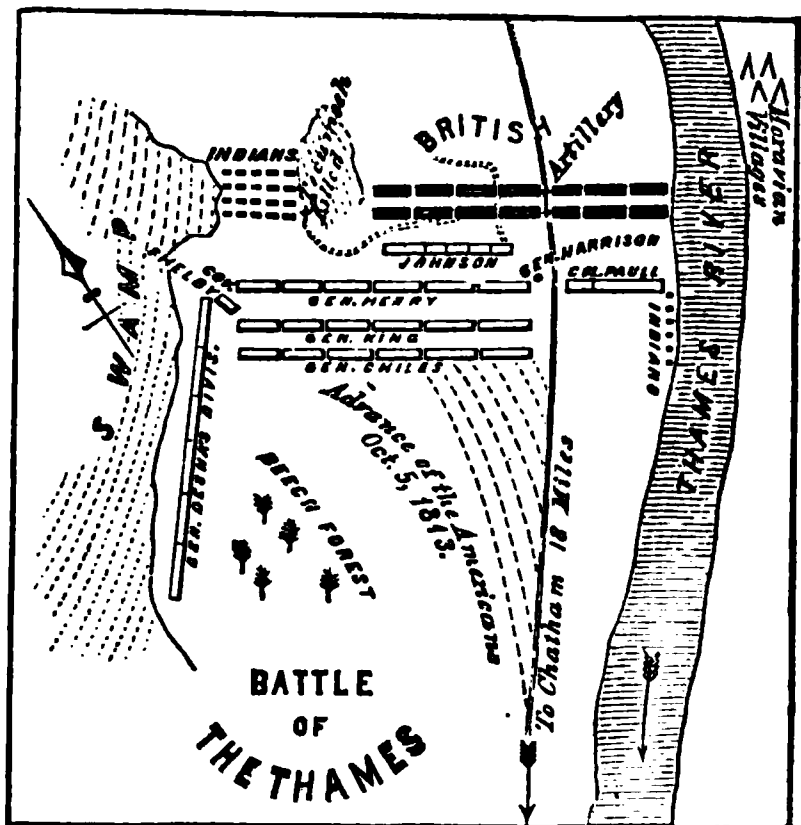
---

battle decided? What was Commodore Barclay obliged to do? How many British prisoners were taken? How were they treated? What was Barclay's testimony on this point? Repeat Perry's despatch to Gen. Harrison. Relate the story about three Indians on Barclay's flag-vessel. What was found on deck?  
490. How did Gen. Harrison follow up Perry's victory? Where did he land?



wich, and a detachment was sent over to take possession of Detroit. On the 5th of October, the British were overtaken on the bank of the Thames. Proctor had chosen a favorable position on a narrow strip of land, between the river and an extensive swamp, which was held by a strong body of Indians under Tecumseh. The Shawnee king shrank not from the encounter, though he felt a presentiment that it would be his last. "My body," said he, "will remain on the field of battle;" and with the words he handed his sword to one of his followers, bidding him give it to the son of Tecumseh, when he should become a great warrior.

491. Hardly had Gen. Harrison viewed the field, when his experienced eye discovered that Proctor, in order to extend his line to the river, had so weakened it that it could be readily broken, and he ordered Col. Richard M. Johnson, with his Kentucky horsemen, to charge the enemy in front. This was done in the



most spirited manner. Johnson's troop broke the line with irresistible force, and forming on the rear of the enemy prepared to pour in a deadly fire from their rifles. The British at once surrendered, Gen. Proctor escaping only by the swiftness of his horse. Col. Johnson now led his men, supported by a Kentucky regiment, to the swamp, where Te-

What had been done by Tecumseh and Proctor? On reaching Sandwich, what did Harrison do? When were the British overtaken? Where? Describe Proctor's position. What presentiment had Tecumseh? 491. What did Gen. Harrison soon discover? What order did he issue? Describe Johnson's charge, and the result. What became of Proctor? Against whom did Johnson then lead his Kentuckians? [See Map.—On which side of the British did the Indians lie? What governor took part in this battle? What village on the opposite bank of the Thames?] Give an account of Johnson's charge upon the Indians. What

cumseh and the warriors he had so often led to victory silently awaited their appearance. Suddenly the fearless Shawnee sprang to his feet and sounded the shrill war-whoop. A hundred rifles were aimed at the undaunted Kentuckians as they rode swiftly down, and many a saddle was emptied. Col. Johnson, ever foremost in danger, was wounded, and borne from the field by his milk-white charger, which was itself bleeding profusely. "Leave me," gasped the fainting hero to the comrades who supported him; "don't return till you bring me tidings of victory."

Just at the critical moment when the Kentuckians reached their foes and the battle raged most fiercely, a bullet, said to have been fired by Col. Johnson himself, struck Tecumseh in the breast. He shouted his last word of command, stepped forward, and then calmly sunk at the foot of an oak and expired. A sudden terror seized the Red Men. The voice of their beloved leader was silent. The Great Spirit was angry. Ferocity gave way to despair, and the defeated warriors were soon flying through the wilderness. With the fall of Tecumseh terminated the battle of the Thames. Michigan was recovered; Upper Canada was conquered; the honor of the American arms was vindicated. General Harrison, after descending the lakes, proceeded to Washington, his countrymen vying with each other in doing him honor.

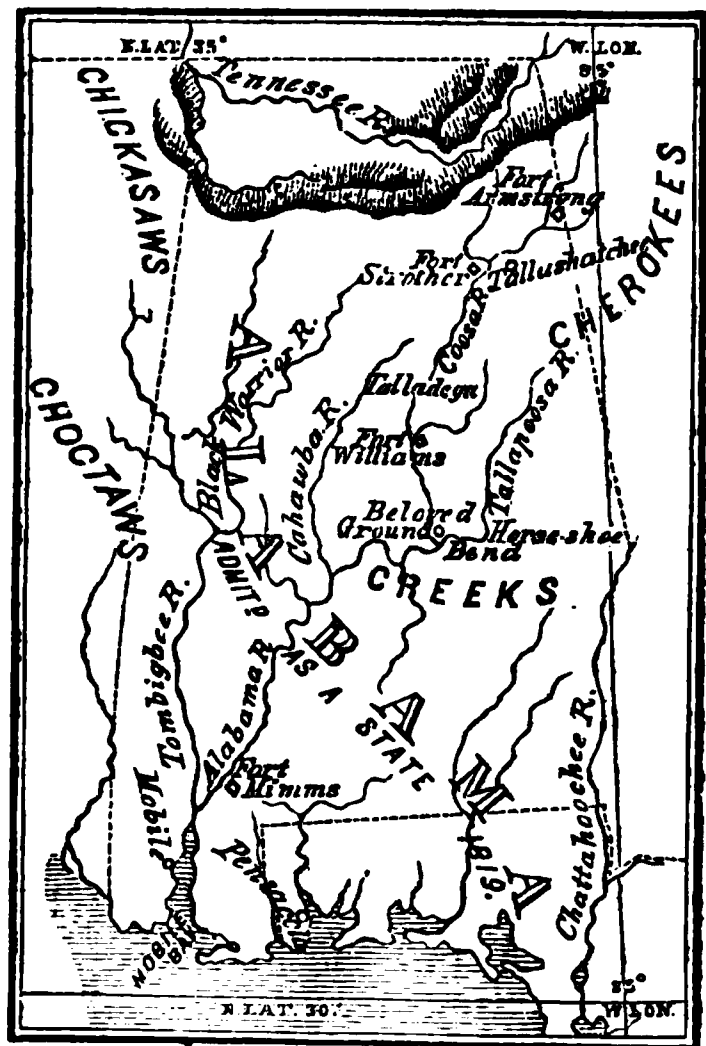
492. Tecumseh was the most formidable of all the Indian warriors that ever fought against the United States. He was nearly six feet high; his frame was muscular and capable of great endurance. A high forehead, piercing eyes, and gravity of expression, gave an air of command to his whole person. Strict morality and adherence to truth from his earliest years, added to talents of a high order and eloquence rarely equalled, made him not only a ruling spirit among the tribes of the wilderness, but also an object of respect to the nation whom he opposed with undying hatred.

---

What befell the gallant Johnson? Give an account of the fall of Tecumseh. What effect had this event on the Red Men? What was the consequence of the battle of the Thames? Where did Gen. Harrison proceed? 492. Describe Tecumseh's

493. The efforts made in 1811 by Tecumseh to enlist the Creeks in a war with the United States, resulted, in the summer of 1813, in the formation of a hostile league among the tribes of the region now known as Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, and Florida. Such signs of hostility were shown that the people in south-western Alabama flocked for safety to the military posts scattered through the country. In Fort Mimms, which was defended by a body of volunteers, several hundred had taken refuge. While the gates were standing open at noonday, 700 Creeks, under Wetherford, stealthily approached, and before the garrison were aware of their presence made a rush for the fort. An entrance was effected; the buildings were fired; and between three and four hundred men, women, and children, were massacred.

The governors of Georgia, Tennessee, and Mississippi Territory, immediately took measures for an effective invasion of the Creek country with 7,000 men. This force was to advance in four divisions from different points, and meet in the heart of the hostile region. The Tennesseans were first in the field, and their command was intrusted to General Andrew Jackson (who had been for some years a resident of Nashville, and had served in the U. S. senate with distinction), already well known



SEAT OF THE CREEK WAR.

person and character. 493. In what did Tecumseh's efforts among the Creeks result? Where, in particular, were signs of hostility exhibited? What is said of Fort Mimms? [See Map, p. 368.—Where is Fort Mimms?] Give an account of the surprise of this fort. How many were massacred? What measures were immediately taken? How many divisions were to advance into the Creek country? Who were the first in the field? To whom was their command given?

to the Indians as "the Sharp Knife". Jackson was soon on the march. Tal-lus-hat'-chee was the first village attacked. The Red Men resisted, till nearly their whole number were killed or wounded. A severe struggle soon after took place at Tal-la-de'-ga, where a thousand Creeks were besieging some friendly Indians. Forced marches brought Jackson, with 1,200 men, within 80 yards of their camp. The Creeks, taken at disadvantage, tried to fly, but found themselves nearly surrounded. Between two and three hundred were killed, with trifling loss on the part of the Americans; the rest made good their escape to the mountains.

The invading army now began to suffer from hunger. Supplies failed to arrive, and no food could be procured in the wilderness. A famishing soldier approached his general, and asked for something to eat. "I will divide with you," said Jackson, and drew from his pocket a handful of acorns. When it was seen that their officers fared no better than themselves, the troops bore their hardships with all possible patience. But at last extreme suffering led them to open mutiny, and in defiance of orders they prepared to march to their homes. Then was exhibited the iron will of Gen. Jackson. He took post on horseback before the rebellious army, which had already begun to move. His left arm, shortly before shattered by a ball, was still disabled, but his right grasped a musket, which he rested on his horse's neck, declaring that he would shoot down the first who advanced. The brave men, who had not feared a thousand Creeks, were awed by the determined front of their intrepid commander. No one offered to advance, and after a short consultation they agreed to postpone their departure.

494. About the middle of November, a number of hostile towns on the Tallapoosa were surprised. Towards the end

---

What did the Indians call Jackson? What was the first village attacked? [See Map.—Where was Tallushatchee? What forts were in its vicinity?] What is said of the resistance of the Creeks? Where did the next severe struggle take place? [Near what river is Talladega? Describe the Coosa. The Tallapoosa.] Relate the particulars of the battle of Talladega. How many Indians were killed? From what did the invading army now suffer? What passed between Jackson and a hungry soldier? To what were the men at last led by their sufferings? Tell how Jackson put down the mutiny. 494. What took place about the middle

of the month, Gen. Floyd, advancing from the east with his Georgia division, reached that part of the enemy's country called "the Beloved Ground". Here the Indians rallied, inspired by their prophet with the belief that on "the Beloved Ground" no foe could injure them. After obstinately maintaining the conflict for three hours, they gave way, leaving two of their principal chiefs and nearly 200 men upon the field.

Jackson was for a time prevented from active operations by the return of most of his companions, who claimed that their time of enlistment had expired; but by vigorous efforts he was reënforced in time to recommence the campaign with the opening of spring (1814). A thousand warriors, with their women and children, had congregated at the Horse-shoe Bend of the Tallapoosa, where they were nearly encircled by the river, the narrow isthmus in front being defended by a breastwork of logs; and, on the 27th of March, the American army appeared before their encampment. A strong detachment was stationed around the Bend to prevent the escape of the Indians, while a heavy cannonade was commenced in front. The order to storm was soon given. The log defences were scattered, and the encampment became a scene of terrible carnage. Hemmed in on all sides and disdaining to surrender, the doomed Creeks fought with the energy of despair. Not till 557 of their number, including many noted chiefs, and Man-a-hoe', their great prophet, were stretched in death upon the field, did the battle cease. Besides a few friendly Indians, Jackson lost 26 men killed and 106 wounded. This decisive victory ended the Creek War. The power of the Muscogees was broken. A peace was soon after concluded with their few surviving chiefs, on terms dictated by the United States.

---

of November? From what direction was Gen. Floyd advancing? What place did he at length reach? [See Map.—Where was "the Beloved Ground"?] What did the Indians believe respecting this spot? Describe the battle that took place there. What kept Jackson for a time from active operations? When was he reënforced? What battle ended the Creek War? [See Map, p. 368.—In what direction was the Horse-shoe Bend from "the Beloved Ground"?] How many Creeks were congregated there? What was their position? Give an account of the battle. How many Indians perished? What was Jackson's loss? What

495. The reverses already experienced did not deter the Americans from again attempting the invasion of Canada. In the fall of 1813, Gen. Wilkinson, who had succeeded Dearborn in the chief command, undertook an expedition against Montreal, in conjunction with Gen. Hampton, who was to advance with the army of the north from Plattsburg. Hampton's men penetrated into the enemy's country; and Wilkinson's division descended the St. Lawrence some distance, under cover of a detachment which bravely met the enemy at Chrysler's Field; but mutual jealousy, difficulties of transportation, and the lateness of the season, finally led to the abandonment of the enterprise. The force left meanwhile on the Niagara frontier was so inadequate to its defence that it was deemed prudent to evacuate Fort George (Dec. 12th). Before this was done, the town of Newark was reduced to ashes; an act which the British soon after retaliated by burning Youngstown, Lewiston, Black Rock, and Buffalo. In March, 1814, Wilkinson attempted a second invasion with 4,000 men; but he was repulsed at the first point which he attacked, and obliged hastily to retreat. Though acquitted by a court-martial, he was shortly afterwards superseded by Gen. Izard.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION (CONTINUED), 1814 TO 1817.

496. At the commencement of the year 1814, the American government was informed that Great Britain, though it declined the offer of Russian mediation, was willing to enter on direct negotiations for peace; the president accordingly appointed commissioners to meet the representatives of England. Both parties, however, prepared none the less vigor-

---

was the consequence of this victory? 495. Who, meanwhile, had succeeded Dearborn? What attempt was made by Gen. Wilkinson in the fall of 1813? By whom was he to be aided? What was accomplished? What led to the abandonment of the enterprise? Meanwhile, what was taking place on the Niagara frontier? How did the British retaliate? What was done by Wilkinson in March, 1814? By whom was he at length superseded?

496. What information did the American government receive early in 1814?

ously to continue the war. Congress authorized a loan of \$25,000,000; while Britain, on the abdication of Napoleon, sent over 14,000 veterans, to aid in the defence of Canada.

497. The naval operations of the United States during 1814 were neither so extensive nor so successful as in the two previous years. In consequence of the close blockade of the coast by British cruisers, it was difficult for American vessels to leave port or bring in their prizes. The *Essex*, in which, during the summer of 1813, Commodore Porter ran the triumphant career already described, was attacked (March 28th) in the harbor of Valparaiso [*vahl-pah-ri'-so*] by the British brig *Phoebe* and sloop-of-war *Cherub*. Against such odds even Porter's skill and bravery were unavailing; and, after a gallant fight and a vain attempt to run his vessel ashore, he had to surrender. "We have been unfortunate, but not disgraced," wrote Porter to the head of the navy department. The American vessels, *Frolic*, *Rattlesnake*, and *Syren*, were also taken by the enemy; while, on the other hand, the British brig *Épervier* [*ā-pare-ve-ā*] struck her colors to the *Peacock*, and the *Reindeer* was captured by the *Wasp*. The larger American men-of-war being kept in port by the blockade, most of their crews were

ENGAGEMENT OF THE WASP AND REINDEER.

sent to aid Commodore Chauncey on Lake Ontario.

---

What action was taken by the president? What preparations were made by both governments? 497. What is said of the naval operations of the United States in 1814? What was the effect of the blockade of the coast by the British? Give an account of the capture of the *Essex*. What did Commodore Porter write to the secretary of the navy? What other American vessels were taken? What British vessels were captured? Where were most of the crews of the larger vessels

498. On the 3d of July, 1814, Gen. Brown, who had marched from Sackett's Harbor, crossed the Niagara River with 3,500 men. Fort Erie surrendered, and the Americans moved on to Chippeway [see Map, p. 351]. Here the main body of the enemy was posted, and a general action commenced. Both parties displayed great gallantry; but the unerring fire of Gen. Scott's and Major Jessup's men drove the veterans whom Wellington had often led to victory, behind their works, and the whole force of the enemy fell back on Fort George, abandoning their intermediate posts. General Brown, after pursuing them as far as Queenstown Heights, encamped at Chippeway. The American loss in this battle was about 300; that of the British was nearly twice as great.

499. On the 25th of July, Scott's brigade was detailed to watch the movements of a division of the enemy. On approaching the Falls of Niagara, the Americans suddenly found themselves in the presence of the whole British army, which was advantageously posted for a pitched battle. Hastily sending word to Gen. Brown, Scott soon had his artillery at work, and maintained his ground in the most heroic manner. He was ably seconded by Jessup, who, by a masterly movement, gained the British rear, and made prisoners of Gen. Riall and his suite. Soon after dark, Ripley's brigade arrived on the field, affording timely relief to Scott's exhausted troops. A tremendous fire was still kept up by the enemy from a commanding height defended by a battery. Unless this height was carried, Gen. Ripley could see no chance of victory. The effort was almost hopeless, but he resolved that it should be made. Col. Miller was selected to lead the desperate charge. "Can you take that battery?" asked the commander. "I will try, sir," was the reply. Steadily up

---

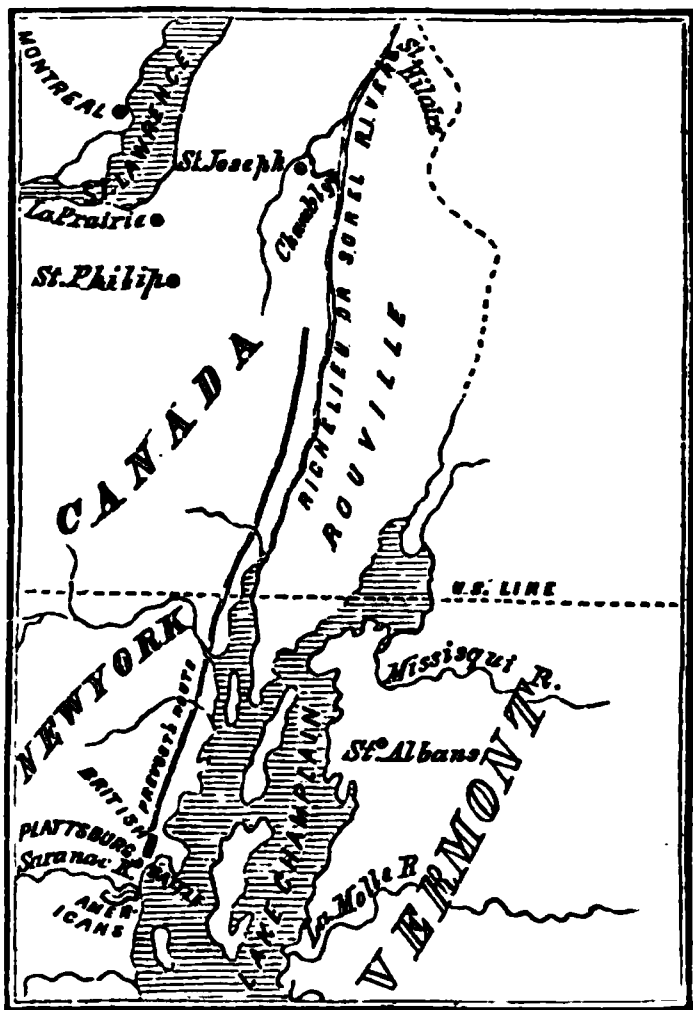
sent? 498. What movement was made by Gen. Brown, July 3d, 1814? What fort did he take? Whither did he then proceed? [See Map, p. 351.—How is Fort Erie situated? How is Chippeway situated? What island in the Niagara opposite to it?] What ensued? Describe the battle of Chippeway. To what post did the enemy fall back? How far did Gen. Brown pursue them? Where did he encamp? What was the loss on each side? 499. What occurred July 25th? [See Map, p. 351.—Where did this battle take place? What river south of Lundy's Lane? What island a little above it in the Niagara River?] What did Gen. Scott do? What achievement was performed by Major Jessup? Who came up soon after dark to their support? Give an account of Col. Miller's brilliant charge.



the hill toiled the fearless leader at the head of his regiment. A hot fire was poured upon them; but they closed their ranks, and gallantly moved on. In a few moments the battery was in their hands, and the retreating enemy were fired upon with their own guns. Three times the British rallied for their recapture, and three times were they repulsed. At midnight they gave up their efforts, and left the Americans in possession of the field. This battle of Lundy's Lane, or Bridgewater, was one of the most hotly contested actions ever fought in the new world. Three thousand Americans and 4,500 British took part in it. The former lost 743 in killed and wounded; the latter, 878.

500. After gaining this victory, the Americans retired to Fort Erie, where in a few days they were besieged by the British army, now reënforced to 4,000 men. A heavy bombardment and midnight assault, in which the enemy lost nearly a thousand men, were successfully resisted; and finally the beleaguered garrison, making a bold sortie, destroyed the hostile batteries, and drove the enemy towards Chippeway. Thus successfully closing a campaign, which, though productive of no permanent advantages, was every way glorious to America, Brown destroyed Fort Erie, and led his men into winter-quarters at Buffalo.

501. Gen. Brown was not alone in his success.



PLATTSBURG AND THE VICINITY.

How often did the British attempt to recapture this battery? Who remained masters of the field? What is said of the battle of Lundy's Lane? How many on each side were engaged in it? What was the loss? 500. Whither did the Americans retire? What befell them at Fort Erie? Give an account of the siege and its termination. Where did the Americans winter? 501. What enterprise

About the 1st of September, Sir George Prevost, taking advantage of the absence of Gen. Izard and his army, who had moved towards Sackett's Harbor, crossed the northern boundary of the state of New York, with the view of penetrating to the Hudson by way of Lake Champlain. Gen. Macomb [*ma-koom'*], who was in command at Plattsburg, hastily collected the militia of the vicinity, enrolling even boys who were large enough to handle a musket. He was too weak, however, to prevent the advance of the enemy; and, as they approached, he crossed the Sar'-a-nao, taking up the planks of the bridges behind him. Prevost entered Plattsburg on the 10th, and there waited to be joined by a naval force under Commodore Down'-ie, consisting of 17 vessels carrying 95 guns, which was advancing into the lake by the Sor'-el River.

Commodore McDonough [*mac-don'-o*], a native of Delaware, now about 30 years of age, commanded for the U. S. on Lake Champlain. By incredible exertions he had got together 14 vessels, mounting 86 guns; one of which, a brig, he built in

BIRTHPLACE OF COMMODORE MCDONOUGH.

twenty days from timber growing on the bank of the lake. On the 11th of September, Downie, who had boasted that with his flag-vessel alone he could destroy the whole American squadron, was seen advancing towards Plattsburg. The shore of the lake and the roof-tops of the town were crowded

was undertaken by Prevost? When? What was his design? [See Map, p. 374.—How is Plattsburg situated? What river near it? What was the direction of Prevost's route?] Who was in command at Plattsburg? What steps did he take? When did Prevost enter Plattsburg? For what did he then wait? Who commanded for the U. S. on Lake Champlain? How large a force had McDonough raised? When did Downie make his appearance? What boast had he made? How had McDonough posted his vessels? How did the two fleets com-

with spectators, who awaited with palpitating hearts the issue of the engagement. McDonough, who had drawn up his little fleet in a favorable position across the mouth of the harbor, and had publicly asked the blessing of God on his efforts in defence of his country, opened a fire as the enemy approached. The British had heavier cannon than the Americans; but their gunners, though taken in part from men-of-war at Quebec, were neither as quick in their movements nor as accurate in their aim as McDonough's. The hottest fire was maintained between the vessels which bore the two commanders; and the American flag-ship, the *Saratoga*, was at length completely disabled on the side presented to the enemy. McDonough then had recourse to the ingenious expedient of wearing his vessel round, to bring the other side into play. The enemy, who had also suffered severely, attempted the same movement, but without success; and, within two hours and a half after the action commenced, the whole British fleet struck. The American loss was 158 in killed and wounded; that of the British, about 200, including Downie himself.

During the battle on the lake, Prevost's army attempted to cross the Saranac at several different points, but were repulsed by the Americans. On the surrender of the fleet, they gave up all further efforts. Prevost was seized with terror; and that same night, in the midst of a heavy rain, he made a hasty retreat, leaving his sick and wounded behind him, together with large quantities of military stores. Many of his troops deserted. One company of 400 men marched to the American camp, preceded by a band of music. It is computed that the loss of the enemy in this expedition was not far short of 3,000 men.

502. The British did not confine their operations to the northern frontier. The Atlantic coast had been blockaded throughout the year by a strong fleet under Lord Cockburn,

---

pare in guns and men? Give an account of the conflict between the two flag-vessels. What was the result of the action? State the loss on each side. During the engagement, what attempts were made by the British army? With what success? What followed? What is said of the desertions from Prevost's army? 502. What was the state of affairs on the Atlantic coast throughout the year 1814?

from which parties had been sent to various points, particularly on the Chesapeake, to plunder and devastate the country. About the middle of August, 1814, Admiral Cochrane [*kok'-ran*] arrived off the coast of Virginia with 21 vessels, conveying Gen. Ross and four thousand veterans, who had been trained on some of the most noted battle-fields of Europe. Before this overwhelming force, the small flotilla with which Com. Barney had tried to protect the coast retreated up the Patuxent, a river emptying into Chesapeake Bay just north of the Potomac. The British fleet divided, part ascending the Potomac, and a second division moving up the Chesapeake as if to attack Baltimore, while the remainder followed Barney into the Patuxent, and anchored on the 19th of August at Benedict. Here Ross and his army disembarked. On the 21st they set out on the river-road, and the next day reached Upper Marlborough [*marl'-brüh*], 17 miles from Washington. Near this point Barney had moored his boats; blowing them up on the enemy's approach, he hastened with his

WASHINGTON, BALTIMORE, AND THE VICINITY.

About the middle of August, who arrived? Where did Commodore Barney retire? Describe the movements of the British fleet. Where did Ross and his army disembark? [See Map.—Describe the Patuxent. How is Benedict situated? On their march from Benedict to Bladensburg, what places did the British pass through?] What was done by Commodore Barney? What did the enemy find along their whole route? Where did they first encounter resistance? What was the condition of the British soldiers? Give an account of the battle

marines to join Gen. Win'-der, who was organizing a force for the defence of the capital.

Consternation seized on the inhabitants; and the enemy, cautiously advancing, found the whole line of their route deserted. The first resistance they encountered was (August 24th) at Bla'-dens-burg, six miles north-east of Washington, where their passage was disputed by an American army consisting mostly of militia hastily collected. The British soldiers were almost overcome by the intense heat; they charged with vigor, however, and at the first onset the American militia gave way in disorder, some without even discharging their muskets. Commodore Barney, with his eighteen-pounders, and Captain Miller's guns, double-loaded with canister, checked the enemy for a time; but their men, exposed on the flank by the flight of the militia, were driven back, and both of these brave officers fell into the hands of the enemy. The routed army carried terror with it to the capital. The city at this time contained 10,000 inhabitants, most of whom, including the president and his cabinet, hastily retired.

503. On the evening after the battle, Gen. Ross entered Washington. By the order of his government, he set fire to the capitol, the president's house, and other public buildings. Private property also suffered to a considerable extent. On the evening of the 25th the British left the city, and two days afterwards they reached their shipping in safety. Meanwhile, the division of their fleet which had ascended the Potomac passed Fort Washington, which was abandoned by its garrison and blown up, and appeared before Alexandria. To escape bombardment, the people of this place surrendered to the enemy 21 merchant-vessels, 16,000 barrels of flour, 1,000 hogsheads of tobacco, and other articles.

504. These occurrences violently excited the whole Amer-

---

of Bladensburg. What was the population of Washington? What did most of the inhabitants do? 503. When did Ross enter Washington? What barbarities did he commit? After this, what did the British army do? What was done by that part of the fleet which ascended the Potomac? [See Map, p. 377.—How is Fort Washington situated? How, Alexandria? What place a short distance be-

ican people, and brought down heavy censure on the administration. Gen. Armstrong, the secretary of war, indignant at the charges of inefficiency brought against him, resigned; and the duties of his office were assumed by Monroe, the secretary of state. Great alarm prevailed in the seaboard cities. The militia were organized; and defensive works were thrown up, on which citizens of all ranks, now for the first time laying party-spirit aside, labored with their own hands. At New York, \$500,000 was needed to put the city in a state of defence. The money could not be procured on the public credit; and Gov. Tompkins was called upon by Senator King to raise it on his personal responsibility. The governor hesitated, on the ground that it might ruin him. "Then," said Mr. King, "ruin yourself, if it becomes necessary, to save the country, and I pledge my honor that I will support you in whatever you do." Through the efforts of these two patriotic men, the necessary sum was obtained, and the city was made ready to receive the enemy.

505. Encouraged by his success at Washington, Ross next proceeded against Baltimore, where a body of 10,000 militia-men had assembled. Gen. Smith, noted for his brave defence of Fort Mifflin in the Revolution, held the chief command. On the 12th of September the British troops landed at North Point, 14 miles from the city, while part of the fleet moved up the bay, to attack Fort McHenry, which commanded the channel. Soon after commencing their march towards Baltimore, they encountered some American sharpshooters, and Gen. Ross with several officers rode in front of his line to reconnoitre. Two mechanics of the city, belonging to one of the militia companies, immediately discharged their muskets at the party. Ross fell mortally wounded into the arms of an aide-de-camp; and his horse, galloping wildly to the rear with his empty saddle wet with blood, told the

---

low Alexandria?] 504. What feelings did these events excite? What change was made in the cabinet? What was done in the seaboard cities? How was the money needed for the fortification of New York raised? 505. What place did Gen. Ross next attack? What preparations had been made? Who commanded the Americans? Where did the British land? [See Map, p. 377.—Where is North Point? In what direction from Baltimore? On what river is Baltimore? In what direction from Washington?] What movement was made by part of the

melancholy story to his men. The two brave Americans fell amid a shower of balls.

Ross's fall did not put a stop to the attack. The British continued to advance, but, on coming within reach of the American artillery, were met with a destructive fire. After maintaining their advanced position for more than an hour, the Americans fell back to high grounds in their rear, and there prepared for another encounter. The next day, the British again approached; but the resolute front of the Americans, added to the intelligence that their fleet could make no impression on Fort McHenry, deterred them from further attempts on the city; and, taking advantage of the darkness of a stormy night, they retreated to their boats. During a bombardment of twenty-five hours, 1,500 shells had exploded around the fort, but only four of its defenders were killed. In the midst of the fire, the national song entitled "The Star-spangled Banner" was composed by Francis S. Key, an American who was detained on board of one of the British ships. The people of Baltimore have since raised a marble monument to the memory of those who fell in their defence, which, with another erected in honor of Washington, has procured for that place the name of "the Monumental City".

506. The people of New England, most of whom had opposed the war in consequence of its injurious effects on their commerce, in the summer of 1814 proposed holding a convention, to discuss the subject and agree upon such a course as their interests required. The bombardment of Stonington, Connecticut, by a British fleet (August, 1814), and the danger of other places on the coast, gave weight to the suggestion. On the recommendation of the legislature of Massachusetts, delegates from all the Eastern States met at Hartford on the 15th of December. The Hartford Convention remained in session nearly three weeks with closed doors,

---

fleet? Give an account of Ross's fall. What became of the Americans who killed him? Give an account of the engagement. What led the British to give up their attempts? What is said of the attack on Fort McHenry? Under what circumstances was "The Star-spangled Banner" composed? Why is Baltimore called "the Monumental City"? 506. What was proposed in 1814 by the people of New England? What gave weight to the suggestion? Give an account of the Hart

and, though its members seem to have aimed at nothing more than to hasten the termination of the war, yet their proceedings were regarded with suspicion and by some violently condemned as treasonable. The war had become more popular with every American victory and every new outrage of the enemy.

507. An invasion of the south-west formed a prominent part of the plan which the British had marked out for their campaign. Jackson, who had been appointed to the command in that quarter with the rank of major-general, heard towards the close of the summer that several British vessels had arrived at Pensacola, that the troops they conveyed had been allowed to land there by the Spanish authorities, and that the Creeks had been invited to join in an attack on the American posts in the vicinity. Hastening to Mobile, he found these statements true. On the 15th of September, an attack was made by a party of British and Indians from Pensacola on Fort Bowyer [*bo'-yer*], which commanded the approaches to Mobile. With the loss of only eight men, Major Lawrence repulsed the enemy, destroying one of their ships and disabling 234 men. Jackson now felt justified in assuming the offensive. Reënforced by some mounted Tennesseans, he marched into Florida and took Pensacola, the British blowing up the fort which they had occupied, and retreating to their vessels. Having thus accomplished the object of his enterprise, Jackson forthwith proceeded to New Orleans, now threatened by a formidable armament of the enemy.

On arriving at New Orleans (December 2d), Jackson found the people in great alarm. Some, believing it impossible to make good a defence, were even in favor of surrendering. After Jackson's appearance, however, no such idea was entertained. He assumed the entire control of public

---

ford Convention. How were those who took part in it regarded? 507. What formed part of the British plan for the campaign of 1814? Who commanded the Americans in the south? What did Jackson hear towards the close of summer? Whither did he proceed? What was done by the British on the 15th of September? How were they received? [See Map, p. 368.—How is Mobile situated?] How did Jackson retaliate? Whither did he next proceed? What did he find on arriving at New Orleans? Give an account of his measures. How is Jackson



affairs, placed the city under martial law, erected fortifications, and organized and drilled the militia. He was at this time 47 years of age, and is described as "a tall gaunt man, of very erect carriage, with a countenance full of stern decision and fearless energy, but furrowed with care and anxiety. His complexion was sallow and unhealthy; his hair was iron-gray, and his body thin and emaciated. But the fierce glare of his bright hawk-like gray eye betrayed a soul which triumphed over the infirmities of the body." He wore a short blue cloak, high dragoon boots "long ignorant of blacking", a small leather cap, and threadbare regimentals.

508. Information respecting the designs of the British had been obtained, among other sources, from Lafitte [*lah-fit'*], the chief of several hundred adventurers, charged with being pirates and smugglers, who occupied the Bay of Bar-a-ta'-ri-a, an inlet from the Gulf of Mexico just west of the Mississippi. Plundering Spanish merchant-vessels, through the connivance or indifference of the authorities of New Orleans they sold in that port the products of their buccaneering voyages. Early in September, the British commander at Pensacola, with the view of securing the aid of this company, had offered to receive them into his country's service, and unfolded to their leader the details of the intended attack. The latter sumptuously entertained the British messenger at his luxurious home on one of the islands in the bay, but declined his offers. Though an adventurer, Lafitte was no traitor. He had lived among the citizens of New Orleans; and he resolved not to desert them in the hour of need. Laying before the authorities the information he had received, he offered, on condition of pardon for past offences, to lead his men to the defence of the city. After the invasion of his stronghold and the seizure of papers which confirmed his statements, his proposal was accepted, and the Baratarians did good service in the hard-fought battles that followed.

---

described at this time? How was he dressed? 508. From whom had information respecting the designs of the British been obtained? Give an account of Lafitte and his company. What proposition was made to them? How was it

509. On the 24th of November, the army destined for the invasion of Louisiana was reviewed at Jamaica. It consisted of the force that had been serving in the Chesapeake, and strong reënforcements from Europe, making in all 50 vessels, carrying 1,000 guns, and, including some subsequent additions, 12,000 troops, the flower of the British army. The chief command was intrusted to Sir Edward Packenham, a brother-in-law of the Duke of Wellington, and next to him the most distinguished of English military leaders. The invaders had no doubt of their success. They had already organized a government for Louisiana, and carried with them a printing-press to announce the proclamations of the new authorities. Boldly entering Lake Borgne [*born*], the enemy, on the 14th of December, captured a flotilla of gunboats, which had been stationed there for the defence of the city. An unfrequented bayou, the guards of which, with a single exception, were captured, brought them to within a few miles of the Mississippi, and on the 22d, their advanced guard reached the bank of that river nine miles from New Orleans.

510. Within a few hours after Jackson received this intelligence, he had 2,000 men in motion. Many of them were from Tennessee, unerring marksmen, arrayed in homespun, with slouched hats of wool or fur, and tomahawks in their deer-skin belts. Shortly after dark (December 23d), the *Caroline*, a schooner of 14 guns, dropped down the river, and opened a destructive fire on the British camp. Generals Jackson and Coffee followed up the attack in front. The darkness rendered it almost impossible to distinguish friend from foe, but both parties fought with the greatest bravery. At length, Jackson, finding himself unable to drive the enemy from their position, withdrew his men, having lost 213, to over 300 killed and wounded on the part of the enemy.

---

met? On which side did Lafitte engage? 509. Where did the invading force assemble for review? Of what did it consist? By whom was it commanded? What were the feelings of the British? What did they carry with them? What lake did the enemy enter? What did they do on the 14th of December? How did they reach the Mississippi? What was their position on the 22d? 510. What did Jackson do on receiving this intelligence? Describe the Tennesseans. How

The next day, he fell back to the Rodriguez [*ro-dre'-gath*] Canal, where he determined to make a final stand. Extending his line from the river to an impassable swamp on the

left, he threw up strong intrenchments, sent for the rest of his men from New Orleans, and ordered a detachment across the Mississippi, to prevent the enemy from reaching the city in that direction.

Packenham having joined the army, and his preparations being completed, the invaders, on the 28th of December, made a vigorous attack on the American lines, but were repulsed with a loss of nearly 200 men. A supply of heavy cannon was sent for from the fleet; and on the 1st of January, 1815, having the night before planted batteries within 400 yards of the American works, they opened a tremendous cannonade. A thick fog concealed their movements, till a terrific crash of balls from thirty guns of heavy calibre, together with hissing shells and glaring rockets, announced

---

was the attack opened on the 28d? Give an account of Gen. Jackson's attack. What was the result? What position did Jackson take the next day? [See Map.—What was on Jackson's left? Who commanded there? What was on Jackson's right?] How did he strengthen his position? What took place Dec. 28th? What did the British then send for? What took place on the 1st of January,

that a severe struggle was at hand. The Americans had only ten cannon; but these were handled with such spirit that they were more than a match for those of the enemy. Both parties had made a mistake in constructing their works. The British had used hogsheads full of sugar, supposing that they would act like sand-bags; but the well-aimed balls of the Americans shattered them to fragments, and spread destruction around and behind. Jackson, in his breastwork, had used cotton-bales, which seemed to answer the purpose, till a red-hot shot from the British set one of them on fire and scattered its blazing fragments among the barrels of powder which stood ready for use. The flames were extinguished without accident; but the cotton-bales were taken out, and a breastwork of earth about five feet high, with trusty rifles behind it, was the only defence employed in the conflicts that followed. The British, after a loss of 70 men to 34 on the part of the Americans, drew off their guns and fell back.

511. Preparations were now made on both sides for a decisive battle. Gen. Lambert brought up a fresh division of British troops, which increased their number to 10,000; while Jackson, also reënforced, found himself in command of 6,000 men, 3,200 of whom defended the breastwork. Before daylight on the 8th of January, a detachment was sent against the Americans on the right bank of the Mississippi, while the main body, led by Pakenham in person, advanced to storm Jackson's position. As soon as they came within reach of the American cannon, a terrible fire thinned their ranks, but still they moved on in good order. "Stand to your guns," shouted Jackson, as they approached; "don't waste your ammunition, see that every shot tells." In another moment, the order to fire was given. Under the murderous discharge that followed, the advancing column wavered. A fresh regiment, with Pakenham at its head,

---

1815? How many cannon had the Americans? How were they handled? What mistake was made by the British in constructing their works? What, by the Americans? What was the result of the cannonade? 511. For what did both parties now prepare? What was the force of each? What was the first movement of the British on the 8th of January? Who led the main body? Give an

hastened to their support. All that brave men and experienced leaders could do, was done; but before those fatal rifles no foe could stand. Pakenham had his right arm shattered, and his horse killed under him; his broken ranks retired in confusion.

The sun was now rising, and his early beams fell on the gleaming arms of a fresh division of British advancing to the attack. Again a cloud of smoke curled up from the breastwork, and again fearful havoc was made in the ranks

of the assailants. Pakenham, struck by a grape-shot, fell back into the arms of the same officer, who, under similar circumstances, received the body of Gen. Ross at Baltimore.

account of the first assault. How did it result? Give an account of the second assault. What did Gen. Lambert now find? What was he obliged to do? What

Though nearly every officer was disabled, the troops still pressed on. A few crossed the canal and ascended the parapet, but fell before its vigilant defenders, most of them to rise no more. Gen. Lambert, who succeeded to the command, finding his army hopelessly defeated with the loss of more than 2,000 men, hastened to retreat. He recalled the detachment on the opposite side of the Mississippi, which had driven back the Americans, and gained a position that would have been of great service in dislodging Jackson. The whole enterprise was abandoned, and the invading host returned to their shipping by a road which they cut along the bayou to Lake Borgne. On both sides of the river, the American loss was but 27 in killed and wounded. On the 20th of January, Jackson returned to New Orleans in triumph, where he was received with every possible demonstration of joy and gratitude.

512. When the brave deeds performed at New Orleans are mentioned, the intrepid conduct of a young British bugler should not be forgotten. The enemy's left, at the commencement of the engagement, advanced along the river, captured a redoubt, and moved steadily on towards the canal. Their bugler, a boy of only fourteen years, preceding the line to within 200 yards of the breastwork, climbed a tree and sounded "the charge" while his comrades stormed the intrenchments. A sheet of flame drove back the assailants. Men were mowed down; bullets and cannon-balls rained around, tearing off the branches of the very tree on which the young musician was seated; yet, paying no attention to the messengers of death, he continued to cheer on his countrymen with his wild music as calmly as if he were in camp. After they had retreated, an American soldier came forth from the lines and captured the boy, whose intrepidity had attracted general attention. Officers and men crowded around him to express their hearty admiration.

513. The battle of New Orleans closed the war. Negotiations had been going on for some months at Ghent in Bel-

---

was the loss on each side? What did Jackson do on the 20th of January? 512. Tell the story of the brave little bugler. 513. What had been going on for some

gium, between John Quincy Adams (son of John Adams), Bayard, Russell, Clay, and Gallatin, on the part of the United States, and commissioners appointed by Great Britain; but the latter were so extravagant in their demands that for some time little progress was made. News of the defeats at Plattsburg and Baltimore at length altered their tone; and on the 24th of December a satisfactory treaty of peace was signed. It said nothing about the aggressions on American commerce and impressment of sailors on the high seas, which had caused the war; but it was tacitly understood that there would be no further difficulty on these points. The news reached America on the 11th of February, 1815; had it come a little sooner, it would have saved the British the disastrous repulse at New Orleans. On the day the intelligence arrived at Washington, Madison and his cabinet had separated in great despondency, unable to devise any effective measures for the relief of their country,—no money in the treasury, a debt of \$100,000,000, commerce destroyed, all kinds of industry depressed. Late at night a horseman was heard galloping through the streets of Washington, and the joyful cry of "Peace! peace!" resounded on all sides. The treaty had been brought by a British vessel to New York, and the joyful news was soon circulated throughout the country. It was everywhere hailed with delight. Bells were rung, flags were hoisted, schools had holiday, and towns were illuminated. On the 18th of February, the treaty was ratified by the U. S. senate, and peace was proclaimed.

514. The pecuniary affairs of the country were in a deplorable state. The banks generally had stopped payment. Specie was scarce, and there was no currency that commanded the confidence of the people. For the convenience of government, Congress passed a bill incorporating a na-

---

months? Name the American commissioners. What tone was at first assumed by the British? What altered their views? When was peace concluded? What difficulties had caused the war? How were they settled by the treaty? When did the news of peace reach America? Under what circumstances had the cabinet last separated? How was the news announced in Washington? How was it received throughout the country? When was the treaty ratified? 514. Describe the pecuniary condition of the United States. Give an account of the

tional bank with \$30,000,000 capital. This was vetoed by the president; but at the next session of Congress an institution was chartered with a capital of \$35,000,000. It commenced operations at Philadelphia, on the 4th of March, 1817, and with its branches in other cities supplied the country with a uniform currency, redeemable at all times with gold and silver.

515. In May, 1815, Decatur was sent with a squadron to punish the Algerines, who had taken advantage of the war with England to renew their depredations on American commerce. On the 17th of June, he encountered, in the Mediterranean, the largest vessel in the Algerine navy, and captured her after a running fight of 25 minutes. He soon after appeared before Algiers, when the dey at once agreed to liberate the American prisoners in his hands, to make full indemnification for the losses he had occasioned, and to relinquish all claims to tribute for the future. Decatur next proceeded to Tunis and Tripoli, where he obtained similar concessions, and exacted pay for American vessels which the English had been allowed to take in their harbors. Since pursuing this decided course, the United States have had no difficulty with the pirates of Barbary.

516. Nothing remains to be noticed in Madison's eventful administration, except the admission of Indiana as a member of the confederacy in December, 1816, and the formation of the Colonization Society about the same time. The object of this association, which embraced among its members many distinguished statesmen, was to provide a happy home for free persons of color, where they could enjoy the right of self-government. A favorable position was finally selected on the coast of Africa. The name of Liberia was given to the colony, and its capital was called Monrovia, after President Monroe. To this place many emigrants have from time to time found their way, and a flourishing colony has grown up.

---

two attempts to establish a national bank. 515. What expedition was sent out in May, 1815? What was the first victory gained by Decatur? How did he humble the dey of Algiers? Where did Decatur next proceed? What did he exact from the bashaws? 516. When was Indiana admitted? Give an account of the origin and objects of the Colonization Society. What has it effected?



## CHAPTER VIII.

## MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817 TO 1825.

517. ON the 4th of March, 1817, James Monroe became president of the United States, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, vice-president. Born in Virginia in 1759, Monroe served in the Revolutionary War, and after its termination was successively a member of both houses of Congress, governor of Virginia, and minister to France and England. The new president followed the same general policy as his predecessor. He called John Quincy Adams from the British court, where he had resided as minister since the war, to become his secretary of state, and Wm. H. Crawford, of Georgia, was placed at the head of the treasury department. In December, 1817, John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was appointed secretary of war, and William Wirt, of Maryland, attorney general. Early in his term, Monroe made a tour through New England and the north-west, and was well received by the people. The violence of party-spirit had now subsided, and the federalists no longer opposed the measures of the administration. A plan was devised in Congress for paying the public debt, which in a few years accomplished that important object. Towards the close of 1817, the attention of government was called to Amelia Island, on the Florida coast, a rendezvous for buccaneers, who, pretending to sail under the flag of the South American republics, made free with whatever they found on the ocean. In November, a body of U. S. troops took possession of their haunts; and soon after a similar establishment on Galveston Island, Texas, was also broken up.

518. The public mind began about this time to realize the necessity of internal improvements. It was obvious that

---

517. Who became president and vice-president on the 4th of March, 1817? What is said of Monroe's previous history? Whom did he make secretary of state? Whom, secretary of the treasury? Who were admitted to his cabinet in December, 1817? What parts of the country did Monroe visit? How was he received? What is said of party-spirit? What plan was devised by Congress? Give an account of the buccaneering establishments on the coast. What became of them? 518. To what was public attention now forcibly drawn? What were

roads and canals, connecting distant portions of the Union, and bringing its remoter parts within reach of a market, would greatly augment the wealth and strength of the country. To the importance of these works Monroe was fully alive; but, like Jefferson and Madison, he believed that the Constitution gave the general government no authority to engage in them. Congress after some discussion agreed with him, but made appropriations for a great national road across the Alleghanies, from Cumberland to Wheeling, this having been promised by the United States at the time that Ohio came into the Union. Several military roads were also opened.

This constitutional difficulty, however, did not apply to the individual states, which vigorously undertook the work of improvement. Surveys were made, roads were constructed in all directions, and facilities for travel and transportation were increased. In carrying on these enterprises, New York was among the foremost. Under the auspices of De Witt Clinton and other public-spirited men, a bill was passed by the legislature of that state, authorizing the construction of a canal, 363 miles long, to connect Lake Erie, at Buffalo, with the Hudson, at Albany. The work was commenced in July, 1817, and was not completed till the summer of 1825. The Erie Canal was 40 feet wide, contained 83 locks built of solid masonry, to raise or lower the boats as required by the face of the country, crossed the Genesee once and the Mohawk twice by means of aqueducts, and originally cost \$7,602,000. About the same time, a canal connecting Lake Champlain with the Hudson was finished; and in November, 1825, the completion of these works was celebrated by the firing of cannon and public rejoicings. They gave an impetus to trade, which was felt throughout the whole northern and western country.

---

Monroe's views on the subject of internal improvements? What was done by Congress? How was it with the individual states? What state was among the foremost in carrying on these works? What bill was passed by the N. Y. legislature? Under whose auspices? When was the Erie Canal commenced? When was it completed? Describe the Erie Canal. What other canal was finished about the same time? How was their completion celebrated? What was their effect? 519. By whom was the southern frontier harassed in 1817? How did

519. In the summer of 1817, the Seminoles, a powerful tribe living within the Spanish territory on the borders of Georgia and Alabama, joined by some runaway negroes and refugee Creeks, commenced a series of depredations on the frontier settlements. Gen. Gaines, who commanded a post on the Flint River, destroyed several of their villages; but he encountered so fierce a resistance that Jackson was ordered into service, with volunteers from Tennessee, who were always ready to follow this favorite leader. In March, 1818, having spent several months in organizing his forces and securing provisions, Jackson took the field with his brave Tennesseans, some friendly Creeks, and the regulars already at the seat of war. He burned a number of Seminole towns, drove the enemy before him, and seized on their corn and cattle. It was obvious to Jackson that the Indians had been instigated by the Spaniards of Florida, and two British subjects who had supplied them with arms and ammunition. The former he punished by seizing their forts at St. Mark's and Pensacola, and sending the officers in command to Havana. The latter were tried by a court-martial, found guilty, and executed. Two refugee Creek chiefs and a pretended prophet, who had helped to stir up the war, were also taken and hanged. Though the American army was unable to penetrate to the more southerly villages, hostilities were for a time suppressed.

The course of Gen. Jackson in invading the territory of a nation with which the United States was at peace, was condemned by some, and at first even the cabinet were disposed to pronounce it arbitrary and unauthorized. The secretary of state, however, convinced them that Jackson had done no more than was necessary to carry out the orders of government. A committee of Congress, which investigated the transactions in question, absolved the hero of New Orleans from all blame. The British government, on hearing of the

---

Gen. Gaines punish the Indians? Who was sent to his assistance? Give an account of Jackson's operations. By whom did it appear that the Seminoles were instigated? How did Jackson punish the Spaniards? How, the two British subjects? Who else were hanged? How was Jackson's invasion of Florida regarded by some? By whom was it defended? What was the result of the in-

summary execution of two of their subjects, were at first loud in their demands for satisfaction; but Mr. Adams's arguments convinced them also of the propriety of what had been done. On the close of the Congressional investigation, Jackson visited the principal cities of the Union, and was received with an enthusiasm which showed that the people heartily approved of his conduct.

520. Two important treaties were made in the early part of Monroe's administration: one with England (Oct., 1818), which settled part of the boundary between the British Possessions and the U. S., and secured to the citizens of the latter the privilege of taking fish on the coast of Newfoundland; the other with Spain (February 22d, 1819), which disposed of still more important questions. Difficulties had been anticipated in this quarter, in consequence of the seizure of the posts in Florida; but, through the skilful management of the secretary of state, not only was good feeling restored, but the Spanish government was induced to cede East and West Florida to the U. S., the latter, on its part, relinquishing all claim to Texas and agreeing to meet the demands of American citizens on Spain, for commercial depredations, to the amount of \$5,000,000. This treaty was considered highly advantageous, and unanimously ratified by the senate.

521. During Monroe's administration, five new states were admitted into the Union: Mississippi, in 1817; Illinois, which since the war had become rapidly settled, in 1818; Alabama, originally embraced in Mississippi Territory, in 1819; Maine, before included in the commonwealth of Massachusetts, in 1820; and Missouri, part of the territory of Louisiana, purchased from Napoleon, in 1821. The admission of Missouri was preceded by violent debates in Congress, which agitated the whole country. Some insisted on the prohibition of sla-

---

vestigation by Congress? How was the intelligence received by the British government? How was it shown that the people approved of Jackson's course? 520. What important treaties were made in the early part of Monroe's administration? What had been apprehended? Who conducted the negotiations with Spain? What did Mr. Adams induce the Spanish government to do? On what terms was Florida obtained? How was this treaty regarded? 521. Name the new states admitted during Monroe's administration, and the dates. By what was the admission of Missouri preceded? What different views were taken on

very within its limits, as a condition of entrance into the confederacy; while others maintained that it was the right of every state to determine for itself, on coming into the Union, whether it would be slave or free. A bill, known as *the Missouri Compromise*, was at length introduced by Mr. Clay, to the effect that slavery should be allowed in Missouri, and all states that might be formed south of latitude 36 degrees 30 minutes, which parallel forms its southern boundary,—but should be forbidden in the territory north of this line and west of Missouri. This compromise was generally acceptable; it was passed by Congress, and remained in force till 1854.

522. At the commencement of Monroe's term, the country had just begun to rally from the depression occasioned by the war; and, during the three years that followed, it enjoyed uninterrupted prosperity. As a natural consequence, the president stood high in the affections of the people. His popularity was increased by his endeavors to harmonize opposing parties, as well as by his urgent recommendation, promptly acted on by Congress, that provision should be made for the surviving patriots who had served in the Revolutionary War. He was accordingly reelected almost unanimously, and commenced his second term on the 5th of March, 1821. The seventeenth Congress, which assembled in the following December, contained several new members who afterwards became distinguished; among these were Martin Van Buren, of New York, and Thomas H. Benton, of Missouri. Florida was organized as a territory, and Andrew Jackson was appointed its first governor.

523. The South American provinces, which from the time of Pizarro had remained subject to the Spanish crown, early in the present century followed the example of the North American colonies, asserting their independence and finally establishing it by force of arms. While the struggle was

---

this subject? How was the question settled? What was the substance of the Missouri Compromise? How long did it remain in force? 522. What was the state of the country during Monroe's administration? How did the people feel towards the president? What increased his popularity? What was the result of the election in 1820? What new members appeared in the seventeenth Congress? What new territory was organized? Who was the first governor of Florida? 523. What struggle was going on meanwhile in South America? What

pending, Clay, who sympathized deeply with the oppressed provinces, strove with his transcendent eloquence to induce Congress to recognize their independence. His efforts at first failed, as Congress distrusted their success; but his speeches were read at the head of the patriot armies, and encouraged them to persevere in their struggle for liberty. At length, in March, 1822, the bill was passed with but one dissenting voice. The president heartily joined in the recognition of their independence, and the following year went so far as to declare in his message that 'the American continents were thenceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power'. This is the famous *Monroe doctrine*, which has since been advocated by many of our countrymen.

524. About the year 1820, American commerce suffered much from pirates, who infested the southern waters and made their haunts on the coast of Cuba. As the Spanish authorities made no effort to disperse them, the U. S. government took the matter in hand. The frigate Congress and eight smaller vessels were stationed about Florida, and in the course of 1822 about 20 piratical vessels were captured and destroyed. The Peacock and some more small vessels were despatched to the scene of action in December, 1822, the whole being placed under the command of Commodore Porter. With his usual energy, Porter scoured the infested waters, till he assured himself that not a single piratical craft was left afloat.

525. The people of the United States were much gratified in the summer of 1824 by the arrival of La Fayette, on a visit to the land for whose liberty he had fought and bled. He was received as the nation's guest, and warmly welcomed, not only by the honored patriots who had battled by his side, but also by a later generation that had learned from their fathers his claims to their gratitude and love. Traversing

---

efforts were made by Clay? What success did they at first meet with? When was the bill finally passed? What doctrine was put forth by the president? By what name is it now known? 524. From what did American commerce suffer in 1820? What measures were taken against the pirates? 525. Who visited the U. S. in 1824? How was he received? What were objects of peculiar interest to La

the Union, he beheld with indescribable emotion the strength and prosperity of a country which he had left struggling for its very existence. The battle-fields hallowed by patriot blood were to him objects of peculiar interest; and on Bunker Hill, just fifty years after the conflict that made it memorable, he laid the corner-stone of the monument which still rears its head to mark that glorious spot. Everywhere the illustrious visitor received the homage of a grateful nation. Congress voted him \$200,000 and a township of land in Florida, in token that his services were not forgotten.

After spending several weeks with President Adams, La Fayette, in September, 1825, bade a mournful adieu to the nation, and set sail in the frigate *Brandywine*, which had been so named in honor of his first battle for freedom, and was now placed at his disposal to convey him to France. Before leaving, he paid a parting visit to Mount Vernon, and the grave which contained all that remained of his beloved friend. Overcome by tender recollections, the great patriot

#### LA FAYETTE AT THE GRAVE OF WASHINGTON.

---

Fayette? Of what did he lay the corner-stone? How did Congress show its gratitude to La Fayette? With whom did La Fayette spend several weeks? When did he leave? How was he conveyed to France? Describe his visit to

of France wept long over the dust of the great patriot of America.—La Fayette lived till 1834, prominent in the political history of his country, and to the last the consistent friend of virtue and freedom.

526. The close of Monroe's second term found the country still more prosperous than its commencement. Military and naval defences had been constructed; the rights and character of the nation had been sustained abroad; the dominion of the U. S. had extended on the south and west; civilization had spread among the Indians, and \$60,000,000 of the national debt had been paid. It now became necessary to choose a successor to the presidency. Four candidates appeared in the field: Gen. Jackson, of Tenn.; John Quincy Adams, of Mass.; William H. Crawford, of Ga.; and Henry Clay, of Kentucky. The first received 99 electoral votes; but, this not being a majority, the choice devolved on the house of representatives. This body conferred the presidency on Mr. Adams, who was inaugurated March 4th, 1825. John C. Calhoun, of S. C., had been chosen vice-president by the electoral college.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1825-9.

527. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS was born at Braintree, Mass., on the 11th of July, 1767. At the age of nine, he heard the Declaration of Independence read from the state-house in Boston. Two years afterwards he started for the old world with his father, John Adams, whose patriotic career we have already traced. Accompanying his father to France and Holland, thence traversing the continent to St. Petersburg, where he acted as secretary to the American minister,

---

Mount Vernon. How long did La Fayette live? 528. What was the state of the country at the close of Monroe's second term? What had been effected? Name the candidates for the presidency in 1824. Who received the most votes? On whom did the choice devolve? Who was elected president? Who, vice-president?

527. Give a sketch of John Quincy Adams's early life. What did he do on the



and on his return passing through Sweden and Denmark, the young Adams, though his education was thus irregular, enjoyed unusual opportunities of becoming acquainted with men and manners, and learning the routine of diplomatic business. On the appointment of his father as minister to England, he returned to his native country, and entered Harvard University, where he was graduated with distinction in 1787. The study and practice of law next engaged his attention; but, improving his leisure to publish some political papers, he became known as a statesman, was appointed by Washington minister to Netherlands and Portugal, was transferred by his father to Prussia, was sent to the senate of Massachusetts and afterwards to the U. S. senate, was made minister to Russia by Madison, and afterwards, as we have seen, served as minister at the court of St. James, and secretary of state under Monroe. By this extended experience was Mr. Adams qualified for the high office to which he was called; and though, soon after his inauguration, the friends of Crawford and Jackson combined to oppose the administration, and party-spirit once more became violent, yet the country enjoyed undiminished prosperity. Henry Clay served as secretary of state throughout the whole of Mr. Adams's term.

528. On the 4th of July, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of the declaration of that independence which they had helped to establish, among the rejoicings of their countrymen, and while their own names were on every tongue, expired two of the truest benefactors of America, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson,—the former at the age of 90; the latter, 82. Adams had been invited to participate in the celebration at Quincy; but his weakness would not permit, and he could only send as a toast his own words uttered half a century before, "Independence forever!" Before the day was over, he had ceased to breathe, his last words being "Jefferson survives!"

---

appointment of his father to the court of St. James? What profession did he study? Give an account of his diplomatic career. By whom was his administration opposed? Who was his secretary of state? 528. What took place July 4th, 1826? What were the ages of the two ex-presidents? Give an account of

Jefferson did live, but it was beyond the grave ; he had died at an earlier hour the same day. For some time before, his strength had been failing ; but the wish which he had earnestly expressed to see another 4th of July was gratified. His last words were, "I resign my soul to my God, and my daughter to my country." A bereaved nation received the tidings of these blows with every evidence of sorrow. Tears fell in all parts of the Union. "It is right," said Webster, "that it should be thus ; the tears which flow, and the honors that are paid, when the friends of the Republic die, give hope that the Republic itself may be immortal."

529. Adams renewed a proposition which had been made by his predecessor, to purchase the lands of the Indians still left in the several states, and remove them west of the Mississippi. Some of the tribes objected to parting with their territory ; but in February, 1826, a deputation from the Creeks ceded all their lands in Georgia to the United States, except a million of acres ; and these also were afterwards purchased.

530. A new element was introduced into the political contests of the country, by an occurrence which took place about this time in the state of New York. Free-masonry, an ancient institution of Europe, originating with architects and builders, but afterwards extended to all and supported by many of high rank, found its way to America in 1730. Lodges were multiplied ; and Washington, De Witt Clinton, and other distinguished men became "free and accepted masons". In September, 1826, William Morgan, a member of the fraternity residing in western New York, having threatened to publish a work which would reveal the secrets of the order, was suddenly abducted from home, and never afterwards seen by his friends. He was traced to Lewiston, and thence to Fort Niagara ; but no further clew to his fate could be obtained. A committee of the legislature, appoint-

---

John Adams's death. Of Jefferson's. What did Webster say in allusion to these events ? 529. What did Adams propose with respect to the Indians ? What was done by the Creeks ? 530. How was a new element introduced into the political contests of the country ? What is said of free-masonry ? Give an account of the occurrence in New York. What report was made by a committee of the legisla-

ed to investigate the matter, reported that he had been murdered, and such was the belief of many, though no positive evidence to that effect could ever be obtained. An intense excitement arose against the masons, on whom the crime was charged; and a party was formed with the avowed object of suppressing their secret organization in the United States, as dangerous to freedom of government and the safety of the community. Masonry was too strong to be thus put down; but feeling ran high against it, and for several years at the north the anti-masons exercised a powerful influence, which they used freely for political purposes.

#### 531. De Witt

Clinton, one of the most prominent members of the fraternity at the time of this event, shared in the obloquy it occasioned; and, before the excitement had subsided, he died suddenly of disease of the heart, on the 11th of February, 1828. He had filled many high offices

DE WITT CLINTON'S RESIDENCE, MARPETH, L. I.

with great ability; had been mayor of the city of New York and governor of the state; had served in the U. S. senate; had done much for literature, science, and art, and worked with equal energy in the great cause of internal improvements. To none of her distinguished sons is the commonwealth of New York more largely indebted.

532. The two principal subjects which engaged the president's attention, were internal improvements and domestic manufactures. He was in favor of opening national roads

ture? What was the consequence? What is said of the anti-masons? 531. Who was one of the most prominent masons? When did De Witt Clinton die? What is said of his career? 532. What were the two principal subjects that en-

and canals, improving harbors and the channels of rivers, erecting light-houses, and making other provision for the safety of coast navigation. To advance the manufacturing interests, which had become important in the northern and eastern states, he recommended increasing the duties on imported goods. The necessity of such duties had been generally acknowledged, and in 1816, Lowndes and Calhoun, both of South Carolina, advocated a high protective tariff, or list of imposts. In 1828, in accordance with the views of the president, increased duties were laid on cotton, woollen, and linen fabrics, silk, iron, lead, &c. The north, largely engaged in the manufacture of some of these articles, was of course benefited by this new tariff, because it prevented foreign goods from selling lower than those produced at home; but southern statesmen, including Calhoun, violently opposed it, inasmuch as the south, an agricultural and not a manufacturing country, had to pay higher prices for articles it was obliged to use. Especially in South Carolina was this feeling exhibited; and the people of Charleston showed their disapprobation by placing their flags at half-mast.

533. Mr. Adams ran a second time for the presidency, but was defeated by Gen. Jackson. Calhoun was reëlected vice-president. On the 4th of March, 1829, Adams resigned the country, at peace with all the world, and still blessed with internal prosperity, into the hands of his successor.

---

## CHAPTER X.

### JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829-1837.

534. JACKSON'S journey from his home near Nashville, known as "the Hermitage", to the federal capital, was a

---

gaged the president's attention? Of what internal improvements was he in favor? What measure did he advocate for the advancement of manufacturing interests? By whom was a high protective tariff recommended in 1816? What action was taken on this subject by Congress in 1828? How did the north feel towards the new tariff? How, the south? How did the people of Charleston show their disapprobation? 533. Who were the next candidates for the presidency? Who was elected? Who was chosen vice-president? On what day was Jackson inaugurated?

succession of triumphs. He appointed Martin Van Buren, of New York, secretary of state, and proceeded to fill the principal offices in his gift with men professing the same political principles as himself. To do this, he removed nearly 700 office-holders; and the practice of thus rewarding political friends has been followed by every suc-

ANDREW JACKSON.

ceeding president. Jackson was a man of determined will, and his administration of the government was marked by the same energy and self-reliance that humbled the Creeks and drove the flower of the British army from New Orleans.

535. In 1832, the United States was devastated by the Asiatic cholera, a destructive epidemic which originated in 1817 in the marshes at the mouth of the Ganges. After confining its ravages for some years to India, it gradually spread, till it reached London in 1831, creating a consternation like that occasioned by the plague. Crossing the Atlantic the following year, it appeared first in Canada, and thence quickly traversed the Union in a south-westerly direction, setting medical skill at defiance, and hurrying thousands into eternity. Since then, a few cases of cholera have occurred every summer, and the disease seems to have lost much of its original virulence.

536. About this time, the north-western frontier suffered

---

534. What is said of Jackson's journey from his home to the capital? Whom did he make secretary of state? With whom did he fill the principal offices? How many office-holders did he remove for this purpose? By whom has this practice been followed? What was the character of Jackson's administration? 535. By what was the United States devastated in 1832? Where did the cholera

from what is known in history as Black Hawk's War. The Sacs and Foxes, occupying the Rock River country in Illinois, a quarter of a century before had sold their lands to the United States, but continued to inhabit them; and now that the march of civilization had reached their borders, and government was disposing of their territory to settlers, they refused to leave it, on the ground that the original sale was illegal. The governor of Illinois took the field with 1,600 mounted men, and induced some of the chiefs to sign a new treaty and cross the Mississippi; but Black Hawk still held out, and with such of his countrymen as he could raise determined to defend the graves of his fathers. Several skirmishes took place, and the war finally assumed so dangerous an aspect that Gen. Scott was sent from the Atlantic coast with nine companies of artillery. Moving with his usual despatch, Scott reached Chicago, a distance of 1,800 miles, in 18 days; but there his force was overtaken by the cholera, and before he could proceed on his march he lost more men by the epidemic than all that were killed in the war. Thus detained, and exposed to greater danger and suffering than he had ever encountered on the field of battle, Scott was unable to reach the scene of action; and Gen. Atkinson, in several decisive battles, the last of which took place August 2d, 1832, defeated the Sac chief, and gained possession of his person. After being confined for a time in one of the western forts, Black Hawk was taken to the Atlantic cities, where he was well received, and saw much that excited his curiosity. Convinced by his tour that resistance against so powerful a nation was useless, he was at length allowed to rejoin his people. With regret he abandoned to the pale-faces the ancient hunting-grounds of his tribe, and retired to Iowa, where he died in 1838.

537. Difficulties also arose with the Cherokees. This nation now numbered 15,000 souls, and had made no little

---

originate? Give an account of its successive ravages. What is said of this disease since 1832? 536. From what did the north-western frontier suffer about this time? Relate the circumstances that led to Black Hawk's War. What was effected by the governor of Illinois? Who was finally sent to the seat of war? What became of Black Hawk? 537. With what other tribe did difficulties arise?

advance in the arts of civilized life. They had a republican government, a printing-press, churches, and missionary schools in which 500 children were receiving instruction. Tired of waiting for the general government to remove them, according to its engagement, the legislature of Georgia passed laws abolishing the Cherokee republic, and extending the jurisdiction of the state over their country. The Indians claimed that the protection of the United States had been guaranteed them by numerous treaties, and appealed to the Supreme Court, before which their case was argued by Mr. Wirt. Though the court declared the acts of Georgia unconstitutional and void, the president favored the removal of the Cherokees beyond the Mississippi; and Congress in 1834 organized "the Indian Territory", part of which was appropriated to their use. But the Cherokees refused to leave their pleasant farms and the scenes of their childhood, and at one time war was apprehended. At length, however, in consideration of a little over \$5,000,000, they agreed to cede their territory and remove to the west. Even after this, obstacles were interposed; and it was not till 1837 that they were induced by the conciliatory but determined measures of Gen. Scott, who was authorized to effect their removal by force, if necessary, to commence their march to the region assigned them on the bank of the Arkansas.

538. The tariff of 1828, as we have seen, gave general dissatisfaction to the cotton-growing states. A party was soon formed in South Carolina, which claimed for each state the right of nullifying within its limits such acts of Congress as it might deem unconstitutional. They were known as Nullifiers, and were led by Calhoun, then vice-president, and Hayne, who in the U. S. senate measured his eloquence against that of Webster in a debate which has become celebrated in the parliamentary history of

---

Describe the condition of the Cherokees at this time. What action was taken by Georgia? How did the Cherokees seek to protect themselves? How was the case decided? What were the president's views? What provision did Congress make for the Cherokees? How was their consent to emigrate finally obtained? How were they at last compelled to go? 538. Who were the Nullifiers? By whom were they led? What celebrated debate in the U. S. senate is referred to? What took place in 1832? Who advocated the right of nullification in the senate?

America. In 1832 a new tariff was passed, but it was no less objectionable to the south than the former one. Calhoun, who had resigned the vice-presidency for a seat in the senate, defended his favorite doctrine in that body with all his powers of argument; and a state convention in South Carolina resolved to prevent with arms the enforcement of the new tariff. There was imminent danger of a collision; it was prevented only by the prompt and decided measures of President Jackson, which determined the nullification leaders to postpone their forcible opposition to the collection of duties till March 1st, 1833. In the mean time, Clay, ever the friend of the Union, appeared with a compromise which provided for the gradual reduction of the duties in question, until in ten years they should reach the low point demanded by South Carolina. This bill was passed by Congress, and received the president's signature, March 3d, 1833. It restored peace, and averted evils which at one time threatened the very existence of the Union.

539. Jackson's energetic administration of the government gave general satisfaction, and he was reëlected, with Martin Van Buren as vice-president. He entered on his second term, March 4th, 1833.

540. Opposed to the United States Bank, and apprehending an abuse of the great power it wielded, the president in 1832 vetoed a bill passed by Congress, providing for a renewal of its charter in 1836. In October, 1833, he went so far as to remove from it the public funds, then amounting to about \$10,000,000, and deposit them in certain state banks selected for that purpose. So closely connected was the national bank with the commercial interests of the country, that this act, cutting it off from the support of government, created a panic, and plunged the mercantile community in distress. Numerous failures followed; the president was

---

What resolution was passed by a state convention in South Carolina? How was a collision prevented? What did the nullification leaders finally determine to do? How was the difficulty in the mean time settled? 539. What was the result of the election of 1832? 540. How did Jackson feel towards the U. S. Bank? How did he show his hostility to it in 1832? How, in 1833? What was the effect of the removal of the deposits from the U. S. Bank? How was this act of the president



violently condemned, and was even censured by a resolution of the senate. Jackson, however, confirmed in his apprehensions by this revulsion, and supported by the house of representatives, stood firm, and, despite petitions and remonstrances, refused to restore the deposits. The state banks enlarged their operations; confidence was gradually restored, and commercial prosperity revived.

541. In 1834, Jackson was compelled to take a decided course with France. By a treaty made in 1831, the French government had agreed to pay about \$5,000,000 for injuries done to American commerce during the wars of Napoleon. The Chamber of Deputies having refused for several years to appropriate the money, Jackson, in December, 1834, recommended Congress to authorize reprisals on French commerce, and directed the American minister to demand his passports and leave Paris. These peremptory measures had the desired effect, and the money was promptly paid. Portugal was made to pay a similar indemnity; treaties were concluded with Russia and Belgium; and the United States rapidly rose in the estimation of European powers.

542. A war with the Seminoles, which was attended with much danger and suffering to the troops and officers engaged in it, broke out in 1835. It originated in an attempt to remove the Seminoles from their seats in Florida to lands provided for them west of the Mississippi, to which a delegation of their chiefs had agreed to emigrate. Osceola [*os-e-o'-la*], otherwise known as Powell, a half-breed of superior cunning and bravery, was the leading spirit among the Red Men. Preparing his people for a war of extermination on the white settlers, he deluded the U. S. agents with fair promises till he was ready to strike the intended blow. The murder of a chief who had signed the treaty, and the flight of some friendly Seminoles to the U. S. post at Tampa Bay, first revealed his purposes.

---

regarded by some? What position did Jackson maintain? What was the ultimate result? 541. With what country was Jackson compelled to take a decided course in 1834? Relate the circumstances. With what other European powers were satisfactory treaties made? What was the effect on the standing of the United States abroad? 542. What war broke out in 1835? What was the cause

Troops were immediately ordered to Florida; and Major Dade set out from Tampa with 117 men, to join Gen. Clinch at Camp King, in the interior of the country. Dade's force fell into an ambuscade, and, though they defended themselves bravely, were all killed except one man, who, feigning death, was thrown on a pile of bodies. When the enemy had departed, he crept out and made his way through the woods to his countrymen, after incredible sufferings, which, with his wounds, soon proved fatal. General Thompson, while dining with some friends within sight of the garrison at Camp King, was massacred the same day that Dade's detachment was cut off. On the 31st of December, Gen. Clinch, having marched against one of the Seminole settlements, was attacked at disadvantage by Osceola, and, after a severe battle in which the Indians were three times repulsed, returned to Fort Drane, where he had fixed his head-quarters. The whole country was now ravaged by the Indians. Plantations were devastated, houses burned, negroes carried off, families murdered. The settlers fled to the forts for refuge, but many were cut off on the way.

On the 7th of February, 1836, Gen. Scott, who had been appointed to the command in Florida, reached St. Augustine. Learning that Clinch was hard pressed at Fort Drane, he set out as soon as possible for his relief. Gen. Gaines had also taken the field from the west, with about a thousand men. An action took place with the savages near the scene of Clinch's former battle, and the Seminoles were repulsed with loss. Before Scott could coöperate with the western army and surround the enemy, they had withdrawn to the swamps and everglades in the south, where for a time they were safe from pursuit. Scott then proceeded to the country of the Creeks, some of whom had been induced by the Seminoles to commence hostilities. After the inhabitants had suffered

---

of the Seminole War? Who was the chief Seminole leader? Give an account of his proceedings. What action was taken by government? Give an account of Major Dade's massacre. Relate the circumstances under which Gen. Thompson was murdered. What expedition was undertaken by Gen. Clinch? What was the result? Describe the state of the country at this time. Who reached St. Augustine, Feb. 7th, 1836? What was Scott's first movement? Give an account of Gen. Gaines's engagement with the Indians. Before the enemy could be

much from their depredations, the Creeks were finally subdued and compelled to move west of the Mississippi.

The remaining history of the Seminole War, though it belongs to Van Buren's administration, will be given here. Gen. Jessup succeeded Scott in the command of the army in Florida. In October, 1837, Osceola presented himself with a flag of truce at the American camp. Jessup, suspecting a repetition of treachery and desiring to save unnecessary bloodshed, disregarded the flag, seized the chief, and sent him to Fort Moultrie, near Charleston, where he died the following year. The Seminoles, notwithstanding, continued hostilities. In December, 1838, Col. Taylor (afterwards a distinguished general in the Mexican War and president of the U. S.) set out with over a thousand men for the almost inaccessible haunts to which the enemy had retreated. The sufferings this army encountered from fatiguing marches through tangled deserts and swamps filled with poisonous insects and reptiles, can hardly be conceived. On the 25th of December, 1838, they found the enemy prepared to receive them near O-kee-cho'-bee [*Big Water*] Lake. After a hard-fought battle, in which Taylor lost 139 men, the enemy, who had also suffered severely, were obliged to retreat. For more than a year longer the U. S. army underwent terrible privations, in their endeavors to bring this harassing war to an end. A treaty was signed in 1839; but the Seminoles did not entirely desist from their ravages till 1842, when peace was firmly established. Since then, numbers of them have been removed to the west.

543. Two destructive conflagrations, which were regarded as national calamities, occurred about this time. On the 16th of December, 1835, a fire broke out in the lower part of the city of New York, which was occupied by large mercantile houses. The night being so cold that the water froze as it was drawn from the hydrants, over thirty acres were

---

surrounded, what did they do? Whither did Scott then proceed? What did he soon compel the Creeks to do? Who succeeded Scott in Florida? How did Jessup obtain possession of Osceola? What became of this chief? In Dec., 1838, who set out on an expedition against the Seminoles? From what did his army suffer severely? Give an account of the battle of Okeechobee. How much longer did the war continue? When were peace and security finally restored? 543.

laid in ashes before the flames were stayed; 529 houses and \$18,000,000 worth of property were consumed. It was feared that so serious a loss would embarrass the business community; a few failures occurred, but "the burnt district" was speedily covered with magnificent warehouses, which greatly improved that section of the city. The other fire alluded to took place at Washington, Dec. 15th, 1836, destroying the U. S. Post-Office, and the Patent-Office, with 7,000 models and 10,000 designs of inventions.

544. The great men who died during Jackson's administration must not be forgotten. On the 4th of July, 1831, Monroe breathed his last at the residence of his son-in-law in New York, in his 72d year. He died, like Jefferson and Adams, amid national rejoicings for blessings which he had helped to secure. Monroe was a native of Westmoreland County, Virginia. He shed his blood at Trenton in the Revolutionary War, served with gallantry at Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth, and was eminently successful as a diplomatist and statesman.

The year 1832 witnessed the departure of Charles Carroll, of Carrollton, the last surviving signer of the Declaration of Independence, at the advanced age of 96. He had served his country in various public stations with fidelity and success, and had seen it increase in population from two to thirteen millions. The same year died Philip Freneau [*fre-no'*], one of the poets of the Revolution, whose patriotic verses had done much towards rousing his countrymen for that great struggle. He died at the age of 80, near Freehold, New Jersey.

On the 24th of May, 1833, John Randolph, of Roanoke, Va., a descendant of Pocahontas, died at the age of 60. He commenced public life in 1799, and served thirty years in Congress, where he became distinguished for his eccentric conduct, his sharpness of wit, and his tremendous powers of sarcasm, which made him feared by all parties. In 1830,

---

Give an account of the great fire in New York. What other fire took place about a year after? 544. Give an account of the death of Monroe. Where was he born? What is said of his previous history? What two distinguished men died in 1832? What is said of Charles Carroll? What, of Philip Freneau? When did

Jackson appointed him minister to Russia. Randolph's speeches were widely read and admired. Poetry and history were his favorite studies, and few were better versed in them than he.

Two more of the great men of Virginia, Chief-Justice Marshall and Ex-President Madison, died respectively in 1835 and 1836, the former aged 80, the latter 85. As a member of Congress, a cabinet officer, and chief-justice of the U. S., Marshall did good service to his country. His abilities as a writer are

CHIEF-JUSTICE MARSHALL'S RESIDENCE, RICHMOND, VA.

conspicuously displayed in his widely-read and still popular "Life of Washington".

545. Arkansas was admitted into the Union in June, 1836, and Michigan in the following January.

546. Gen. Jackson's second term being about to expire, Martin Van Buren was nominated to succeed him by the democrats, or supporters of the administration; while its opponents, who in 1836 assumed the name of *whigs*, voted chiefly for Gen. Harrison, of Ohio. Van Buren was elected, and inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1837. No vice-president having been chosen by the people, Col. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, one of the heroes of Tippecanoe, was elected by the senate to that office.

---

Randolph, of Roanoke, die? At what age? What is said of his public life and attainments? What two other distinguished Virginians died during Jackson's term? What is said of Chief-Justice Marshall? 545. When were Arkansas and Michigan admitted? 546. Who were the candidates at the next presidential election? Who was elected? When was he inaugurated? Who was chosen vice-president?

## CHAPTER XI.

## VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1837-1841.

547. MARTIN VAN BUREN was born at Kinderhook, New York, on the 5th of December, 1782. He left school at 14; was admitted to the bar at 21; was elected to the N. Y. senate in his 30th year; was sent to the U. S. senate in 1821; was chosen governor of N. Y. in 1828; became Jackson's secretary of state the following year; was appointed minister to Great Britain, and then received in succession the two highest offices in the gift of his countrymen.

548. Hardly was Van Buren seated in the presidential chair, when the business community were paralyzed by a revulsion in their monetary affairs. The last year of Jackson's administration had been one of great apparent prosperity. The national debt was extinguished, and a surplus of nearly \$40,000,000 had accumulated in the treasury, which Congress ordered to be distributed among the several states. Banks had multiplied to such an extent that there were computed to be no less than 677 in the Union, with 146 branches; most of which had issued notes to a large amount beyond what they were able to redeem. Business men traded extensively on credit, and in many cases gave up honest industry for wild speculation. This unhealthy state of things was necessarily followed by a revulsion, and the crisis occurred in the spring of 1837. The banks of New York and New Orleans suspended specie payments,—that is, refused to redeem their notes with gold or silver; and their example was followed throughout the country. Several hundred mercantile houses immediately stopped payment, and in New Orleans alone failures to the amount of \$27,000,000 took place within two days.

An order known as "the specie circular" had been issued

---

547. Where and when was Martin Van Buren born? Give a sketch of his public life. 548. What took place immediately after Van Buren's inauguration? What is assigned as the cause of this revulsion? When did the crisis occur? What were the banks compelled to do? What was the consequence? What was the substance of "the specie circular"? Who petitioned the president to rescind

by Jackson, requiring all payments to the government to be made in gold and silver, and thus, it was claimed, large quantities of specie were kept out of circulation. A committee of N. Y. merchants petitioned the president to rescind the circular. Van Buren refused their request, but called an extra session of Congress. That body took measures to protect the government from embarrassment, but could do little to relieve the prevalent distress. The return of confidence and prosperity was necessarily slow. The New York banks resumed specie payments in May, 1838, as did those in other places shortly after.

At this extra session Van Buren submitted his famous Sub-treasury scheme, for the safe keeping of the public funds. It was at first violently opposed and failed to pass; but, presented at a subsequent session, it became a law in 1840. The Sub-treasury Bill provided that all government dues should be paid in gold or silver, which should not, as before, be deposited in banks, but should be kept in certain offices in the chief cities of the Union, under the care of persons appointed for the purpose, called sub-treasurers, who should give security for the proper discharge of their duty. The Sub-treasury Bill was the great measure of Van Buren's administration, and called forth violent denunciations from his opponents. Keeping a large amount of specie in the vaults of government, it compelled the banks to limit their operations, and through them acted on the community. With such effect was this argument used in the election of 1840, that Van Buren, who was running for a second term, was defeated by a large majority.

549. In 1837, a portion of the Canadians rose against the British government and attempted to establish their independence. The people of the U. S., particularly those of New York, sympathized with the insurgents, and many

---

it? How did the president answer their petition? What was done by Congress? When did the banks resume payment? What scheme did the president submit at this extra session? What was its fate? Give the substance of the Sub-treasury Bill. What argument was urged against it? What was the consequence? 549. In 1837, what attempt was made by some of the Canadians? How did the people of the U. S. feel on the subject? What was done by a party of 700 men? [See

crossed the border to render them assistance. A party of 700 men took possession of Navy Island, a British dependency in the Niagara River [see Map, p. 351], and fortified it so strongly as to resist an attack from the loyalists. The steamer *Caroline* was employed to bring them munitions from Schlosser, on the American side. Late at night, near the close of December, 1837, a party of loyalists crossed from Canada, set fire to the *Caroline*, cut her from her moorings, and allowed her to drift over the falls. By these proceedings the peaceful relations between Great Britain and the U. S. were endangered; but Van Buren promptly issued a proclamation forbidding interference in the affairs of Canada, and sent Gen. Wool to the frontier. The force on Navy Island surrendered their arms and dispersed; and, not long after, another body which had assembled in N. Y. near the Canada line, with hostile intentions, followed their example. The insurrection was soon suppressed, and harmony between the two countries was once more restored.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

### ADMINISTRATION OF HARRISON AND TYLER, 1841-1845.

550. VAN BUREN was succeeded by William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, who was inaugurated March 4th, 1841. Harrison was born on the James River, Virginia, in 1773, and on the death of his father was placed under the guardianship of Robert Morris, the great financier of the Revolution. Having graduated at Hampden Sidney College, he applied himself to the study of medicine; but, before the completion of his course, the news of Indian aggressions in the west led him to join the army then about to take the

---

Map, p. 351.—What place in New York near Navy Island? What other island in the Niagara River?] How did the loyalists retaliate? What were endangered by these proceedings? What steps were taken by the president? What was the result?

550. By whom was Van Buren succeeded? When was Harrison inaugurated? Give a sketch of Harrison's previous history. What won for Harrison the con-



field, and he received from Washington a commission as ensign. Bearing himself gallantly in the armies of St. Clair and Wayne, he was rapidly promoted, and finally became lieutenant-governor of the North-west Territory. In 1799, he was sent to Congress as its first delegate; and soon after he was appointed governor of Indiana, which then included, not only the region now so called, but also Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin. His services in this capacity, and his victories at Tippecanoe and the Thames, gained for him the hearty gratitude of the west, as well as the unreserved confidence of the whole Union.

John Tyler was the new vice-president. Born in 1790 in Virginia, he was graduated at 17 at William and Mary College, was admitted to the bar two years afterwards, and soon became distinguished in his profession. Tyler was not long in attaining political prominence. After serving successively in the legislature and in Congress, he was in 1825 elected governor of Virginia. Called to the U. S. senate, he ran an honorable career in that body, consistently carrying out state rights principles and generally voting with the democratic party. Differing from Jackson on some points, and an ardent friend of Clay, though known to be opposed to the U. S. Bank, he was placed on the same ticket with Gen. Harrison.

551. Harrison appointed Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, secretary of state, and soon after his inauguration called an extra session of Congress, to consider "sundry important matters connected with the finances of the country". When Congress met, the president was no more. He died on the 4th of April, 1841, from disease brought on by fatigue and exposure. Tyler thus became president, and on the 6th of April he took the oath of office.

Congress, at its extra session, occupied itself chiefly with the financial interests of the country. The Sub-treasury Act was repealed, and a Bankrupt Law was passed, which freed

---

affection of his countrymen? Who was the new vice-president? Where was John Tyler born? Give an account of his early life. What course did he pursue in the senate? How did he come to be nominated by the whigs? 551. Whom did Harrison make secretary of state? What did the president do soon after his inauguration? Before Congress met, what melancholy event happened? Who thus be-

those who had failed from their obligations, and enabled them to recommence business. The great question before Congress, however, was the establishment of a national bank. A bill providing for such an institution was framed by Clay and passed both houses; but, to the indignation of the whigs throughout the country, it was vetoed by the president. Another bill, similar in substance but modified in some of its details, was passed the following September; but this also received Mr. Tyler's veto. Violent abuse was lavished on the president for thus defeating the favorite measure of the party that elected him; yet he was merely carrying out the principles which he had always held on this subject. The cabinet showed their disapproval of his course by resigning, Mr. Webster alone retaining his seat on account of several important public interests which would have suffered from his resignation.

552. One of these was the settlement of a boundary line on the north-east, between the possessions of Great Britain and the United States. War was at one time threatened; but the excitement that pervaded the country, particularly those parts of Maine and New Brunswick which bordered on the disputed line, was laid at rest by a treaty made by Lord Ashburton and Daniel Webster on the part of their respective countries, and ratified by the senate August 20th, 1842.

553. The charter of the U. S. Bank expired by limitation in 1836. President Jackson's veto, as we have seen, prevented it from receiving a new charter from the general government; but it succeeded in obtaining one from Pennsylvania, and continued its operations under the management of Nicholas Biddle. Its directors, however, abandoning the prudent policy which had marked its former movements,

---

came president? What occupied the attention of Congress at this extra session? What act was repealed? What law was passed? What was the great question before Congress? What action was had on the subject of a national bank? How was it defeated? How were these vetoes received? How did the cabinet show their disapprobation? Why did Webster retain his seat? 552. What difficulty had arisen between the United States and Great Britain? How was it settled? 553. What had proved fatal to the U. S. Bank? From what state did it receive a new charter? By whom was it managed? What policy did it follow? What was it

ventured into the same wild system of speculation that was ruining other institutions, and, like them, it was compelled to suspend in 1837. It resumed payment, but again speculated beyond its means ; and, notwithstanding the exertions of its friends, it finally failed in October, 1841, involving many in ruin.

554. The summer of 1842 was signalized by the return of an exploring expedition which had been sent out four years before by the government, under the command of Lieutenant Charles Wilkes, of the U. S. navy. Accompanied by a large corps of scientific men, and well provided with every thing that could assist them in their researches, Lieut. Wilkes had traversed the Pacific, visited various groups of islands before but little known, surveyed different parts of the western coast of America, and made many important discoveries in the far south, which was the particular scene of his explorations. Among other things, he discovered and coasted for a distance of 1,700 miles what is known as the Antarctic Continent. The whole distance traversed was 90,000 miles.

555. Rhode Island and New York were each the seat of internal disturbances during Tyler's administration. In Rhode Island, the difficulties originated in attempts to change the constitution granted by Charles II., under which the government had been administered for nearly two hundred years. According to this instrument, no citizen could vote unless he had a certain amount of property. This provision and others it was deemed best to alter ; but a difference of opinion on some of the points involved gave rise to two parties, known as the "suffrage" and the "law and order" party, each of which elected a governor, and prepared to support its claims with arms. The suffrage party, whose proceedings had not been in accordance with existing laws, elected Thomas W. Dorr. He made an attack on the state arsenal, May 18th, 1842, but was soon compelled to flee before the militia, who

---

compelled to do ? What was its final fate ? 554. What signalized the summer of 1842 ? What was accomplished by Wilkes's expedition ? How long a voyage did he make ? 555. What states were the scene of disturbances during Tyler's administration ? Give an account of the difficulties in Rhode Island. Whom did "the suffrage party" elect governor ? What was done by Dorr ? How were his

were called out by his opponents. A second attempt of the suffrage men was defeated by the troops of the United States. Dorr was apprehended, convicted of treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life; but he was afterwards pardoned. A new constitution, formed according to provisions of the legislature, went into effect in May, 1843.

The disturbances in New York originated in Rensselaer county. In the early history of this state, as we have seen, large tracts were granted to certain persons called *patroons*, for their services in bringing over colonists from the old world. Among these was Van Rensselaer, whose successors divided the land thus obtained into farms, and invited settlers by leasing them out on very favorable terms. This arrangement had been in force for generations; but in 1840, the farms having by this time increased greatly in value, Van Rensselaer's tenants began to murmur, and even refused to pay their rent, which was in most cases but a few bushels of wheat, three or four fat fowls, and a day's service with wagon and horses, each year. The legislature having tried in vain to settle the difficulty, in 1844, the Anti-renters, as they were called, assumed a bolder tone; disguised as Indians, they tarred and feathered such of their fellow-tenants as paid their rent, and resisted and even killed the officers sent to serve warrants on them. Similar disturbances broke out in Columbia and Delaware counties, where lands were held on a like tenure. In 1846, Silas Wright, governor of New York, declared Delaware county in a state of insurrection, and supported the civil officers with a military force. The leading Anti-renters were taken, tried, condemned, and sentenced to imprisonment, some of them for life. Peace was thus restored; but in 1847 Governor Young pardoned the offenders, and for some years there was danger that the anti-rent difficulties would break out anew.

556. About this time, excitement ran high in Illinois in

---

attempts defeated? What was done to Dorr? When did a new constitution go into effect? What was the cause of the difficulties in New York? Describe the proceedings of the Anti-renters in 1844. To what counties did these disturbances spread? In 1846, what measures were taken by the governor for their suppression? How did the Anti-renters finally escape punishment? 556. What occa-

consequence of the proceedings of a body of men calling themselves Mormons, or Latter-day Saints. This sect was founded by Joseph Smith, a native of Vermont. Having removed to central New York, and received an imperfect education, Smith, at the age of 15, asserted that he saw visions; and, seven years afterwards, he declared that he had received a revelation from on high in the form of records, which had been buried in the earth for centuries. They were engraved, according to the account of a Mormon writer, on plates having the appearance of gold and the thickness of ordinary sheet tin, which were covered with Egyptian characters, and united by means of rings. Smith pretended to understand and translate this famous "Book of Mormon", and set it forth as a new gospel for men. It contains sundry wonderful stories about events in America over 2,000 years ago; and it is said to have been written by a man named Spaulding as a romance.

The immorality of the Mormon doctrines, among which that of polygamy, or the allowing of a plurality of wives, was prominent, recommended them to some; and in 1833 Smith found himself at the head of 1,200 followers. Jackson county, Missouri, became their head-quarters; but, as they declared that the whole western country was destined for their inheritance, and as various thefts were committed in their neighborhood, the Missourians naturally desired to get rid of them. The first opportunity was seized to call out the militia; and the Mormons, offering no resistance, were driven from the state. They crossed to Illinois, and in the spring of 1840 founded, on a bluff overlooking the Mississippi, the city of Nauvoo (a word which they say signifies *beautiful*). Here they erected a magnificent temple, and received a large addition of members, some of whom were men of property.

---

sioned violent excitement in Illinois? By whom was the sect of Mormons founded? What is said of Smith's early history? How does a Mormon writer describe the plates Smith pretended to have found? What does the "Book of Mormon" contain? By whom is it said to have been written? What was the character of the Mormon doctrines? What one is specially mentioned? How many followers had Smith in 1833? Where were their head-quarters? Recount the circumstances that led to their expulsion from Missouri. Where did they then go? What city did they build? What happened next? What finally befell Joseph Smith

At length the Mormons passed ordinances which set the laws of Illinois at defiance. Great excitement spread throughout the state, and some of the "Saints" left Nauvoo in alarm. Several robberies and murders committed near their city were attributed to the followers of the prophet; and popular fury was increased by the belief that the Mormons controlled the county courts, and could set at defiance all attempts to bring them to justice. At last Joseph Smith, still the leading spirit among the Mormons, was arrested, and, with his brother, lodged in jail at Carthage. Here, on the 7th of July, 1844, they were killed by a mob, which broke into the prison. The Mormons continued to be the objects of popular suspicion and odium; and so violently were these feelings displayed, that the next year they sold their possessions in Illinois, deserted their beautiful city, which then contained 10,000 inhabitants, and emigrated to the wilderness beyond the Rocky Mountains, where we shall again have occasion to notice them.

557. Serious riots occurred in May and June, 1844, at Philadelphia, growing out of differences between a party known as Native Americans and the Irish inhabitants of that city. Fire-arms were used, and over a hundred persons were killed or wounded. Thirty dwelling-houses, a seminary, and three churches, were burned. Quiet was not restored till the governor had taken the field with 5,000 men.

558. Acts admitting Florida and Iowa into the Union were passed March 3d, 1845; but Iowa did not enter till 1846.

559. Towards the close of this administration, the new republic of Texas became an object of general attention and interest. This extensive tract, lying west and south-west of Louisiana, had been early explored by Ponce de Leon and La Salle. Claimed by both Spanish and French, it was held and governed by the former, who in 1692 established the settlement at San Antonio de Bexar [*san an-to'-ne-o dā bā-hahr'*].

---

and his brother? What became of the Mormons? 557. Give an account of the riots in Philadelphia in 1844. 558. What new states were admitted March 3d, 1845? 559. Towards the close of Tyler's term, to what was public attention directed? By whom was Texas early explored? By whom was it claimed? By which of these nations was it held? Where was a settlement made in 1692? How

Colonization, however, was discouraged by the authorities, who desired to keep an impassable wilderness between themselves and their enterprising neighbors on the north. Foreigners were forbidden to settle in Texas on pain of death, and so strong was the aversion entertained towards the people of the United States that a Spanish captain-general declared, if he had the power, he would not even allow a bird to fly over the boundary. For years, therefore, did Texas remain uninhabited except by roving Indians, a few fortified enclosures being the only evidences of European settlement. In 1800 but three of these stations remained,—San Antonio, Goliad [*go-le-ad'*], and Nacogdoches [*nak-o-dō'-chiz*].

From the time of its conquest by Cortez, Mexico was governed by Spanish viceroys, who aimed, not to improve the country, but simply to make it profitable to the crown. Mining, therefore, became the chief branch of industry, to the exclusion of agriculture and commerce. The people, shut out from the rest of the world, became imbued with a servile spirit; and it was not till Spain herself fell under the power of Napoleon in 1808 that they thought of asserting their right to self-government. In 1810, a revolutionary movement commenced; but, after a struggle continued at intervals for seven years, it was finally put down by the Spanish authorities. A second attempt in 1821, under Gen. Iturbide [*e-toor'-be-dā*] was more successful, and Mexican independence was established on a firm basis. Iturbide, however, having proclaimed himself emperor, offended the people, who had shed their blood to secure a free government. He was deposed and banished, but returned to his country and was executed. Santa Anna, a man of superior abilities, next appeared at the head of affairs, and under his auspices was

---

did the authorities look upon the people of the United States? How did they try to prevent them from entering the country? What did a Spanish captain-general say? What was the consequence of this exclusive policy? In 1800, what stations remained in Texas? Describe the condition of Mexico from the time of its conquest. When did the people first think of asserting their independence? Give an account of the first revolutionary movement. When and by whom was a second attempt made? What was the result? What afterwards became of Iturbide? Who next appeared at the head of affairs? What kind of a government was



formed a federal government, somewhat resembling that of the United States.

560. Meanwhile, Spain had changed her policy with respect to the colonization of Texas, and granted Moses Austin, a native of Connecticut, a large tract in that province, on condition that he would settle it with three hundred families. This grant, confirmed by the new government of Mexico, was transferred by Moses Austin, at his death, to his son Stephen. The three hundred families having been introduced from the United States according to agreement, Austin obtained a further grant for five hundred more. Other emigrants naturally followed; and in 1830 there were not far from 20,000 Americans in Texas.

The prosperity of these settlers awakened the jealousy of the Mexicans, and an unjust and oppressive policy was pursued towards them. Their remonstrances being disregarded, they declared their independence of Mexico, and made ready to support it by force of arms. Volunteers from America hastened to their aid. In 1835, the revolution began with the battle of Gonzales [*gon-zah'-lez*], in which 1,000 Mexicans were defeated by 500 Texans. Goliad, and the strong citadel of Bexar, known as the Alamo [*al'-a-mo*], were soon after taken, and the whole Mexican army was dispersed. On the 6th of March, 1836, however, Santa Anna, having raised a new force of 8,000 men, attacked the Alamo, which had been left in charge of a small but gallant garrison. All night they fought, but superior numbers triumphed. Every man fell at his post but seven, and these were killed while asking quarter. Here died David Crockett, the famous hunter. Crockett had enjoyed but two months' instruction at a country school; but his strong common sense and indomitable courage made him very popular among the people of Tennessee, who three times elected him to Congress. In 1834, he went to Texas, to strike a blow for freedom. The Alamo

---

formed under Santa Anna's auspices? 560. Give an account of the settlements made by Austin in Texas. In 1830, how many Americans were there in Mexico? How were these American settlers treated? What was the consequence? By whom were the Texans aided? When did the revolution begin? With what battle? What victories were gained by the Texans? Give an account of the capture



proved his last battle-field. He expired, covered with wounds, surrounded by a circle of Mexicans who had fallen by his sword.

#### FALL OF CROCKETT IN THE ALAMO.

561. On the 21st of April was fought the decisive battle of San Ja-cin'-to, in which Santa Anna, with 1,500 men, was defeated by 800 Texans under Gen. Sam Houston [*hew'-stun*] (afterwards a member of the U. S. senate). The Mexican leader, taken the next day in the woods, was compelled to acknowledge the independence of Texas, but the government refused to ratify his act. Hostilities, however, were virtually abandoned by Mexico; and the independence of the new republic was soon acknowledged by the United States, by France, Great Britain, and other European powers. In 1837, Texas asked to be admitted into the Union; but the proposal was declined by Van Buren through fear of a war with Mexico. In the spring of 1844, the American population of Texas having increased to over 200,000, the question was re-

---

of the Alamo and the fall of Crockett. [See Map, p. 426.—How is San Antonio situated?] 561. What took place April 21st, 1836? By what powers was the independence of Texas acknowledged? What proposal was made by Texas in

vived; and it was proposed to test the feelings of the people of the United States on the subject at the next presidential election. The whigs, who were opposed to the admission of Texas, nominated Henry Clay; the democrats, who were in favor of its admission, supported James Knox Polk, of Tennessee. Mr. Polk was elected, and with him George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, as vice-president.

562. The news of Mr. Polk's nomination and other proceedings of the democratic convention were transmitted from Baltimore to Washington, May 29th, 1844, by the *Magnetic Telegraph*, being the first despatches ever so communicated. The principle involved in the Telegraph was known as early as 1774, but Samuel F. B. Morse, a native of Massachusetts, was the first to apply it practically. He received a patent for his invention in 1837, and after long and discouraging delay obtained from Congress an appropriation of \$30,000 for the purpose of testing its utility. The first telegraphic line in the world was thus established between Baltimore and Washington; and the importance of the invention, as one of the greatest triumphs yet achieved by human ingenuity, was demonstrated to the world. Telegraph wires soon threaded the country, and there are now in the United States and Canada over 70,000 miles in operation.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

### POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, 1845-1849.

563. JAMES K. POLK, inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1845, was born in 1795; in North Carolina. During his childhood, his father removed to Tennessee; and in the leg-

---

1837? How was it received? When was the question revived? How was it submitted to the people? Who were nominated for the presidency? Who were elected president and vice-president? 562. How was the news of Polk's nomination transmitted to Washington? How early was the principle involved in the telegraph known? Who was the first to apply it practically? When did Morse receive his patent? How was he enabled to test his invention? What was the result? How many miles of telegraph are now in operation in the United States and Canada?

563. When was James K. Polk inaugurated? Where and when was he born?

islature of that state he commenced his public career. After serving fourteen years in Congress, he was in 1839 elected governor of Tennessee. From that post he retired to private life, whence he was called by the voice of the nation to become its chief. He had been seated in the presidential chair but about three months, when his esteemed friend and counsellor, Gen. Jackson, died at the advanced age of 78, respected and lamented even by his political opponents. Mr. Polk made James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, his secretary of state.

564. The success of the democratic party having shown that a majority of the people were in favor of annexing Texas, Congress had passed a bill providing for that measure a few days before the close of Tyler's term. On the 4th of July, 1845, the Texas legislature having approved of the bill, the union was consummated. Shortly afterwards, at the request of this same body, a small force of U. S. troops was despatched to the frontier, under Gen. Zachary Taylor, who had won distinction in the Seminole War. The boundary between Texas and Mexico was still unsettled; the former looked upon the Rio Grande (*re'-o grahn'-dā*), the latter on the Nueces (*noā'-ses*), as the separating line [see Map, p. 426], the region between these two rivers being claimed by both. To prevent difficulties, the U. S. government proposed to fix on a line by negotiation, but Mexico scornfully refused all overtures. The annexation of Texas was the signal for her minister to leave Washington with threats of war. Paredes (*pah-rā'-des*), a well-known enemy of the United States, was elected president. The hostility of the Mexicans, which had been displayed for years in petty insults and injuries to American citizens, was now openly and fiercely avowed. Strong forces were said to be gathering for the invasion of Texas. Under these circumstances, the U. S. government felt justified in assuming that the boundary claimed by Texas was correct; and Taylor was instructed to take a position as

---

What is told of his previous history? Who died three months after his inauguration? Whom did Polk make secretary of state? 564. Relate the circumstances under which Texas was admitted. What precautionary measure was taken by the United States? What conflicting claims were put forth by Texas and Mexico respecting their boundary? What proposal was made by the United States? How

near the Rio Grande as prudence would allow. Accordingly, he encamped at Corpus Christi [*kor'-pus kris'te*], at the mouth of the Nueces, and there remained till the following spring.

565. While these difficulties were pending, a rupture with Great Britain was seriously threatened. A boundary line between the U. S. and the British Possessions on the northwest never having been settled, both laid claim to an extensive region between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific, known as Oregon, which was now becoming gradually settled. The democratic party were for accepting nothing short of parallel  $54^{\circ} 40'$  as the northern boundary of the U. S. west of the mountains; but in June, 1846, a treaty negotiated in Washington established parallel  $49^{\circ}$  and the Strait of San Juan de Fuca [*sahn whahn dā foo'-kah*] as the separating line. The white population of this region was then about 4,000. Oregon was organized into a territory in 1848. In 1853, it was divided, and the northern part was formed into a new territory named Washington.

566. Mexico still refusing the overtures of the United States for a peaceable settlement, Gen. Taylor, early in 1846, was ordered to advance to the Rio Grande and occupy the disputed territory. This he proceeded to do, in spite of the protest of the Mexican authorities. Near the end of March, he reached the river, and commenced the erection of a fort on its eastern side. About the middle of April, Gen. Ampudia [*ahm-poo'-de-ah*] arrived at Mat-a-mo'-ras, opposite Taylor's position, and informed the American commander, that, unless he retired beyond the Nueces, Mexico would accept the war thus forced upon her. Taylor, of course, did not retire, and skirmishes with the enemy immediately followed.

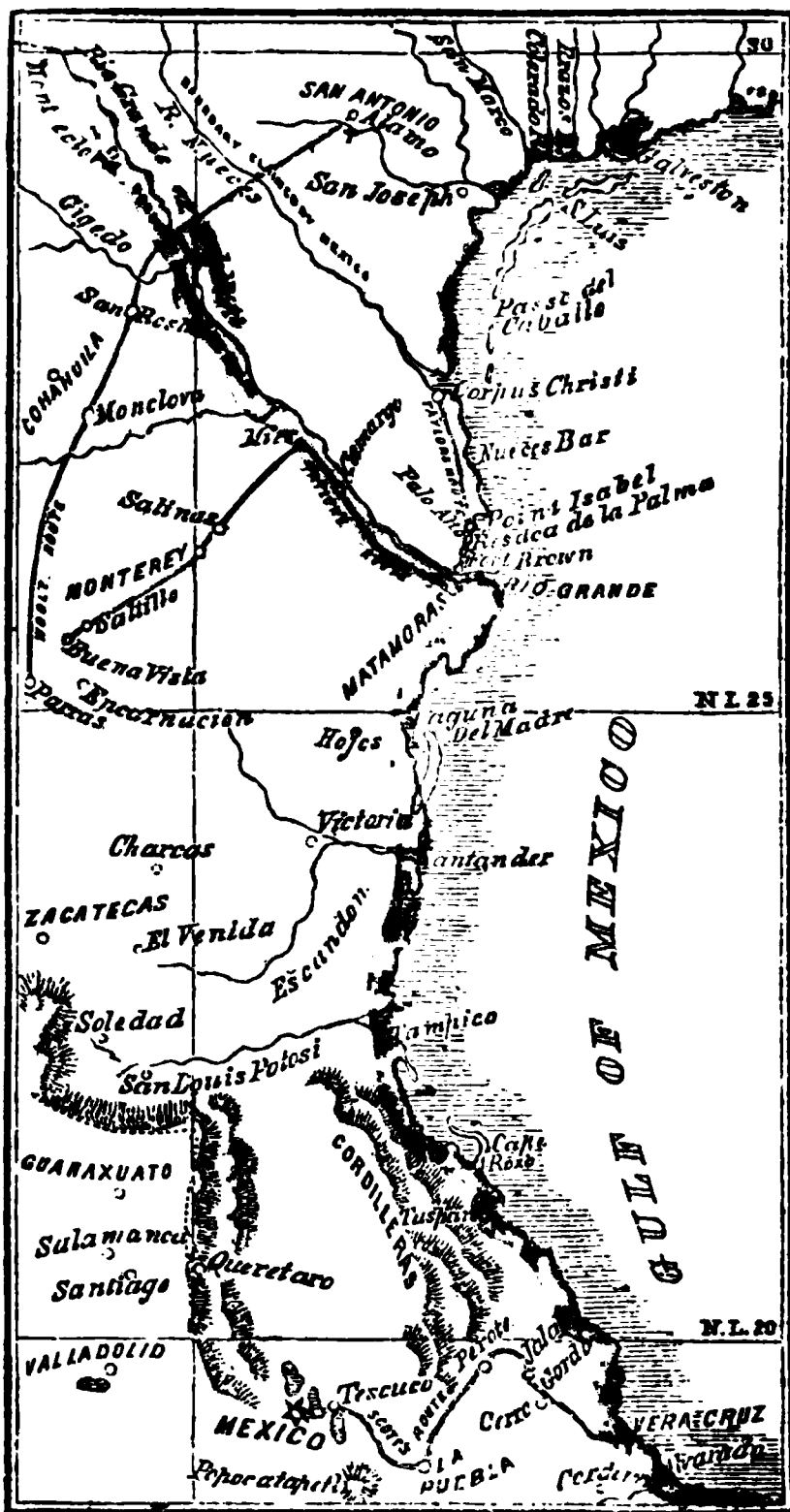
567. Gen. Taylor had established a depot of provisions at Point Isabel, 21 miles distant, on the Gulf of Mexico, which

---

was it received? Give an account of the proceedings of the Mexicans. What instructions did the government issue to Gen. Taylor? Where did he encamp? 565. What difficulty now arose with England? How was it settled? What was then the white population of Oregon? What is said of its subsequent history? 566. What orders did Gen. Taylor receive early in 1846? Give an account of his movements. What passed between Taylor and Ampudia? 567. Where had Gen. Taylor established a depot of provisions? How was Point Isabel situated? What did

he had garrisoned with 450 men. Perceiving that the enemy were rapidly closing round him, and fearing for this detachment, he set out on the 1st of May for the Point, leaving 300 men under Major Brown to defend the fort he had erected (afterwards called Fort Brown). Point Isabel was reached in safety; and, having assured himself that it was amply provided with means of defence, Taylor prepared to return to Fort Brown, with a provision-train and an army of 2,288 men. Arriving at Palo Alto [*pah'-lo ahl'-to*] (May 8th, 1846), he found a Mexican army 6,000 strong drawn up directly in his road. The engagement, commenced with artillery, lasted five hours, and resulted in the complete discomfiture of the enemy with a loss of about 400 men; while that of the Americans was but 9 killed and 44 wounded.

Among the brave men who fell at Palo Alto was Major



EASTERN COAST OF MEXICO.

Taylor apprehend, and what movement did he consequently execute? With how large an army did he attempt to return from Point Isabel to Fort Brown? [See Map.—In what direction did he march?] What befell him on the way? Give an account of the battle of Palo Alto. Relate the circumstances of Major Ringgold's

Ringgold, of the artillery, whose efficient battery, thinning the ranks of the enemy at every discharge, helped not a little to gain the day. Directing the movements of his guns on horseback, this brave officer was struck by a shell, which tore the flesh from his limbs. "Leave me alone," said he to the brother officers who gathered round him as he fell; "you are wanted forward." The shades of night put an end to the battle, and the Americans remained masters of the field.

Resuming their march the following day, the American army at three in the afternoon found the Mexicans in full force at Resaca de la Palma [*rā-sah'-kah dā lah pahl'-mah*], a ravine supposed to have been formerly the bed of a river, about three miles from Fort Brown. Again the action was commenced by artillery; and the Mexican guns, well aimed and rapidly discharged, for a time held the Americans in check. It was necessary to silence them, and the desperate task was intrusted to Capt. May and his bold dragoons. Right upon the batteries, still thundering forth death, rode the fearless band. Half of them fell, but the guns were captured, and with them Gen. La Vega [*lah vā'-gah*], in the act of applying a lighted match. The Mexicans were a second time defeated, and so hopelessly that they halted not till they had placed the Rio Grande between themselves and their victors. The American loss was 122 in killed and wounded. Of the Mexicans, 200 were found dead on the field, their total loss being not far from 1,000 men. The next day the American army reached Fort Brown. During their absence, it had sustained an almost incessant bombardment from the enemy. The garrison with much labor and suffering had made good their defence, though their commander, a much valued officer, was mortally wounded by a shell.

No sooner had the news that hostilities with Mexico had actually commenced reached the United States, than it set the whole country in a blaze. Congress declared (May 11th, 1846) that war existed by the act of Mexico. Ten

---

fall. What battle followed, the next day? What was Resaca de la Palma? Give an account of the engagement. What was the loss on each side? What had taken place at Fort Brown during Taylor's absence? How was the news of the commencement of hostilities in Mexico received in the U. S.? What measures were

millions of dollars were immediately appropriated for its prosecution, and the president was authorized to accept the services of 50,000 volunteers. Public meetings were held in all parts of the country, and within a few weeks 200,000 men volunteered for the war. A magnificent plan of invasion was devised by government, with the aid of Gen. Scott. The Pacific coast of Mexico was to be attacked by a powerful fleet, aided by a land force, to be designated "the Army of the West", which was to make its way across the Rocky Mountains, reducing in succession the northern provinces of the enemy. Another body, called "the Army of the Centre", was to march into the heart of Mexico and coöperate with Gen. Taylor's force, which was known as "the Army of Occupation". Gen. Wool, one of the heroes of Queenstown, was intrusted with the duty of mustering the volunteers. Before the close of July, he inspected and received into the service 12,000 men, 9,000 of whom were despatched to the aid of Gen. Taylor, while the rest were sent to San Antonio, in Texas, to be disciplined and prepared for the field by Gen. Wool himself.

568. On the 18th of May, Gen. Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of Matamoras, which was abandoned by the enemy's troops. Moving along the south side of the river, he captured several other towns with little or no opposition; but it was not till the end of August that he found himself strong enough to advance against Monterey [*mon-tā-rā'*], whose massive fortifications were defended by 42 pieces of artillery. This city was prepared for either storm or siege. The houses were fortified, the streets barricaded; and 10,000 Mexicans, most of them regulars, had assembled for its defence. On the 19th of September, 1846, Gen. Taylor with a little over 6,000 Americans encamped within three miles of Monterey.

---

taken by Congress? How many men volunteered for the war within a few weeks? Give the plan of the campaign sketched out by government. What duty was assigned to Gen. Wool, and how did he discharge it? 568. What did Gen. Taylor do on the 18th of May? Give an account of his next movements. Near the end of August, against what place did he advance? [See Map, p. 426.—How is Monterey situated? Through what places did Taylor pass to reach it?] What preparations had been made in Monterey? With how many men did Taylor appear be-

Embosomed in mountains, Monterey was inaccessible, except from the north-east, in which direction Taylor was approaching, and from the west by a road through a rocky gorge, connecting it with Saltillo [*sahl-teel'-yo*]. That he might cut off the supplies of the city and attack it on both sides at once, Taylor despatched Gen. Worth with 650 men to gain the Saltillo road in the rear of the city. With great difficulty and not without loss this was effected, by opening a new road over the mountains. Two batteries were gallantly carried; the Bishop's Palace, an unfinished but strongly fortified stone building, was next taken; and thus, after two days of suffering, Worth's command, considerably reduced in number, reached the walls of the city.

Meanwhile, the Americans on the other side were not idle. Under Generals Quitman, Butler, and Taylor himself, they fought their way past one obstacle after another, till they effected a lodgment in the city. The grand assault was made September 23d. A deadly fire was poured on the assailants from the houses and barricades which commanded the streets; but, moving on unflinchingly through it, they at length planted their victorious flag in the Plaza, or public square. Here entering the buildings on both sides of the streets, they forced their way through the walls from one to another by means of crowbars, and ascending to the roofs met the enemy hand to hand. Success crowned their exertions, though many fell. On the morning of the 24th, the city capitulated. The Mexicans were allowed to march out with the honors of war; and Gen. Taylor, being short of provisions and assured that the Mexican government was about making proposals for peace, agreed to an armistice for eight weeks.

569. Meantime Santa Anna, who at the commencement of the war was living as an exile at Havana, had returned to Mexico, President Polk, who believed that he would favor

---

fore it? By what two roads was Monterey accessible? On what plan of attack did Taylor determine? Give an account of Worth's movements. Give an account of the movements of the Americans on the other side. What was the result? To what did Gen. Taylor agree? 569. Relate the circumstances under which Santa



the reëstablishment of peace, having directed the American commodore in the Gulf to let him pass without molestation. On the arrival of this distinguished general, the spirits of the Mexicans revived. They deposed Paredes and elected Santa Anna president. Laying aside all thoughts of peace, if he had ever entertained any, Santa Anna immediately set about raising a powerful army, and by December he had 20,000 men concentrated at San Luis Potosi [*po-to'-se*].

570. Gen. Wool, having drilled his men into an effective army, set out from San Antonio on the 20th of September. After traversing a desert for miles without finding water or any trace of man, making their road as they advanced and suffering incredibly, this little force, on the last day of October, reached Mon-clo'-va, 70 miles from Monterey. Here they were informed of the capture of the latter city; and Wool, by Taylor's advice, abandoning the idea of a separate invasion, advanced to a point from which he could keep the army at Monterey supplied with provisions. These were cheerfully furnished by the inhabitants, who found themselves safer under American rule than they had been under their own government. Gen. Wool kept his men under rigid discipline, and studiously protected the persons and property of the Mexicans from injury.

571. The armistice having terminated, Gen. Worth was sent to take possession of Saltillo; and Taylor, leaving Gen. Butler as governor of Monterey, advanced to Victoria, with the intention of attacking Tampico [*tam-pe'-ko*]. At Victoria he learned that Tampico had been already taken, and that he was superseded in the chief command by Gen. Scott, who had arrived at the seat of war. Though chagrined at the latter intelligence, yet when ordered to send the flower of his army to Scott, to fall back on Monterey, and act only on the defensive, Taylor promptly obeyed. Generals Worth and Quitman, and a large part of Wool's army, which had

---

Anna returned to Mexico. What course did he pursue after his return? 570. Give an account of Gen. Wool's movements. At Monclova, of what was he informed? Whither did he next proceed? How were the Mexicans treated? 571. What were Taylor's movements on the expiration of the armistice? [See Map, p. 426.—How is Saltillo situated? Victoria? Tampico?] What did Gen Taylor

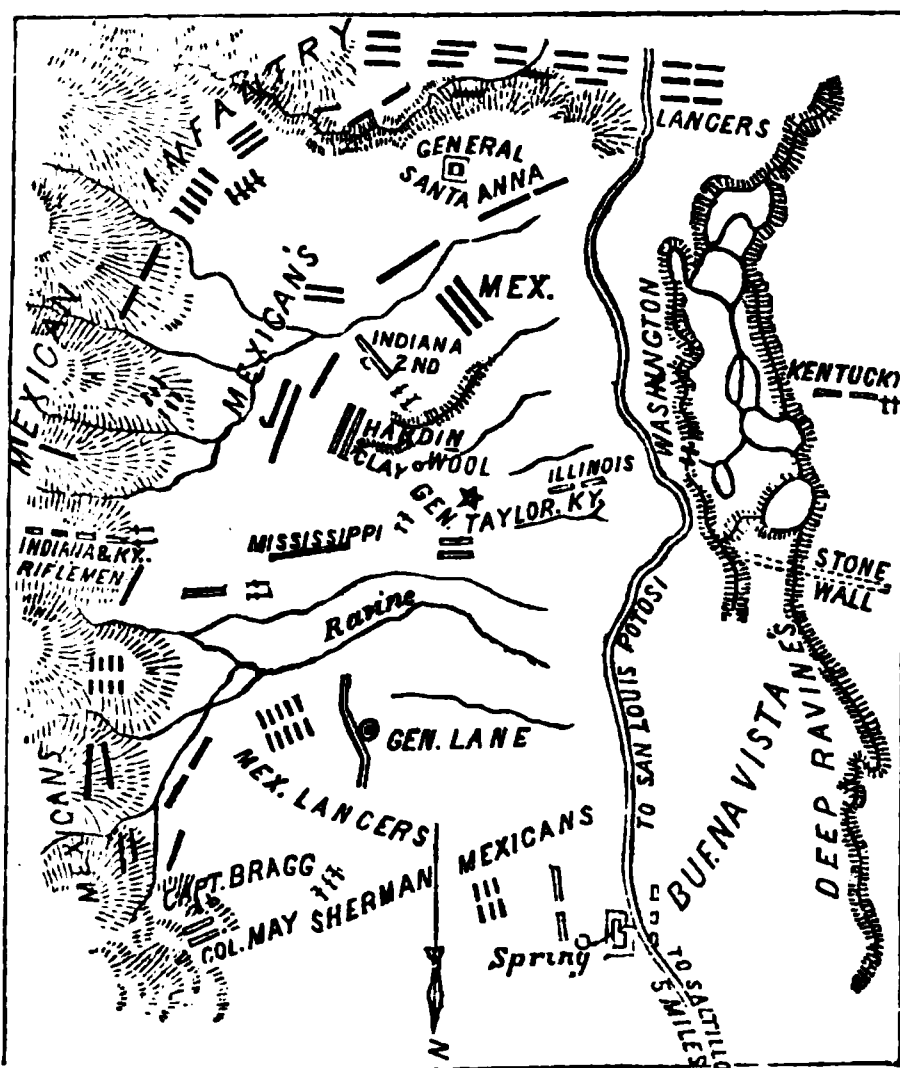
effected a junction with Worth's near Saltillo, were also ordered to join the commander-in-chief. Taylor and Wool were thus left with a very small force, to face an overwhelming army with which Santa Anna was advancing to crush them. Reënforcements, however, arriving during the month of February, swelled the American army to 6,000 men. Garrisoning Monterey and Saltillo, Taylor boldly advanced with about 4,700 men, to meet four times that number of Mexicans now on their march from San Luis Potosi. Selecting a favorable position at Buena Vista [*bwā'-nah vees'-tah*], where the road passed through a narrow defile, the American general awaited the enemy. They were not long in arriving. On the 22d of February, Santa Anna sent word to Gen. Taylor that he was surrounded by 20,000 men, and summoned him to surrender. Taylor declined the invitation, and made ready for an encounter which he felt would be the most trying in which he had yet engaged.

At sunrise on the 23d, the Mexicans commenced the battle of Buena Vista by trying to outflank the Americans with a body of light troops, which had pushed forward along the heights during the night; but the rifles of Illinois drove them back. At 8 o'clock, a tremendous charge was made on the American centre; but before its solid front and the deadly aim of Capt. Washington's artillery the enemy recoiled in disorder. Their next attempt was on the left flank of the Americans, where an exposed position was held by an Indiana regiment. Here the enemy obtained a temporary advantage; and, rushing in overwhelming numbers along the mountain, they prepared to form in the rear of the Americans. At this critical moment, when the hearts of the bravest trembled for the result, Gen. Taylor arrived at the threatened point, and ordered a Mississippi and a Kentucky regiment to keep the enemy in check. On their success depended the issue of the battle; and well did they deserve

---

learn at Victoria? What orders did he receive? Who were directed to join the commander-in-chief? In what condition were Taylor and Wool thus for a time left? To what number was their army reënforced in February? What was now done by Taylor? [See Map, p. 426.—Between what two places is Buena Vista situated?] What message did Taylor receive, Feb. 22d? What answer did he

the post of honor. Closing their ranks as their brave men fell before a galling fire, and seasonably supported by an Illinois and an Indiana regiment, they effectually prevented this detachment of the enemy from following up the advantage they had gained. A desperate charge on the rear of the Mexicans from a body of American



PLAN OF THE BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA.

cavalry placed them in great danger of being completely cut off,—a fate which they escaped only by a timely retreat.

Sherman's and Bragg's artillery did fearful execution throughout the engagement. In the last desperate encounter, Bragg's battery, as soon as it came into play, caused the enemy to waver. Its effect was not lost on Gen. Taylor, who, though exposed all day in the thickest of the fight, had escaped with only a bullet through his coat. "Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg," exclaimed the veteran. The order was promptly obeyed. The enemy were repulsed; and another victory against tremendous odds reflected glory on the American arms. Taylor's loss in killed, wounded, and missing, was 746; that of the enemy was nearly 2,000. The Americans rested on their arms that night, expecting to

---

make? How was the battle of Buena Vista commenced? At 8 o'clock, what took place? Give an account of the attack on the left flank of the Americans. [See Map.—On what road is Buena Vista? What American leaders commanded on the east of Buena Vista?] What is said of Sherman's and Bragg's artillery? What passed between Gen. Taylor and Captain Bragg? What was the result of the bat-

renew the battle in the morning; but dawn revealed the fact that Santa Anna had retreated, leaving his dead and wounded behind him. After this brilliant victory, Taylor again encamped at Walnut Springs. He soon after returned to the United States, where he was received with well-deserved honors.

572. Gen. Scott commenced his campaign by an attack on Vera Cruz, which he invested with about 12,000 men on the 12th of March. This city, the emporium of Mexican commerce, was defended by the formidable castle of San Juan de Ulloa [*sahn whahn dā ool-lo'-ah*], the strongest fortress in America, Quebec alone excepted. It had been erected by the Spaniards 250 years before, at an expense of \$4,000,000. Inaccessible by land, as it stood a short distance from the shore, surrounded by the waters of the Gulf, it commanded

#### BOMBARDMENT OF VERA CRUZ.

---

tle of Buena Vista? What was the loss on each side? What did the Americans expect? What did they find the following day? Where did Taylor encamp? What did he do soon after? 573. How did Gen. Scott commence his campaign? [See Map, p. 428.—How is Vera Cruz situated? In what direction is it from Mexico?]

the city and the surrounding plains with rows of frowning cannon. Scott's summons to surrender having been declined by the Mexican commander, a tremendous fire was opened from well-planted land batteries, as well as from an American fleet under Commodore Conner. The bombardment was continued with effect till March 26th, when the castle and city surrendered, with 5,000 men, 400 pieces of artillery, and a vast quantity of public stores. Appointing Worth governor of Vera Cruz, Gen. Scott prepared to march into the interior of the country. The American fleet proceeded to take possession of several neighboring ports on the Gulf. No injury to the person or property of private citizens was allowed. The harbors were opened to the commerce of all nations, and a tariff of duties on imports was established for the benefit of the American government.

573. On the 8th of April, the advanced guard of the invading army, under Gen. Twiggs, set out from Vera Cruz in the direction of the Mexican capital; the commander-in-chief soon followed with his main body. In both divisions there were about 8,500 men. For fifteen miles on the road to Jalapa [*hah-lah'-pah*], they encountered no resistance; but as they approached the Cordilleras [*kor-dil'-ler-az*], they learned that the rocky pass of Cerro Gordo [*sēr'-ro gor'-do*] had been strongly fortified, and was held by Santa Anna with 12,000 men. To dislodge an enemy superior in numbers from the commanding heights of this mountain-pass, required the best efforts of courage, energy, and military science. But one of the great captains of the age was before it, to whom no enterprise that promised glory and profit to his country seemed impossible. Constructing a new road over steep ascents and rocky chasms, he fell upon the enemy in an unexpected quarter. Their determined resistance availed nothing before the bayonets of their assailants, and soon the flag of Mexico gave place to the stars and stripes.

---

Describe the castle of San Juan de Ulloa. Give an account of the bombardment of Vera Cruz. In what did it result? What were Scott's next movements? What was done by the American fleet? 573. What took place April 8th? With how many men did Scott commence the invasion of Mexico? Where did he encounter the first resistance? Describe the position of Cerro Gordo. Give an ac-

The rout was complete. Santa Anna, who had shortly before declared that he would die fighting rather than that the Americans should tread the imperial city of the Aztecs (Mexico), attempted to escape in his travelling-carriage, but finally, for the sake of greater speed, took to a mule, leaving to his pursuers his private papers and wooden leg. This latter trophy, dressed in a boot of exquisite workmanship, was afterwards exhibited in the United States. The Mexican loss at Cerro Gordo was 1,000 men in killed and wounded, 3,000 prisoners (including five generals), and 43 pieces of artillery. The total loss on the part of the Americans was 431.

574. The day after the battle (April 19th), the victorious army entered Jalapa. Continuing their march with all haste, they took without resistance the strong castle of Perote [*pā-ro'-tā*] on a peak of the Cordilleras. On the 15th of May, they entered the ancient city of Puebla [*pweb'-lah*], inhabited by 80,000 souls. As the triumphant army marched into the city, the people with eager curiosity gazed upon them from windows and house-tops; but no showy uniform, like that of their own troops, adorned the Americans, and they turned away in disappointment, declaring that it must be their "gray-headed leaders" that had gained their victories. At Puebla Gen. Scott remained till further attempts at negotiation were made; but the Mexicans were not yet satisfied; and, having received reënforcements, he garrisoned the city, and on the 7th of August resumed his march for the capital with upwards of 10,000 men.

575. The route of the Americans lay through an elevated table-land, described as one of the most delightful regions in the world. It led them at length by successive ascents to the towering summits of the Cordilleras, whence, like the

---

count of the battle. What became of Santa Anna? What was done with his wooden leg? What was the loss on each side? 574. What place was reached by the American army, the day after the battle of Cerro Gordo? What castle did they next take? What city did they enter on the 15th of May? [See Map, p. 426.—What was the general direction of Scott's route? In what direction is Jalapa from Vera Cruz? In what direction is Puebla from Mexico? How is Perote situated?] What is said of the people of Puebla? When and with how many men did Scott resume his march? 575. Describe the country through which he

adventurous army of Cortez three centuries before, they looked down upon a magnificent landscape of mountains and valleys, lakes and cities, embosoming in the far distance the proud city of the Montezumas. Without resistance, they continued their advance to within fifteen miles of the capital. There, and in strong advanced forts, which defended it on all sides, the Mexicans had rallied for a final stand. The city itself was favorably situated for defence, in the midst of a marsh (a lake in the time of Cortez), connected with the adjacent land by long causeways commanded by artillery. But Gen. Scott was now, as he had proved himself at all other times, equal to the occasion.

Leaving the Vera Cruz road, Scott turned to the south; and, with the aid of skilful engineers, leading his army over rocks and chasms which the enemy had considered impassable, he reached San Antonio, on the Acapulco [*ah-kah-pool'-ko*] road, eight miles from Mexico. Against this strong and well-garrisoned place Gen. Worth was sent, while the divisions of Generals Pillow and Twiggs, embracing the brigades of Pierce (since president of the United States), Cadwallader, Riley, and Smith, passed on to storm the Mexican camp at Contreras [*kon-trā'-ras*], held by Gen. Valencia [*vah-len'-she-ah*] with 6,000 men. Even if these points were carried, Santa Anna with 12,000 men and the embattled heights of Churubusco [*choo-roo-boos'-ko*] still lay between the invading army and the capital. Towards sunset on the 19th of August, Gen. Shields succeeded in taking the village of Ansalda [*ahn-sahl'-dah*], and thus cut off communication between the camp at Contreras and Santa Anna's army. A rainy night rendered the condition of the American soldiers comfortless in the extreme. About midnight they were summoned to arms, Gen. Persifer F. Smith having conceived the bold design of surprising Contreras. The darkness was so intense that the men had to touch each other as they marched, to

---

passed. How near the capital did the Americans get without encountering resistance? What is said of the defences of the city? Leaving the Vera Cruz road, what did Gen. Scott do? Who was ordered to attack San Antonio? What disposition was made of the rest of the army? What advantage was gained by Gen. Shields? What kind of a night followed? What bold design was conceived by

avoid being separated. They reached the ground by sunrise, stormed the Mexican camp, and took it in a quarter of an hour, making prisoners of 813 men.

This was the first victory gained on the memorable 20th of August, 1847. The same day, Gen. Worth drove the garrison of San Antonio from their defences, and then, joined by Pillow, with equal success stormed a stronghold on the heights of Churubusco. Gen. Twiggs captured another of the defences on the heights, and Churubusco surrendered. Meanwhile, Shields and Pierce had kept Santa Anna and his reserve from coming to the aid of their countrymen, and finally, after maintaining their ground for hours with steady courage against overwhelming numbers, drove them from the field. Thus were five separate victories gained in a single day. A force of 32,000 Mexicans was completely broken up, with the loss of 7,000 men, by an army of not much more than one-fourth of their number. The Americans, during this trying day, had 139 killed and 876 wounded.

576. Before humbling the Mexicans by entering their capital as a victor, Gen. Scott gave them an opportunity of treating, but his overtures were again rejected. On the 8th of September, Gen. Worth was ordered to storm Molino del Rey [*mo-le'-no del rā*] (*the king's mill*), the site of a large foundry, at which the church-bells of the city were being cast into cannon. Worth encountered an army of nearly 14,000 Mexicans, whom he defeated after a hard-fought battle. This position being carried, the precipitous heights of Chapultepec [*chah-pool-tā-pek'*], crowned by an almost impregnable castle, lay next in the path of the invading army; but the indomitable valor of the Americans, led on one side by Pillow and Cadwallader, and on the other by Quitman, again proved triumphant, and on the 13th of September the American flag was planted on "the monarch fortification of the valley of Mexico".

---

Gen. Smith? Relate the circumstances attending its execution. What was the result? What victories were gained by Gen. Worth on this memorable 20th of August? What victory was gained by Gen. Twiggs? What, by Shields and Pierce? What was the number engaged and the loss on each side? 576. Before entering the capital, what did Gen. Scott do? Give an account of the battle of





arms. For twenty-four hours the victorious army were annoyed by a desultory fire from windows, by-streets, and house-tops, proceeding chiefly from convicts, who to the number of 2,000 had been liberated from prison by the retiring government. But order was at length restored; the citizens who had fled, returned; and business was resumed.

ENTRANCE OF THE AMERICAN ARMY INTO MEXICO.

577. Eighteen hundred sick men had been left by Gen. Scott at Puebla, under the charge of Col. Childs and a small garrison. The Mexicans embraced the opportunity to besiege the place. Childs, though hard pressed and without adequate means of defence, made a most gallant resistance; and, by dint of almost superhuman exertions on the part of his men, succeeded in keeping his besiegers at bay, even after they were joined by Santa Anna with several thousands of his fugitive troops from the capital. Fortunately, Gen-

---

11? What took place on the 14th of September? How were the victorious army for a time annoyed? 577. Give an account of the siege of Puebla by the Mexicans. How was it raised? 578. Give an account of Kearney's expedition. By whom

eral Lane, on his way to the capital with recruits for the American army, heard of the critical position of Colonel Childs. Hastening to his relief, he defeated the enemy and raised the siege.

578. In June, 1846, Col. Kearney [*kar'-ne*] (soon made general) started from Fort Leavenworth with 1,000 men, constituting "the army of the west", to reduce the northern provinces of the enemy, and make his way to the Pacific. A march of 900 miles brought him to Santa Fé [*fā*], the capital of New Mexico, the army that had occupied it fleeing on his approach. Having organized a government and garrisoned Santa Fé, Kearney continued his march. He had not gone far when he was met by Kit Carson, the famous hunter and guide of the Rocky Mountains, with the intelligence that California, which constituted the north-western part of Mexico, was already conquered by Commodore Stockton and Col. Fremont'. We must go back, to relate the circumstances.

Fremont had been sent out by government in 1842, with a small party, to explore the Rocky Mountain region. On the 15th of August, he reached the highest ridge of that great chain, and beheld before him a snow-crowned peak which towered high above the surrounding eminences. It was determined to ascend to its summit, and plant the American flag higher than it had ever waved before. Leaving their mules, the little party clambered up the precipitous side of the mountain, holding on by its jagged projections. At length their leader reached the top. He stood on a dizzy crest but three feet wide, a sheer precipice of 500 feet yawning before him. Each man having ascended in turn, the American flag was fastened to a ramrod fixed in a crevice of the summit, and left unfurled to the mountain breeze.

Fremont, having accomplished the object of his mission, was again sent out in 1845, to explore the great basin of the Salt Lake, California, and Oregon. Having passed the win-

---

was Kearney met? With what intelligence? For what purpose had Fremont been sent out by government in 1842? Give an account of the unfurling of the American flag on the Rocky Mountains. When was Fremont sent out again?

## UNFURLING OF THE U. S. FLAG ON THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS.

solved to erect California into a separate government. Calling together the people, particularly the American settlers in the valley of the Sacramento, he set before them the condition of the country, and recommended them to declare their independence. This was done on the 5th of July, 1846. Skirmishes ensued with different bodies of Mexicans. While pursuing one of these, Fremont was informed that Commodore Stockton had taken Monterey, on the Pacific coast, with a U. S. fleet. Immediately laying aside the flag of independent California, which bore a bear for its device, he raised the colors of the United States in its stead, and joined Commodore Stockton. By their united forces the seat of government and other places were soon afterwards taken.

579. On receiving this intelligence, Kearney sent back part of his men to Santa Fé, and proceeded with the remainder to the Pacific. After being nearly cut off by overwhelming forces of Mexicans, he succeeded in reaching his country-

---

For what purpose? What information did he receive in the spring of 1846? Upon this, give an account of his proceedings. While pursuing a body of Mexicans, what did he learn? What did he then do? 579. What were Kearney's

men, and took part in the battle of San Gabriel [*gah-bre-el'*] (January 8th, 1847), which completed the establishment of American power in California. Never before was so extensive a country subjugated by so small a force.

580. Soon after Kearney left Santa Fé, Col. Doniphan by his command set out with nearly 1,000 Missourians for the country of the Navajo [*nav'-ah-ho*] Indians, from whom hostilities were apprehended. They were induced to make a treaty of peace; and Doniphan then turned to the south-east, traversed extensive deserts, in which his men nearly sunk from want of food and water, defeated an army of Mexicans more than four times as large as his own, entered the city of Chihuahua [*che-whah'-whah*], and took formal possession of the province of which it was the capital, in the name of the United States. Towards the close of May, he effected a junction with Gen. Wool at Saltillo; and shortly afterwards, the time of his men having expired, he led them back to New Orleans. They had marched 2,000 miles, and encountered adventures and hardships which seemed almost like the inventions of romance.

581. After his defeat by Gen. Lane, Santa Anna, deserted by his troops, fled to the coast and thence to the West Indies. The Americans being everywhere victorious, the Mexican government no longer refused to come to terms. On the 2d of February, 1848, a treaty was signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo [*gwah-dah-loo'-pā he-dahl'-go*]; by which Mexico relinquished to the United States the territory between the Nueces and Rio Grande, together with the whole of New Mexico and California; the United States agreeing on its part to pay for this extensive region \$15,000,000, and to assume debts due from Mexico to American citizens to the amount of \$3,500,000. This treaty having been ratified by both governments, peace was proclaimed by President Polk on the 4th of July, 1848.

---

movements on receiving this intelligence? In what battle did he take part? 580. Give an account of Doniphan's expedition. Towards the close of May, whom did he join? Where did he then lead his men? What is said of their march and adventures? 581. What became of Santa Anna? What change took place in the feelings of the Mexican government? When and where was a treaty

582. California, from the time of its conquest, increased rapidly in population, numerous emigrants finding their way thither from the other side of the Rocky Mountains. In March, 1848, when it was formally ceded to the U. S., it was estimated to contain 33,000 inhabitants. The following June, a discovery was made, which produced momentous changes in the condition of California, and made itself felt throughout the world. A laborer in the employ of Captain Sutter, a Swiss who had settled in the valley of the Sacramento, found in the sand some glittering particles, which turned out to be gold. Similar discoveries were soon made in other places in the neighborhood. An excitement which transcends description seized on the inhabitants; forsaking their farms and shutting up their houses, they flocked to the fortunate spot. The news soon reached the Atlantic States. Hundreds at once set out for the land of gold; and not from the United States only, but from all parts of Europe, and

#### GOLD-DIGGING IN CALIFORNIA.

---

signed? What were its conditions? When was peace proclaimed? 582. What is said of California, from the time of its conquest? What discovery was made in June, 1848? Describe the excitement that followed. Whence did immigrants

even from far-distant China, did the tide of immigration flow, men of every grade in society giving themselves up to its current. Within two years from the date of the discovery, San Francisco had grown from an insignificant village of a few miserable huts to a flourishing city containing 15,000 souls. Hundreds of millions of dollars' worth of the precious metal have been dug from the earth, nor is the hidden treasure yet exhausted.

583. On the 23d of February, 1848, Ex-president John Quincy Adams, who from 1831 had served his native state in the house of representatives, died of paralysis, with which he had been struck two days before while in his seat attending to his official duties. His dying words were, "This is the last of earth! I am content!" A life devoted almost wholly to the service of his country gave him strong claims on her gratitude, and the highest honors were paid to his memory.

584. Wisconsin, which had been formed into a territory in 1836, was admitted into the Union as a state in 1848. In March, 1849, Minnesota Territory was organized.

585. The probability that the war with Mexico would result in the acquisition of extensive territory on the southwest, early led to a reëgitation of the slavery question. In 1846, David Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, introduced into Congress a proposition, called from him the Wilmot Proviso, that slavery should be prohibited in all territory that might be acquired by treaty. This proviso failed to receive the sanction of Congress; and, the question being thrown before the country for discussion, a party holding the views advocated by Mr. Wilmot was organized. They took the name of Free Soilers, and in June, 1848, nominated Martin Van Buren as their candidate for the presidency. The democrats brought forward Gen. Lewis Cass, of Michigan; the whigs, Gen. Taylor, whose brilliant victories in the Mexican

---

pour in? What is said of the growth of San Francisco? What is said of the yield of gold? 583. Give an account of the death of John Quincy Adams. 584. When was Wisconsin made a territory? When, a state? What territory was organized in 1849? 585. Soon after the commencement of the war, what question began to be reëgitated? What was the Wilmot Proviso? What was its fate? What party was soon after organized? Whom did they nominate for the pres-

War had made him a decided favorite with the nation. Taylor was elected, and with him Millard Fillmore, of New York, as vice-president. Mr. Polk resigned the country into the hands of his successor on the 4th of March, 1849, and returned to his home at Nashville, Tennessee, where he died the following June, at the age of 54, esteemed and lamented by men of all parties.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### ADMINISTRATION OF TAYLOR AND FILLMORE, 1849-1853.

586. ZACHARY TAYLOR was born in Virginia on the 24th of November, 1784. The following year his father emigrated to Kentucky, and his youth was passed amid the dangers and privations of frontier life. He was brought up a farmer, but in 1808 gave up this vocation for a military life, having received a commission in the army from President Jefferson. The War of 1812 brought him into active service, and he distinguished himself in the north-west, particularly in the defence of Fort Harrison against the Indians. His services in the Seminole War and subsequently in Mexico have been already noticed.

Millard Fillmore was born in 1800, in Cayuga county, N. Y. He was apprenticed in early life to a wool-carder; but his superior talents attracted the attention of a prominent lawyer of Cayuga, in whose office he commenced in 1819 a course of legal study. On being admitted to the practice of law, he rapidly rose to distinction. After serving in the legislature and in Congress, he ran in 1844 for the office of governor of New York, but was defeated. Standing high in the confidence of the whigs, he was placed on the same ticket with Taylor, and with him took the oath of office on the 5th of March, 1849.

---

dency? Whom did the democrats and the whigs nominate? Who was elected? What is said of the death of Mr. Polk?

586. Give an account of Taylor's early life. Of Fillmore's. When did they



587. Gen. Taylor appointed John M. Clayton, of Delaware, secretary of state. He was the first president whose cabinet contained a Secretary of the Interior. This new department was created just before the close of Polk's term, to relieve the secretary of the treasury and his subordinates of some of their multifarious duties.

588. So rapidly did California increase in population that in 1849 its people took measures for admission into the Union as a state, and adopted a constitution with a clause prohibiting slavery. The introduction of their petition into the thirty-first Congress kindled an intense excitement and convulsed the whole country. Part of the territory in question was south of the dividing line established by the Missouri Compromise, and southern senators declared that the prohibition of slavery there would be followed by the immediate dissolution of the Union. Other questions arose to complicate this main issue, and it seemed as if human wisdom would be incompetent to settle the momentous points in dispute satisfactorily to the conflicting interests concerned. Never since its formation was the Union in such danger. At this crisis, when every friend of his country trembled for the result, Henry Clay, again appearing as a peacemaker between excited sections, brought before the senate a series of resolutions covering the whole ground at issue. With all that glowing eloquence which placed him among the greatest of modern orators, he urged the necessity of mutual concession and compromise, and called on extreme men on both sides to forbear from overthrowing the glorious fabric which had been cemented by the blood of their fathers.

A committee of thirteen, of which Mr. Clay was chairman, was finally appointed to consider the whole subject. In May, 1850, this committee presented an elaborate report, which, in the spirit of Clay's resolutions, recommended an act that settled all the points at issue. The leading provisions of this

---

take the oath of office? 587. Who was appointed secretary of state? What new cabinet-officer did Taylor appoint? 588. What question now arose to excite Congress and the whole country? What did southern senators declare? Describe the state of feeling. Who attempted to settle the difficulty? What was Clay's course? To whom was the whole subject referred by the senate? When did this

Omnibus Bill, as it was called, were as follows:—1. That, according to agreement made when Texas was annexed, new states not exceeding four should be formed out of her territory, to be admitted with or without slavery as they might choose. 2. That California should be admitted as a free state. 3. That territorial governments should be established for New Mexico and Utah, without any stipulation on the subject of slavery. 4. That Texas should give up its claim to the territory of New Mexico, in consideration of \$10,000,000 to be paid her from the federal treasury. 5. That a more efficient law should be passed for the recovery of fugitive slaves. 6. That the slave-trade should be prohibited in the District of Columbia under heavy penalties. Such was the bill which as a whole was urged upon Congress by the united voice of the committee. To its discussion the summer of 1850 was mainly devoted.

589. In the midst of the excitement just described died one of the great men of the nation, John C. Calhoun. Born in South Carolina in 1782, he selected the law as his profession, was sent to the legislature of his native state in 1808, and three years afterwards to Congress. He became secretary of war in 1817, under President Monroe, and in 1825 was elected vice-president of the United States. From the close of Tyler's term he represented his native state in the senate, where he was regarded as the most formidable champion of southern interests. His death, which took place at Washington on the 31st of March, 1850, deprived the senate of one of its most effective orators.

590. On the 9th of July, the country a second time suffered bereavement in the loss of its honored chief, Taylor, like Harrison, fell at his post. A sincere patriot, with intense honesty of purpose and executive abilities of a high order, his death at this juncture, when his country needed every true heart and hand, was considered a national affliction.

---

committee report? What name was given to the bill they presented? State the principal provisions of the Omnibus Bill. How long was it discussed? 589. In the midst of the excitement, what distinguished man died? What is said of Calhoun's previous life? When did he become vice-president? How was he regarded? When and where did he die? 590. What melancholy event took place

Public business was suspended, and eulogies were pronounced upon him by leading statesmen of all parties. By his decease Fillmore became president; and, the former cabinet having resigned, Daniel Webster was appointed secretary of state.

591. The Omnibus Bill having been thoroughly discussed, its provisions were separately agreed to, the Fugitive Slave Law, which was the last to receive the assent of Congress, passing on the 18th of September. Mr. Fillmore, who had earnestly striven to restore harmony, gladly affixed his signature to the bill. The country was once more at peace. Clay had achieved his last and greatest triumph.

592. California thus entered the Union as the thirty-first state. Of the new territories organized by the Omnibus Bill, New Mexico, which was inhabited chiefly by Spaniards and Indians, contained at this time 61,525 free whites. Utah embraced a vast region between the Rocky Mountains and California, extending from New Mexico on the south to Oregon on the north. The Mormons, on leaving Illinois, selected it as the seat of the empire to which they believed themselves destined. Near the Great Salt Lake, at an elevation of 4,300 feet above the level of the sea, they founded a magnificent capital, with streets eight rods in width, and fine dwellings surrounded by delightful gardens. Brigham Young, one of their elders, was appointed governor of Utah by Mr. Fillmore.

593. About the commencement of Gen. Taylor's term, the island of Cuba became an object of general interest. Some adventurous spirits, believing that its annexation would be advantageous to the U. S. and that its inhabitants only waited for an opportunity to throw off the Spanish yoke, prepared to make an armed descent on this lovely "queen of the Antilles", now nearly all that remained to Spain of her grand empire in the Indies. Pres. Taylor, in a proclamation issued August 11th, 1849, cautioned his fellow-citizens against vio-

---

on the 9th of July? What is said of President Taylor? How was his death regarded? Who became president on his decease? Who was appointed secretary of state? 591. Give an account of the passage of the Omnibus Bill. 592. What is said of New Mexico? What, of Utah? What, of the Mormon capital? Whom did Fillmore appoint governor of Utah? 593. What island had shortly before this

lating the neutrality laws of the land by engaging in any such enterprise; but his warning was disregarded, and an armed expedition was secretly organized under General Lo'-pez. Six hundred men, having eluded the U. S. authorities, sailed for the island, and effected a landing at Cardenas [*kar'-dā-nas*] on the 19th of May, 1850. They took the place, but finding that neither the Cubans nor any of the Spanish troops were disposed to join them, as had been represented, they deemed it best to reëmbark, and made their way to Key West, Florida, closely pursued by a Spanish war-steamer. The following year, the excitement was renewed. Lopez organized another company of 480 men, with which he succeeded in getting off from New Orleans and landed on the northern coast of Cuba. The Spanish authorities were not unprepared to receive him, 40,000 troops having been concentrated on the island. Lopez was attacked and defeated; his army was dispersed, and he himself, with a number of his followers, was executed at Havana.

594. Great anxiety was felt at this time, both in England and the United States, respecting the fate of Sir John Franklin, an English navigator who had sailed in the spring of 1845 to explore the Arctic seas and find a northern passage to the Pacific. No tidings having been received of his party, it was feared that they might be suffering for want of succor. Several expeditions were sent in search of the missing navigators, one of which, fitted out by Henry Grinnell, a N. Y. merchant, at his own expense, started for the north in May, 1850, under Lieut. De Haven, of the U. S. navy. The search was prosecuted for more than a year, but neither Sir John Franklin nor the long-sought passage round America on the north was discovered. Another expedition, undertaken for the same humane purpose by the U. S. government in connection with Mr. Grinnell, left New York in May, 1853, under

---

attracted attention? What was proposed by some? What proclamation was issued by Pres. Taylor? Notwithstanding this, who secretly organized an expedition? Give an account of it. What was its fate? Give an account of the invasion of Cuba by Lopez, the following year. 594. On what subject was great anxiety felt at this time? What is told respecting Sir John Franklin? Give an account of the first expedition sent out from the U. S. to search for him. Give an

Dr. E. K. Kane, one of the most resolute and scientific explorers of the age; but Sir John and his brave men could not be found, and it has since been ascertained beyond doubt that they perished in the far north.

595. In 1852, America was bereaved of two of her greatest men, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster. Clay was born in 1777 in Virginia, near a region known as *the Slashes*, whence in political campaigns he was often called "the mill-boy of the Slashes". He was admitted to the Richmond bar at the age of twenty, and soon afterwards removed to Lexington, Kentucky, where he practised with eminent success. In 1806, he was sent to the U. S. senate; and both in that body and in all the public stations he was called to occupy, he proved himself a practical statesman of liberal views and far-reaching sagacity. On three separate occasions he was the means of settling complicated questions which threatened the very existence of the Union. In private life no man was more beloved; and when on the 28th of June, 1852, it was announced that Henry Clay was no more, tears burst from many an eye unused to weeping.—Webster, another man of giant intellect and the author of some of the finest state papers on record, died at Marshfield, Mass., on the 24th of October, in the same year. Born in New Hampshire in 1782, he was sent to Congress at the age of thirty-one; and from that time much of his life was devoted to the public service. "I still live," he said, as anxious friends pressed round his dying bed: they were his last words. His memory, with that of his illustrious compeers, Clay and Calhoun, will ever be kept green.

596. During 1852, different parts of the country were visited by Louis Kossuth [*kosh-shoot'*], who arrived at New York in the preceding December. Kossuth had attempted, with many of his countrymen, to establish the independence of Hungary; but, defeated in his efforts by the combined armies of Austria and Russia, he had been compelled to seek

---

account of the second. What was no doubt the fate of Franklin? 595. How was America bereaved in 1852? Give a sketch of the life of Henry Clay. When did he die? When and where did Webster die? What is told respecting his life? What were his last words? 596. Who visited the United States in 1851? Who

safety in flight. His object in visiting the United States was to obtain aid for further efforts in behalf of Hungarian independence. This he succeeded in obtaining to a considerable extent from private individuals; but government, though it sympathized with his cause, refused to depart from its long-established policy of not interfering in the affairs of foreign nations.

597. A temporary difficulty with Great Britain occurred in the summer of 1852. American citizens enjoyed, by treaty, the right of fishing on the Banks of Newfoundland, except within three miles of shore. In the case of bays, the British construed this clause to mean within three miles of a line drawn from headland to headland; while the Americans claimed the right of entering within headlands, provided they kept three miles from shore. Both parties sent ships-of-war to the Banks to enforce their views, but happily the question was soon settled by negotiation.

598. The attempts that had been made on Cuba rendered France and England anxious lest the United States should seek to annex that island to her domain. They accordingly asked her to unite with them in a "tripartite treaty", by which each power should disclaim all intention of seizing upon Cuba, and guarantee its possession to Spain. This called forth a masterly reply from Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, who since Webster's decease had held the office of secretary of state. In rejecting the proposal, Mr. Everett took occasion to set forth the Monroe doctrine in the strongest terms, declaring that, while the United States had no intention of violating her good faith towards Spain, she did not recognize in any European power the right of interfering in questions that were purely American.

599. At the presidential election of 1852, the democrats brought forward Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire; the whigs, Gen. Winfield Scott. The former was elected by a

---

was Kossuth? What was his object? With what success did he meet? 597. What gave rise to a difficulty with Great Britain in 1852? How was it settled? 598. What proposal did France and England make to the United States? What led them to make it? What answer was returned by Mr. Everett? 599. Who were the candidates at the next presidential election? Who was elected president? Who, vice-president?

large majority, and with him William R. King, of Alabama, as vice-president. Pierce was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1853.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1853-1857.

600. A NATIVE of Hillsborough, New Hampshire, and a graduate of Bowdoin College, Franklin Pierce commenced life as a lawyer. Having become a successful practitioner, he was sent to the legislature of his native state, and thence to the lower house of Congress. In 1837, he was elected to the U. S. senate, being then but thirty-three years of age. After five years' service in this body, he returned to private life. The commencement of hostilities in Mexico called him into the field as a volunteer. He received from President Polk a commission as brigadier-general, and conducted himself creditably in several of the most trying battles fought during the advance upon Mexico.—Mr. King, the vice-president, was one of the senators first elected by Alabama in 1819, and had retained his seat ever since by successive elections except for four years, during which he had been U. S. minister at the French court. Declining health led him to visit Cuba early in 1853, and on that island he took the oath of office as vice-president. His recovery proving hopeless, he returned to Alabama, where he died April 18th, 1853.—William L. Marcy, of New York, became secretary of state under the new administration.

601. Shortly after his inauguration, Gen. Pierce was called to take part in the opening ceremonies of an "exhibition of the industry of all nations", or World's Fair. England had set the example in 1851 by erecting a magnificent building, and inviting the different nations to contribute specimens of

---

600. Give a sketch of the previous life of President Pierce. Give an account of Vice-president King's previous career. When and where did Mr. King die? Who was appointed secretary of state? 601. What exhibition opened in the summer of 1853? Where was the first world's fair held? What were the different nations

their inventions, manufactures, agricultural products, and works of art. A similar enterprise was projected in the United States. A Crystal Palace, the frame of which was composed exclusively of iron and glass, was constructed by a stock company in the city of New York, filled with the choicest products of foreign and domestic labor, and opened to the public on the 14th of July, 1853. Thousands visited it, from all parts of the country; and though in a pecuniary point of view the enterprise was unsuccessful, it had a most happy effect on the industrial interests of the new world, by producing a spirit of generous emulation, and diffusing correct ideas of the advance of art and industry abroad.

602. Difficulties with several foreign nations occurred early in Pierce's administration. The first of these was with Mexico, and grew out of the incorrectness of the maps on which the treaty with that country had been based. The boundary of the territory ceded to the United States thus became a matter of question; and Santa Anna, whom another revolution had placed at the head of affairs, proceeded to occupy the disputed district. War was averted by negotiation, and the separating line between the two countries was clearly defined.—About the same time, a diplomatic question arose with Austria. Martin Koszta [*koz'-tah*], a Hungarian who had been concerned in the revolution of 1848, had taken refuge in the United States, and formally declared his intention of becoming an American citizen. Having occasion to visit Smyrna, on the Mediterranean coast, he placed himself under the protection of the U. S. consul, but was seized by a lawless band and carried on board of an Austrian ship to answer for his previous conduct. Just at this time, Captain Ingraham, of the American sloop-of-war *St. Louis*, fortunately arrived in port. After investigating the case, and satisfying himself that Koszta was entitled to the protection of his government, he demanded his surrender, which was obtained,

---

invited to contribute? What provision was made for a similar enterprise in the United States? On what day did it open? What was the success of the enterprise? What was its effect? 602. Give an account of the difficulty with Mexico early in Pierce's administration. With what other country did a difficulty arise? State the case of Koszta. Who arrived in port about the time of this occurrence?



but not till he had threatened the Austrian vessel with attack. Koszta was placed under the care of the French consul, till the United States and Austria should dispose of the question. A correspondence ensued, which resulted in the release of Koszta and his return to the United States. His life was probably saved by the decided course of Capt. Ingraham, to whom a sword was voted by Congress in acknowledgment of his gallantry.

603. During Pierce's administration, important commercial relations were opened with Japan. An expedition to this distant empire, whose jealousy of foreigners had kept it comparatively shut out from all nations, had been projected by Fillmore; and a squadron was sent thither under Commodore Perry, a brother of the honored naval hero before mentioned. In the summer of 1853, Perry entered the Bay of Jeddo, his steamers being the first that ever floated on the waters of Japan. The authorities, amazed at such boldness, warned the Americans to depart, but their order was disregarded. A Japanese officer then made his appearance; to whom the desire of the United States to make a treaty with his government for purposes of traffic, was duly unfolded. The subject was referred to the emperor, who appointed the 14th of July for a further conference. On that day, the commodore, with an imposing company of officers and marines, landed and delivered the letter of the president. He was received with great pomp, and informed that an answer would be returned the following spring. In March, 1854, the desired treaty was signed. The privilege of trading with Japan was secured to the merchants of the United States, and two ports of entry were appropriated to their use.

604. The most exciting question that arose during Pierce's term related to the territorial organization of an extensive tract reaching from the western boundary of Missouri, Iowa, and Minnesota, to the Rocky Mountains, and from below the

---

What course was pursued by Capt. Ingraham? What was Koszta's fate? How was Ingraham rewarded? 603. With what country were important commercial relations opened? By whom was the expedition projected? Under whose command was it placed? Give an account of Commodore Perry's proceedings. What was obtained from the Japanese? 604. Respecting what did an exciting question

## RECEPTION OF THE AMERICAN OFFICERS IN JAPAN.

Arkansas River to British America. Though assigned in part to the Indians who had been removed from the other side of the Mississippi, this tract had not escaped the tide of civilized emigration from the east; and the thirty-third Congress, which commenced its first session in December, 1853, was called upon to provide a government for the thousands of pioneers who were clearing its forests and settling its fertile plains. The whole of this region had been obtained from France in 1803, as part of the Louisiana purchase, and, lying north of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , it was cut off from slavery by the Missouri Compromise. In January, 1854, Senator Douglas presented a bill for the organization of this region into two new territories to be known as Kansas and Nebraska, with the proviso that the Missouri Compromise should not apply to them, inasmuch as it had been superseded by the compromise measures of 1850. The ques-

---

arise during Pierce's term? To whom had this district been in part assigned? Who had found their way thither? What was the thirty-third Congress called on to do? How had this region been obtained? How was it cut off from slavery? What was the substance of a bill presented by Senator Douglas in January,

tion of slavery or freedom Mr. Douglas proposed to leave its occupants to decide, when they should seek admission into the Union as sovereign states. No sooner was this bill brought forward than all the stormy scenes of former years of agitation were renewed. The country was again rent, and sections were arrayed against each other with embittered feelings. The doctrine of "Popular Sovereignty", as it is called, was violently denounced, particularly in the Eastern States; but all efforts to defeat Mr. Douglas's bill failed; and in May, 1854, having passed both houses of Congress and received the president's signature, it became a law.

605. The doctrine of "popular sovereignty" having been thus endorsed and settled, the men of the east and of the south both strove to encourage emigration, that, when admitted as a state, Kansas might have a majority of settlers in favor of their respective views. The Massachusetts legislature incorporated a company called "The Emigrants' Aid Society", which during 1855 sent out 1,300 persons. Slavery men also hastened thither; and between these two classes of immigrants conflicting opinions soon engendered bitter hostility. The first election in Kansas was held in November, 1854, for a delegate to Congress; it resulted, like others, held in 1855, in the triumph of the pro-slavery party. A legislature elected by the latter proceeded to draw up a code of laws for the government of the territory; but the free-state men, declaring that the election had been controlled by parties who had crossed from Missouri for the purpose and were not residents of the state, called a new convention. This body assembled at To-pe'-ka, and drew up a constitution under which state officers and a new legislature were elected. Thus there were two sets of authorities, each claiming to be lawfully chosen. Civil war was the result. Outrages of every kind were committed, and neither life nor property was safe. Peace was not restored till the president,

---

1854? What followed the presentation of this bill? What was its final fate?  
605. What efforts were now made in the east and south with respect to Kansas?  
What feelings were engendered between these two classes of settlers? When  
was the first election held in Kansas? Which party triumphed? Recount the  
circumstances which brought two sets of authorities into the field. What was the

on the 3d of September, 1856, issued an order for the suppression of disturbances, and appointed John W. Geary, of Pennsylvania, governor of Kansas, with full military powers for the accomplishment of this object. With Gov. Geary's arrival the war ceased, and order was gradually restored.

606. In the summer of 1856, it was proposed by an enterprising company to connect Europe and America with a submarine telegraph, by means of a wire sunk in the ocean. Communication having been thus established between Newfoundland and Nova Scotia, surveys were made with the view of extending the line to the south-western point of Ireland. The scheme was reported perfectly practicable, the line proposed being 1,640 miles long, and extending over a comparatively level surface at the bottom of the sea, in no part more than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles in depth. After several unsuccessful attempts, a gutta-percha cable, enclosing the telegraph wire, was finally laid from Trinity Bay, Newfoundland, to Valentia Bay, on the coast of Ireland. This crowning triumph of human ingenuity was completed August 5th, 1858, and was celebrated with rejoicings on both sides of the Atlantic.

607. After the death of the great party leaders already noticed, the old dividing line between whigs and democrats gradually became less and less distinct; and, as new issues arose, new parties were formed. In 1853, the "Know-nothings", or "Americans", first appeared in the field, their cardinal principle being opposition to foreign influence, and their motto that America should be ruled by Americans. This order rapidly spread, and in 1854 they were successful in most of the state elections. Many of the whigs joined them; while others, uniting with the free-soil democrats, organized a new party under the name of "Republicans". Three candidates thus appeared in the field at the presidential election of 1856. The democrats, who were in favor of letting slavery extend wherever it found its way by the voice of the

---

consequence? When and by what means was peace restored? 606. Give an account of the Atlantic Telegraph enterprise. When was it completed? How was the intelligence received? 607. What caused the formation of new political parties? When did the "Know-nothings" first appear? What was their cardinal principle? With what success did they meet? What became of the whig party?

people, nominated James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania; the republicans and a section of the American party supported John C. Fremont, of California; the rest of the Americans voted for Ex-president Fillmore, of New York. The campaign, which was a most exciting one, resulted in the election of Mr. Buchanan to the presidency, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, his fellow-candidate on the democratic ticket, as vice-president.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1857-1861.

608. JAMES BUCHANAN was born April 13th, 1791, in Franklin County, Pennsylvania. He was educated for the law, and began his public career in the legislature of his native state at the age of twenty-three. In 1821 he was elected to the house of representatives. He remained a member of that body till 1831, when he was appointed minister to Russia by President Jackson. On his return, he was sent to the U. S. senate, where he retained his seat till President Polk invited him into his cabinet as secretary of state. In 1853 he was appointed by General Pierce minister to Great Britain, in which capacity he resided at London till 1856.—Mr. Buchanan was inaugurated March 4th, 1857, and appointed Gen. Lewis Cass, of Michigan, secretary of state.

609. In the fall following Buchanan's inauguration, a disastrous revulsion took place in the mercantile world. Banks suspended, factories closed, many merchants failed, and a general panic prevailed. It was some months before business revived and the country recovered its wonted prosperity.

---

How many candidates for the presidency appeared in the field in 1856? Name them. Which was successful? Who was elected vice-president?

608. Give a sketch of Buchanan's previous history. When was he inaugurated? Whom did he appoint secretary of state? 609. What took place in the

610. The defiant tone assumed for several years by the Mormons in Utah, who would acknowledge no governor but Brigham Young and had even compelled a U. S. judge to adjourn his court at the point of the bowie-knife, led the president to send a force of 2,500 men to bring them to subjection. On the approach of this army in the fall of 1857, the Mormons prepared for resistance; but the following spring, while the U. S. forces were still in winter-quarters at some distance from Salt Lake City, commissioners arrived with offers of pardon to all who would submit to federal authority, and the Mormon chiefs deemed it wise to come to terms. The U. S. troops remained in the territory about two years, to maintain order and enforce the laws.

611. Paraguay [*par-a-gwa'*], a South American state, having given the U. S. government just cause of offence by firing on a national vessel while peaceably engaged in surveying the Paraguay River, and refusing satisfaction, a strong naval force was sent out to that country towards the close of 1858. A commissioner accompanied the fleet, to settle the difficulty, if possible, without recourse to violence. He succeeded in so doing, Paraguay agreeing to make reparation for the injury.

612. The summer of 1860 was signalized by the arrival of a magnificent embassy from the empire of Japan. It consisted of seventy-one persons, who were regarded with great interest and entertained as the guests of the nation. After delivering the treaty which they had brought from their government, and shrewdly examining the many inventions and improvements which they now saw for the first time, they returned to their own land with many specimens of American ingenuity and industry.

613. Three new members of the Union were admitted during this administration,—Minnesota in 1858, Oregon in 1859, and Kansas, the scene of such protracted struggles

---

fall after Buchanan's inauguration? 610. Give an account of the difficulty with the Mormons. How was it settled? 611. What was the cause, and what the result, of the Paraguay expedition? 612. By what was the summer of 1860 signalized? Of how many did the Japanese embassy consist? What did it accomplish? 613. What new states were admitted during Buchanan's term, and in what years?

between the advocates and opponents of slavery, in 1861,—all as free states.

614. The peace of the country was constantly disturbed, throughout Buchanan's term, by the agitation of the slavery question. The decision made by the Supreme Court in 1857 in the celebrated "Dred Scott case", to the effect that negroes, whether slaves or free, are not, by the Constitution, citizens of the United States, provoked the most violent discussions. The excitement was increased by the passage in several of the free states of what were called "Personal Liberty Bills", intended to prevent the execution of the Fugitive Slave Act. It reached the highest pitch in the fall of 1859, in consequence of the seizure of the U. S. Arsenal at Harper's Ferry, in northern Virginia, by John Brown and twenty-one associates, with the view of exciting an insurrection among the slaves and establishing their freedom by force of arms. This movement totally failed; it was put down on the second day by U. S. marines. Thirteen of the party were killed in the struggle; all the rest but two were captured. Brown was delivered to the authorities of Virginia for trial, was found guilty, and with six of his companions hanged. This attempt was charged by the southern leaders on the whole people of the north, and greatly increased the bitterness of feeling.

615. At the presidential election of 1860 four candidates were presented. Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, was supported by the republicans; Stephen A. Douglas, of the same state, by one wing of the democracy—John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, by another; and John Bell, of Tennessee, by a new party styling themselves "Constitutional Unionists". The contest resulted in the election of Mr. Lincoln as president, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, as vice-president.

---

614. By what was the country disturbed throughout this administration? What famous decision was made in 1857? How was the excitement increased? Give an account of John Brown's raid. What was the fate of its author? What was the consequence of this attempt? 615. Name the candidates at the presidential election of 1860. Who were elected president and vice-president? 616. When

616. No sooner was the result of the election known, than the southern leaders, who had threatened to break up the Union if the republicans proved victorious, proceeded to carry out their threats. They alleged that Mr. Lincoln was a sectional candidate pledged to the overthrow of slavery, and, assuming the right of secession, declared that its exercise was necessary to protect them from aggression on the part of the Federal government. On the 20th of December, 1860, a convention, assembled in Charleston, declared that 'the union before existing between South Carolina and other states under the name of the United States of America was dissolved'. By the 1st of February, 1861, through the influence of the press and the devices of a few leaders, six other states, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas, following the example of South Carolina, had passed ordinances of secession, and their senators and representatives left their seats in the Congress of the U. S. On the 4th of February, delegates from six of the seceded states met at Montgomery, Ala., and formed a union under the title of "the Confederate States of America". For provisional president they selected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, who had been a colonel in the Mexican War, a member of Pierce's cabinet, and a prominent advocate of southern rights in the senate of the U. S.

617. Meanwhile the Federal government seemed paralyzed. There was a great deal of talk in Congress, but no prompt or efficient action. A Peace Conference, consisting of delegates from twenty-one states, assembled at Washington on the 4th of February, with the view of restoring harmony; it proposed certain amendments to the Constitution, but Congress failed to adopt them. Pres. Buchanan, surrounded mostly by advisers who sympa-

---

the result of the election was known, what followed? What took place December 20th, 1860? Name the six states that next followed the example of South Carolina. What was done on the 4th of February, 1861? Who was temporarily chosen president of "the Confederate States"? 617. Meanwhile, what was the Federal government doing? When and where did a Peace Conference assemble? What did it effect? What did the president do? What became of the forts and



thized with the south, allowed events to take their course. The forts and arsenals in the seceded states, left at the mercy of the "Confederates" (the name assumed by those who attempted to secede, and therefore applied to them here), were seized one after another with their munitions of war. The army, at best but small, was for the most part stationed at remote frontier posts, where for protecting the Union it was powerless. A large detachment under Gen. Twiggs in Texas was, with much valuable government property, treacherously surrendered by its commander to the state authorities, soon after the passage of the ordinance of secession. Such was the melancholy position of affairs when Buchanan's term drew to its close, and on the 4th of March, 1861, Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-1865.

618. ABRAHAM LINCOLN was born in Kentucky in 1809. In 1816 the family removed to Indiana, where for ten years Abraham was occupied in hard labor on his father's farm, with but few opportunities of attending school. At the age of 21 he went to Illinois, and there finally commenced the study of law. He rapidly attained distinction in his profession, and was several times elected to the legislature of his adopted state. In 1846 he was sent to the lower house of Congress, and on the formation of the republican party became one of its prominent leaders. Mr. Lincoln appointed William H. Seward, of N. Y., secretary of state; Salmon P. Chase, secretary of the treasury; Simon Cameron (succeeded Jan. 15th, 1862, by

---

arsenals in the seceded states? Where was the regular army at this time? What befell a large detachment in Texas? When was Mr. Lincoln inaugurated?

618. Give a sketch of President Lincoln's previous history. Name his four

Edwin M. Stanton), secretary of war; and Gideon Welles, secretary of the navy.

619. While most of the government property in the seceded states had been seized by the Confederates, Fort Sumter, one of the defences of Charleston harbor, was still held by a little band of 79 men, commanded by Major Robert Anderson. President Buchanan had tried to re-enforce this post, but without success, the vessel he sent having been fired upon and turned back by batteries commanding the approaches to the fort. A large body of southern troops had now assembled at Charleston, and fortifications of great strength had been erected in the harbor. An attempt made by the Confederate States, through commissioners (March 12th), to obtain their recognition as an independent government by the authorities at Washington, and to negotiate for the settlement of difficulties, proved unsuccessful; and, Pres. Lincoln having ordered several vessels to Sumter with supplies and reinforcements, Gen. Beauregard [*bo'-re-gard*], the Confederate commander, on the 11th of April summoned the fort to surrender. The demand was refused, and the first gun of the rebellion was fired by the Confederates at 30 minutes past 4, on the morning of Friday, April 12th. A terrific bombardment was kept up for thirty-four hours. Fort Sumter bravely replied; but, the hot shot of the enemy having set fire to the interior of the fort, and his provisions being almost exhausted, Major Anderson at length agreed to evacuate. The news of the fall of Sumter produced intense excitement throughout the north; and when, on the 15th of April, Pres. Lincoln issued a call for 75,000 men, to serve three months in putting down the rebellion, the loyal masses of the free states rose in one hearty and unanimous response.

620. The commencement of hostilities at Sumter decided

---

principal cabinet-officers. 619. What fort was still held by a national force? Who commanded it? What attempt had been made by Pres. Buchanan? How was Fort Sumter now threatened? What led the Confederates to attack it? Give an account of the bombardment. What was the result? What call was issued by the president, April 15th? How was it responded to? 620. What was the effect of

several of the slave states that had before been wavering, to join the Confederacy. Virginia (April 17th), Arkansas (May 6th), and North Carolina (May 20th), successively passed ordinances of secession; and on the 8th of June, Tennessee, despite the strong attachment to the Union in her eastern section, followed their example,—making eleven states now in open insurrection against the Federal government.

621. Several of the border states, also, were violently divided in sentiment, many of their citizens being open advocates of secession. A mob in Baltimore, on the 19th of April, attacked a body of Massachusetts and Pennsylvania troops passing through that city for the defence of Washington, and killed two Massachusetts men, the first victims of the rebellion. Missouri was saved to the Union only by the decided course of Captain (afterwards General) Lyon, who broke up an insurgent camp near St. Louis, and secured the U. S. arsenal. Kentucky, though she would not leave the Union, at first contented herself with a proclamation of neutrality, and withheld her active support from the Federal government.

622. Immediately upon the secession of Virginia, the Confederates seized the armory at Harper's Ferry (April 18th) and the navy yard at Norfolk (April 20th), the U. S. officers in charge of those posts having retired with their men after an attempt (but partially successful) to destroy the government property they contained. Large bodies of men rapidly thrown up into Virginia from the states further south, seriously threatened the national capital. The Federal government, on the other hand, was straining every nerve. It collected in and about Washington as speedily as possible, under Lt. General Scott, the hero of Chippeway, Lundy's Lane, and the Mexican War, the volunteers who flocked to their country's defence in answer to the president's call. An energetic blockade of

---

the attack on Sumter in several of the slave states? Name the states that now seceded. 621. What took place in Baltimore on the 19th of April? How was Missouri saved to the Union? What position was at first taken by Kentucky? 622. What was done by the Confederates immediately after the secession of Virginia? How was the national capital threatened? What measures were taken

the ports in the rebellious states was commenced, many steamers being bought and fitted up as gunboats for that purpose. The president soon found it necessary (May 3d) to make an additional call for upwards of 82,000 men for the army and navy, to serve during the war; he was answered as promptly and heartily as before.

623. On the 24th of May the national forces made a forward movement, crossed the Potomac into Virginia, and occupied the heights opposite Washington, and the city of Alexandria a few miles below. About 15,000 men had been concentrated at Fortress Monroe, in south-eastern Virginia, at the extremity of the peninsula between the James and the York River—a strong post which the Federal government had succeeded in retaining. Shortly after the movements just mentioned, Gen. Butler, who was in command of this position, finding the enemy in his neighborhood growing offensively bold, sent out a force to surprise their nearest post at Little Bethel. Failing to accomplish its object, it advanced to Big Bethel, and was there repulsed with loss on the 10th of June.

624. Early in June, a body of Pennsylvania volunteers, under Gen. Robert Patterson, broke camp at Chambersburg, and marched towards the Potomac, in the vicinity of Harper's Ferry, which place was occupied by the enemy in strong force. Col. (afterwards Gen.) Wallace made a dash into Virginia, and on the 11th dispersed a Confederate force at Romney. Gen. Patterson's main body crossed the Potomac soon after, and marched up the Shenando'ah Valley, while the enemy fell back to Winchester. In the mean time, Gen. George B. McClellan was successfully engaged with the Confederates in western Virginia. A Union victory was gained at Philippi on the 3d of June, and a more important one at Rich Mountain, July 11th. The retreating enemy endeavored to make a

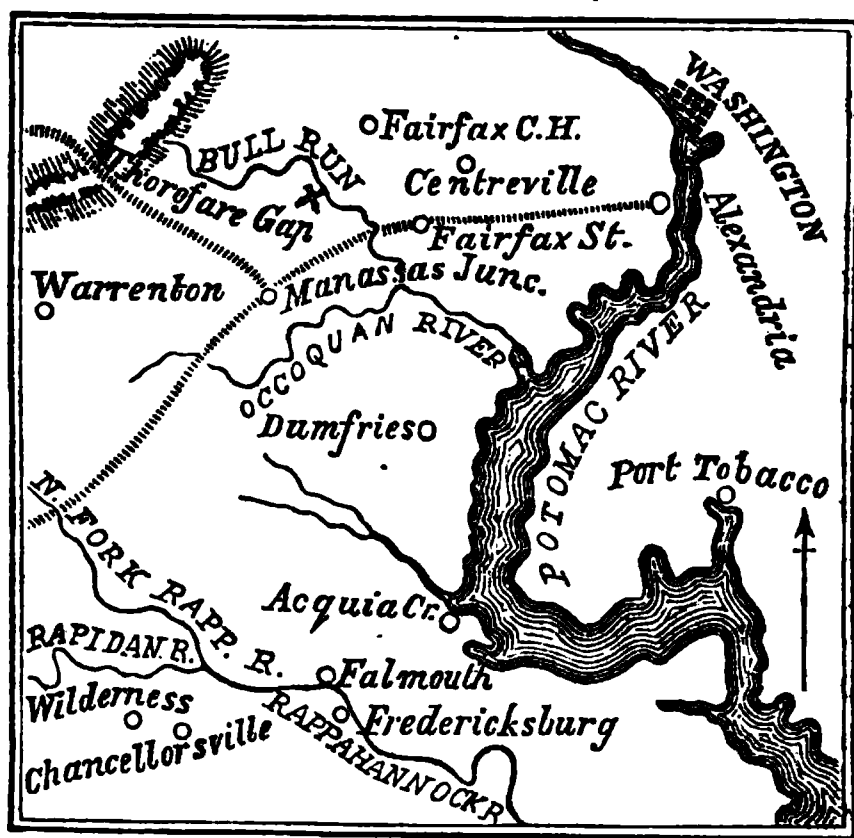
---

by the Federal government? What did the president soon find it necessary to do? 623. What movement was made May 24th? Where is Fortress Monroe? Who was in command there? How large a force had he? Give an account of the battle of Big Bethel. 624. What movements were made by Gen. Patterson's command, early in June? Where was Gen. McClellan engaged? What Union vic-

stand at Carrick's Ford, on the Cheat River, but were routed with loss, their commander (Gen. Garnet) being among the killed. A detachment of 600 men, left unsupported and without food, surrendered to Gen. McClellan near Beverly on the 12th; and western Virginia was thus entirely wrested from the Confederates.

625. The main body of the Confederates was concentrated under Beauregard, near Manassas Junction, 27 miles from Alexandria. Under orders from Gen. Scott, General Irvin McDowell advanced by way of Centreville

to dislodge the enemy from this position. After a reconnoissance in force southward from Centreville (July 18th), which resulted in the loss of 100 men, an advance was made on the 21st of July. The Confederates were found strongly posted on Bull Run, a



considerable mill-stream, and a desperate battle ensued. At first the national forces had the advantage. The enemy were driven two miles, and were on the point of giving way, when Gen. Johnston arrived with reinforcements from the army of the Shenandoah. Eluding Patterson, who had been sent expressly to hold this division in check and prevent it from effecting a junction with Beauregard, they reached the field just in time to turn the tide of battle. The Union forces, exhausted and dismayed,

tories were gained in western Virginia? 625. Where was the main body of the Confederates? What movement was made against them? Give an account of the battle of Bull Run. [See Map.—Of what is Bull Run a branch? In what direction is it from Manassas Junction? From Alexandria?] State the loss on each

gave way before the fresh columns of the foe, and a general panic and rout ensued.

Thus this first great battle of the rebellion terminated most disastrously to the Union cause. The Federal loss was 481 killed, 1,011 wounded, and 1,460 prisoners; that of the Confederates, 269 killed, 1,533 wounded, and between two and three hundred prisoners. The victors were too much exhausted to press the pursuit, but their cause was immensely strengthened, particularly in the border states. Confident of their ability to hold Virginia, they had already made Richmond their capital, the Confederate Congress meeting there for the first time on the 20th of July.

626. Though the convention and legislature of Missouri had refused to withdraw their state from the Union, her governor was determined to force her into the Confederacy. From the commencement of hostilities, partisan warfare and violence of every kind had been rife within her borders. The gallant Gen. Lyon, with the forces at his disposal, had made every effort to restore peace and break up secession camps in different quarters. The Confederates, however, determined to gain the state if possible, pushed up troops from Arkansas and Texas. On the 5th of July an engagement took place near Carthage, in the south-western part of the state, between a body of these insurgents and some national forces under Col. (afterwards Gen.) Sigel [*se'-gel*]. The advantage was on the side of the latter, though Sigel, by the arrival of reinforcements for the enemy, was obliged to fall back. South-western Missouri was soon overrun by the Confederates.

Gen. Lyon, waiting in vain at Springfield for reinforcements, which, after the disaster at Bull Run, the government was unable to send, at length found it necessary either wholly to abandon that section of the state, or at-

---

side. What was the effect of the battle? What was now the Confederate capital? 628. What was the state of things in Missouri? Give an account of the battle near Carthage. Where was Gen. Lyon at this time? What led him to attack the

The first of these is the fact that the  
government has been unable to  
maintain a stable currency. This  
has led to a loss of confidence  
in the government and a consequent  
fall in the value of the currency.  
The second is the fact that the  
government has been unable to  
maintain a stable economy. This  
has led to a loss of confidence  
in the government and a consequent  
fall in the value of the currency.

The third is the fact that the  
government has been unable to  
maintain a stable political system.  
This has led to a loss of confidence  
in the government and a consequent  
fall in the value of the currency.  
The fourth is the fact that the  
government has been unable to  
maintain a stable social system.  
This has led to a loss of confidence  
in the government and a consequent  
fall in the value of the currency.

The fifth is the fact that the  
government has been unable to  
maintain a stable foreign policy.  
This has led to a loss of confidence  
in the government and a consequent  
fall in the value of the currency.

Floyd at Carnifex Ferry, on the Gauley River. A succession of minor engagements followed, till cold weather put an end to the campaign; and at the close of 1861, almost the whole of Virginia west of the Alleghanies was in possession of the national government.

629. After the disaster at Bull Run, an immediate attack on Washington was apprehended. Gen. McClellan was at once summoned from western Virginia to take command of the defences of that city and the army of the Potomac. Regiments poured in from the north, and by the middle of October McClellan found himself at the head of 150,000 men. The national lines were soon advanced in the neighborhood of Washington, the enemy retiring before them. On the 21st of October, 1,900 men were thrown across the Potomac at Ball's Bluff; attacked by a superior force under Gen. Evans and left unsupported, after a most brave resistance they were defeated, with terrible loss. The gallant Col. Baker, of California, fell in this action at the head of his men. Later in the season (Dec. 20th), a Union victory was gained at Dranesville, Va., which did much to reëssure loyal hearts at the north, cast down by the disasters at Bull Run and Ball's Bluff.

630. Little regard was paid by the Confederates to the neutrality proclaimed by Kentucky. Invading the state, they seized and fortified Columbus, on the Mississippi River, and stationed a detachment at Belmont, which lay opposite to it on the Missouri bank. This detachment was attacked, Nov. 7th, by Gen. Ulysses S. Grant, commanding the national forces at Cairo, Illinois. The Confederate camp was quickly carried, and its defenders driven over the bluff. But they were promptly reënforced from the Kentucky side; the Union troops were cut off from their boats, and in forcing their way through suffered severe loss.

---

western Virginia at the close of 1861? 629. What was apprehended after the battle of Bull Run? Who was called to take command at Washington? How many men had McClellan by the middle of October? What did he soon do? What took place at Ball's Bluff? What took place Dec. 20th? 630. What movements were



631. A close blockade was now maintained along the whole southern coast, but on dark and stormy nights it was impossible to prevent swift steamers, plying between Confederate ports and the West Indies, from running out with their cargoes of cotton, and returning with arms, ammunition, and manufactures of various kinds that were sorely needed in the seceded states. One of these "blockade-runners" took out Jas. M. Mason and John Slidell, who had been U. S. senators, as Confederate envoys to England and France. They reached Havana in safety, and took passage thence in the British mail-steamer Trent. When one day out of Havana (Nov. 8th), the Trent was overhauled by Capt. Wilkes in the U. S. steamer San Jacinto, and the Confederate envoys were taken off and brought to the U. S. Great Britain at once declared this act a flagrant violation of her rights as a neutral, demanded the immediate surrender of the envoys, and prepared for war. Capt. Wilkes having acted without instructions, the Federal government promptly disavowed the seizure, gave up the prisoners, and thus, to the great disappointment of the Confederates, avoided a collision with Great Britain. Throughout the rebellion, neither the British nor the French government showed any sympathy with the Federal cause; Confederate privateers were built in their ports in violation of law; and, had it been prudent, they would no doubt have acknowledged the independence of the Confederacy.

632. At the commencement of the year 1862, the entire Federal force in the field was about 450,000 men, 200,000 of whom were in the various camps around Washington under McClellan. The whole Confederate force was not far from 350,000 men, occupying about half of the states of Kentucky and Missouri, a small part of western Virginia, and almost the whole of eastern Virginia and the

---

made by the Confederates in Kentucky? Give an account of the battle of Belmont. 631. What is said of the blockade? Who succeeded in leaving the country on a "blockade-runner"? What befell Mason and Slidell? How did Great Britain regard this act? How was a collision avoided? What was the feeling of both Great Britain and France throughout the rebellion? 632. What was the

other southern states. Their main body was at Manassas, while their batteries blockaded the lower Potomac. The first important movements of the year were in Kentucky. Early in January, Col. Garfield drove out a Confederate force under Col. Humphrey Marshall from the eastern part of that state; and on the 19th of the same month, the Union General George H. Thomas gained a brilliant victory at Mill Springs, over Generals Crittenden and Zollicoffer, the latter of whom fell in the action.

633. With the view of operating on the western waters, a strong force of gun-boats and mortar-boats, some of which were iron-clad, had been prepared by the national government at Cairo, Illinois, and placed under the command of Commodore A. H. Foote. On the 6th of February, Commodore Foote's flotilla, supported by a land force under Gen. Grant, captured Fort Henry on the Tennessee River, with 83 prisoners and a large amount of stores. On the 16th of the same month, Gen. Grant's force, operating in connection with the gun-boats, effected the important capture of Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River, Tennessee, with about 10,000 prisoners, many cannon, and large quantities of stores and ammunition. The enemy were now obliged to withdraw from Kentucky, and also from Nashville, the capital of Tennessee, which was soon afterwards occupied by the Federal army.

634. Two days after the fall of Fort Henry, an important victory was achieved on the Atlantic coast by a strong land and naval force under General Ambrose E. Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough. An expedition fitted out under these officers for the purpose of operating on the North Carolina coast left Fortress Monroe, Jan. 12th, entered Hatteras Inlet, and, after encountering a severe storm and a brave resistance, on the 8th of February cap-

---

strength of each army at the commencement of 1862? Where was the main body of the Confederates? Give an account of the movements in Kentucky early in the year? 633. What had been fitted out by government for the western waters? What victories were achieved by Com. Foote and Gen. Grant? What were the enemy thus obliged to do? 634. What victory was achieved on the Atlantic

tured Roanoke Island (memorable as the site of Sir Walter Raleigh's colony), and 3,000 men. This victory was followed up by the fleet with expeditions to various points, resulting in the destruction of many of the enemy's vessels, the dispersal of their forces, and the capture of stores and ordnance. On the 14th of March, Gen. Burnside's men, supported by the gun-boats so formidable to the enemy, after an engagement of four hours, took possession of Newbern, N. C., the second city in the state in commercial importance; and on the 25th of April they were equally successful at Beaufort [*bu'-fort*], the best harbor in the state, and Fort Macon, which defended its entrance.

635. On the 22d of February, 1862, Jefferson Davis was inaugurated at Richmond "President of the Confederate States", for the term of six years. He had been unanimously elected under the Confederate Constitution, with Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, as vice-president. The same day had been appointed by Pres. Lincoln for a general advance of the Federal armies.

636. The 8th of March was memorable for two great events in the history of the war:—a Union victory gained by General Curtis, after three days' desperate fighting, at Pea Ridge, in the mountains of Arkansas, over Generals Van Dorn, Price, and McCullough [*mac-cul'-lo*]; and the descent of the Confederate ram Virginia on the Union fleet near Fortress Monroe. The Virginia was a powerful iron-clad, made out of the frigate Merrimac, which had been sunk by the U. S. naval commander at Norfolk on abandoning that place at the commencement of the rebellion. After destroying the wooden vessels Cumberland and Congress, with a large number of their men, this formidable ram, on whose thick iron armor the national broadsides made no impression, was obliged by the ap-

---

coast about this time? How was it followed up by the fleet? What took place on the 14th of March? What, on the 25th of April? 635. What took place at Richmond, Feb. 22d, 1862? 636. For what two events was the 8th of March memorable? Out of what was the Virginia made? Give an account of her doings on the 8th. What fears were entertained? How was this prevented? Describe the

proach of darkness to defer its attack on the rest of the fleet till the following morning. It was feared she would sink every vessel in the harbor, and make her escape to continue the work of destruction in northern ports. But during the night the floating battery Monitor, built by Captain Ericsson, and commanded by Captain Worden [*wor'-den*], ar-

MONITOR AND VIRGINIA (MERRIMAC).

rived from New York. The next morning (March 9th), an engagement took place between the two iron-clads. The little Monitor, though less than half the size of her antagonist, proved more than a match for her, causing her, after an action of five hours, to return to Norfolk considerably damaged. This action clearly showed the immense superiority of iron-clads over wooden vessels, and led the Federal government to build a number of Monitors with all despatch.

637. On abandoning Columbus, Kentucky, the Confederates took a strong position on Island No. 10, in the Mississippi, preventing the navigation of that river. Gen. Pope with a land force, on the 14th of March, dislodged a strong

---

engagement between the Monitor and the Virginia. What did this action prove?  
637. Where did the Confederates go, on abandoning Columbus? Tell how Island

body of Confederates from New Madrid, opposite the island on the Missouri side, and then coöperated with Com. Foote for the capture of the island and its garrison. After a bombardment of more than twenty days, the Confederate garrison withdrew; but Gen. Pope cut off their retreat, and without the loss of a man took between 5,000 and 6,000 prisoners (April 7th). The gun-boats soon descended the river, and, defeating the enemy's fleet near Fort Pillow, opened the way to Memphis, Tenn. This important city surrendered to Commodore Davis, June 6th, after a severe naval engagement in which the Confederate fleet was almost wholly destroyed.

638. The victories gained in Kentucky and Tennessee in the early part of the year were vigorously followed up. At the beginning of April, Gen. Grant found himself with a large army at Pittsburg Landing, on the Tennessee River, confronted by a still larger force of the enemy under Generals A. S. Johnston and Beauregard. While waiting for Gen. Buell's army to effect a junction with his own, on the 6th of April he was fiercely attacked by the enemy, who captured Gen. Prentiss with a great part of his command, and drove the national forces nearly to the river, taking their camps, artillery, and stores, and threatening them with entire destruction. Towards the close of this disastrous day the enemy's further advance was checked by the gun-boats, and meanwhile Gen. Buell's much-wished-for army was seen approaching on the opposite side of the river. Thus opportunely reënforced, Gen. Grant the following day assumed the offensive, drove back the enemy, and recaptured much that had been lost. The battle of Shiloh, as it was called from Shiloh Church near the landing, ranks among the most bloody engagements of the rebellion, the Federal loss being 1,735 killed, 7,882 wounded, and 4,044 missing and prisoners. The Confederate loss in killed and wounded was about the same; among the

---

No. 10 was reduced. What was then done by the gun-boats? When and to whom did Memphis surrender? 638. Where do we find Gen. Grant at the beginning of April? By whom was he confronted? Tell the story of the battle of Shiloh. What was the loss on each side? To what place did the enemy fall back? Who

former was Gen. Johnston, commander-in-chief of the western division.

The enemy fell back to Corinth, in north-eastern Mississippi, whither they were followed by Gen. Halleck, who had assumed command of the national forces. Without waiting to give battle, on Gen. Halleck's opening with his siege-guns, the Confederates destroyed their magazines and evacuated the place (May 30th). Many of them were soon transferred to Virginia, to take part in the important events there transpiring.—Some time previous to this, Gen. O. M. Mitchell, with a portion of Buell's army, had penetrated northern Alabama as far as Huntsville, thus gaining command of the Memphis and Charleston Railroad and severing one of the enemy's chief arteries of communication.

639. Fort Pulaski, the principal defence of the city of Savannah, was captured by a naval force from Hilton Head, after a heavy bombardment, on the 11th of April. The same month, the Confederates received a heavy blow in the loss of the city of New Orleans. On opposite sides of the Mississippi, 75 miles below the city, stand Forts Jackson and St. Philip, its main defences. These forts were attacked, April 18th, by a Union fleet of gun-boats and mortar-boats, and about 14,000 men under Gen. Butler, many of them enlisted in New England for this expedition. A bombardment of six days having failed to reduce the forts, Admiral Farragut, on the 24th, ran past them with a portion of his fleet, amid a terrible storm of shot and shell, met and destroyed the Confederate vessels, and reached the city on the 25th. He found the levee wrapped in smoke from burning cotton and other property destroyed by order of the authorities. The Confederate force occupying the city hastily withdrew, and the old flag once more floated over the commercial metropolis of the south. On

---

followed them to Corinth? What was the result of Gen. Halleck's movements? Some time previous to this, what had been accomplished by Gen. Mitchell? 639. Where was Fort Pulaski? When and how was it taken? What heavy blow did the Confederates receive, the same month? Give an account of the capture of

the 28th the forts surrendered to Commodore Porter, who had been left before them with his mortar-boats, and the victory was complete. Gen. Butler assumed command in the captured city, and the indomitable gun-boats, ascending the river, took other important places on its banks.

640. We must now return to Virginia. On the upper Potomac Gen. Lander had cleared his department of Confederate forces. Lower down an advance had been made by Gen. Banks's division, and on the 23d of March Gen. Shields had gained an important victory at Winchester. McClellan's fine army had seen no active service during the winter, but had been thoroughly disciplined for the spring campaign. When a forward movement was made towards Richmond, the enemy abandoned their position at Manassas, and fell back to a new line of defence on the Rappahannock River. Thinking that the Confederate capital could be reached most easily by way of the peninsula formed by the James and the York River, McClellan embarked his forces on transports, landed them at Fortress Monroe, and commenced his march overland from that point (April 4th), both rivers being commanded by the enemy. Moving up the peninsula, McClellan found a hostile force strongly intrenched at Yorktown, and commenced a siege of that place. Here the Union army was delayed a month. It was not till the 4th of May that they gained possession of the place, the enemy having evacuated it the previous night.

Aiming to delay the Federal advance, with the view of strengthening the fortifications at Richmond, the Confederates next made a stand at Williamsburg, but were defeated (May 5th) with severe loss. Pushing steadily forward, on the 23d of May McClellan reached a point within

---

New Orleans. Who assumed command in the captured city? 640. What was done in Virginia at the beginning of the year? In what had McClellan's army been engaged through the winter? When a forward movement was made towards Richmond, what did the enemy do? What route did McClellan decide to take? Where was the first resistance encountered? What was the result? Where did the enemy next make a stand? How near Richmond did McClellan get? What

seven miles of the Confederate capital. Meanwhile, on the 10th of May, Gen. Wool (then in command at Fortress Monroe) took possession of Norfolk, most of the forces that had occupied it having been withdrawn for the defence of Richmond. The next day the Confederates blew up their famous ram Virginia, thus leaving the James River open to the Federal transports.

641. McClellan's efficient force had by this time become much diminished; and, as that of the enemy was constantly increasing, he anxiously called for reënforcements from the north. But the vigorous movements of the Confederate generals, "Stonewall Jackson" and Ewell, in the Shenandoah Valley, had forced Gen. Banks to make a hasty retreat to the Potomac, threatened Washington with capture, and obliged the president not only to retain for the defence of that city the force that had been intended for McClellan, but also to call the militia of the loyal states to his aid. McClellan was thus left to his own resources; nor were the enemy that confronted him idle. On the 31st of May, one wing of the national army, which had crossed the Chickahominy, was furiously attacked. The battle, called that of Fair Oaks or Seven Pines, lasted part of two days, and resulted in the repulse of the Confederates, costing them 8,000 men, the Union army 5,000. The Confederate general-in-chief, Johnston, having been wounded in this engagement, Gen. Robert E. Lee was assigned (June 3d) to the command of the army in front of Richmond.

642. Gen. Jackson did not advance on Washington, as had been apprehended, but moved rapidly southward to coöperate with Lee. This movement and the consciousness that the force he then had was insufficient for the capture of the city, decided McClellan to change his base to the James River (about 20 miles distant), where he could be protected by the gun-boats and wait for reënforcements.

---

took place on the 10th and 11th of May? 641. What prevented the government from reënforcing McClellan? Give an account of the battle of Fair Oaks. Who was wounded in this engagement? Who succeeded Johnston in the chief command? 642. What led McClellan to change his base? Mention the battles to



In the face of superior numbers this was a hazardous movement. A succession of the most desperate battles ever fought on this continent took place during the seven days from June 25th to July 1st inclusive. At Oak Grove (June 25th), Mechanicsville (26th), Gaines's Mill (27th), Savage's Station (29th), White Oak Swamp and Charles City Cross Roads (30th), and Malvern Hill (July 1st), the courage and endurance of the Federal army were put to a terrible test. Nobly did they pass through the ordeal, though with great loss and untold suffering. On the evening of July 1st, the exhausted enemy retired towards Richmond, while the army of the Potomac took a strong position under cover of the gun-boats, at Harrison's Landing, on the James River.—On the same day the president issued a call for 300,000 more troops.

643. Freed for the time from all fears for the safety of Richmond, Gen. Lee now assumed the offensive. At the beginning of August, with the mass of his army he moved rapidly northward, for the purpose of taking Washington and invading Maryland. To oppose him, were the forces that had been left for the defence of the capital and western Virginia. These had been combined and placed under the command of Gen. Pope, but were still greatly inferior to the enemy in numbers. The position of affairs was critical. On the 3d of August, McClellan was ordered to withdraw his army from the peninsula and effect a junction with Gen. Pope; and the next day a call was made for 300,000 additional troops.

644. The enemy advanced unopposed to the Rapidan River, a branch of the Rappahannock. [See Map, p. 466.] On the 9th of August, their advance, under Jackson and Ewell, was met by Gen. Banks at Cedar Mountain, on the north side of the Rapidan. A fierce engagement followed,

---

which this movement led, and their dates? What was the result? What call was issued by the president, July 1st? 643. What movement was now made by Gen. Lee? What forces were at hand to oppose him? Who commanded them? What order was issued, August 3d? What call, August 4th? 644. How far did the enemy advance unopposed? [See Map, p. 466.—In what direction is the Rapidan from Washington?] Where and when did the first engagement take

with such disadvantage to the enemy that they fell back to await the arrival of their main body. This was not long in coming up; and Gen. Pope, greatly outnumbered, was obliged to retreat towards Washington, stubbornly disputing every inch of the way. From August 26th the national army suffered heavily, the plains of Manassas and the old battle-field of Bull Run being the scenes of terrible carnage. The protracted struggle terminated, September 1st, with the battle of Chantilly, in which perished the gallant Union generals, Stevens and Kearney. The next day, the army of Virginia was drawn within the intrenchments in front of Washington. The entire loss during Pope's campaign was estimated at between 15,000 and 20,000 men. But the necessary time had been gained. McClellan's army had arrived, and the national capital was safe. At his own request, Gen. Pope was now relieved of command in this department, and Gen. McClellan was called (Sept. 2d) to the head of all the troops concentrated for the defence of Washington.

645. The way was now open to Maryland. Gen. Lee at once pushed his army across the Potomac. Frederick was occupied on the 6th of September, and Hagerstown on the 10th. Amid intense excitement, the loyal men of Maryland and Pennsylvania hastily prepared to repel the foe. McClellan was already on their track with most of the force that had been gathered at Washington. Disappointed in his hope that Maryland would hail him as a deliverer and sever her connection with the Federal government, Lee was obliged to give battle to the national forces at South Mountain (Sept. 14th). The result was a Union victory, and the enemy fell back to a strong position behind Antietam [*ante'-tam*] Creek.

This advantage was more than counterbalanced by the loss, on the following day, of Harper's Ferry and its garrison of 11,583 men. It was taken by the Confederate

---

place? What was the result? Give an account of the movements that followed. What was the entire loss during Pope's campaign? What had been gained? Who succeeded Pope in command? 645. What was Lee's next movement? What places were occupied? [See Map.—In what direction is Frederick from

General Jackson, who had been sent against it before the battle of South Mountain. The next day Jackson rejoined Lee, and on the 17th was fought the great battle of Antietam. Here the Union arms were again victorious, but the loss on both sides was heavy. McClellan felt unable to follow up his advantage, and Lee withdrew his forces in good order across the Potomac and retired in the direction of Winchester. It is computed that this Maryland campaign cost the Confederates 30,000 men.



SCENE OF LEE'S INVASIONS.

646. The Union army remained in Maryland several weeks, during which the Confederate General Stuart, with 1,800 cavalymen, made a successful raid completely around it, penetrating as far as Chambersburg, Pa., and carrying off considerable property. A forward movement was made Oct. 26th; but on the 7th of November McClellan was superseded by Gen. Burnside, who led the army towards Fredericksburg, on the Rappahannock [see Map, p. 466], with the view of reaching Richmond from that direction. As his army concentrated on the north bank of the river,

---

Harper's Ferry? From Hagerstown? Near what stream is Hagerstown? Into what does Antietam Creek empty? Where is South Mountain? What did McClellan do? When was the battle of South Mountain fought? With what result? What severe blow did the Federal cause receive the next day? When was the battle of Antietam fought? What was the result? What was Lee's loss in this Maryland campaign? 646. Give an account of Stuart's raid. When and by whom was McClellan superseded? Where did Burnside lead the army? What

opposite Fredericksburg, Lee's force gathered on the heights in the rear of the city. Owing to the non-arrival of pontoons, Burnside was unable to cross the river till these heights were strongly fortified. The passage was effected with some opposition on the 11th and 12th of December, and on the 13th the battle commenced. The most desperate attempts were made to carry the enemy's position on the heights, but in vain; and on the 15th the national forces recrossed the river, having lost over 12,000 men.

647. Meanwhile, the Confederates were trying to regain a foothold in Kentucky. Gen. E. Kirby Smith, advancing from Knoxville, Tenn., defeated a Federal force near Richmond, Kentucky (Aug. 30th), and occupied Lexington and Frankfort. Cincinnati was saved from capture by the vigorous measures of Gen. Lewis Wallace. Another Confederate army, under Gen. Bragg, invaded Kentucky early in September, captured a Union force of 4,500 men at Munfordsville, and pushed on to make a junction with Kirby Smith and attack Louisville. This design was baffled by Gen. Buell, whose army had closely followed Bragg from Tennessee and encamped around the city. Again taking the field in October, Buell on the 8th came up with the enemy at Perryville, Ky., where an engagement favorable to the Union cause took place. Bragg continued to fall back, and finally made good his retreat into eastern Tennessee, with nearly 4,000 wagons filled with the spoils of this campaign.

648. Early in the fall, the Confederates resumed operations in Mississippi against the Federal forces in and about Corinth. On the 19th of September, Gen. Rosecrans defeated a Confederate force under Gen. Price at I-u'-ka, Miss., taking 1,000 prisoners; and on the 4th of October, the same officer gallantly repulsed a fierce attack on Corinth by Gen-

---

place is nearly opposite Fredericksburg? [See Map, p. 466.] Give an account of the battle of Fredericksburg. What was the Federal loss? 647. Give an account of Gen. E. Kirby Smith's movements in Kentucky. How was Cincinnati saved? Give an account of Gen. Bragg's movements. What did he finally suc-

erals Van Dorn and Price. General Grant with a strong force now advanced into Mississippi, with the view of taking its capital and joining Gen. W. T. Sherman in an attack on the strongly fortified city of Vicksburg. His line of communication having been severed by the enemy, Grant was obliged to fall back, and Gen. Sherman was repulsed (Dec. 29th).

649. The close of the year was signalized by the hotly contested battle of Murfreesboro, Tenn., between Generals Rosecrans and Bragg. For several days (Dec. 31st-Jan. 2d) victory hung suspended in the balance, but at last it declared in favor of the national arms, the Confederates retreating on the night of Jan. 3d. The Union loss was 8,485 killed and wounded, and 3,600 missing; that of the enemy is unknown.

650. Among the advantages gained by government during the year may also be mentioned the occupation of Pensacola (May 9th) and other places in Florida, and that of the La Fourche [*lah foorsh*] district in Louisiana, west of the Mississippi, by Gen. Weitzel [*wite'-zel*] with a force from New Orleans, in October.

651. How to meet the expenses of the war (a million and a quarter of dollars a day) was a question that engaged much of the attention of Congress. In 1861 they had authorized a loan of \$250,000,000, imposed a tax on incomes, and increased the duties on tea, coffee, and other articles. This was found insufficient. There was a general derangement of finances, and on the 30th December, 1861, the New York banks suspended specie payments. After careful deliberation, on the 25th of February, 1862, Congress authorized the secretary of the treasury to issue U. S. notes ("greenbacks") to the amount of \$150,000,000, and bonds bearing interest at 6 per cent. to an amount not exceeding \$500,000,000. Taxes were also imposed on in-

---

ceed in doing? 648. Relate what took place in the fall in north-eastern Mississippi. Give an account of the unsuccessful attack on Vicksburg. 649. By what was the close of the year signalized? Which side was victorious? What was the Federal loss at Murfreesboro? 650. What other advantages were gained by government in 1862? 651. What question engaged much of the attention of Con-

comes and manufactures, the duties on various articles were largely increased, and revenue stamps were required to be placed on bonds, mortgages, deeds, powers of attorney, &c. After the suspension of specie payments gold commanded a premium, which rose and fell according to the success of the national arms and the movements of speculators. The highest point reached by gold during the rebellion was 298 (July 9th, 1864); that is, \$100 in gold was worth \$298 in paper.

652. On the 1st of January, 1863, in accordance with authority vested in him by Congress and notice given one hundred days before, the president issued his memorable Emancipation Proclamation, declaring slavery abolished in states then in insurrection, except such portions as were held by the Federal government. This measure gave rise to much excited discussion.

653. On the 26th of January, Burnside was, at his own request, relieved of the command of the army of the Potomac, still opposite Fredericksburg, and Gen. Joseph Hooker was appointed in his place. Three months later General Hooker assumed the offensive, crossed the Rappahannock and Rapidan, and advanced to Chancellorsville [see Map, p. 466], where he encountered the enemy on the 2d and 3d of May. After a desperate conflict, Hooker was obliged to recross the Rappahannock, with a loss of over 11,000 in killed and wounded. The enemy's loss was less, but their able general, "Stonewall Jackson," received a wound which terminated fatally a week after the battle. Gen. Stoneman's cavalry, coöperating with this movement of Hooker's, made a brilliant raid into Virginia, cutting the enemy's communications in every direction. A detachment of them, under Col. Kilpatrick, penetrated within two miles of Richmond,

---

gress? What measures had they taken in 1861? What took place Dec. 30th? What did Congress do, Feb. 25th, 1862? What effect did the suspension of specie payments have on gold? What was the highest point reached by gold? 652. What proclamation was issued, Jan. 1st, 1863? 653. By whom was Gen. Burnside succeeded, and when? What movement was made by Gen. Hooker? [See Map, p. 466.—Where is Chancellorsville?] What was the Federal loss? What loss did the enemy sustain? Give an account of Stoneman's and Kilpatrick's

and reached the Union lines at Gloucester, opposite Yorktown, in safety.

654. General Lee now determined a second time to carry the war into Maryland and Pennsylvania. He began to move early in June, and took Winchester and Martinsburg, with many prisoners. Crossing the Potomac and Maryland, he was soon in southern Pennsylvania. Chambersburg and York fell into the hands of the invaders, while one of their divisions advanced to within four miles of Harrisburg, and a cavalry force almost reached the national capital. The Pennsylvanians, aided by the militia of the adjoining states, nobly rose to arms, to defend their native soil. The army of the Potomac (the command of which was transferred, June 28th, from Gen. Hooker to Gen. George G. Meade) was also close behind the invaders, and Lee found it necessary to concentrate his forces for battle at Gettysburg, Pa. The struggle commenced July 1st, and was continued with the most desperate courage on both sides during the two following days. It terminated in the complete defeat of Lee, who on the 4th of July withdrew his army towards the Potomac, and succeeded in crossing that river. General Meade followed him, taking many prisoners. The Confederates retired to the Rapidan, and the Union army took a position on the Rappahannock. The battle of Gettysburg was one of the most hotly contested of the war. The entire Federal loss was 2,834 killed, 13,790 wounded, and 6,643 missing. 4,500 of the enemy's dead were buried by the Union soldiers, 26,500 wounded fell into their hands, and 13,621 prisoners were taken; also 3 guns, 41 standards, and 24,978 stands of small-arms.

655. After his attempt on Vicksburg, Gen. Sherman, to occupy his army till Gen. Grant could get his forces down from Memphis for a second attack, concerted with Admi-

---

raid. 654. What did Lee now determine to do? What places were taken? How far did the enemy advance? What change was made in the command of the army of the Potomac? Where did Lee find it necessary to give battle? Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg. What was the loss on each side? 655. What movement was next made by Gen. Sherman? By whom was the plan carried

ral Porter a plan for capturing Arkansas Post, the key to the valley of the Arkansas River. The plan was carried out by Gen. McClernand, who took command of the army of the Mississippi, January 4th. Arkansas Post and its garrison of 5,000 men were captured, January 11th. Several other posts were also taken; after which the army and fleet moved back to the Mississippi, and near Vicksburg a junction was effected with the forces of Gen. Grant, who assumed command.

656. Grant's object was to open the Mississippi, which the Confederates commanded at Vicksburg, Grand Gulf, and Port Hudson.

After several attempts to get in the rear of Vicksburg and destroy the naval force of the enemy in the Ya-zoo' River, Gen. Grant moved his army by land, on the opposite side of the Mississippi, to a point below the city, while the gun-boats and transports ran past the batteries under cover of night. Then, recrossing the Mississippi, on the 1st of May the Union army defeated the enemy near Port Gibson, and caused them to evacuate their strong position at Grand Gulf. Between the 12th and 17th of May, the national forces gained a succession of telling victories at Ray-



VICKSBURG, PORT HUDSON, AND THE ADJACENT LOCALITIES.

son, and caused them to evacuate their strong position at Grand Gulf. Between the 12th and 17th of May, the national forces gained a succession of telling victories at Ray-

out? What was the result? Who now assumed command of the army of the Mississippi? 656. What was Grant's object? Give an account of his movements. Name the battles fought from the 12th to the 17th of May. [See Map.—



mond, Jackson (the capital), Champion's Hill, and Big Black River Bridge—at the two places last named defeating General Pemberton with 25,000 men, who had sallied from Vicksburg to attack their rear. This force was driven back to its intrenchments, and a position secured in the rear of the city. Two assaults having failed to succeed on account of the strength of the works, it was resolved to reduce the city by siege, and the Federal guns kept up an incessant bombardment. The garrison held out as long as possible, in the hope that Gen. Johnston, who was straining every nerve to raise a sufficient army for the purpose, would come to their relief. The hope was vain. Provisions grew scarce; even the flesh of mules began to fail; and, having no other resource, on the 4th of July Gen. Pemberton surrendered his whole garrison (over 30,000 in number), and a great quantity of arms and munitions of war. Four days later, Port Hudson and its garrison of 6,233 men surrendered to Gen. Banks. The Mississippi was thus at length opened; and these victories, following so soon on that of Gettysburg, were hailed with rejoicings throughout the north.

Gen. Banks's army at Port Hudson consisted in part of colored troops. More than 50,000 men of African descent enlisted in the service of the U. S. in 1863, and twice that number the following year. They were partly from the northern states, and partly freedmen emancipated under the president's proclamation, and formed efficient and reliable troops.

657. During the movements against Vicksburg just described, Col. Grierson made a cavalry raid of unusual daring, for the purpose of cutting the enemy's communications. Leaving Lagrange, Tenn., April 17th, he marched over 800 miles through the heart of Mississippi, destroying property valued at \$4,000,000, capturing more than 1,000 prisoners, and carrying consternation in his path. On the

---

On what stream is Port Gibson? Grand Gulf? Jackson? Where is Champion's Hill? Of what is the Big Black River a branch? The Yazoo? Bayou Pierre?] Give an account of the siege of Vicksburg. How did it end? Four days later, what took place? What was the effect of these victories? Of what did Banks's army in part consist? How many colored troops enlisted in 1863?

1st of May he reached Baton Rouge [*bat'-un roozh*], La., in safety.

658. The navy was still actively employed in enforcing the blockade. Two of its achievements during this year deserve special mention. The privateer Nashville was destroyed, Feb. 27th, by the iron-clad Montauk, under the guns of Fort McAllister, on the Great Ogeechee River, Ga. On the 17th of June, the Confederate iron-clad ram Atlanta hauled down her colors, after an engagement of 15 minutes with the Weehawken, Capt. John Rodgers, in Warsaw Sound, Ga.

659. The new state of West Virginia was admitted into the Union, and its inauguration celebrated at Wheeling, on the 20th of June. It was composed of loyal counties in the west of the old state, "the mother of presidents".

660. On the 3d of March, Congress passed a conscription act, authorizing the president to recruit the army, if necessary, by a draft from able-bodied citizens between the ages of 20 and 45. About two months afterwards, a draft of 300,000 men was ordered. The measure was unpopular, and riots in different quarters were the consequence. In New York city, on the 13th of July, excited mobs burned down two blocks of houses containing the offices of provost marshals who were proceeding with the draft; also, the Colored Half Orphan Asylum and other buildings. Thieves and malefactors of every grade joined the rioters, and the most fiendish outrages were perpetrated, particularly on the colored population. The city militia were absent in Pennsylvania, whither they had gone at the president's call, to aid in repelling Lee; and the police, though true to their trust and aided by the few regulars that could be gathered from the adjacent posts, were set at defiance. For three days a reign of terror prevailed. On the 16th of July, after more than 400 persons (mostly

---

In 1864? 657. Give an account of Grierson's raid. 658. How was the navy still employed? Relate two of its achievements during the year. 659. What new state was admitted in 1863? Of what was it composed? 660. What provision for a draft was made by Congress? When did the president order a draft? What was the consequence? Give an account of the riot in New York. How

rioters) had been killed and over \$2,000,000 worth of property had been destroyed, a sufficient force was assembled to put down the marauders and restore order.

About 50,000 men were obtained by this draft, and in October another call was issued for 300,000 volunteers, the deficiency to be made up by conscription the following January.

661. A raid of some magnitude was commenced in the latter part of June by the Confederate Gen. John Morgan, with over 2,500 men. Rapidly traversing Kentucky and defeating two small detachments of Union forces in his course, Morgan reached the Ohio River, seized a couple of steamboats, and crossed into Indiana. Great excitement prevailed; the inhabitants turned out to defend themselves, but were unable to check the advance of the raiders. Turning eastward and following in the main the course of the Ohio River, the invaders traversed the whole of southern Ohio, helping themselves to fresh horses and provisions, destroying property, burning bridges, &c. Their object was, after having spread consternation in their track, to recross the Ohio into northern Virginia and join Lee in his invasion of Maryland. Baffled in this attempt by the brave yeomen of Ohio and the gun-boats in the river, the raiders were at last overtaken and defeated (July 21st) by a Union force under Gen. Hobson, which had followed close in their rear all the way from Kentucky. Morgan himself, with the remnant of his force, was taken on the 26th, near New Lisbon, Ohio.

662. Attempts were made by the Confederates in March and April to regain the ground they had lost in North Carolina. Newbern was attacked, and Washington, on the Tar River, besieged; but in both cases the enemy were repulsed. In South Carolina, Charleston harbor was the scene of active operations. A naval attack made April

---

many men were obtained by this draft? What call was issued in October? 661. By whom was a raid of some magnitude undertaken in June? Give an account of Morgan's movements. What was his object? How was it defeated? How did the raid terminate? 662. What attempts were made by the enemy in N. C.? What place in S. C. was the scene of active operations? What was shown by

7th by a strong force of iron-clads proved the necessity of having a land force to coöperate, which was accordingly sent, and Gen. Q. A. Gillmore placed at its head. Gen. Gillmore began operations on Folly Island, took the batteries at the south end of Morris Island, and soon opened a furious bombardment on Fort Wagner and Battery Gregg at its northern extremity. Two attempts to carry Fort Wagner by storm were repulsed by the enemy, but the siege works were pushed forward, and the thick walls of Fort Sumter gradually crumbled (August 17th-24th) under

FORT SUMTER, AFTER THE BOMBARDMENT.

the terrible fire of Gillmore's batteries and Admiral Dahlgren's iron-clads. The enemy were forced to evacuate Fort Wagner and Battery Gregg, and Gen. Gillmore occupied these works on the 7th of September. A destructive fire had also been opened on the city of Charleston (distant about four miles from the national batteries), which was mostly abandoned by its inhabitants.

663. After his victory at the commencement of the year, Rosecrans remained at Murfreesboro, sending out various expeditions, most of which were successful. Col.

---

the naval attack of April 7th? Who was then sent to Charleston? Give an account of Gillmore's movements. What was the effect of his fire on the city?  
663. How did Rosecrans follow up his victory at Murfreesboro? What befell

Streight, however, with 1,800 men, was captured on a raid in Georgia, by a superior force under Gen. Forrest and Col. Roddy. At length, on the 24th of June, Rosecrans commenced a series of movements which resulted in the flanking of Bragg's army at the Duck River and its retreat to Chattanooga. On Rosecrans's advancing against this place, the Confederate army continued its retreat into north-western Georgia, followed by the Federal forces.

Meanwhile, Bragg was largely reënforced by a division from Lee's army under Longstreet, the greater part of Johnston's force from Mississippi, and many of the prisoners paroled at Vicksburg and Port Hudson. Thus strengthened, on the 19th of September Bragg fell on the Federal army near Chickamauga Creek, Georgia. The battle raged furiously that day and the next. A portion of the Union force was thrown into confusion and fled to Chattanooga; but Gen. Thomas, with his men, "like a lion at bay repulsed the terrible assaults of the enemy". During the night of the 20th, Thomas's men, exhausted and greatly outnumbered, though thus far victorious, fell back, and Rosecrans's entire force was concentrated at Chattanooga. The Federal loss in the battle of Chickamauga was 16,851 men, besides small-arms, artillery, and colors.

664. Gen. Rosecrans's army was now for a time in serious danger, the enemy having severed its lines of communication, and threatening Chattanooga from the neighboring heights of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. Two corps, however, of the army of the Potomac, under Gen. Hooker, opportunely arrived and succeeded in opening the Tennessee River, so that supplies could be brought in. Gen. Grant, a large portion of whose army had been ordered from Vicksburg to Chattanooga, now superseded Rosecrans, and was not long in assuming the offensive. Lookout Mountain was brilliantly

---

Col. Streight? Give an account of Rosecrans's movements in June. By whom was Bragg reënforced? What battle was fought, September 19th? Give an account of it. What was the Federal loss? 664. What was now the situation of Rosecrans's army? How was it relieved? By whom was Rosecrans super-

carried (Nov. 24th) by Hooker's men, who fought much of the time above the clouds and were thus hidden from the view of the anxious spectators below. On the 25th the enemy were driven from Missionary Ridge, and Bragg and his whole army were in full retreat towards Ringgold, Ga. The victory was decisive. Some 6,000 prisoners and 50 guns were captured. Thus terminated the siege of Chattanooga.

665. While these movements were going on, Burnside, with the view of driving Gen. Buckner and his Confederate troops from eastern Tennessee, had moved thither from Kentucky. On the 1st of September his advance reached Knoxville, where it was welcomed with joy by the inhabitants. To check this movement, immediately after the battle of Chickamauga, Longstreet and his division moved upon the city by rapid marches. Cutting off on the way several small Federal detachments, on the 18th of November they invested Knoxville, in which Burnside's army awaited their approach. A fierce assault was made on the 29th, but repulsed. For a time the Federal army was hard pressed; but Sherman, with a large force, left free to move by the victory at Chattanooga, set out for the relief of the beleaguered city, and Longstreet was obliged to raise the siege (Dec. 3d). He retreated into western Virginia, and finally rejoined Lee with his command.

666. The Confederates, under Generals Marmaduke and Price, were active in southern Missouri and Arkansas in the early part of 1863, but met with little success. They were repulsed at Springfield, Mo., Jan. 8th; at Hartsville, Jan. 11th; at Cape Girardeau [*je-rar-do'*], April 26th; and at Helena, Ark., July 4th. On the 10th of September, the Federal General Steele entered Little Rock, the capital of Arkansas, and, pressing the enemy southward, restored

---

seded? What did Gen. Grant do? Describe the battle of Lookout Mountain. What battle followed? What was the result? 665. What was Burnside doing meanwhile? How was it sought to check this movement? Give an account of Longstreet's operations. How was the siege of Knoxville raised? Where did Longstreet go? 666. What movements were made by the Confederates in south-

almost the whole state to the Union. Outrages by guerillas and bushwhackers were still rife.

667. To make up for the heavy losses of men sustained during the active movements of 1863, the president issued four calls for troops in 1864: the first, Feb. 1st, for the deficiency under the last call and 200,000 additional men; the second, March 14th, for 200,000 men; the third, July 18th, for 500,000 volunteers; the fourth, Dec. 20th, for 300,000.

668. The first important movement in 1864 was made by Gen. Sherman, with a strong force from Vicksburg, through the state of Mississippi, as far east as Meridian, which was reached Feb. 15th. Here a cavalry force from Memphis was expected; and the combined commands were to go on into Alabama, and possibly coöperate with a naval attack on Mobile. The cavalry, however, were so vigorously opposed, that, after destroying large quantities of corn and other property, they had to make their way back to Memphis. After waiting for them in vain for a week, during which many miles of the railroads meeting at Meridian were destroyed, Sherman retraced his course to Vicksburg, accompanied by nearly 6,000 slaves, who thus obtained their freedom. About this time a short campaign of the Federal General Seymour in Florida, with a force from Port Royal, resulted in the disastrous defeat of his army at Olustee (Feb. 20th), with the loss of a thousand men.

669. After his success at Port Hudson, Banks was reënforced from Gen. Grant's army, and two expeditions were sent out from New Orleans, in the latter part of 1863, to the coast of Texas. The first of these attacked the fort at Sabine [*sa-been'*] Pass, but was repulsed with the loss of two steamers (Sept. 8th). The second was directed against Brownsville, on the Rio Grande, which place was occupied, as well as Corpus Christi, and other points on the Texas coast.

---

ern Missouri and Arkansas? What was done by Gen. Steele? 667. What calls for troops were made by the president in 1864? 668. What was the first important movement of the year? How was its success in part prevented? What is said of Seymour's campaign in Florida? 669. Give an account of the two expe-

670. Early in 1864, a large force was collected at New Orleans, under General Banks, to coöperate with a formidable fleet under Admiral Porter in opening the Red River country in western Louisiana. Shreveport, the seat of the Confederate state government, was their destination. The first post of importance, Fort De Russy, on the Red River, was taken by Gen. A. J. Smith; and on the 16th of March the Federal army entered Alexandria. The Confederates disputed the further advance of the army at Cane River (March 26th), but were driven back, and Natchitoches [*nak'-e-tosh*] was next taken. The road now left the river bank, so that the army was no longer protected by the dreaded gun-boats. The advance consisted of cavalry, separated by a long train of wagons from the main body, which followed some miles behind. This cavalry force, supported by two brigades of infantry, when near Mansfield, on the 8th of April, was drawn into an ambuscade in the form of an enormous V, and attacked by the whole force of the enemy. Subjected to a murderous fire on the front and both flanks, cavalry and infantry were thrown into utter confusion and completely routed. The wagon-train was abandoned, and a disorderly retreat effected during the night to Pleasant Hill, where the rest of the army had by this time arrived.

Here the attack was renewed by the enemy, April 9th. They were successful at first, but were finally repulsed by Gen. A. J. Smith's division, and the exhausted army was thus enabled to reach the river, with the loss of 3,000 men and 20 pieces of artillery. The fleet, which had gone on towards Shreveport, on receiving this intelligence, turned back, annoyed all the way by Confederate batteries and sharp-shooters. Reaching the rapids near Alexandria, Porter found his boats unable to pass them, the river having fallen since their ascent. The fleet was extricated from

---

ditions against the Texas coast. 670. What movement was next undertaken by Gen. Banks? At what point did it aim? What advantages were at first gained? After leaving Natchitoches, what took place? Give an account of the battle of Mansfield. Of the battle of Pleasant Hill. What was the loss on this expedition? What was the fleet doing meanwhile? In what dangerous position was



its perilous position by Lieut.-Col. Bailey, of Wisconsin, who constructed a dam across the river, and thus raised the water sufficiently for the boats to pass over the falls. Such was the disastrous termination of the Red River expedition.

Gen. Steele, who was to have coöperated in the attack on Shreveport, with a strong Union force from Arkansas, was obliged by Banks's reverse to fall back to Little Rock. He succeeded in so doing, but was harassed on the way by the enemy and experienced considerable loss.

671. Late in March, the Confederates under Gen. Forrest commenced operations against the Federal posts in western Tennessee and Kentucky. A garrison of 450 men at Union City surrendered March 24th, and the next day an attack was made on Fort Anderson, near Paducah, but repulsed. On the 12th of April, Fort Pillow, about 70 miles above Memphis, on the Mississippi River, was taken by assault, and 300 men of its garrison, consisting in part of colored troops, were inhumanly massacred after they had thrown down their arms.—On the 18th of April, Plymouth, N. C., with 1,600 men, was taken by a Confederate force under Gen. Hoke, assisted by the iron-clad ram Albemarle. The Albemarle was afterwards (Oct. 27th) sunk by Lieut. Cushing, who exploded a torpedo under her, and Plymouth was recaptured, Oct. 31st.

672. The grade of Lieutenant-General, the highest in the military service of the U. S., became extinct on General Scott's retirement. It was now revived by act of Congress, and in recognition of his great services to the republic was conferred (March 3d) on Gen. Grant. Turning over the great army of nearly 100,000 men at Chattanooga to Gen. W. T. Sherman, and making his head-quarters with the army of the Potomac, Grant ordered a simultaneous advance to

---

it placed? How was it extricated? What effect had this reverse on General Steele's movements? 671. Give an account of Forrest's operations. What followed the capture of Fort Pillow? When and by whom was Plymouth, N. C., taken? What became of the Albemarle? When was Plymouth retaken? 672. What rank was conferred on Gen. Grant? To whom did Grant turn over the army at Chattanooga? What order did he give? When did Sherman begin

be made by both bodies early in May—by the former upon Atlanta, Ga., and by the latter against the Confederate capital. Sherman's men were in motion on the 7th of May. The enemy, 60,000 strong, were at Dalton, Ga., and the campaign was to be carried on in a region of mountains and ridges most favorable for defensive operations.

Flanking the enemy at Dalton, Sherman obliged them to fall back to Resaca. Dislodged from this position after a desperate battle (May 13th, 14th), they continued to retreat, now stopping to give battle (at Dallas, May 28th—Lost Mountain, June 15th, 16th, 17th—Kenesaw Mountain, June 18th—July 3d), now outflanked and forced from their strongholds. Constantly skirmishing and delaying as much as possible the Federal advance, the enemy were at last (July 10th) driven into their strong fortifications before Atlanta. Johnston, whose policy in thus retreating was loudly condemned by the Confederates, was now superseded by Gen. Hood, who made three furious attacks on the Federal army before Atlanta (July 20th, 22d, 28th), but was defeated in each with very heavy loss.

The city was now besieged, and expeditions were sent out to cut the railroads by which its supplies were received. These were mainly successful; but the capture of General Stoneman and his force, on an expedition of this kind, left one road still uninjured in the enemy's hands. Moving with nearly his whole army to destroy this road, Sherman succeeded in getting between Atlanta and two corps of Confederates that Hood had thrown out to Jonesboro to protect it. This detachment was attacked and driven back; and, his army being thus severed, Hood had no choice but to evacuate the city. Thus, after a masterly campaign, which cost his army 30,000 and the Confederates over 40,000 men, Sherman at last (Sept. 2d) gained possession of Atlanta.

---

to move? Where were the enemy? How were the enemy driven from Dalton? What battles were fought? Where were the enemy at last driven? Who superseded Johnston? What were Hood's first movements? What did Sherman next try to do? Which of these expeditions failed? How was Hood obliged to

673. The army of the Potomac, under the immediate command of Gen. Meade, broke camp May 3d. Crossing the Rapidan, they soon reached "the Wilderness", well called by that name, being a barren tract covered with brush and stunted trees, not far to the west of Chancellorsville [see Map, p. 466]. Here Lee, compelled to fight or retreat, gave battle May 5th, 6th, 7th. The loss was heavy on both sides. On the 7th Lee fell back to Spottsylvania, where six days' continuous fighting ensued, resulting at last in advantage to the Union arms. Again Lee fell back, and by flanking and fighting he was driven early in June to within a few miles of Richmond. Having tried the strength of the enemy's position, Grant, on the 14th and 15th of June, withdrew his army to the south side of the James, with the view of taking Petersburg, 22 miles south of Richmond, and thus necessitating the evacuation of the latter city. Lee at once threw a large part of his army into the defences of Petersburg.

674. Gen. Grant had also set other movements on foot. The Virginia and Tennessee Railroad was cut by Gen. Crook, who was then to join a cavalry force under Averill and Sigel's army of the Shenandoah, for an attack on Lynchburg. But Averill was turned back at Wytheville (May 10th), and Sigel was defeated near New Market (May 15th), and so the attack on Lynchburg had to be given up.—A more important movement was made May 5th, from Fortress Monroe, by Gen. Butler, who landed a strong force on the south side of the James River, at the mouth of the Appomattox, threatening at once Petersburg and Richmond. He was prevented from taking Petersburg by a force under Beauregard, on its way from Carolina to join Lee; and after a good deal of hard fighting he intrenched himself strongly, and was soon joined, as we have seen, by Grant's army.

---

evacuate Atlanta? 673. When did the army of the Potomac break camp? Give an account of its movements and the battles that followed. Where was Lee finally driven? What was Grant's next movement? What did Lee now do? 674. What was effected by Gen. Crook? What was he then to do? How was the attack on Lynchburg prevented? Give an account of Gen. Butler's move-

675. Three English-built Confederate privateers, that had been roaming the seas, pillaging and burning U. S. merchantmen,—the *Alabama*, *Florida*, and *Georgia*,—terminated their career in 1864. The first of these, commanded by Capt. Semmes and manned mostly by British seamen, had captured sixty-six American vessels. She was sunk June 15th, after a short contest, by the *Kearsarge*, Capt. Winslow, off Cherbourg [*sher'-boorg*] harbor, France.

676. An attack on Lynchburg was again undertaken, in June, by Gen. Hunter, who had now superseded Sigel in western Virginia. After defeating several detachments of the enemy, Hunter on the 17th of June reached a point within two miles of Lynchburg; but there finding that reënforcements had arrived from Richmond, and running short of ammunition, he retreated into West Virginia, hotly pursued by Gen. Early. The valley of the Shenandoah was thus left undefended, and Early with a division of 20,000 men seized the opportunity to invade Maryland the third time. Hagerstown was occupied July 5th, and saved from destruction only by the payment of \$20,000. The country on all sides was scoured for plunder. Gen. Wallace with a greatly inferior force withstood the invaders for a time at the Monocacy River [see Map, p. 480], July 9th, but was driven back with a loss of 1,200 men. Washington was now in danger, and men were hurried forward for its defence from Grant's army and the loyal states. A body of plunderers penetrated to within six miles of Baltimore, and then turning southward made their appearance in the suburbs of Washington, before Fort Stevens. They were driven off by Gen. Augur, and the whole force soon afterwards crossed the Potomac loaded with booty.

A Federal column started in pursuit, and several engagements took place with varied success. Gen. Averill

---

ments. 675. What three Confederate privateers ended their career in 1864? How many American vessels had the *Alabama* captured? What became of her? 676. What was undertaken by Gen. Hunter? Give an account of his operations. What followed on the part of Gen. Early? How was Hagerstown saved? By whom was Early for a time opposed? What was the result? How were Baltimore and Washington threatened? Who drove the raiders from Washington? What movements followed? Give an account of the second invasion. What

gained a victory at Winchester, July 20th; but on the 24th the Federal force was driven back, and on the 29th, Early, following up his advantage, threw a detachment of his army again across the Potomac. They advanced to Chambersburg, Pa., and demanded \$500,000 of the inhabitants. This sum not being paid, they burned two-thirds of the place. On the return of the raiders, several sharp engagements were fought, in one of which Gen. Averill captured some guns, wagons, and 500 prisoners.

Gen. Sheridan, with about 45,000 men, was finally intrusted with the defence of the Shenandoah Valley. Early, largely reënforced, undertook to dispute its possession, but was defeated by Sheridan at Winchester on the 19th of September, and routed with great loss at Fisher's Hill on the 22d. To make the valley untenable to the enemy, Sheridan, as he passed through, drove off the stock, and destroyed over 2,000 barns with their contents, 70 mills, and other property valued in all at \$25,000,000. The Federal army now fell back to Cedar Creek, near Middletown, where it was suddenly attacked before day on the 19th of October, driven back four miles, and thrown into confusion with every prospect of serious disaster. Sheridan was at Winchester, twenty miles away. Throwing himself into the saddle on receiving the news, he spurred to the field, and by his personal exertions and the confidence inspired by his presence stopped the rout and turned defeat into a signal victory, taking many guns and prisoners. Badly beaten in all his encounters with Sheridan, Early now moved up the valley, and there were no important movements in this quarter during the rest of the year.

677. Grant was all this time vigorously pushing the siege of Petersburg. Expeditions were sent out to cut the railroads by which it received supplies, and assaults were

---

took place on the return of the raiders? Who was finally intrusted with the defence of the Shenandoah Valley? What engagements took place between Early and Sheridan? How did Sheridan make the valley untenable to the enemy? What took place October 19th? What was the result of all these battles? 677. Meanwhile, what was Grant doing? On the 30th of July what was done?

made on the Confederate lines on both sides of the James River. On the 30th of July, a mine was exploded under one of the enemy's forts in the defences of Petersburg, destroying 200 men; but the assault that followed through the breach thus made was repulsed, with the loss of 5,000 men to the Union army. On the 18th of August the Weldon Railroad was seized, and, despite the most desperate efforts on the part of the enemy, costing many lives on both sides, it was held by the Union troops. On the 28th of September an attack was made on the north side of the James, and on the 27th of October at Hatcher's Run; but, while they showed the unflinching courage of the troops, owing to the vigilance and firmness of the enemy, they resulted in little material advantage.

678. Not the least among the successes of the year were Admiral Farragut's glorious achievements in Mobile Bay. Steaming over the bar (August 5th) with four monitors, and his wooden vessels lashed together in pairs (himself lashed to the main-top of his flag-ship, the Hartford), he ran past Forts Morgan and Gaines, which defended the entrance, receiving and returning their fire. The monitor *Tecumseh* was sunk by one of the torpedoes with which the channel was obstructed; but the other vessels got through in safety and made for the Confederate fleet, consisting of three gun-boats and the formidable iron-clad ram *Tennessee*. The *Tennessee*, after a short encounter, surrendered; one of the gun-boats was taken, a second disabled, and the third succeeded in escaping to Mobile. With the aid of a coöperating land force, Fort Gaines was taken on the 8th, and Fort Morgan on the 23d, after a terrible bombardment, during which 3,000 shells were thrown into the fort. Fort Powell had been blown up by its garrison, and the way was thus opened to Mobile whenever its capture should be deemed necessary.

---

What movement was made August 18th? What was done Sept. 28th? What, on the 27th of October? 678. Give an account of Farragut's achievements in Mobile Bay. When were Forts Gaines and Morgan taken? What was done to Fort Powell? 679. Name the candidates at the presidential election of 1864. Which

2000

2000

2000

point to point, after a severe engagement at Franklin, Nov. 30th, he finally found Thomas's army drawn up for a determined stand, in its intrenchments, three miles south of Nashville. While Hood was preparing to blockade the river and cut the railroads leading to the city, Thomas on the 15th of December moved from his works, attacked the enemy, and the next day drove them from their position in great disorder, with a loss of over 13,000 prisoners and many pieces of artillery. Hood, with his army completely demoralized, withdrew into northern Alabama.

682. Hardly less important than the capture of Savannah was that of Forts Fisher and Caswell, defending the approaches to Wilmington, which had been the headquarters of blockade-runners throughout the rebellion. Towards the close of 1864, an expedition against these forts was organized by Admiral Porter and Gen. Butler. Porter commenced operations by exploding a powder-vessel near Fort Fisher, on the 24th of December. But the fort received no injury, and the same day the Federal fleet stood in and delivered a tremendous fire, completely silencing the enemy's guns. The next day the troops were landed for an assault; but Gen. Butler, deeming the works too strong, relinquished the attempt and returned with his men to Hampton Roads. The same fleet, with a somewhat larger land force under Gen. Terry, resumed the attack, January 13th, 1865. After a furious bombardment, Fort Fisher was carried by assault on the 15th. Fort Caswell and the other works of the enemy were speedily taken, and on the 22d of February, the anniversary of Washington's birthday, the Federal forces took possession of the city of Wilmington.

683. Towards the close of the year, various schemes for burning and pillaging were concerted by Confederate emissaries in Canada, and some of them were carried into

---

Give an account of the action in front of Nashville. 682. What important capture is next mentioned? Tell the story of the first attack on Fort Fisher. When and by whom was it resumed? What was the result? When was Wilmington occupied? 683. Where and by whom were various schemes concerted towards



effect. On the 19th of October, a raid was made on the village of St. Albans, Vermont, about 15 miles from the frontier. The marauders robbed the banks, fired on the passers-by, killing and wounding several, and succeeded in making their escape into Canada. Another party captured and burned two small steamers on Lake Erie. On the night of November 25th, an attempt was made to burn the city of New York. Fires were simultaneously kindled in several of the large hotels, but were fortunately extinguished before much damage was done. The perpetrators of this crime also escaped into Canada; but one of them, Robert C. Kennedy, was afterwards caught, while endeavoring to return to the south, and hanged (March 25th) in N. Y. harbor.

684. Sherman allowed his army a short rest at Savannah, and then again took the field. South Carolina was now to experience the horrors of invasion. Threatening different points so as to prevent the enemy from concentrating, Sherman took possession of Columbia, the capital of the state, on the 17th of Feb., 1865, with but little resistance. Thence he directed his course to North Carolina, entering Fayetteville on the 11th of March. By this time Johnston had taken command of the army opposing Sherman, and had been reënforced by Bragg and Hardee. Accordingly, on leaving Fayetteville, the Federal forces encountered a determined resistance, first at Moore's Cross Roads (March 16th), and on the 19th and 20th at Bentonsville. In both engagements the enemy were repulsed, though at the latter place at first successful; and on the 21st Sherman entered Goldsborough, where he effected a junction with a Federal column from Newbern under Gen. Schofield, and another under Gen. Terry from Wilmington. Raleigh, the capital of the state, was occupied April 13th, Johnston falling back to the north-west.

---

the close of 1864? Give an account of the raid on St. Albans. What was done by another party? What took place Nov. 25th? How was one of the perpetrators of this crime punished? 684. What state was next the scene of Sherman's operations? When did he take Columbia? Where did he next go? Give an account of Sherman's movements in North Carolina. With whom did he effect a

685. Gen. Hardee, on abandoning Savannah, had moved to Charleston and assumed command. Sherman's movements in his rear and Gillmore's batteries, now but two miles distant, soon forced him to evacuate the city and the forts in the harbor. The Confederate army on retiring set fire to every building in which cotton was stored, and a large part of the city was consumed. On the 18th of February Charleston surrendered, and the Stars and Stripes once more waved over Fort Sumter. The city had been under bombardment 542 days.

686. Sheridan, with part of his command, now started on a ride up the Shenandoah Valley. Routing the Confederates at Waynesborough, Va., and passing through Charlottesville, he moved rapidly towards the James, destroying the railroad and canal by which Richmond received a great part of its supplies. Then, crossing the river, he joined Gen. Meade's army south of Petersburg.

687. Grant's combinations were now so perfected, and his forces so overwhelming, that the Confederate leaders could no longer close their eyes to their critical situation. On the 7th of March, their Congress passed a bill to arm the slaves—a measure long urged, but opposed by many, and now adopted too late to be of service. As a last desperate effort to save the capital, Lee at daybreak, March 25th, made a sudden attack on Fort Steadman, with the view of breaking Grant's lines on the Appomattox, and cutting off part of his army. The attack was successful, and the fort taken; but it was soon recaptured by Gen. Hartranft, together with 1,800 of the enemy. The same day Grant made a successful attack, and advanced his lines at Hatcher's Run.

688. Gen. Grant now determined to push the enemy vigorously. Sheridan, after a partial repulse on the 31st of March, the next day defeated the enemy at Big Five

---

junction at Goldsborough? When was Raleigh occupied? 685. Give an account of the capture of Charleston. How long had the city been bombarded? 686. Describe Sheridan's operations. 687. What bill was passed by the Confederate Congress, March 7th? What final effort did Lee make? What was the result? Where did Grant advance his lines, the same day? 688. What victory was next

Forks, covering the Southside Railroad, and took 6,000 prisoners. Immediately afterwards (April 2d), an attack was made along the whole line in front of Petersburg, and was everywhere successful. On the afternoon of April 2d, Jefferson Davis, while in church, received a telegram from Lee to the effect that his army had been driven from its intrenchments, and that both Petersburg and Richmond must be abandoned without delay. The evacuation was hastily accomplished that same night. On the 3d of April, before daylight, Grant moved into Petersburg, and four hours afterwards Gen. Weitzel took possession of Richmond. Heartfelt were the rejoicings, and fervent the thanksgivings, with which this news was received. It was felt that the days of the rebellion were numbered.

689. Lee, with his army, made for Lynchburg, where he hoped to continue his resistance. But Grant rapidly pushed forward his forces in pursuit, and Sheridan succeeded in intercepting the fugitives. A severe encounter took place near Deatonville, which resulted in the complete rout of the Confederates and the capture of several thousand prisoners. Nothing was now left for Lee but a surrender; and on the 9th of April, his army, now reduced to about 25,000 men, laid down their arms.

690. On the 13th of April, Mobile surrendered, after a combined military and naval attack. The same day, Salisbury, N. C., was taken by Gen. Stoneman, on a raid from Tennessee. Another successful raid was also made at this time by Gen. Wilson, who, riding between 600 and 700 miles through Alabama and Georgia, captured Selma, Montgomery (the first Confederate capital), and Columbus, taking 6,000 prisoners, 200 cannon, and property estimated at many millions.

691. The loyal heart of the nation, filled with joy at these victories, was suddenly chilled by the appalling

gained by Sheridan? How was this followed up, the next day? How was Davis interrupted in church on the 2d of April? Relate what followed. 689. What place did Lee make for? How was he prevented from reaching it? What battle was fought, and with what result? What was the consequence? 690. What city surrendered, April 13th? The same day, what place was taken by Stoneman? Give an account of Wilson's raid. 691. Relate the incidents attending the pres-

news that President Lincoln had been assassinated. While sitting in a private box in the theatre at Washington, on the evening of April 14th, he was shot by John Wilkes Booth, a violent sympathizer with the south, and died at 22 minutes past 7 the following morning. Springing from the box to the stage, and rushing through the passages, with which he was familiar, Booth made his escape from the rear of the building. Never before was such intense sorrow manifested throughout the land as when the news of this terrible event flashed over the wires. Mr. Lincoln's honesty of purpose and kindness of heart had won even those who differed from him politically, and there were few eyes that rendered not the tribute of a tear to "the martyr president". His honored remains left Washington on the 21st of April, and were entombed in Springfield, Ill., on the 4th of May, the long journey being one great funeral procession.

Simultaneously with the president's assassination, an attempt was made on the life of Secretary Seward, then confined to his bed by dangerous illness. The murderer failed to accomplish his deadly purpose, though he succeeded in wounding Mr. Seward, his son, and two others who were present. A nefarious plot had evidently been formed by enemies of the Union to destroy the heads of the government, and every effort was made to discover the perpetrators and instigators of the crime. Booth, with an accomplice named Harold, was finally traced, and surrounded in a barn where he had taken refuge. On a summons to surrender, Harold came out; Booth refused to do so, and was shot down while in the act of aiming at one of his pursuers. Other arrests were made; a military trial was held; and on the 7th of July four of Booth's accomplices, who were found guilty, were hanged. Three were sentenced to imprisonment for life, and one to hard labor for six years.

---

dent's assassination. Where were his remains buried? What is said of the journey? Give an account of the attempt on Mr. Seward's life. What was the fate of the president's murderer? What punishments were inflicted on his accomplices?

## CHAPTER XVIII:

## JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1865-1869.

692. THE melancholy event just related made Andrew Johnson president of the United States; on the 15th of April he took the oath of office.—Born in humble life, in 1808, in Raleigh, N. C., the future president was apprenticed to a tailor, and went to his trade without knowing a letter of the alphabet. By self-denying application after working hours, he had learned at the age of 17 to read and write. In his twentieth year he settled at Greenville, Tenn.; where, embracing every opportunity to educate himself, he soon made his mark on the community in which he lived. Successively elected alderman, mayor, member of the legislature, congressman, and governor, he was, at the time of the secession movement, in the senate of the United States, where he hurled scathing denunciations on those who were aiming to destroy the Union. The firmness and sagacity which he displayed as military governor of Tennessee under President Lincoln, were now to be exhibited in a wider sphere.

693. The surrender of Lee deprived the Confederates of all hope, and was speedily followed by the surrender of the other generals in the field. Johnston's army, numbering about 30,000 men, laid down their arms on the 26th of April. On the 4th of May, Gen. Richard Taylor surrendered to Gen. Canby all the forces, munitions of war, &c., in the department of Alabama, Mississippi, and eastern Louisiana; and on the 26th, Gen. Kirby Smith, of the trans-Mississippi department, followed his example. Armed resistance was now at an end. The great rebellion had terminated.

694. After his hurried departure from Richmond, Jefferson Davis first went to North Carolina; then, abandoning all

---

692. Who became president in consequence of the death of Mr. Lincoln? Give a sketch of Mr. Johnson's previous history. 693. What was the effect of Lee's surrender on the Confederates? What surrenders followed, and on what dates?

hope, he tried to reach the coast, to effect an escape to the West Indies. He was intercepted by Wilson's cavalry near Irwinville, Ga., on the 10th of May, and was brought to Fortress Monroe. After being confined there for some time under an indictment for treason, he was finally released on bail. His trial was postponed from time to time, and early in 1869 the prosecution was abandoned.

695. On the termination of the war, the government, without unnecessary delay, proceeded to raise the blockade of the southern ports, and reduce the navy and army. The latter, on the 1st of May, consisted of over a million of men; most of these were discharged, and returned peacefully to the pursuits of civil life. An immense debt of nearly \$2,800,000,000 had been entailed by the war; yet there was a general confidence that it could be provided for, with the blessing of Heaven on the natural resources of the country and the industry of its inhabitants. The great body of the southern people, having left their cause to the arbitrament of the sword, accepted its decision, and yielded to the new condition of things.

696. Under an amnesty proclamation issued by the president, May 29th, 1865, pardon was offered to all who had taken part in the secession movement, except those embraced in certain specified classes, on condition of their taking an oath of allegiance to the United States; and on application it was afterwards extended to many individuals belonging to the classes excepted. On the 4th of July, 1868, full pardon and amnesty were granted by the president unconditionally to all who were not at that time under presentment or indictment for treason; and on the 25th of December, 1868, they were extended to all without exception.

697. Early in 1865, Congress passed a resolution pro-

---

694. What became of Jefferson Davis after leaving Richmond? 695. On the termination of the war, what did the government proceed to do? How large a debt had been incurred? What was the general feeling regarding it? What is said of the great body of the southern people? 696. State the substance of the amnesty proclamation of May 29th, 1865. What was done July 4th, and December 25th, 1868? 697. Early in 1865, what amendment to the Constitution was pro-

posing an amendment to the Constitution, abolishing slavery throughout the United States. Three-fourths of the states having ratified this amendment, it was announced on the 18th of December, 1865, that it had become a part of the Constitution [see Constitution, Article XIII., p. xiii.], and slavery ceased to exist. Different measures were subsequently adopted for the protection of the freedmen,—the Civil Rights Bill, among others, being passed by Congress, April 9th, 1866, over President Johnson's veto.

698. No little excitement was caused in June, 1866, by the invasion of Canada by bodies of Fe'nians, a secret society of Irishmen, banded together for the purpose of wresting Ireland from the British government and establishing its independence. Numbers crossed the frontier from Buffalo and Vermont, but after some skirmishing were driven back. President Johnson issued a proclamation cautioning all against the enterprise as a violation of neutrality; and the vigorous measures of Gen. Meade, who was sent to the frontier, put a stop to the movement. Fenians on their way to the scene of action were turned back, and many stands of arms were seized.

699. The question of Reconstruction,—that is, of re-admitting the seceded states to their former position in the Union,—was one which deeply agitated the country during 1866 and 1867. A difference of opinion on the subject between the president and Congress added to the difficulty. The president recognized loyal governments as existing in Virginia, Tennessee, Arkansas, and Louisiana. In the case of the other seceded states he appointed provisional governors, with authority to call conventions to establish permanent governments; and his policy was to recognize such governments, and restore the states to their former rights, as soon as they should repeal their ordinances of secession, repudiate their Confederate debt,

---

posed by Congress? What was the result? What further measures were adopted? 698. Who were the Fenians? Give an account of their invasion of Canada. 699. What question agitated the country during 1866 and 1867? What added to the difficulty? What were the views of the president? Of Congress? State one of the provisions of the fourteenth amendment to the Constitution,

and ratify the amendment which Congress had proposed for the abolition of slavery.

With these conditions most of the states in question complied, but Congress would not recognize them as reconstructed without further guarantees. Accordingly, it proposed a fourteenth amendment to the Constitution, providing, among other things, that, when the right of voting is denied by a state to any citizens, the basis of representation in such state shall be reduced in the proportion which the number thus excluded shall bear to the whole number of citizens in the state. This amendment became a part of the Constitution in 1868.

700. Tennessee, having promptly ratified this amendment, was, in July, 1866, restored to her relations in the Union. Two years later, after a long and bitter struggle between Congress and the president on this and other questions, Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North and South Carolina, were also readmitted, their senators and representatives having been absent from their seats in Congress over seven years.

701. On the 1st of March, 1867, Nebraska was admitted into the Union,—the 37th state. In October of the same year, Russian America was transferred to the United States government, having been purchased of Russia for \$7,200,000 in gold. This immense territory, consisting of nearly 500,000 square miles, is valuable chiefly for its harbors on the Pacific coast, its furs and fisheries.

702. The difficulties between the president and Congress were aggravated by the attempt of the former in February, 1868, to remove Mr. Stanton, the secretary of war, from his position. This the majority in Congress deemed a violation of the Tenure-of-Office Bill, passed shortly before, which made the consent of the senate necessary to such removals. Great political excitement prevailed

---

proposed by Congress. 700. Which of the states was restored to its relations in the Union in 1866? Which were restored in 1868? 701. What state was admitted in 1867? What purchase was made, the same year? For what is this territory chiefly valuable? 702. What aggravated the difficulties between the president and Congress? Give an account of the impeachment and trial of the



throughout the country; and on the 24th of February the house of representatives resolved to impeach the president of "high crimes and misdemeanors". He was tried by the senate, according to the provision made by the Constitution for such cases. A vote having been taken on three of the articles of impeachment, and two-thirds of the senate not having pronounced the president guilty, he was acquitted on those articles; the court then adjourned, and the impeachment trial came to an end.

703. In the summer of 1868, an important treaty with the Chinese Empire was ratified by the United States senate. By this treaty liberty of conscience is guaranteed to citizens of the United States in China, and permission to attend all public educational institutions, without being subjected to any religious or political test, is extended to Chinese residents of the United States. The arrival on the shores of the United States of the first Chinese embassy to the west must be regarded as one of the great events of the age. It shows that this vast empire of four hundred millions of people is awakening to the importance of closer relations with the outer world, and will soon be open to the march of improvement and Christian civilization.

704. Conventions of the republican and the democratic party having been held in 1868, to nominate candidates for the presidency and vice-presidency, General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, were the choice of the former; Horatio Seymour, of New York, and Gen. Francis P. Blair, jr., of Missouri, were nominated by the latter. The republican candidates were successful, and on the 4th of March, 1869, Gen. Grant was inaugurated.

---

president. 703. What treaty was ratified in the summer of 1868? Mention two of the provisions of this treaty. What is shown by the arrival of the Chinese embassy? 704. Name the republican nominees for the presidency and vice-presidency, in 1868. Name the democratic nominees. What was the result of the election? When was Gen. Grant inaugurated?

## PRESENT CONDITION OF THE UNITED STATES.

It may not be uninteresting, in conclusion, to glance at the present condition of our country, its growth in population, and its advance in art, science, and internal improvements.

The first census was taken in 1790 ; at which time the whole population was found to be 3,929,827. In 1860 it had increased to 31,443,321. Our commerce has expanded at a still more surprising rate, our exports in the same space of time having increased from twenty to four hundred millions of dollars. In 1850, the tonnage of the United States was 3,535,454 tons ; in 1861, it had increased to over five and a half millions.

To the United States belongs the honor not only of first employing steam as a motive-power in boats, but also of first using it in ships for ocean navigation. The first steamer that ever crossed the Atlantic was the Savannah, launched at New York in 1818. She proceeded to Savannah, made her way safely to Europe in 1819, and visited various ports, in all of which she was an object of general interest. Notwithstanding the success of this experiment, it was not till 1838 that a regular line of steamers commenced crossing the Atlantic. Previous to that time, sailing packets alone were used, and the average length of a trip from Liverpool to New York was thirty-three days, the shortest time ever made being twenty-two. The first trip of the British steamer Great Western (April, 1838) was performed in fourteen days ; and since then, by successive improvements, the running time in favorable weather has been reduced to eleven, and even less than ten, days. U. S. ship-builders have produced some of the finest models afloat ; in no department of industry have our enterprising mechanics been more successful.

The first railroad in the United States was completed in 1827. Since then, the work of internal improvement has been prosecuted so vigorously that iron roads thread the Union in every direction and bind together its principal cities and towns. In 1868, nearly 40,000 miles of railroad were in operation. The great Pacific Railroad, which (in

connection with lines from the Atlantic seaboard to the Missouri River) joins the Pacific Ocean with the Atlantic, was completed in 1869. Its length is over 1,800 miles, and its cost was not far from \$100,000,000.

In no country is labor so highly respected and so well remunerated as in the U. S. ; and in none, therefore, are the working-classes so happy, and we may add enlightened. No restrictions are laid on industry ; political privileges are extended to all ; and the humblest citizen may raise himself to the proudest position in the republic. Our mechanics have brought a high degree of ingenuity as well as skill to their work ; and through their means America has become justly famous for her inventions and improvements. Among a host of things that might be mentioned, it is undeniable that the best locks, life-boats, printing-presses, and agricultural implements, come from America.

The labor of opening up the resources of a new country has as yet left the people of the United States little time and opportunity for cultivating literature and the arts. Yet we point with pride to our metaphysician, Edwards ; our lexicographer, Noah Webster ; our mathematicians, Bowditch and Rittenhouse ; our naturalists, the Audubons ; our novelists, Irving and Cooper ; our historians, Prescott, Bancroft, and Motley ; our poets, Bryant and Longfellow ; our sculptors, Powers and Greenough ; our painters, Copley, Stuart, Trumbull, Vanderlyn, Allston, Peale, and Sully.

If there is one thing, on which, more than all others, America may pride herself and found high hopes of stability for her glorious institutions, it is her system of common schools. She offers the advantages of education to the young without money and without price, convinced that their enlightenment is her best safeguard. She seeks, as Webster has said, "by general instruction to turn the strong current of feeling and opinion, as well as the censures of the law and the denunciations of religion, against immorality and crime". That she may succeed in thus making her institutions eternal, is the prayer of every friend of liberty.

# THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

PASSED JULY 4th, 1776.



*A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled.*

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal ; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights ; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed ; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes ; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world :

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments.

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature, to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the World for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

[The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members :]

JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire.*—JOSIAH BARTLETT, WILLIAM WHIPPLE, MATTHEW THORNTON.

*Massachusetts Bay.*—SAMUEL ADAMS, JOHN ADAMS, ROBERT TREAT PAINE, ELBRIDGE GERRY.

*Rhode Island.*—STEPHEN HOPKINS, WILLIAM ELLERY.

*Connecticut.*—ROGER SHERMAN, SAMUEL HUNTINGTON, WILLIAM WIL-  
LIAMS, OLIVER WOLCOTT.

*New York.*—WILLIAM FLOYD, PHILIP LIVINGSTON, FRANCIS LEWIS,  
LEWIS MORRIS.

*New Jersey.*—RICHARD STOCKTON, JOHN WITHERSPOON, FRANCIS HOP-  
KINSON, JOHN HART, ABRAHAM CLARK.

*Pennsylvania.*—ROBERT MORRIS, BENJAMIN RUSH, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,  
JOHN MORTON, GEORGE CLYMER, JAMES SMITH, GEORGE TAYLOR, JAMES  
WILSON, GEORGE ROSS.

*Delaware.*—CÆSAR RODNEY, GEORGE READ, THOMAS M'KEAN.

*Maryland.*—SAMUEL CHASE, WILLIAM PACA, THOMAS STONE, CHARLES  
CARROLL, of Carrollton.

*Virginia.*—GEORGE WYTHE, RICHARD HENRY LEE, THOMAS JEFFERSON,  
BENJAMIN HARRISON, THOMAS NELSON, JUN., FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE,  
CARTER BRAXTON.

*North Carolina.*—WILLIAM HOOPER, JOSEPH HEWES, JOHN PENN.

*South Carolina.*—EDWARD RUTLEDGE, THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN., THOMAS  
LYNCH, JUN., ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

*Georgia.*—BUTTON GWINNETT, LYMAN HALL, GEORGE WALTON.

# CONSTITUTION

## OF THE

# UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.\*

---

WE the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

### ARTICLE. I.

SECTION. 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION. 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of Twenty five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons. The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to

---

\* In punctuation, spelling, capitals, etc., this is an exact copy of the original document.



chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New-York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

SECTION. 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one-third may be chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall chuse their other officers, and also a President pro tempore in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and Disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of Honour, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

SECTION. 4. The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the places of chusing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

SECTION. 5. Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn

from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION. 6. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

SECTION. 7. All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a Law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being

disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

**SECTION. 8.** The Congress shall have Power

To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States ; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

To borrow Money on the credit of the United States ;

To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes ;

To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures ;

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States ;

To establish Post Offices and post Roads ;

To promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries ;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court ;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations ;

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water ;

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years ;

To provide and maintain a Navy ;

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces ;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions ;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress ;

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, Dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings ;—And

To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

**SECTION. 9.** The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of

the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

No Capitation, or other Direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another: nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

SECTION. 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing it's inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in Time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of Delay.

## ARTICLE. II.

SECTION. 1. The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

[\* The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each ; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed ; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President ; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote ; A Quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two-thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice President.]

The Congress may determine the Time of Chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes ; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President ; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be encreased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation :—

“ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.

SECTION. 2. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when

---

\* This clause within brackets has been superseded and annulled by the 12th amendment, on page xli.

called into the actual Service of the United States ; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law : but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

SECTION. 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers ; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION. 4. The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE. III.

SECTION. 1. The judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

SECTION. 2. The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority ;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls ;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction ;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party ;—to Controversies between two or more States ;—between a State and Citizens of another State ;—between Citizens of different States,—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be a Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme

Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

SECTION. 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

#### ARTICLE. IV.

SECTION. 1. Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

SECTION. 2. The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

SECTION. 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION. 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

#### ARTICLE. V.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Applica-



tion of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress ; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article ; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

#### ARTICLE. VI.

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof ; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land ; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution ; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE. VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

DONE in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty seven and of the Independance of the United States of America the Twelfth. In Witness whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names,

GEO WASHINGTON—

*Presidt and deputy from Virginia*

*New Hampshire.*—JOHN LANGDON, NICHOLAS GILMAN.

*Massachusetts.*—NATHANIEL GORHAM, RUFUS KING.

*Connecticut.*—WM. SAML. JOHNSON, ROGER SHERMAN.

*New York.*—ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

*New Jersey.*—WIL: LIVINGSTON, WM. PATERSON, DAVID BREARLEY, JONA. DAYTON.

*Pennsylvania.*—B. FRANKLIN, ROBT. MORRIS, THO: FITZSIMONS, JAMES WILSON, THOMAS MIFFLIN, GEO: CLYMER, JARED INGERSOLL, GOUV: MORRIS.

*Delaware.*—GEO: READ, JOHN DICKINSON, JACO: BROOM, GUNNING BEDFORD, JUN'T, RICHARD BASSETT,



*Maryland.*—JAMES M'HENRY, DANL. CARROLL, DAN: OF ST. THOS. JEN-  
IFER.

*Virginia.*—JOHN BLAIR, JAMES MADISON, JR.,

*North Carolina.*—WM. BLOUNT, HU. WILLIAMSON. RICH'D DOBBS SPAIGHT,

*South Carolina.*—J. RUTLEDGE, CHARLES PINCKNEY, CHARLES COTES-  
WORTH PINCKNEY PIERCE BUTLER.

*Georgia.*—WILLIAM FEW, ABB. BALDWIN.

Attest:

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

The Constitution was adopted on the 17th September, 1787, by the Convention appointed in pursuance of the resolution of the Congress of the Confederation, of the 21st February, 1787, and was ratified by the Conventions of the several States, as follows, viz.:

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| By Convention of Delaware, | on the 7th December, 1787. |
| " " Pennsylvania,          | " 12th December, 1787.     |
| " " New Jersey,            | " 18th December, 1787.     |
| " " Georgia,               | " 2d January, 1788.        |
| " " Connecticut,           | " 9th January, 1788.       |
| " " Massachusetts,         | " 6th February, 1788.      |
| " " Maryland,              | " 28th April, 1788.        |
| " " South Carolina,        | " 23d May, 1788.           |
| " " New Hampshire,         | " 21st June, 1788.         |
| " " Virginia,              | " 26th June, 1788.         |
| " " New York,              | " 26th July, 1788.         |
| " " North Carolina,        | " 21st November, 1789.     |
| " " Rhode Island,          | " 29th May, 1790.          |

**ARTICLES**  
**IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF,**  
**THE CONSTITUTION**

**OF THE**  
**UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,**

*Proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States,  
pursuant to the fifth article of the original Constitution.*

**(ARTICLE I.)**

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or of the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

**(ARTICLE II.)**

A well-regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

**(ARTICLE III.)**

No Soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

**(ARTICLE IV.)**

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

**(ARTICLE V.)**

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

**(ARTICLE VI.)**

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have Compulsory process for obtaining Witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

## (ARTICLE VII.)

In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

## (ARTICLE VIII.)

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

## (ARTICLE IX.)

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

## (ARTICLE X.)

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

## (ARTICLE XI.)

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

## (ARTICLE XII.)

The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—The President of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

## (ARTICLE XIII.)

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

(ARTICLE XIV.)

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed; but when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State (being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States), or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in said State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector, or President, or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties, for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned; but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave. But all such debts, obligations, and claims, shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this Article.

(ARTICLE XV.)

SECTION 1. The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

# CHRONOLOGICAL RECORD.

|                                   |             |       |   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------|---|
| On the<br>throne<br>of<br>England | HENRY VII.  | A. D. | <p>1492. Oct. 12th, Columbus discovers America (St. Salvador).</p> <p>1497. June 24th, main-land of America (Newfoundland) discovered by John and Sebastian Cabot, under a commission from Henry VII., of England.</p> <p>1498. Columbus discovers the main-land of South America.</p> <p>1499. Voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.</p> <p>1501. Coast of N. A. explored by Cortereal, a Portuguese.</p> <p>1507. The New World first called AMERICA, after Amerigo Vespucci, by Waldseemüller, of Fribourg.</p> <p>1512. March 27th, Florida discovered by Ponce de Leon.</p> <p>1513. Sept. 26th, Pacific Ocean discovered by Balboa.</p> <p>1517. Mexico discovered by Francisco Fernandez.</p> <p>1519. April, Cortez lands where Vera Cruz now stands.</p> <p>1520. Magellan enters the Pacific, by the Strait of Magellan.</p> <p>1521. August 13th, Cortez takes the city of Mexico.</p> <p>1524. Verazzani, a Florentine in the service of France, explores the coast from N. C. to Nova Scotia.</p> <p>1528. Unsuccessful invasion of Florida by De Narvaez.</p> <p>1534. Cartier discovers the River St. Lawrence.</p> <p>1539. De Soto commences his invasion at Tampa Bay.</p> <p>1540. Attempt of Roberval to colonize New France.</p> <p>1541. The Mississippi River discovered by De Soto.</p> <p>1542. May 21st, De Soto dies ; is buried in the Mississippi.</p> <p>1562. Huguenots attempt a settlement at Port Royal.</p> <p>1564. Settlement of Huguenots on the St. John's, Fla.</p> <p>1565. Spaniards found St. Augustine, and destroy the French colony.</p> <p>1576. Frobisher, an Englishman, seeks a N. W. passage.</p> <p>1579. First voyage of Sir Humphrey Gilbert ; second, in 1583. Sir Francis Drake explores the coast of New Albion (Oregon).</p> <p>1584. First expedition sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh reaches Roanoke Island ; country called Virginia.</p> <p>1585. Raleigh's second expedition sent out under Grenville.</p> <p>1587. Raleigh sends out a colony under White.</p> <p>1589. Raleigh assigns his rights to the London Co.</p> |
| 1509                              | HENRY VIII. |       |   |
| 1547                              | ED. VI.     |       |   |
| 1553                              | MARY.       |       |   |
| 1558                              | ELIZABETH   |       |   |

On the  
throne  
of  
England

JAMES I.

1602. May 14th, Gosnold discovers Cape Cod.  
 1606. Patent issued to London and Plymouth Companies.  
 1607. Plymouth Co. attempt to plant a colony at the mouth of the Kennebec. First permanent English settlement made, at Jamestown, by London Co.  
 1608. Quebec founded by French under Champlain. Capt. John Smith explores Chesapeake Bay.  
 1609. Lord Delaware appointed governor of Virginia. Hendrik Hudson discovers the Hudson River.  
 1611. Cattle and hogs brought to Va. from Europe.  
 1613. Marriage of Pocahontas to John Rolfe.  
 1614. Dutch build a fort on Manhattan Island. Capt. Smith explores the coast of New England.  
 1615. Dutch settle at Fort Orange (Albany).  
 1618. Dutch settle in New Jersey, near the Hudson.  
 1619. "House of Burgesses," the first representative body in America, convenes at Jamestown.  
 1620. Dec. 11th (22d, N. S.), Pilgrims land at Plymouth.  
 1621. March, Pilgrims make a treaty with Massasoit. Cotton first cultivated at Jamestown.  
 1622. Indian massacre; 347 Virginia colonists killed. Grant made to Gorges and Mason of land from the St. Lawrence to the Merrimac.

1625

CHARLES I.

1624. James I. dissolves the London Company.  
 1627. Swedes settle near the Delaware.  
 1628. Massachusetts Bay Colony founded. John Endicott settles at Salem. Charlestown founded.  
 1630. Boston, Dorchester, Roxbury, Cambridge, founded.  
 1631. De Vries plants a colony of Dutch in Delaware.  
 1632. Trading-posts established in Maryland.  
 1633. Connecticut settled. Dutch build a fort at Hartford; Plymouth settlers erect a trading-post at Windsor.  
 1634. Leonard Calvert colonizes Maryland. —  
 1635. Emigration from Massachusetts to Connecticut.  
 1636. Rhode Island first settled, at Providence, by Roger Williams.  
 1637. The Pequod War.  
 1638. Delaware colonized by Swedes and Finns. Anne Hutchinson's followers settle on Rhode Island. Colony of New Haven founded.  
 1641. New Hampshire united with Massachusetts.  
 1643. Indian War in New Netherlands.

On the  
throne  
of  
England

1649

Common-  
wealth.

1660

CHARLES II.

1685

James II.

1688

William and Mary.

1702

Anna.

1714

GEORGE I.

1727

1643. Confederacy formed, under the name of "the United Colonies of New England". Swedes from Delaware settle in Pennsylvania.

1644. Indian War in Virginia.

1653. North Carolina first colonized, by Virginians.

1655. Dutch conquer the Swedes of Delaware.

1659. Quakers executed in Massachusetts.

1663. Carolina granted to Clarendon and others.

1664. Charles II. grants the whole country from the Connecticut to the Delaware to his brother, the Duke of York. New Amsterdam is taken, and its name changed to New York. All the Dutch possessions pass into the hands of the English. New Jersey granted to Berkeley and Carteret.

1665. Allouez explores Lake Superior.

1670. Locke's Grand Model signed. S. Carolina colonized.

1675. King Philip's War. Indian War in Virginia.

1676. King Philip killed; his tribe destroyed. Bacon's Rebellion. Jamestown burned.

1679. New Hampshire made a royal province.

1680. Founding of Charleston.

1681. William Penn obtains a grant from Charles II.

1682. Pennsylvania settled. Philadelphia founded in 1683.

1685. Andros made governor of all New England.

1687. Andros tries to take away the charter of Conn.

1689. King William's War; lasts till 1697.

1690. Schenectady burned by French and Indians.

1692. Witch delusion in Salem, now Danvers.

1696. Rice first raised in Carolina.

1701. Detroit founded by the French.

1702. Queen Anne's War; lasts till 1713. Mobile founded by French under D'Iberville.

1704. Deerfield, Mass., destroyed by French and Indians.

1715. Tuscaroras driven out of N. C., after three years' war.

1717. Law's Mississippi Scheme; exploded 1720.

1718. New Orleans founded by the French.

1724. Vermont first settled, by emigrants from Mass.

1729. N. and S. Carolina made separate governments. Massacre of French at Fort Rosalie (Natchez). Baltimore founded.

1730. The Natchez exterminated by the French.

1732. George Washington born, Pope's Creek, Va.

On the  
throne  
of  
England

GEORGE II.

1760

GEORGE III.

- 1733. Georgia settled by Oglethorpe, at Savannah.
- 1740. Unsuccessful invasion of Fla. by Oglethorpe.
- 1742. Unsuccessful invasion of Ga. by the Spanish.
- 1744. King George's War; lasts till 1748.
- 1745. Colonists under Sir Wm. Pepperell take Louisburg.
- 1749. Ohio Company obtain a grant of 500,000 acres.
- 1753. Washington's mission to the French forts.
- 1754. Fort Du Quesne begun by the English; taken and finished by the French. Washington defeats Jumonville.
- 1755. Braddock's defeat. Dieskau's defeat.
- 1756. War formally declared between France and England.
- 1757. Montcalm takes Ft. William Henry; massacre.
- 1758. Montcalm repulses Abercrombie at Ticonderoga. English take Louisburg and Fort Du Quesne.
- 1759. English take Quebec. Wolfe and Montcalm fall.
- 1760. All Canada surrenders to the English.
- 1763. Peace of Paris ends the French and Indian War. Pontiac's War; Mackinaw taken; Detroit besieged.
- 1765. Stamp Act passed; repealed, March, 1766.
- 1767. Duty laid on tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors.
- 1768. Sept. 27th, British troops arrive at Boston.
- 1770. Boston Massacre. Duties removed, except on tea.
- 1773. Tea thrown overboard at Boston.
- 1774. Sept. 5th, Continental Congress meet at Philadelphia.
- 1775. Revolutionary War commences April 19th, with Battle of Lexington. May 10th, Ethan Allen takes Ticonderoga. May 12th, Warner takes Crown Point. May 21st, Independence declared in N. C. June 15th, Washington elected commander-in-chief. June 17th, Battle of Bunker Hill. Dec. 31st, unsuccessful attack on Quebec; Montgomery slain.
- 1776. March 17th, British evacuate Boston; June 28th, are repulsed at Charleston. July 4th, Declaration of Independence. Aug. 27th, Battle of Long Island. Sept. 15th, British land on N. Y. Island. Oct. 28th, Battle of White Plains. Nov. 16th, British take Fort Washington. Dec. 26th, Battle of Trenton.
- 1777. Jan. 3d, Battle of Princeton. La Fayette arrives in America. July 6th, Burgoyne takes Ticonderoga. Aug. 3d, St. Leger besieges Fort Stanwix. Aug. 6th, Battle of Oriskany. Aug. 16th, Battle of Bennington. Sept. 11th, Battle of Brandywine. Sept. 19th, first Battle of Still-



- water. Sept. 20th, Wayne surprised near Paoli. Sept. 26th, Howe enters Phila. Oct. 4th, Battle of Germantown. Oct. 7th, second Battle of Stillwater. Oct. 17th, Burgoyne's surrender. Dec. 11th, Washington goes into winter-quarters at Valley Forge.
1778. Feb. 6th, treaty with France signed. June 18th, Philadelphia evacuated by the British. June 28th, Battle of Monmouth. Massacre of Wyoming. July 11th, French fleet arrives off Sandy Hook. Aug., unsuccessful invasion of Rhode Island. Nov. 12th, Massacre of Cherry Valley. Dec. 29th, British take Savannah.
1779. March 3d, Americans surprised at Brier Creek, Ga. British take Stony and Verplanck's Point. July, Tryon ravages Conn. July 15th, Wayne recaptures Stony Point. Sept., Sullivan ravages the Indian country. Sept. 23d, Paul Jones takes the Serapis. Oct., Americans repulsed at Savannah.
1780. May 12th, Gen. Lincoln surrenders Charleston. July 10th, French fleet arrives off Newport. August 6th, Battle of Hanging Rock. Aug. 16th, Gates defeated near Camden. Sept. 23d, Andre captured; discovery of Arnold's treason. Oct. 7th, Battle of King's Mountain. Exploits of Marion.
1781. Jan., Arnold ravages Va. Jan. 17th, Battle of the Cowpens. Jan., Feb., Morgan and Greene's retreat. March 15th, Battle of Guilford C. H. April 25th, Battle of Hobkirk's Hill. British posts in Carolina captured. Sept. 6th, British take Forts Trumbull and Griswold, Conn. Sept. 8th, Battle of Eutaw Springs. Oct., French and Americans besiege Cornwallis at Yorktown. Oct. 19th, surrender of Cornwallis.
1783. Sept. 3d, treaty of peace signed between Great Britain and U. S. Nov. 3d, Americans disband their army. Nov. 25th, N. Y. evacuated by the British. Dec. 23d, Washington resigns his commission.
1787. Shays's Rebellion in Mass. Constitution of the U. S. framed by a convention at Philad.
1788. First permanent settlement in Ohio, at Marietta.
1789. Government organized under the Federal Constitution. Washington elected first president. Cincinnati founded.
1790. Indian War; Gen. Harmer defeated in Indiana.
1791. Vermont admitted into the Union. St. Clair defeated by the Indians.

On the  
throne  
of  
England

GEORGE III.

1820.  
Gen. IV.

- 1792. Kentucky admitted. Columbia River explored.
- 1794. Whiskey Rebellion in Pa. Gen. Wayne ends the Indian War. Jay's treaty with Great Britain.
- 1796. Tennessee admitted. Washington's Farewell Address.
- 1797. John Adams becomes president.
- 1799. Naval engagements with French vessels. Dec. 14th, death of Washington.
- 1800. Washington made the capital. Treaty with France.
- 1801. Jefferson becomes president. Tripolitan War.
- 1802. Ohio admitted.
- 1803. Louisiana purchased. U. S. frigate Philadelphia captured by the Tripolitans.
- 1804. The Philad. retaken by Decatur. Tripoli bombarded.
- 1807. Burr tried for treason, and acquitted. U. S. frigate Chesapeake attacked by the Leopard.
- 1809. Madison becomes president.
- 1811. Harrison gains the battle of Tippecanoe.
- 1812. June 18th, war with Great Britain declared. Hull's invasion of Canada, retreat, and surrender. Unsuccessful attack on Queenstown. U. S. gains brilliant naval victories.
- 1813. Americans defeated at Frenchtown; take York, U. C.; besieged in Fort Meigs; take Fort George; repulse the British at Sackett's Harbor; also at Fort Stephenson. Sept. 10th, Perry's great victory on Lake Erie. Oct. 5th, Battle of the Thames. British take Forts George and Niagara. Jackson's campaign in the Creek country.
- 1814. July 5th, Battle of Chippeway. July 25th, Battle of Lundy's Lane. Americans besieged in Fort Erie. Aug. 24th, Battle of Bladensburg; British enter Washington and burn the public buildings. Sept. 11th, Battle of Plattsburg. Sept. 13th, British repulsed at Baltimore. Dec. 15th, Hartford Convention.
- 1815. Jan. 8th, Battle of New Orleans. Feb. 18th, peace with Great Britain proclaimed. Decatur settles with the Barbary States.
- 1816. Treaties with southern Indians. Indiana admitted.
- 1817. Monroe president. Seminole War begins. Mississippi admitted. Erie Canal commenced.
- 1818. Illinois admitted. Jackson seizes Pensacola.
- 1819. Spain cedes Florida to U. S. Alabama admitted.
- 1820. Maine, before a part of Mass., admitted.
- 1821. Missouri admitted. Missouri Compromise passed.

On the  
throne  
of  
England

1830

WILLIAM IV.

1837

VICTORIA.

1823. Com. Porter suppresses West Indian pirates.  
 1824. La Fayette visits America.  
 1825. John Quincy Adams inaugurated as president.  
 1826. July 4th, death of John Adams and Jefferson.  
 1829. Jackson inaugurated, seventh president.  
 1832. Ravages of the cholera. Black Hawk's War. Nullification in S. C. U. S. Bank vetoed.  
 1833. Jackson removes the deposits from U. S. Bank.  
 1835. Second war with Seminoles. Great fire in New York. Texan Revolution commences.  
 1836. Battle of San Jacinto. Arkansas admitted.  
 1837. Michigan admitted. U. S. recognizes independence of Texas. Van Buren becomes president. Financial distress. Troubles on the Canada line.  
 1841. Harrison, inaugurated as president March 4th, dies April 4th. Tyler succeeds. Difficulties in the Cabinet.  
 1842. North-eastern boundary settled with England. Dorr's Rebellion in Rhode Island.  
 1845. Polk president. Texas and Florida admitted.  
 1846. Iowa admitted. Mexican War commences. May 8th, Battle of Palo Alto. May 9th, Battle of Resaca de la Palma. Sept. 24th, Capitulation of Monterey. Americans conquer California. N. W. boundary settled with Great Britain.  
 1847. Feb. 23d, Battle of Buena Vista. March 27th, Scott takes Vera Cruz. April 18th, Battle of Cerro Gordo. Aug. 20th, Contreras, Churubusco. Sept. 8th, Molino del Rey. Sept. 13th, Chapultepec. Sept. 14th, Americans enter Mexico.  
 1848. Discovery of gold in California. July 4th, peace with Mexico proclaimed. Wisconsin admitted.  
 1849. Taylor inaugurated.  
 1850. Descent of Lopez on Cuba. July 9th, death of the president. Fillmore succeeds. Sept. 18th, Omnibus Bill passed. California admitted.  
 1852. Difficulty with England on the fishery question.  
 1853. Pierce inaugurated. World's Fair. The Koszta difficulty. Perry enters the Bay of Jeddo.  
 1854. Japanese make a treaty with the U. S. Kansas and Nebraska Bill passed. Missouri Compromise repealed.  
 1855. Troubles in Kansas.  
 1857. Buchanan inaugurated. Revulsion in business. Mormon Rebellion.  
 1858. Minnesota admitted.

On the  
throne  
of  
England

VICTORIA.

1859. Expedition to Paraguay. John Brown seizes the U. S. arsenal at Harper's Ferry; is taken, and with six companions hanged. Oregon admitted.
1860. Arrival of Japanese embassy. Dec. 20th, Secession ordinance passed by South Carolina.
1861. JANUARY 9th, Mississippi secedes; 11th, Alabama and Florida secede; 19th, Georgia secedes; 26th, Louisiana secedes; 30th, Kansas admitted.
- FEBRUARY 1st, Texas secedes; 4th, Peace Conference assembles at Washington—"Confederacy" formed at Montgomery, Ala.; 8th, Davis elected provisional president of "the Confederate States".
- MARCH 4th, Lincoln inaugurated.
- APRIL 13th, Fall of Sumter; 15th, President calls for 75,000 men; 17th, Virginia secedes; 18th, Confederates seize Harper's Ferry; 19th, Volunteers attacked in Baltimore; 20th, Confederates seize Norfolk navy yard.
- MAY 3d, President calls for 82,748 men; 6th, Arkansas secedes; 20th, North Carolina secedes.
- JUNE 3d, Union victory at Philippi, Va.; 8th, Tennessee secedes; 10th, Union repulse at Big Bethel, Va.; 11th, Union victory at Romney, Va.
- JULY 5th, Battle near Carthage, Mo.; 11th, Union victory at Rich Mountain, Va.; 14th, Union victory at Carrick's Ford, Va.; 20th, Confederate Congress meets at Richmond; 21st, Union defeat at Bull Run, Va.
- AUGUST 10th, Battle of Wilson's Creek, Mo.; 29th, Forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., captured.
- SEPTEMBER 10th, Union victory at Carnifex Ferry, Va.; 20th, Confederates take Lexington, Mo.
- OCTOBER 21st, Union defeat at Ball's Bluff, Va.
- NOVEMBER 7th, Battle of Belmont, Mo.—Capture of Port Royal, S. C.; 8th, seizure of Mason and Slidell.
- DECEMBER 20th, Union victory at Dranesville, Va.; 30th, N. Y. banks suspend specie payments.
1862. JANUARY 19th, Union victory at Mill Springs, Ky.
- FEBRUARY 6th, Capture of Fort Henry, Tenn.; 8th, Capture of Roanoke Island, N. C.; 16th, Capture of Fort Donelson, Tenn.; 22d, Davis inaugurated for a term of six years.
- MARCH 6th-8th, Battle of Pea Ridge, Ark.; 8th, Ram Virginia sinks the Cumberland and Congress; 9th, Engagement between the Monitor and Virginia; 14th, Capture of Newbern, N. C.; 23d, Union victory at Winchester, Va.

**APRIL** 4th, McClellan commences his Peninsular campaign ; 6th, 7th, Battle of Shiloh ; 7th, Capture of Island No. 10, Miss. River ; 11th, Capture of Fort Pulaski, Ga. ; 25th, Capture of Beaufort, S. C.—Capture of New Orleans ; 28th, Capture of Forts Jackson and St. Philip, La.

**MAY** 4th, Yorktown, Va., taken ; 5th, Union victory at Williamsburg, Va. ; 9th, Pensacola taken ; 10th, Gen. Wool takes possession of Norfolk, Va. ; 30th, Corinth, Miss., taken ; May 31st, June 1st, Battle of Fair Oaks or Seven Pines.

**JUNE** 3d, Lee assumes command before Richmond ; 6th, Surrender of Memphis, Tenn. ; 25th, Battle of Oak Grove, Va., commencing the seven days' struggle ; 26th, Battle of Mechanicsville, Va. ; 27th, Battle of Gaines's Mill, Va. ; 29th, Battle of Savage's Station, Va. ; 30th, Battles of White Oak Swamp and Charles City Cross Roads, Va.

**JULY** 1st, Battle of Malvern Hill, Va. ; President calls for 300,000 more men.

**AUGUST** 9th, President calls for 300,000 additional troops—Union victory at Cedar Mountain ; Aug. 26th–Sept. 1st, Pope's Battles between Manassas and Washington ; Aug. 30th, Union defeat at Richmond, Ky.

**SEPTEMBER** 6th, Lee's army invades Maryland ; 14th, Union victory at South Mountain, Md. ; 15th, Capture of Harper's Ferry by "Stonewall Jackson" ; 17th, Union victory at Antietam Creek, Md.—Union defeat at Munfordsville, Ky. ; 19th, Union victory at Iuka, Miss.

**OCTOBER** 4th, Confederates repulsed at Corinth, Miss. ; 8th, Union victory at Perryville, Ky.

**DECEMBER** 13th, Union repulse at Fredericksburg, Va. ; 29th, Union repulse at Vicksburg, Miss. ; 31st, Battle of Murfreesboro, Tenn. (Dec. 31st–Jan. 3d, 1863.)

**1863. JANUARY** 1st, Emancipation Proclamation ; 11th, Capture of Arkansas Post, Ark.

**APRIL** 7th, Naval attack on Fort Sumter, S. C. ; 17th, Grierson's raid in Miss. (April 17th–May 1st.)

**MAY** 1st, Union victory at Port Gibson, Miss. ; 2d, 3d, Union defeat at Chancellorsville, Va. ; 3d, Confederates capture Col. Streight ; 12th, Union victory at Raymond, Miss. ; 14th, Union victory near Jackson, Miss. ; 16th, Union victory at Champion's Hill, Miss. ; 17th, Union victory at Big Black River, Miss.

**JUNE** 15th, Lee's second invasion of Maryland commences ;

On the  
throne  
of  
England

VICTORIA

17th, Iron-clad Atlanta captured; 20th, West Virginia admitted.

JULY 1st-3d, Battle of Gettysburg, Pa.; 4th, Capture of Vicksburg, Miss.—Confederates repulsed at Helena, Ark.; 8th, Capture of Port Hudson, La.; 13th-16th, Great riot in N. Y. city; 21st, Morgan defeated in Ohio; 26th, Capture of Morgan.

SEPTEMBER 7th, Capture of Fort Wagner and Battery Gregg; 8th, Union repulse at Sabine Pass, Texas; 10th, Capture of Little Rock, Ark.; 19th, 20th, Battle of Chickamauga.

NOVEMBER 5th, Capture of Brownsville, Texas; 18th, Knoxville, Tenn., invested by Longstreet; 24th, Union victory at Lookout Mountain; 25th, Union victory at Missionary Ridge.

DECEMBER 3d, Longstreet raises the siege of Knoxville.

1864. FEBRUARY 1st, President orders a draft for deficiency under the last call and 200,000 additional men; 20th, Union defeat at Olustee, Fla.

MARCH 3d, Grant made Lt.-General; 13th, Fort De Russy, La., taken; 14th, President calls for 200,000 more men; 26th, Confederates repulsed at Cane River, La.

APRIL 8th, Union defeat at Mansfield, or Sabine Cross Roads, La.; 9th, Battle of Pleasant Hill, La.; 12th, Confederates capture Fort Pillow, Tenn.—massacre; 18th, Confederates capture Plymouth, N. C.

MAY 3d, Meade breaks camp; 5th, Butler lands on the south side of the James; 5th-7th, Battle of the Wilderness, Va.; 7th, Sherman moves from Chattanooga; 7th-12th, Battles near Spottsylvania Court House, Va.; 13th, 14th, Battle of Resaca, Ga.; 15th, Union defeat at New Market, Va.; 28th, Battle near Dallas, Ga.

JUNE 14th, 15th, Grant crosses to the south side of the James; 15th, Alabama sunk by the Kearsarge; 15th-17th, Battle of Lost Mountain, Ga.; 27th, Union victory at Kenesaw Mountain, Ga.

JULY 5th, Early invades Maryland; 9th, Union defeat at Monocacy, Md.; 18th, President calls for 500,000 volunteers; 20th, 22d, 28th, Battles before Atlanta, Ga.; 30th, Chambersburg burned—Mine exploded at Petersburg, and Union assault repulsed.

AUGUST 5th, Union victory in Mobile Bay; 8th, Fort Gaines, Ala., taken; 18th, Weldon Railroad seized; 23d, Fort Morgan taken; Aug. 31st, Sept. 1st, Union victory at Jonesboro, Ga.

On the  
throne  
of  
England

VICTORIA.

SEPTEMBER 2d, Capture of Atlanta, Ga. ; 19th, Union victory at Winchester, Va. ; 22d, Union victory at Fisher's Hill, Va. ; 29th, Attack at Chapin's Bluff, Va.

OCTOBER 19th, Union victory at Cedar Creek (Middletown), Va.—Raid on St. Albans, Vt. ; 27th, Engagement at Hatcher's Run—Ram Albemarle sunk ; 31st, Union troops recapture Plymouth, N. C.—Nevada admitted.

NOVEMBER 25th, Attempt to fire N. Y. city ; 30th, Battle of Franklin, Tenn.

DECEMBER 13th, Capture of Fort McAllister, Ga. ; 15th, 16th, Union victory at Nashville, Tenn. ; 20th, President calls for 300,000 men ; 21st, Capture of Savannah, Ga. ; 24th, First bombardment of Fort Fisher, N. C.

1865. JANUARY 15th, Capture of Fort Fisher, N. C.

FEBRUARY 17th, Capture of Columbia, S. C. ; 18th, Capture of Charleston, S. C. ; 22d, Capture of Wilmington, N. C.

MARCH 16th, Battle of Moore's Cross Roads, N. C. ; 19th, 20th, Battle of Bentonville, N. C. ; 21st, Goldsborough, N. C., occupied ; 25th, Attack on Fort Steadman, Va.

APRIL 1st, Union victory at Big Five Forks, Va. ; 2d, Lee's lines at Petersburg carried ; 3d, Capture of Petersburg and Richmond ; 6th, Union victory at Deatonville, Va. ; 9th, Lee's surrender ; 13th, Capture of Mobile, Ala., and Raleigh, N. C. ; 14th, Assassination of Pres. Lincoln ; 15th, Andrew Johnson takes the oath of office as president ; 26th, Johnston's surrender.

MAY 4th, Dick Taylor's surrender ; 10th, Capture of Jefferson Davis ; 26th, Kirby Smith's surrender—END OF THE WAR.—29th, Conditional amnesty proclaimed.

DECEMBER 18th, Thirteenth Amendment of the Constitution, abolishing slavery, declared to have been ratified by three-fourths of the states.

1866. Civil Rights Bill passed. Fenian invasion of Canada. Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution proposed. Tennessee restored to her relations in the Union.

1867. Nebraska admitted. Russian America purchased.

1868. Impeachment, trial, and acquittal, of President Johnson. Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North and South Carolina, restored to the Union. Fourteenth Amendment of the Constitution ratified. Proclamation of unconditional amnesty to all concerned in the secession movement.

1869. Grant inaugurated.







Walter Bachelot  
Sumol Glen  
Cal.





3 6105 007 939 353

1x  
973.1  
Q

**STANDARD EDUCATIONAL WORKS.**

**Reid's Dictionary of the English Language.**

**Robbins's Class-Book of Poetry.** 16mo. 252 pages.

———— **Guide to Knowledge.** 16mo. 417 pages.

**Shakespearian Reader.** By JOHN W. S. HOWS. 12mo.

**Schmidt's Course of Ancient Geography.** Arranged with special reference to convenience of recitation. By Prof. H. I. SCHMIDT, D. D., of Columbia College. 12mo. 328 pages.

**Spalding's History of English Literature.**

**Sewell's First History of Greece.** 18mo. 358 pages.

———— **Child's First History of Rome.** 18mo.

**Tenney's Analysis of Derivations and Definitions of English Words.**

**Tappan's Elements of Logic.** By HENRY W. TAPPAN, Chancellor of Mich. University. 12mo. 487 pages.

**Taylor's Manual of Ancient and Modern History.** 8vo. 870 pages.

**Webster's Elementary Spelling-Book.** "The National Standard." More than one million copies are sold annually.

**Worthen's First Lessons in Mechanics.** With Practical Applications designed for the use of Schools. 12mo.

**Wilson's Elementary Treatise on Logic.** By W. D. WILSON, D. D., Hobart Free College. 12mo. 425 pages.

**Winslow's Elements of Moral Philosophy:** Analytical, and Practical. 12mo. 480 pages.

**Youmans's Chemical Works.** Consisting of:  
NEW CLASS-BOOK OF CHEMISTRY.

CHEMICAL CHART, on rollers.

CHEMICAL ATLAS. Large 4to. 105 p.

THE HAND-BOOK OF HOUSEHOLD

of Heat, Light, Air, Alimentary Principles and Domestic Hygiene. Illustrated. 470 pages.

**Youmans's Botany.** Designed for Children. With numerous illustrations.

D. APPENDIX

W

of English  
Syriac T

BALCONY COLLECTION  
CURRICULUM LIBRARY

663322

